



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

3 3433 08244872 5











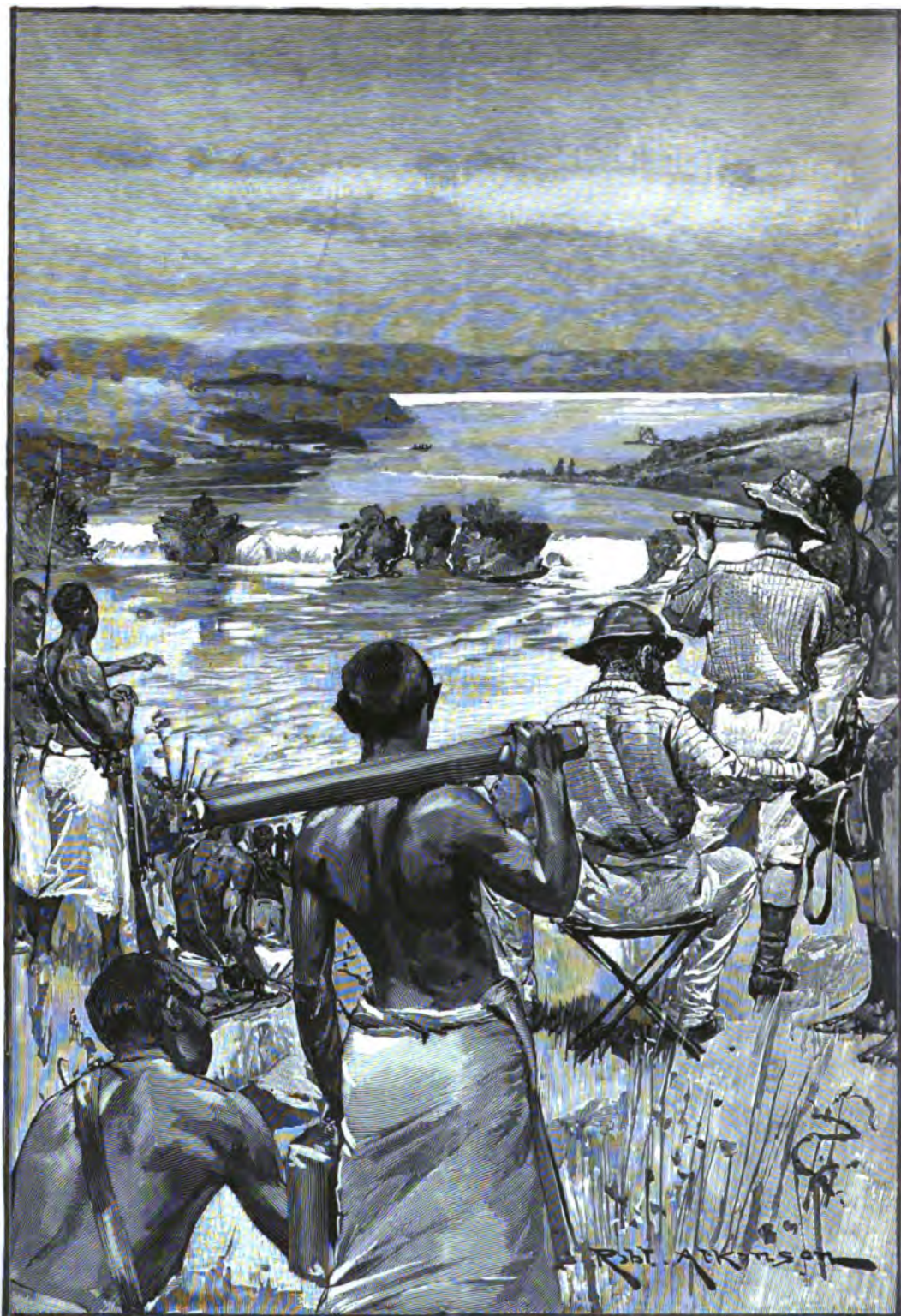


THE STORY OF AFRICA  
AND ITS EXPLORERS.

NEW YORK  
PUBLIC  
LIBRARY

WOMAN  
S  
WOMAN





SPEKE AND GRANT AT RIPON FALLS, WHERE THE NILE FLOWS OUT OF VICTORIA NYANZA.

THE  
STORY OF  
AND ITS ENLIGHTENED

ROBERT BROWN, M.A., F.R.S.

AUTHOR OF "THE COUNSEL OF THE WISDOM OF THE EAST"

VOL. I

THE GUINEA T ADVENTURE  
THE GUINEA T ADVENTURE

With Two Hundred Original Illustrations

CASSELL & COMPANY

LONDON PARIS & MELBOURNE

1902

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED





THE  
STORY OF AFRICA  
AND ITS EXPLORERS

BY

ROBERT BROWN, M.A., PH.D., F.L.S., F.R.G.S.

AUTHOR OF "THE COUNTRIES OF THE WORLD," "THE PEOPLES OF THE WORLD," "OUR EARTH AND ITS STORY"

VOL. I

THE GUINEA TRADERS—THE CORSAIRS OF AFRICA—THE TALE OF  
TIMBUCTOO—THE NIGER

---

With Two Hundred Original Illustrations

---

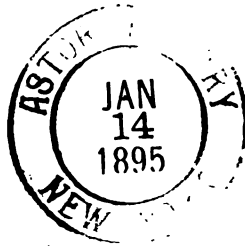
CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED

LONDON, PARIS & MELBOURNE

1892

[ALL RIGHTS RESERVED]

28947



# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
CHAPTER I.	
A CENTURY OF AFRICAN EXPLORATION . . . . .	19
CHAPTER II.	
THE GUINEA COAST AND THE OLD GUINEA TRADERS . . . . .	35
CHAPTER III.	
FORTS AND BOND MEN : THE SLAVE TRADE AND THE SLAVE TRADERS . . . . .	56
CHAPTER IV.	
THE CORSAIRS OF AFRICA . . . . .	79
CHAPTER V.	
IN SEARCH OF PRESTER JOHN : A PAPER-CHASE . . . . .	106
CHAPTER VI.	
THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO : GROPING IN THE DARK . . . . .	120
CHAPTER VII.	
THE TRAVELS OF ANDRE BRÜE, GENERAL OF THE ROYAL SENEGAL COMPANY . . . . .	140
CHAPTER VIII.	
THE BRITISH AND THE NIGER : THE AFRICAN ASSOCIATION . . . . .	161
CHAPTER IX.	
THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO : MUNGO PARK . . . . .	177
CHAPTER X.	
THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO : MUNGO PARK . . . . .	192

	PAGE
CHAPTER XI.	
THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO : A CHRONICLE OF FAILURES . . . . .	208
CHAPTER XII.	
THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO : A TALE OF SUCCESS . . . . .	222
CHAPTER XIII.	
THE NIGER KINGDOMS : A HALF-TOLD TALE . . . . .	239
CHAPTER XIV.	
THE NIGER MOUTH : THE END OF A LONG STORY . . . . .	256
CHAPTER XV.	
THE UTILISATION OF THE NIGER : AN UNFINISHED CHAPTER . . . . .	276
CHAPTER XVI.	
THE LAST SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO : BARTH ; MORDOKHAÏ ABI-SEROUR ; LENZ . . . . .	297

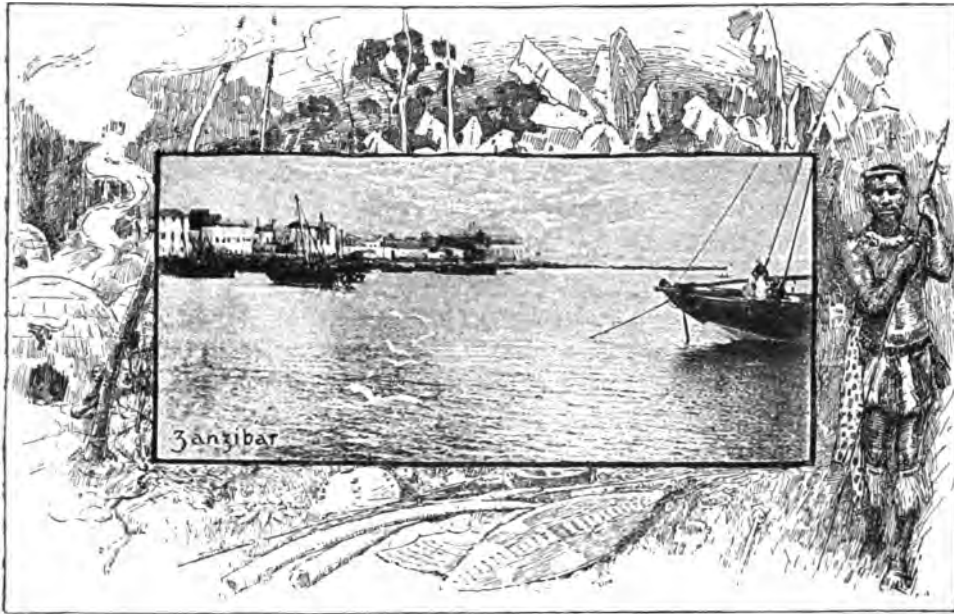
# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

SPEKE AND GRANT AT RIPON FALLS, WHERE THE NILE FLOWS OUT OF VICTORIA NYANZA . . . . . *Frontispiece.*

	PAGE
Zanzibar . . . . .	1
Ptolemy's Map of Africa . . . . .	3
Oil Palm Tree . . . . .	4
Camwood . . . . .	4
Esparto Grass . . . . .	5
India-rubber Tree . . . . .	5
Maize . . . . .	5
Gum Arabic Tree . . . . .	5
A Scene on the Shores of Lake Nyassa . . . . .	7
Ladies Travelling between Bagamoyo and Tanganyika . . . . .	8
Facsimile Reduction of Map in John Ogilby's "Africa" (1670) . . . . .	9
Post Runners . . . . .	12
A Fulah, brother of the Sultan of Sokoto . . . . .	13
Kaffir of Damaraland . . . . .	13
Native of Fernando Po . . . . .	14
Zulu Girl . . . . .	15
Zulu Chief . . . . .	15
Native of the Lower Congo . . . . .	16
Native of Zanzibar . . . . .	16
Scene on an African River . . . . .	17
Storehouses and Barracks for Soldiers at Boma, on the Lower Congo . . . . .	19
Mungo Park . . . . .	20
Scene at a Trading Station on the Niger . . . . .	21
On the Congo, looking towards the Mouth of the River Boers on the "Trek" . . . . .	25
Ismail Pasha, Ex-Khedive of Egypt . . . . .	29
Old Hulks in the Oil Rivers . . . . .	32
English and Dutch Forts at Accra, with a Plan of James Fort . . . . .	33
Map of Guinea . . . . .	35
Flat Beach on the Guinea Coast, backed by dense Jungle . . . . .	36
Cape Coast Castle . . . . .	37
Lagos . . . . .	40
Dixcove . . . . .	41
St. George del Mina . . . . .	44
English and Dutch Forts at Kommendah . . . . .	45
Seconde Town . . . . .	45
Christiansborg Castle . . . . .	48
Elephant Guinea . . . . .	49
Seconde Fort . . . . .	50
Houssa Policemen in the British Service . . . . .	52
Africa in 1750 . . . . .	53
Slave Barracoön . . . . .	57
Bartering for Slaves at a Fort on the Guinea Coast . . . . .	60
Capture of Christiansborg Castle by the Negroes in 1693 . . . . .	61
	<i>to face page</i> 62

	PAGE
Baobab, or Monkey-bread Tree . . . . .	64
Cocoa-nut Palm . . . . .	64
Implements in use by Slave-traders . . . . .	65
Arab Slave Raid . . . . .	<i>to face page</i> 67
Sir Thomas Fowell Buxton . . . . .	68
Slaver enticing Natives on Board . . . . .	69
Crest of Sir John Hawkins . . . . .	71
Slaves on the March . . . . .	72
Slaves left to Die . . . . .	73
William Wilberforce . . . . .	74
The Old French Fort at Whydah . . . . .	75
Slaver chased by Man-o'-War . . . . .	76
Slave Market in West Africa . . . . .	77
The Price of a Slave . . . . .	78
Captain Edward England . . . . .	81
Captain George Lowther . . . . .	83
Death of Captain Davis at Princess Island . . . . .	85
Captain Bartholomew Roberts . . . . .	87
Discovery of the Madagascar Pirate Colony by Cap- tain Woods Rogers . . . . .	89
Captain Avery . . . . .	92
Marooned . . . . .	93
Walking the Plank . . . . .	<i>to face page</i> 93
Sir Henry Morgan . . . . .	95
Toumba, near the Isles de Los, with Pirate Craft in the Offing . . . . .	97
Captain Edward Low . . . . .	98
Captain Teach, <i>alias</i> Blackbeard . . . . .	99
Pirate Vessel . . . . .	100
Merchant Ship under Convoy . . . . .	100
Cape Spartel and Lighthouse, Morocco . . . . .	101
Tetuan, in Morocco, and the Mountains to the South . . . . .	104
Sallee-Rabat . . . . .	105
"Kareefs" attacking a Merchantman . . . . .	105
Scene on the Niger, at Say . . . . .	108
Mangrove Thicket . . . . .	109
Map of the River Niger . . . . .	112
Death of the Joloff Prince . . . . .	113
Portion of Fra Mauro's Map of Abyssinia . . . . .	116
Plantain Plantation . . . . .	117
Sugar Cane . . . . .	117
Yam . . . . .	120
Timbuctoo . . . . .	121
Kabara, the Port of Timbuctoo . . . . .	121
Thompson Leaving his Vessel . . . . .	125
Jobson's Boat Aground in the Gambia . . . . .	<i>to face page</i> 126
"Monkeys swung themselves from the branches" . . . . .	128
Bananas . . . . .	129
Kola Nuts . . . . .	129

	PAGE		PAGE
Captain Jobson and the Pseudo-Demon . . . . .	132	Fulahs of Sokoto . . . . .	224
British Trading Post at Cape Juby: The Castle . . . . .	133	René Caillié . . . . .	225
Traders at Cape Juby—Castle and Factory in the distance . . . . .	133	Mosque School in Northern Africa . . . . .	229
Captain Lambert Bartering with the Natives near Cape Blanco . . . . .	136	Map of Caillié's Route . . . . .	231
Animals resorting to Lake Cayor to Drink . . . . .	137	Sand Storm in the Sahara . . . . .	232
End of the Combat between the "Kamalingo" and the Lion . . . . .	139	Niger River Ferry-Boat . . . . .	233
Goree . . . . .	140	Toucouleurs of Senegal . . . . .	236
Fort St. Louis . . . . .	141	Lake Tchad . . . . .	237
Native Mode of Securing Protection from Mosquitoes . . . . .	144	The Town of Tripoli, in Barbary . . . . .	239
Method of Securing Elephants Employed by the Natives before Brûe's Time . . . . .	145	The Clapperton Expedition at Murzuk . . . . .	241
Ant Hill . . . . .	148	Ruins at Bonjeem . . . . .	243
Removal of the Siratik's Court: The Advance Guard . . . . .	149	Murzuk, in Fezzan . . . . .	244
Mandingo Marabout . . . . .	152	The Natron Lakes in the Ghat Country . . . . .	245
Fulah Girl . . . . .	153	Larva of the <i>Arthemias oudneii</i> . . . . .	247
St. Mary's, Bathurst . . . . .	156	Mail-clad Warrior from Bornu . . . . .	248
Felou Falls, Upper Senegal . . . . .	157	Captain Clapperton . . . . .	249
Mountains in Bambuk . . . . .	159	Major Dixon Denham . . . . .	249
Bambarra Type . . . . .	160	Escape of Denham from the "Kerdies" . . . . .	252
Plan of James Island, in the Gambia, 1732 . . . . .	164	Ruins of Birni, or Ghasr-eggomo, the Ancient Capital of the Bornu Empire . . . . .	252
Job, Son of Solomon, Surprised by a Party of Mandingoes . . . . .	165	Map of Oudney, Denham, and Clapperton's Routes . . . . .	253
Wandering Fulah . . . . .	165	Grass-roofed Sleeping Sheds in Mamu Forest, Yoruba, West Africa . . . . .	256
General Oglethorpe . . . . .	168	Richard Lander . . . . .	257
The King of Barsali's Pastime . . . . .	169	Mohammedan School, Yoruba . . . . .	260
Freetown, Sierra Leone . . . . .	172	View of Ese Adu, Yoruba . . . . .	261
Sir Joseph Banks . . . . .	173	Lander under Trial by Ordeal . . . . .	262
Gum Acacia . . . . .	176	Tanghiria Nut . . . . .	263
Mungo Park and the African King . . . . .	180	Kano . . . . .	264
Mungo Park sets out from Pisanía . . . . .	181	The River Niger at the Foot of the Bussa Rapids, near Rabba: "Dr. Baikie's Seat" in the distance . . . . .	265
Medina, Capital of Wuli . . . . .	184	Map of the Landers' Route . . . . .	267
Park Blackmailed . . . . .	185	"They noticed some fifty large canoes" . . . . .	269
Fetish Tree, with Palisade to guard it . . . . .	188	River-side Scene at Asaba, Lower Niger . . . . .	272
The Returned Blacksmith . . . . .	189	Rabba . . . . .	273
The West African Coffee Plant . . . . .	191	In the Market Place, Rabba . . . . .	273
Moorish Douar, or Encampment . . . . .	192	Calabar Bean . . . . .	275
Scene at Dina: Park insulted by the Moors . . . . .	193	Snake Charmer of the Lower Congo . . . . .	276
Map of Mungo Park's Routes . . . . .	193	Reception by the King of Iddah . . . . .	277
Household Utensils from the West Coast of Africa . . . . .	196	Confluence of the Niger and Benué Rivers . . . . .	280
Park Lost in the Desert . . . . .	197	Trading Factory and Town of Iddah, Lower Niger . . . . .	281
Young Girls of Bambarra . . . . .	200	Mohammedans of the Middle Niger . . . . .	285
Cowry Shells . . . . .	201	Guré, the Capital of Muniyo . . . . .	288
The Palace, Sego . . . . .	204	Henry Barth . . . . .	292
Sego Women Entertaining Park . . . . .	205	Native Mode of Crossing a River by means of Calabashes . . . . .	293
Bambarra Types . . . . .	207	"Begged the blessing of the Syrian Pilgrim" . . . . .	295
Timbuctoo: Distant View . . . . .	208	Map of Dr. Barth's Route . . . . .	295
Niger River (Lokoja) Chief's Canoe . . . . .	209	Top of the Main Street of Tangier, Morocco . . . . .	297
Mungo Park's Last Stand . . . . .	213	Barth met by a Crowd near Timbuctoo . . . . .	301
"The Borderers sang . . . . as they gaily rode to their graves" . . . . .	216	Mordokhal Abi-Serour . . . . .	304
Bambarra Interior . . . . .	217	The Komádugu at Zengiri . . . . .	305
Senegambian Thicket . . . . .	220	Distant View of the City of Morocco (Merakish), the Atlas Mountains in the distance . . . . .	308
Sheet of Logarithms by Mungo Park . . . . .	221	Oskar Lenz . . . . .	309
		A Letter of Safe Conduct granted by the Sultan of Morocco . . . . .	309



# THE STORY OF AFRICA.

## INTRODUCTION.

"A fount for the world, and worldlings base!  
I speak of Africa, and golden joys."



IT was little that Ancient Pistol knew of the land which forms the theme of our pages. But in putting these words into his mouth, Shakespeare doubtless expressed the estimate of its riches entertained in the taverns of Eastcheap and the guard-rooms of Tower Hill. To the wassailers of these haunts it was emphatically a world of "golden joys." For was not this the Land of Prester John and the King of Tombuto, and were not the Portugals rich in the slaves and ivory and precious dust which the caravels had brought from Sierra Leone and Senegal, and Arguin, and El Mina, and the great Congo of Diego Cam, and had not Her Grace granted the Company of Exeter merchants patents to trade to Barbary, and to Guinea, "between Sanaga and Gambia"?

Three centuries have passed away since then, and Africa is again a name associated with dreams of wealth. Once more the sands of its "sunny fountains" are being searched for those yellow grains which aroused the avarice of the early adventurers, and its arid uplands for the diamonds which were undreamt of in the days of Royal Hal. And better even than gold and gems, far better than ivory of any hue, the soil is now known to be capable of growing crops

Africa from  
many  
points of  
view.



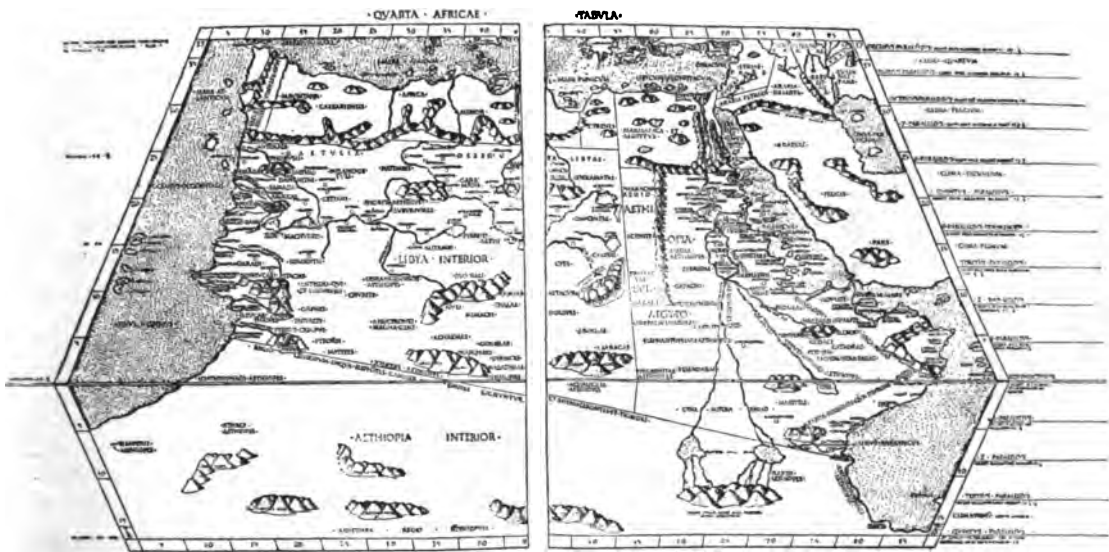
the ultimate value of which will far outweigh the six tons of glittering pebbles which it has yielded within the last twenty years. But if we have returned, as the nineteenth century is closing, to much the same opinion of Africa as the sixteenth cherished, the intervening years have witnessed a wide contrariety of belief as to its present value and its future worth. Inordinate hopes, bred of imperfect knowledge, have alternated with pessimism equally undeserved. The "golden joys" of Falstaff's lieutenant have been damped by the avowed opinion of one of its greatest explorers, that in all his journeys through its most fertile kingdoms he never saw anything except slaves and ivory which would sell for tenpence a pound. Yet hundredweights of undoubted gold pass out of it every year. Ship-loads of ivory and india-rubber, copal and gum arabic, ostrich feathers and ebony, palm-oil and camwood, almonds and esparto grass (pp. 4, 5), wool and hides, wine and honey, leave its shores every month. Its northern area is now, with the exception of Morocco, almost entirely under European control. Its eastern and western coasts have been parcelled out among the Great Powers, and the "Hinterlands," or back countries, with their kings and peoples in most cases all unconscious of the honour forced upon them, have come under the "Spheres of Influence" accorded to the sovereign companies who are the suffragan lords of these portions of the continent. As for South Africa, it is either a British Colony, or the seat of Dutch Republics, destined, in the fulness of time, to be part of a dominion under British protection. Nevertheless, in Cape Town and Zanzibar, in Berlin and Brussels and the City of London, there are men to whom African mines and the possibility of dividends from African stocks are a sore subject. The cheerful "*Semper novi quid ex Africa*" of the Roman Proconsul has been succeeded by the yawning complaints of *blasé* folk that Africa is exhausted, that one black man is very like another black man, the new traveller's tale monotonously akin to the tales of all the travellers who have preceded him, until an Emin fever or a Stanley "boom" proclaims the contrary.

At this moment Africa is the one quarter of the world which has not been made too much of for new-comers to make a little more. Asia is occupied. America is for the Americans. Europe is overflowing. Even Australia, in spite of the space it occupies upon the map, has little land fit for cultivation which is not already owned.

But Africa has still room for those who can develop her mines, and till her soil, and hew down her forests, and it may be—though of this, warned by the fate of all other "provisional races," it is as well not to be sanguine—teach her savage millions the arts of peace. Then the "Expiring Continent" may revive, the "Dark Continent" receive light, the "Hopeless Continent" become the hope of philanthropy, and the "Last of the Continents," to use another of the many names applied to it, progress so far as to take a place worthy of the "Hinterland" of what was, once upon a time, not only the oldest, but the greatest of all the civilisations.

For sunk though most of Africa has always been in the grossest of barbarism, its northern shores, from a period beyond which the chronicle of man runneth not, have been the seat of an ancient culture. There is scarcely a foot-breadth of Egypt, or of the Barbary States, without memorials of this bygone civilisation, the very memory of which has become a myth among the race who ruined it. From "Where Nile reflects

the endless length of dark red colonnades," to "where Atlas swings his shadow far o'er the western foam," we stumble upon the carven stones and the lettered tablets which bear witness to a vanished race. High up the Nile valley we are seldom out of sight of the gigantic monuments of a people who were so far advanced in culture that, though their civilisation might not be as lofty as that of Greece and Rome, it was in many respects even more elaborate. In Tunisia—the Africa Propria of the Old World's masters—in Algeria, in Tripoli, in Morocco even, evidences are ever before us of the deathless race who are



PTOLEMÆUS ROMA. MDC.  
PTOLEMY'S MAP OF AFRICA.

still remembered as the "Rumi"—or Romans. A few cisterns in which a village of wretched Arabs stable their flocks—or themselves—are about all that remain of the famous capital of Carthage. But broken arches, ruined amphitheatres, gateways worthy of the Eternal City itself, temples reared to forgotten gods, tombs erected to wealthy citizens, are met with in any day's journey. In spots where now even the rude nomads can find no subsistence for their scanty flocks, the remains of elaborate aqueducts show that less than two thousand years ago, before the Moslem fanatics poured in from Asia to destroy what they could not maintain, the region was well watered and fertile.

Africa is thus at once a continent of the newest and the most ancient civilisation. For thousands of years\* before the Christian era Menes ruled over a united State and founded the city of Memphis. At that period the Assyrian Empire had not arisen. Chinese history does not even pretend to date as far back. The progenitors of the

**African civilisation the oldest as well as the newest in the world.**

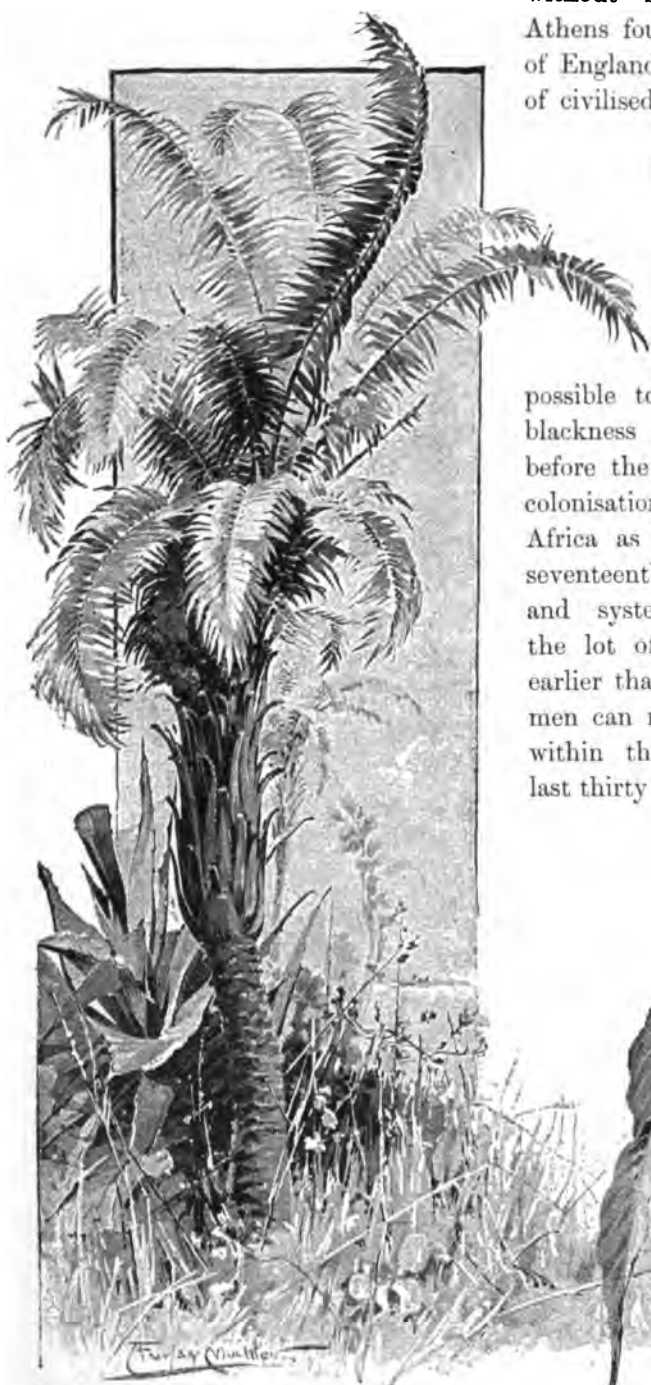
\* Two thousand three hundred and twenty, according to Gardner Wilkinson; 3892, by the calculations of Lepsius; 5004, after the computation of Mariette-Bey; 4455, if the chronology of Brugsch-Pasha is accepted.

Indian Aryans had not crossed the Himalayas ; the ancestors of the European stocks had not burst into the regions from which they ousted the Cave Men. Lastly, it goes without saying that Rome was not built or Athens founded, and that the earliest chronicles of England are of yesterday compared with those of civilised Africa.

#### THE RE-OPENING OF AFRICA.

But if Africa can boast of the oldest of cultures, its place in the history of modern civilisation is also the newest. With the exception of the extreme north, it is scarcely possible to date the first attempt to relieve its blackness by the presence of white men much before the fifteenth century. But anything like colonisation, the re-settlement of Europeans in Africa as their home, did not begin until the seventeenth century was well advanced, and systematic exploration was not the lot of the continent at a period earlier than what the memory of living men can reach. All the great explorations come within this century—most of them within the last thirty or forty years, while the "scramble" to

The great  
explorations  
of  
Africa all  
modern.



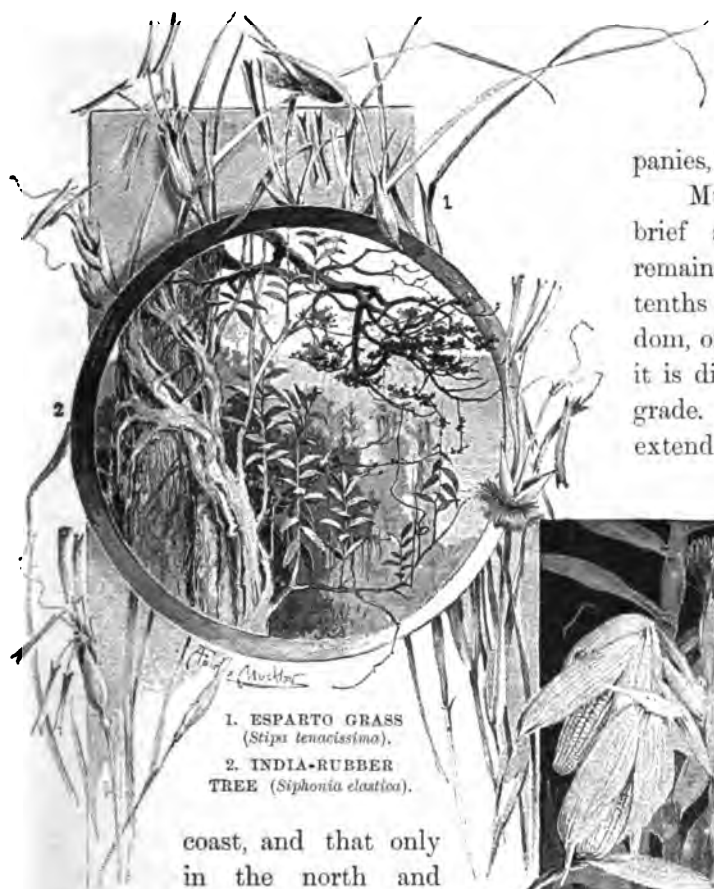
OIL PALM TREE (*Elais guineensis*).



CAMWOOD (*Baphia nitida*).

which we owe its division among a few Powers, and its systematic development by huge commercial companies, are events of our own day.

Much has been done within that brief span. But much more still remains to be accomplished. Nine-tenths of Africa is undiluted savagdom, or barbarism so unqualified that it is difficult to assign it to a higher grade. The European settlements extend only a little way from the



1. ESPARTO GRASS  
(*Stipa tenacissima*).  
2. INDIA-RUBBER  
TREE (*Siphonia elastica*).

coast, and that only in the north and south. Missionaries have, however, boldly penetrated into the heart of the country, and traders are following.

But as yet all is tentative. Negro Liberia is unprogressive, and the Italian "Eritrea" an experiment. Even the Congo State, which has pushed its river-side posts half way across the continent, and the chartered commercial companies, which have extended their operations in other directions, have still to stand the test of time. The country has been divided, the boundaries are being laid down, and with railways in course of construction where a year or two ago there was not even a streak on the map, it may seem to sanguine men that "all is over except the shouting." But with the memory of the many native wars of South



3. MAIZE (*Zea mays*).

4. GUM ARABIC TREE (*Acacia seyal*).

Africa before us, it is to be feared that there is a long interlude of a similar character before the new colonies, and territories, and "Spheres of Influence" can be considered as anything better than paper kingdoms.

Here then we have to explain the puzzle of a vast continent within sight of Europe, skirting in part the sea around which concentrated all the enterprise of the Old World, remaining unexplored until recent times. It was known, and even circumnavigated, before America was discovered, or a Briton had obtained a footing on Indian soil. It possessed European trading posts on its most pestilential shore before there were any European colonies outside the New World. Yet it has remained almost to the end of the nineteenth century without attracting more than a fraction of that vast immigration which has poured into America and the distant dependencies of Great Britain. Finally, the last of all the European Powers to turn again to the Black Continent are the Italians, though they are the heirs of the enterprising race who, twenty-two centuries ago, had provinces in Africa which for eight hundred years were as prosperous as any colonies of modern times.

These anomalies seem so remarkable, that before tracing the evolution of Africa as a field for European enterprise, it may be useful to explain the cause of this neglect, more especially as it will enable us to sketch some of the more salient peculiarities of the continent which we and the reader may have to traverse in company.

Until recently, Africa was a land of legends, a continent in which certain geographical convictions were taken for granted, without anyone taking the trouble to test the truth or the falsity of what had been transmitted to us by the ignorance of our ancestors. Among the chief of these myths was the widely accepted belief that the entire interior south of the Atlas was a sandy desert, with here and there an oasis or a fertile plain, or a range of mountains, yielding a little verdure, or a lake from which arose the rivers which crept into the sea through those miasmatic flats which the coaster knew too well. Yet in reality the Sahara extends for a comparatively short way into the centre of the continent, and, as the French have shown, is over a large extent of its surface perfectly reclaimable by sinking Artesian wells. Another conviction—and it is, perhaps, the least consistent of them all—was that on these "uninhabitable downs," where the geographer of Swift's day placed "elephants for want of towns," there were sultans, and kings, and kaisers rolling in riches, and cities so gorgeous that their gilded domes, studded with gems, form characteristic features of old African maps, the many open spaces in which afforded ample room for the indulgence of the chartographer's imagination (p. 9). All this is now very ancient history, in spite of old impressions dying hard. There are steamers on the river down which Stanley canoed in 1877, and Europeans of all sorts at the court of the savage king whom Speke and Grant first introduced to the outer world just thirty years ago. Post runners and ladies in sedan-chairs travel in perfect safety over the route between Bagamoyo and Tanganyika, which Burton first saw in 1858; railways are being surveyed between

Why Africa  
so long left  
to itself.

Mistaken  
ideas re-  
garding its  
geography.

the east coast and the great lakes, and one is actually being built from the Portuguese colonies on the western shore; and a recent traveller tells us of a "pink-faced baby" in the British perambulator whom he encountered on the shores of Lake Nyassa, which was not on the map of East Africa when the father of that child and the writer of these lines were "boys together" (pp. 7, 8, 12).

But even yet, as someone has remarked, few Europeans, except those who have devoted a modicum of attention to it, think of inner Africa except as a vast sandy desert, with a floating population, consisting chiefly of hungry lions, and robbers more ferocious still, the latter being in the habit of "careering over the waste" on swift



A SCENE ON THE SHORES OF LAKE NYASSA.

horses, without any obvious cause for their hurry, living comfortably when there is nothing to eat, and amassing stores of ill-gotten wealth when there is no one to rob.

#### THE PROBLEMS OF AFRICA.

Much, indeed, must be left to the depth of that inner consciousness out of which so many theories have been evolved. For once outside the lands of ancient civilisation—and Northern Africa, physically and historically, has far more intimate relations with Europe than with the continent behind it—there is nothing on which to base any conclusions regarding its peopling and its unwritten chronicles. Nowhere in the interior is there an inscription or a house of stone, or any monument more permanent than a hut of reeds or of mud. Yet fowls and cattle are among the wealth of nearly every tribe, and their traditions afford no clue as to the period when animals not natives of the country, or, in the case of fowls, even of the continent, first reached it, or by what agency. Not less extraordinary is the fact that all through Central Africa we find the rudest of the tribesmen cultivating maize, and making from it a muddy beer, with which they fuddle themselves all day long; and in this case also no legend exists regarding the beneficent race or the God-like stranger who brought to them a plant which is assuredly not a native

Fowls,  
maize, and  
cattle in the  
interior.



of the regions enjoying its use. Maize, indeed, is by many botanists—among others by De Candolle—regarded as originally an American plant. It is the Indians' corn, so that, assuming this to be true, it must of course have reached Africa, like the rest of the Old World, after the discovery of its native continent. But even admitting, as there are good grounds for believing, that this grain was cultivated in Asia and in Africa before Columbus made it generally known in Europe—though the Arabs are



LADIES TRAVELLING BETWEEN BAGAMOYO AND TANGANYIKA.

said to have brought it to Spain—it is not argued that the plant was grown out of Egypt.

Yet in Central Africa the plant was quite common before the first white men or Arabs were seen. Hence we are justified in concluding that, like fowls and cattle, it passed from coast tribe to coast tribe until it spread over the interior, or that the early civilisation of Northern Africa must have reacted on the barbarous "hinterland." It would be difficult to believe that it did not. Both Rome and Carthage had a far-reaching trade with the Black Barbarians, and we gather from Herodotus

that some of his informants had an acquaintance at first-hand with races and places the existence of which it has been left for modern explorers to confirm. But it must be repeated that nowhere in Inner Africa, that is, at

any distance from the coast, have Europeans left any trace of their presence which cannot, with two possible exceptions, be legitimately accounted for. These exceptions are the mysterious stone houses of Mashonaland, which were for long believed to be the work of the Portuguese, but are now known, from a narrative by Barbosa (cousin of Magellan) to have been antiquities when the Portuguese first saw

Ancient intercourse with the interior.





them in the early years of the sixteenth century. By some they are thought to be Phœnician, by others Persian, by a third set of theorists Moorish and by a fourth to have been erected by the early miners from whom Solomon got his supplies of gold. In other words, this region was the Ophir of the Israelitish King, which has been sought in South Arabia, in India, in Sumatra, in the West Indies, and even in Peru. One thing is certain, the buildings were evidently erected for mining purposes, and, as the country is rich in gold and other minerals, and abounds in the traces of exhausted diggings, they were likely enough the work of the same early adventurers who erected the ruined buildings near Zanzibar, which are of strictly Persian type.

But civilisation seldom takes a land journey when it can penetrate a dark land by a water-way. It is therefore scarcely possible that the lower valley of the Nile could for thousands of years have been occupied by highly civilised races, without some pioneers of these enterprising peoples pushing up the great river to the huge lakes in which its principal branches take their origin, though it is only within the last two or three decades that the regions around the Victoria and Albert Nyanza have been reached by that natural route. Recent discoveries have, however, rendered it probable that there existed intercourse in very ancient times between the lake districts, especially Uganda, and the civilisation of ancient Egypt. As we shall see by-and-by, though the facts in no way detract from the merits of Burton, Speke, Grant, Livingstone, Baker, and Stanley, the African lakes were known not only to the Portuguese of the sixteenth century, but to Ptolemy, the Alexandrian geographer, and even to Aristotle (pp. 3, 9).<sup>\*</sup> For does not the Stagirite tell us, in a sober, matter-of-fact way, as if he was relating a piece of knowledge familiar "to every schoolboy" in Macedon, that "the cranes migrate as far as the lakes beyond Egypt where the Nile has its source. There dwell the pygmies; and this is no fable, but the simple truth. Both men and horses, so says report, are of small size, and live in caves;" and much the same information—which is now known to be strictly true—is vouchsafed by Eratosthenes, who lived about two hundred years before the Christian era. They also in those early days talked of those Mountains of the Moon, which Mr. Stanley thought might be the white-topped Ruwenzori, and which Dr. Peters is as positive are the Unjamwesi (as was Dr. Beke forty years before him), but which were probably founded on a vague acquaintance with Kilimanjaro, Kenia, and the other snow-capped mountains of Eastern and Central Africa. But the most curious of all the indications of the early intercourse with Central Africa by way of the Nile is that the ancient name for that river is at its source Nyiro, or Nyilo, or the same as its mouth, a name which it bore at the dawn of history. Again,

**Egypt and  
the Great  
Lakes.**

at Elgon in El Gumi Thomson discovered huge rock-cut caves, many so large that they contained whole villages and herds of cattle, thus confirming Aristotle, though the pygmies whom he described as inhabiting them have now been driven into the dense forests, where in time we shall meet them. The natives

<sup>\*</sup> This has been denied by Mr. Ravenstein, who thinks that the lakes on the early maps were simply those of Abyssinia, and that the great ones—Tanganyika, Victoria, Albert, and Albert Edward—"only became known in the course of the present century, since caravans of Arabs and Swaheli penetrated the interior in search of slaves and ivory," though the explorers of a later date delineated them.—*Scottish Geographical Magazine*, 1891, p. 310.

affirm that these caverns were never excavated by them: "they were the work of God," and the Gods who dug them, the discoverer thinks, were in all likelihood ancient Egyptians in search of precious stones or precious metals, for which, likely enough, they will be again ransacked by the British prospector.

These are some of the African problems which still remain to be solved. There was a time when all Africa was a problem, the whole continent a region so unknown that speculation had free warren within its blank area. Imagination could run riot in theories regarding the Fountains of the Nile and the Mountains of the Moon, as to the source and course of the Niger and the Congo and the Zambesi—all of which have, for the most part in our own day, ceased to be any longer mysteries. Geographically, there are hardly any others of prime importance.

But, ethnographically, Africa is still, and is likely always to be, one vast scientific puzzle. An African is in popular notions a black man—a Negro, to be more precise. Yet, though swarthinness is to a large extent the characteristic of all its races, the Negro proper—the man of the Oil Rivers—with his retreating forehead, kinky locks, and a nose so flat that it looks as if it had been run on the face in a liquid condition, is actually the type least frequent. Within the shores of Africa—11,277,364 square miles, exclusive of Madagascar—there are more than 600 languages and dialects spoken, and, of the 164,000,000 people estimated to speak these tongues, it is easy to distinguish a number of families, many of them, though evidently mixed, of entirely different origin. In the dense forests and other byways of the country we find a pygmy race, which may be regarded as the aborigines driven thither by more powerful invaders; and in South Africa we come upon the decaying race of the Bushmen, whose diminutive size might stamp them as relations of the Wambatti, Batwas, Obongos, Akkas, and other diminutive Negrittos of the north. Yet they speak not one word of a language common to both; and the Bushmen, instead of being black, are in reality a reddish-brown-skinned people; and in much the same region of South Africa are found the Hottentots, a tufty-haired but yellowish-hued people. Nevertheless, the Bushmen and they are really branches of one race, speaking dialects of the same language, though dialects so widely different as to be mutually unintelligible, the difference being due to the humbler race being outcasts at an early period, while the other enjoyed a comparatively easy life; and to this day there are true Hottentot septs, though few exist unmixed, who owing to the miserable condition of their existence, are barely distinguishable from Bushmen.

This leads us to ask—and at once the racial problem is thereby rendered more complicated—whether the so-called aboriginal dwarfs of the north are not degraded outcasts of other tribes, a query rendered more urgent by the fact that the languages they speak are generally those of the tribes on their border, compared with whom they are in a condition little removed from that of servitude. The great race of South Africa is, however, that known as the Kaffir, which, under the names of Basutos, Bechuanas, Zulus, and so forth, stretches far to the north, and belongs to the great Bantu stock, which, as Makuas, Mashones, Matabeles, Manganga, Wayau, Balunda, Barua, Barotso, Waswahili, Wonka, Walegga, Waganda, Wanyamwesi, Ovampo, Ovaherro, Bateki, Duello,

The ethnology of Africa.

and a hundred other family, tribal, or sub-tribal names, spreads in a broad band across Africa from sea to sea. They are, perhaps, the most important of the African races—and all of them speaking dialects of the same tongue, a Congoese and a Zanzibari are able to understand each other (pp. 13, 15).

These peoples are not Negroes properly: they are what the ethnologists call Negroids, many of them being fine-looking people, though with certain characteristics which lend ground to the suspicion that they have at some time in their career intermarried with or amalgamated with the true Negroes who inhabited the country which they invaded. The latter, who, from the fact that they formed the greater part of the slaves imported into Europe and America, have led to the impression that they are the only Africans, are the Kru, Fanti, Ashanti, and Yoruba of Upper Guinea; the Joloff, Bambarra, Mandingo, Sonhrai, Haussa, Batta, Kanuri, Baghirmi, Mosku, and Kanem of the regions adjoining the Senegal and the Upper Niger; and the Dinka, Nuba, Maba, Shilluk, Bari, Mombottu, Zandeh, and other races of the Eastern and Central Soudan.



POST RUNNERS.

The African peoples, however, do not end with the black and blackish stocks (p. 16). In the north-east corner of the continent we come upon another even less Negroised group, namely, the Gallas, Somali, Afar, and Bejas, while the Berbers, under their various names of Shluh, Mzabites, Kabyles, and Touaregs, range all over Northern Africa, of which, indeed, they seem to be the ethnic substratum. The old Egyptians were probably of this stock, just as the modern Copts are, the so-called Fellaheen being Arabs very much mixed. These Berbers are in no respect Negroes. They are not even black, their ordinary complexions being as fair as that of the Arabs among whom, in the Barbary States at least, they have commingled to a large extent; while in the mountains of Algeria, and to a smaller extent of Morocco, many people with fair hair can be met with, though whether they are really aborigines, or only remnants of the old white colonists—Roman and Gothic—or of Christian slaves, is a question which admits of more opinions than one.

Another very interesting people are the Fulahs or Pulhs (p. 13), which play a wonderful part in the Western and Central Soudan; though, like the Fans of the Ogove Basin, the Tibbus of the Eastern Sahara, the Agous of Abyssinia, and the robber Masai of Masailand, in Eastern Africa, their origin and affinities are still very doubtful.

And last of all, there are the Himyarites of Amhara, Tigre, and Shoa, who form

a large portion of the population of Abyssinia. Yet even then we have not taken tale of all the motley races who have found a home in a continent so long despised of Europe. The Arabs pure and simple have become masters virtually and by recognition of a large portion of it. But they are comparatively new-comers, though unquestionably from the very earliest times there was a steady drift from Arabia, across the Red Sea and the Desert of Sinai, into the adjoining parts of Africa.

The Jews have also, through the persecutions they suffered among the Christians, become the leaders in the commercial and industrial life of Northern Africa, more particularly in the Barbary States. Yet there were Jewish colonies in Northern Africa long before the Arabs burst into that region, it is possible even before the Berbers came, and to this day, all over the interior of Morocco, the traveller comes upon little settlements of Israelites who speak no

language but Arabic or Berber, and here and there single families living under the protection of some Arab sheik, to whom they render services of value in the shape of transacting his business, and otherwise utilising that amazing commercial talent

which is the birthright of that ancient section of the Semitic stock. Beyond the boundaries of Morocco they lead a nomadic life, many of them following the occupation of guiding caravans across the desert to Timbuctoo, where there has always been a little Jewish colony, though whether the "Dagatta" are Jews, as the Rabbi Mordokhai thought, or simply Pagans with a touch of Hebrew blood, is still a moot question.

Of the European peoples in Africa it is not necessary to speak at length. The Greeks and Italians in Egypt are perhaps the oldest settlers. The Portuguese and the Spaniards come next. The Maltese have always been migrating from their little island to the opposite shores of Tunisia and Tripoli, where, being themselves of an Arab stock, they form as it were the link between



KAFFIR OF DAMABALAND.



A FULAH, BROTHER OF THE SULTAN OF SOKOTO.

the Arabs and the Europeans, and, with the Sicilians, are the rivals to the growing French population of Tunisia and Algeria; but as colonists the French are very moderate successes. The Danes have ceased to keep their foothold in Western

Africa; the Belgians, except as "protectors," though virtually owners of the Congo Free State, have made no attempt to seize anything; and since their surrender of the Cape Colony, the Dutch, unless as merchants in the Congo River, have made no effort to recover their grasp of the continent. The British were among the earliest of the peoples who sought fortune in Africa, and their holding, like that of the French, is every year enlarging. The Italians also are renewing their efforts to find outlets in Africa, though except as individuals they have no longer any part in the great colonies founded by their ancestors. And last of all the Germans have begun to try their fortunes in the continent which was for centuries free to all the world, and yet until lately left to the aborigines, or to those Arabs and Turks who, strangers themselves, did almost as little for its development.

But when we come to trace these so-called aboriginal races to their origin, we plunge at once into darkness. Their original homes, like their migrations and relationships, may be speculated over, but they cannot be pronounced on with even an approach to certainty. We see in the north that the Arabs have driven the

**Origin of  
the African  
peoples.**

Berbers out of the fairest portion of the plains into the mountains where they now live, poor but comparatively free; though, on a smaller scale, this was also done by the Roman colonists. The Berbers are, however, immigrants themselves, and it is by many believed that they were the inhabitants of Great Britain before the Celtic wave overran our islands, and that their route across France and Spain before they passed the Strait of Gibraltar, if indeed it then existed, can be traced by the dolmens,

monoliths, cromlechs, and other rude stone monuments which all through these countries, as well as through Northern Africa, mark the presence of some prehistoric race. These Berbers seem also to have reached the Canary Islands, for the now extinct Guanchos, or aborigines of that group, have been proved to be of the same race.



NATIVE OF FERNANDØ PO.

The peoples of North-East Africa may be supposed to be a mixed stock, Arabs, perhaps, amalgamated in very early times with Berbers or Bantus, or some vanished stock. But when we come to South Africa, we are puzzled to account for the Kaffir offshoot from the widespread Bantu family, who seemingly as intruders appeared in that region. Were they from Asia?

This is not an impossibility, since on the island of Madagascar we see the Hovas or ruling class to be, from their language and customs, Malays. But to what origin are we to ascribe the Negroes, and the other more doubtfully distinct families already noticed? Nor are the Pygmies any more free from doubt as to their relationship. For in many of the Indian islands, and in India, we meet with another set of Negrittos, which has raised the question

whether the African continent did not at one time extend in that direction, and whether these now scattered peoples were not, at a date which it is now vain even to guess at, the inhabitants of this then unbroken tract?

Nowhere in Africa do we come upon any evidence of a higher civilisation among the aborigines than that which they at present possess. They vary widely in intellectual ability. But everything goes to prove that they are now more advanced in culture than at any former period of their existence. Nearly every inland tribe has, ever since the whites made their acquaintance, been familiar with the art of smelting and working iron. From whom did they learn this art, which marks so advanced a stage in culture that even the highly polished nations of Mexico and Peru had not attained to that feat when the conquistadores first came among them? Still, the Africans did not always practise this craft. Some of the ruder septs still use flint and obsidian, and all over Africa the soil contains arrow and spear heads, which demonstrates that the peoples of that continent passed from the stone to the iron age without any of the intermediate bronze or copper stages which in most other countries mark the progress of civilisation.

It is therefore evident that there are many links in the history of Africa still undiscovered, and unless the caves, or the superficial deposits, or the refuse heaps still unexplored, contain an inkling of these, the problems thus briefly sketched may for ever remain unsolved.

#### WHY IS AFRICA UNCIVILISED?

These problems, however, concern men of science alone. To no appreciable extent have they ever interfered with the exploration or exploitation of the continent which holds them in its keeping. Accordingly, when we come to consider how Africa, though the quarter of the world nearest to that extension of Asia called Europe, has been the last to be explored and made use of, we must find other reasons than the complexity of its tribes, or even the ferocity of the majority. The latter feature has indeed never much interfered with the pioneer. Many travellers have fallen by the way, yet only a small percentage have perished at the hands of the people. Australia and America, on the other hand, have been rapidly ransacked, in spite of the hostility of the savages, who in a month's warfare in the New World have often killed more whites than have perished in the whole history of African travel; while Central Asia is being gradually mapped in the



ZULU GIRL.



ZULU CHIEF.

face of a scarcely less strenuous opposition from the more civilised inhabitants of that region.

But Africa is differently shaped from any of the other continents. It is a peninsula of a form roughly triangular, with few bays of any depth, or islands presenting a bulwark against the surf which breaks on its shores, and none of those fjords which intersect more northern continents, as if for the purpose of enticing mariners to take shelter in their hospitable depths. In place of these inlets there are several great rivers, the Nile in the north, the Niger and the Congo in the west, and the Zambesi, the Pungwe, and the Rovuma in the east, which seem specially suitable for penetrating the continent in the directions whence they run. Yet, unlike the St. Lawrence, the Hudson, the Mississippi, the Amazon, and the Plate in America,

The physical geography of Africa an obstacle to its exploration.



NATIVE OF THE LOWER CONGO.

and the Ganges, Brahmaputra, and Irawaddi in Asia, these vast floods have until recently been little utilised for the exploration of the African continent. On the contrary, it has been pierced from Tripoli, where there is little water of any sort; from Algeria, where the streams are of small extent; and from South and East Africa, where the waterways afforded little help to the early travellers.

Actually they deterred men. For nearly all of these streams creep to the sea through deltas formed of the mud brought down by them in the course of unnumbered ages. Hence Africa is for the most part encircled by a strip of low land, covered with dense forest, and reeking with malaria so deadly that only the low-type tribes who have become proof against the native fever can live on their banks, though even they are at times infected by the death-dealing vapours. Through mile after mile of this monotonous flat the African rivers creep to the sea, the immediate shore lined with slimy mangroves, among the straggling roots of which the black, muddy water oozes, and the loathsome crocodile and clumsy hippopotamus, disturbed by the passing steamer, splash lazily (p. 17). But by-and-by, invariably, to a greater or less extent, the river navigation (and most of these rivers are shallow, and full of sand-banks and shoals) becomes interrupted by either falls or rapids, extending for a distance, it may be, of more than two hundred miles. This marks as it were the old sea cliffs of the



NATIVE OF ZANZIBAR.

continent, for here the river breaks through the mountains, which slowly rise into a plateau some two thousand or three thousand feet in height. This plateau is, however, actually a mountainous region, and the one which succeeds it, though four thousand or



SCENE ON AN AFRICAN RIVER.

five thousand feet above the sea-level, is of much the same character, full of hills, and valleys, and lakes, and in places dotted by snow-capped peaks rising to close upon twenty thousand feet in height. Yet the last of these broken steppes is really Central Africa, a healthy and comparatively cool region, the coolness and healthiness increasing as the sea is left behind and the land ascends towards the interior.

These facts were, however, unknown to the earlier explorers. They sickened and died in the Delta of the Niger; just as their successors perished in trying to cross the malarious belt which intervenes

between the Indian Ocean and the pleasant uplands in which lie the great African



lakes, until there circulated among the seamen of every nation the warning couplet—

“Beware, and take care of the Bight o’ Benin.  
For one that comes out there were forty went in.”

These circumstances naturally impeded the exploration of the interior, while the undeniable unhealthiness of the west coast, the first reached, and for long the best-known portion of the country, did not suggest a more extensive acquaintance with a land the entrance to which was so uninviting. The north was fitted for the residence of Europeans. But this region was occupied by fierce Moslems—Arabs and Turks—who held their own with the most powerful armies sent against them, and by their pirate fleets took ample reprisals against Christendom for the ports which, here and there, Spain, Portugal, England, and the Knights of Malta had wrenched from them. In the extreme south, no doubt, there was a fine, healthy region. But South Africa was far from Europe, and, until Bartholomew Diaz discovered and Vasco da Gama doubled it, unknown to the nations of Christendom. Again, wherever Africa had been penetrated from the north the explorers had come upon deserts of sand. These deserts, dotted by well-watered oases, they naturally regarded as simply the beginning of a like waste extending all through the interior, instead of a mere barrier between the fertile north (the granary of Rome in the days of the Empire) and the even better-watered and richer regions which, with few intervals, stretch to the end of the continent. Accordingly, what from ignorance and what from knowledge, Africa was repulsive to the explorer. A large part of it lies under the equator, and the heat of this belt repelled him, just as in earlier days the belief that the torrid zone increased in temperature the farther the mariner sailed south, drove back the most adventurous of the Argonauts. Most of the country is, moreover, surrounded by malarious swamps, and in these the pioneer adventurer found his grave; and if he essayed the interior from the only points where the circle of unhealthy flats was broken, he perished of thirst, chasing the mirage which beguiled him into the arid wastes beyond, or was speared by the Touareg, whose hand is against every man.

In this way the most erroneous of generalisations grew up regarding Africa, and as a result the country remained long unexplored, and, as a consequence of this, long undeveloped.

---



STORE-HOUSES AND BARRACKS FOR SOLDIERS AT BOMA, ON THE LOWER CONGO.

## CHAPTER I.

### A CENTURY OF AFRICAN EXPLORATION.

The Early Exploration of Africa—Some Mythical Voyages—Mediæval Voyages—The True Beginning of African Exploration dates from the Foundation of the African Association in 1788—A Sketch of the Map of Africa in 1792—Africa in 1892—Rapidity with which Exploration has Proceeded during the last Forty Years—Obstacles to African Exploration—The Climate—The Discovery of America—The “Guinea Trade”—The Evolution of African Exploration—The Tendencies of a Century of Exploration—Unexplored Africa—The West Coast Traders as Explorers—The Seekers after Timbuctoo and the Upper Niger—The Seekers after the Nile Sources—The East African Lakes and their Explorers—The Colonisation of Africa—What the Hunters did for making it Better Known—The Share of the Missionaries in opening up Africa—The Crossers of the Continent—The Era of International Explorers—The Founding of the Congo Free State—The Scramble for Africa—The Partition of Africa—Africa under Companies.

THE physical obstacles which have been sketched in the preceding pages all conduced to Africa being left to the Africans, while the other continents were daily receiving large accessions of population from Europe. Yet, as might have been expected from its proximity to Greece and Italy, and still more from the fact that one of the great commercial nations of antiquity had its principal cities on the northern shores, Africa attracted attention before America was dreamt of or the more distant parts of Asia had been reached.

The Phœnicians, who, 1,100 years before Christ, built Utica in what is now the French Protectorate of Tunisia; the Carthaginians, who laid the foundations of their metropolis 300 years later; the Greeks, who founded their colony of Cyrene 650 years before the Christian Era; the Romans, who succeeded

them; and, above all, the Egyptians, who were older than any of them, must have picked up from traders and adventurers of all sorts vague notions of the lands which lay to the south of their homes; while the Arabs, who burst into Africa as the civilisation of the Roman and Byzantine Empires was falling into decay, soon spread down its shores, and in the course of their predatory and mercantile expeditions traversed vast portions of the interior which have been re-discovered only within our own day. In Africa, indeed, the ancients placed the Hesperides\*; and it may be that the green oases they saw in the deserts beyond Egypt and the Atlas suggested to their poets those fabled Islands of the Blest,

\* One of the localities was Larache, at the mouth of the El Kus River, in Morocco; a rival site was near Bengazi, in Cyrenaica, on the modern “Garden of Osman.”

those "Insulæ Fortunatæ" which later commentators have found in the Canaries.

Herodotus, indeed, tells us of Necho, King of Egypt, sending an expedition from the Red Sea into the Southern Ocean, which after two years' absence arrived at the Pillars of Hercules, after circumnavigating the continent. And the same historian, who had remarkably clear notions

Some  
mythical  
voyages.



MUNGO PARK.

of some facts not recognised until many centuries afterwards, speaks of another voyage made along the western coast by Sataspes, a Persian nobleman, who, having offended Xerxes, had his sentence of crucifixion commuted into the venture in question. Eudoxus of Cyzicus, on his voyage to India, traded with the natives of East Africa, where he found among some wreck the prow of a vessel which had sailed from Cadiz for the west coast of the continent and never returned, a discovery which led the enterprising Greek to fit out an expedition for the same region, though what became of it Strabo has failed to inform us.

All Africa, however, was still a land of the marvellous. Here lived not only dragons, and Amazons, and unicorns, but people without

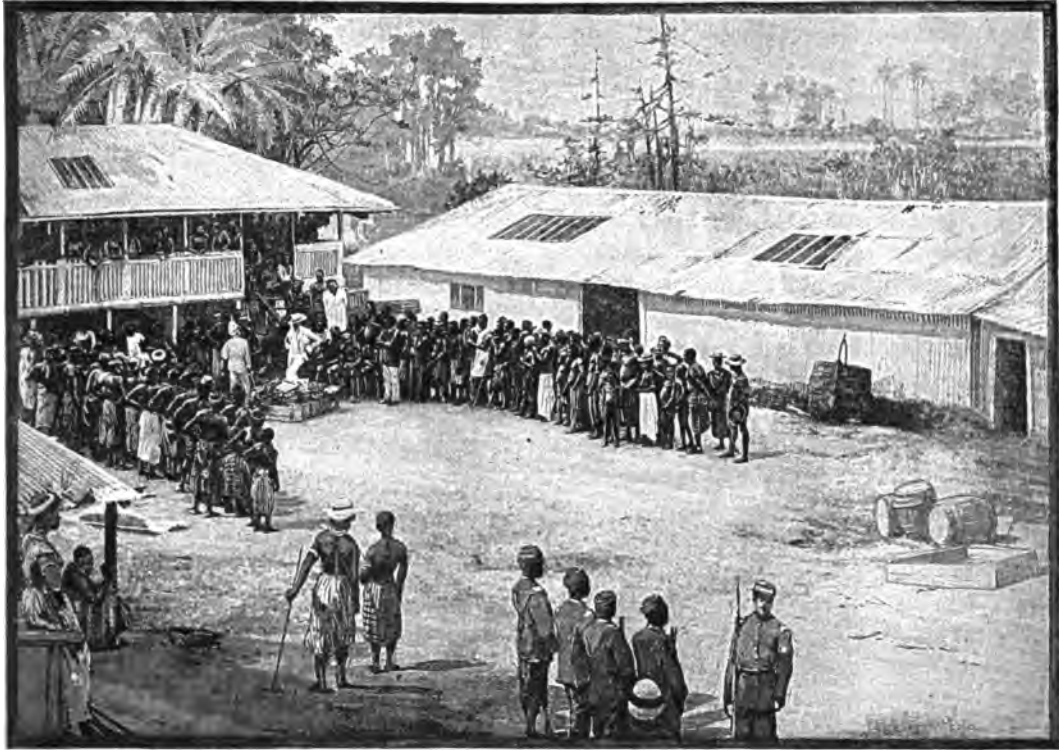
tongues, and others without mouths, so that they received their food through an orifice in the nose; so that when Hanno the Carthaginian sailed southward with a fleet manned by 30,000 people of both sexes, to found the city of Thymiaterium, he might well have been expected to see all the wonders he described on his return home. For on this voyage, which extended to the Gulf of Guinea, he tells of the land being so hot that the sandalled foot could not tread upon it, of the sea being in flames—phosphorescent most likely—and of people covered with shaggy hair climbing precipices and throwing stones on their pursuers, which people we now know to have been gorillas, those gigantic apes associated with M. Du Chaillu's reputation. Many similar, though less important, explorations followed, until the arrival of the Arabs enabled their geographers to collect many accurate details regarding the interior. But even in the thirteenth century the map-makers were acquainted with the Nile Lakes, though it is not unlikely they took this information from the works of Ptolemy and the Greek historians, just as did the Portuguese at a later date.

But the energy of the navigators sent out by Prince Henry of Portugal soon enabled Europeans to trace not only the **Medieval** west coast, but to double the Cape **voyages** of Good Hope, and sail up the eastern shores of the continent. Cape Bojador was discovered in 1434, Cape Blanco seven years later, Fernando Po in 1471, the Congo in 1484, the Cape of Good Hope in 1497, and Natal, Quilimane, Mozambique, Mombasa, and Melinda in 1498.

From the colonies and trading posts established on the coast by different European nations, excursions were made here and there into the interior. These journeys were, however, rarely undertaken for geographical purposes. They were devised in pursuit of gain, in search of cheap slaves, of ivory, or gold, and those who made them were either ignorant and unable to describe and chart what they saw, or imagined that by keeping their information to themselves they would in

some way gain an advantage over their rivals. Hence, on a map of 1670 (p. 9), a map which remained very little altered up to the close of the eighteenth century, and in its main features was not entirely transformed until less than forty years ago, three rivers, the Nile, the Congo, and the "Coanza," took their rise in the "Zaire" and "Zembre" lake, while

great—almost the only—explorations of the interior have been made within the last hundred years. For the century which preceded this now ending closed with the early travels of Mungo Park (p. 20) and Frederick Horneman, just as the present one opened with the last explorations of the heroic Scot and scarcely less gallant German. How much has



SCENE AT A TRADING STATION ON THE NIGER.

a host of other details, mountains and rivers and deserts, could have been the children solely of the chartographer's imagination. Yet the Dutch had begun their colonisation of the Cape of Good Hope in 1652. But until James Bruce, in 1768-73, searched for the Nile sources in Abyssinia, and the African Association was founded in 1788, the continent as portrayed in maps remained very much the same as it was on the maps of a century, or even two centuries, earlier. In short, all the

been done in the interval may be presaged from a study of a map dating from that period and one issued in 1891.

#### AFRICA IN 1792.

In the north we have Egypt, a Turkish province under a Pasha, at the mercy of the Mamelukes, or Janizaries, though at that moment actually held by the French. Then further to the west are Barca and Tripoli, under a "Basha," nominally the suffragan of the Ottoman Sultan, though in reality an

**The true  
beginning  
of African  
explora-  
tions.**

independent hereditary Sovereign of the most despotic type. Tunis, next to it, is also a regency of Turkey, though the Bey is, to all intents and purposes, a king simply paying tribute to this suzerain. Algeria, in like manner, is a fief of Turkey, though for ages the Deys have been made and unmade by the insolent Janizaries, and in the interior several of the Arab chiefs owe but a slight fealty to the pirate princes who had displaced them. Still further to the west lies the Sultanate of Morocco, under an independent Sovereign, who owes allegiance to no man, and, like the other rulers of Barbary, is largely dependent on the plunder brought in by his corsairs and the labour of the Christian slaves who toil in his squalid towns. From there to Senegambia we are in no man's land. At this point, however, we enter upon a French colony, adjoining the English one of Gambia. The Portuguese have a post hard by, and at Sierra Leone we possess a station for the reception of manumitted slaves, the trade in black men being still as brisk, if not altogether as reputable, as of old.

As we sail south, the Grain, the Ivory, the Gold, and the Slave Coasts are passed, the shore dotted with the white factories and castles of the different trading settlements, several of which belong to the Dutch and Danes. At Whydah we are in the territory of the savage King of Dahomey, and in this port are the "factories" of various nations, all more or less engaged in the traffic then pleasantly known as "the Guinea trade," and at a later date as that in "Black Ivory." But nearly all this littoral is still in the undisturbed possession of a multitude of petty negro monarchs, who sell their subjects and their prisoners to the white men, and live upon the proceeds in a paradise of ruin and gaudy calico.

The Portuguese have St. Thomas and Prince's Islands under their flag, and somewhere south of a river called the Zaire or Barbelá, which is marked as running only a short way into the interior, and suggested as "perhaps only the Niger," the

Portuguese colony begins. From the southern termination of Angola we pass a long expanse of shore on which is marked, "No fresh water to be found on this coast from Fish Bay to St. Helena Bay, a distance of 900 miles," or, in other words, until we reach the Cape Colony, then under the Dutch rule. But it extended very little further than a strip around the coast. A little way in the interior is marked the "Boshemen's Country," the "Country of the Booshuanas," the "Tambookies," the "Griqua Country," the "Tamakas," the "Wanketzens," and then, in the midst of a vast blank, the "Barroloos."

Up the East Coast we see a huge region marked "Caffraria"; another, further on, the region of the "Hambonaas or Mambookies," and so on, until we reach the Portuguese territories north and south of the Zambesi, though a few streams vaguely straggling through this region are about all the geography has to show after the lapse of four centuries. As we go further north, these streams get even fewer, and the native territories more numerous, until Abyssinia and Egypt are reached, when naturally the details of the map, loosely though they are given, become more frequent.

In the interior, the geography is infinitely more sparse, and to a large extent mere guess-work. From the Cape Colony to five degrees north of the equator, a distance of 2,400 miles, the cartographer has not even attempted to place "elephants instead of towns." He contents himself with scrawling over it "Regions unexplored": and how well explored the 1,800 miles to the north were may be guessed from the fact that the "Jebel Kumri, or Mountains of the Moon," sprawl half across the continent in the same position in which they have been since the days of Ptolemy, though in reality they do not exist (p. 10), and that the course of the Niger is not traced, nor its termination in the Atlantic marked, the Zaire, which is now known as the Congo, being hinted as the seaward end of a river which we now know finds its way to the Atlantic 600 miles further to the north.

A survey of  
Africa a  
century  
ago.

Nor is it necessary to intimate that the Zaire is not portrayed much beyond the falls, that the sources of the Nile are not marked, and that the beginnings of the Shiré and the Zambesi are not indicated, unless, indeed, the half-delineated "Maravi Lake" is to be accepted as Nyassa. Nor, after figuring in maps for ages, are the Nile Lakes portrayed on this map near the close of the eighteenth century. None of the other great African lakes—Tanganyika, Chad, and N'gami—are hinted at, while the geography of the regions south of the Nile is still largely that of Edrisi and Leo Africanus, many of whose place-names, though the places no longer exist, are marked on maps of Morocco dating less than thirty years ago. Little is stated from actual observation, but a great deal from analogy and the report of Arab and Haussa traders. Thus we are told "it is the general opinion that the Mountains of Kong unite with Jibbel Kumri, or Mountains of the Moon. In opposition to the above, the Haussa traders, in describing the difficulties attending their journey from Haussa to Lagos, on the coast of Guinea, speak of rivers, morasses, and large lakes, but make no mention of mountains." Mountains are, however, bestowed pretty freely. For opposite Zanzibar, for six hundred miles parallel to the coast, is the "Lupata" range, which seems a largish feature in African geography to be indicated as "doubtful."

## AFRICA IN 1892.

When we take up a map of the present day we find many changes. Egypt is still there, as it has been for more ages than written history has taken count of. But though much larger than the Egypt of 1792, in spite of a rebellion on the upper waters of the Nile, it is no longer the country of a century ago. The Pasha has become a Khe-dive, or hereditary Viceroy, and so little hold has the Sultan of Turkey upon the country that, to prevent anarchy, the Land of the Pharaohs is administered under the protection of British

bayonets. Tripoli is, however, more Turkish than ever. For the hereditary "Basha" has disappeared, and the country, no better and no worse than of old, is again an ordinary province of the Ottoman Sultan.

Tunis, diminished a little in bulk, has ceased to have any connection with Turkey; for the old regency is under that name a virtual colony of France. In Algiers the Deys are only an evil memory. Their capital, and the capitals of the native chiefs whom they displaced, are every day more and more getting French towns, with boulevards and hotels, filled with crowds of gay invalids and gayer idlers seeking here the sunshine which is denied them in the winter of their northern homes. Railways intersect it in every direction, and even the desert is being redeemed by means of deep wells sunk through the arid soil to the supply of water underground. Morocco alone remains independent. But even there, in spite of the lack of roads and railways, and all other civilised appliances, the Prince of True Believers is feeling the heavy hand of the Infidel. The Spaniards still hold Ceuta and three other places on the coast, and have of late reclaimed one\* which they had abandoned on the Atlantic seaboard several centuries ago, and are waiting with the French, and of late with the Germans also, for any excuse to seize at once, and with interest, the ports which they were forced to abandon in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. In all the coast towns Europeans are numerous and aggressive. Their envoys are no longer inclined to wink at any infraction of their rights; and though the interior is still left to the Faithful, there is a growing determination to insist on the treaty right which permits the Nazarene to go where he list and stay where he dare. They have even settled in the capitals. And there are now no Christian slaves, and no ships, pirate or otherwise.

South of the Morocco bounds—though the Sultan claims the territory when it suits his purpose, and disclaims his authority over it

\* Ifni, or Santa Cruz de Mar Pequeña.

A survey of the modern map of Africa.

when there is a talk of indemnity for the lawlessness of his lieges thereabouts—a British trading post at Cape Juby is the first of our outposts in North-Western Africa. From Cape Bojador to Cape Blanco the Spanish assert a protectorate, though, with the exception of a flag-post at Rio del Oro, there is little of Castile thereabouts except on the map.

From Cape Blanco to Sierra Leone there is a French colony, that of Senegal, near the coast, that of the French Soudan in the "hinterland" beyond, though the continuity of Gallic rule is broken, as of old, by the Gambia colony—now independent of Sierra Leone—and the Portuguese territory on each bank of the Rio Grande. The Bissagos Isles hereabouts are also Lusitanian, but the *Los* are British; and Sierra Leone has now attained the dignity of a British dependency, maintained for the profit of negroes, few of whom are natives of this part of Africa. Then comes Liberia, a republic of American freedmen.

After a short interspace of unannexed territory, the French again claim the coast and the back country to the bounds of Cape Coast, into which the old Fanti protectorate is now merged, and, for all practical purposes, the nominally independent kingdom of Ashanti also. Togoland, south of this, is German soil; and though the kingdom of Dahomey is still to be traced on the map, the British on one side, and the French on the other, are pressing his sable majesty sorely. So much, indeed, is he hemmed in that, with the exception of Whydah, his coast-line is in French hands; and even Whydah was for a time annexed by Portugal. But it is no longer a flourishing port, or rather roadstead; its factories decayed with the slave trade, and before long it, too, will own new masters. In all the wide region drained by the lower course of the Niger and its tributaries, British influence once more asserts itself in the shape of the Royal Niger Company and the Imperial Commissioner of the Oil Rivers. Fernando Po (p. 14) is still a dismal Spanish isle. So is Annobon; and Prince's and St. Thomas Isles, perhaps because no one else cares for

them, continue as of old to fly the flag of Portugal.

But from the Rio del Rey to the Campo River we now discover for the first time the German colony—without colonists—of the Cameroons, where not many years ago the British mission settlement of Victoria was the only sign of the white man's domination. South of this is the vast territory of French Congoland. With the exception of the little Portuguese patch at Cabinda, the Free Congo State occupies the country on the south bank of the Congo River, to the Lake Tanganyika, more than halfway across Africa.

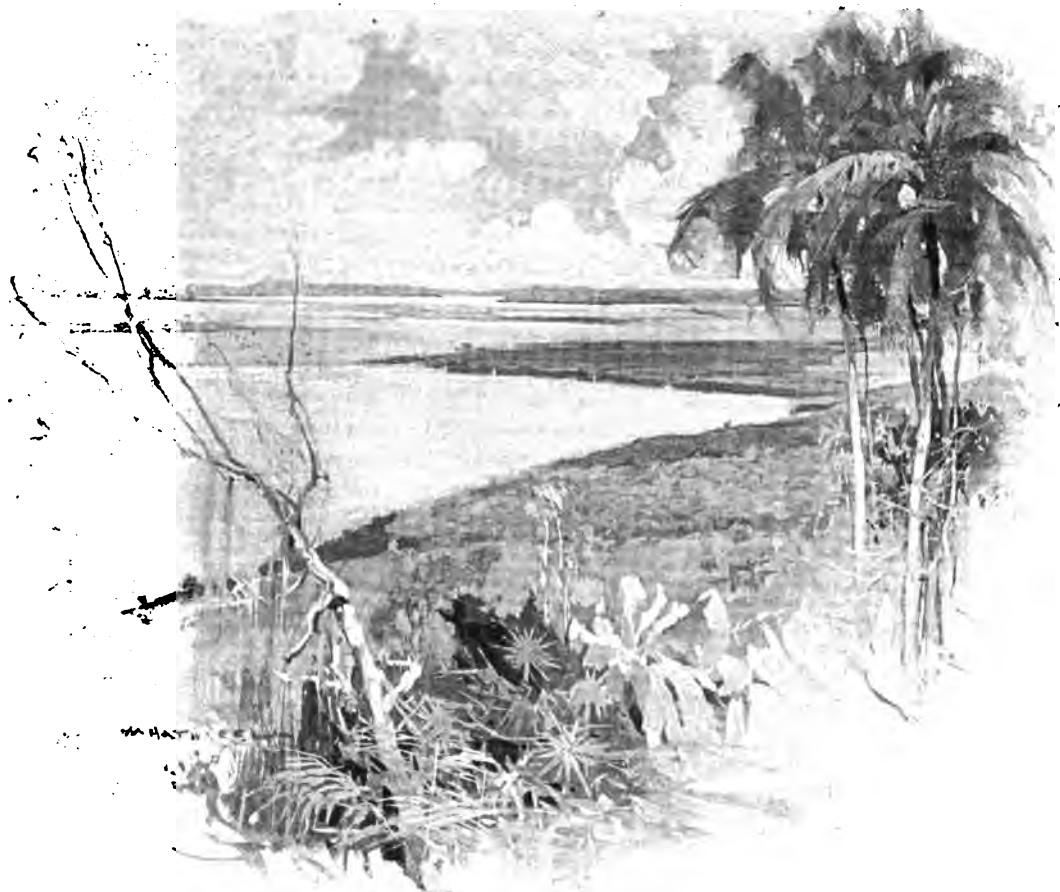
Portuguese West Africa is much as it always was, but Damaraland and Namaqualand, the waterless waste of the old maps, is all German, with the exception of a number of small islets off the coast. The Cape Colony, with its off-liers ready for absorption, is now a huge area, stretching far to the north, either as a self-governing dependency, a Crown Colony like part of Bechuanaland, a protectorate like the rest of it and so many other native territories, or, as a "British sphere of influence," under the rule of the British South African Company, whose proper territories are Matabele and Mashonaland. But two "whole cantles" cut out of this area of South Africa are the Boer (Dutch) Republic of the Orange Free State and the South African or Transvaal Republic, both more or less under British influence or control, and between which and the Indian Ocean lie the colony of Natal and Zululand.

The coast north of this country is under Portugal. Some of the islands in the Mozambique Channel are, however, French, and all the great island of Madagascar is either claimed in fee or is a protectorate of the same Power. At Cape Delgado German East Africa begins, and ends at the River Umba, but extends internally to Victoria Nyanza and the eastern side of Lake Tanganyika. Zanzibar, an Arab Sultanate, is, with Pemba Isle, a British protectorate, and up to the River Juba, where the supposed Italian sphere of influence begins, the Imperial East African Company



claims the country as far east as Uganda, the headwater of the Nile, Darfur, and the Egyptian Soudan. Sokotra Isle is, however, British, and on the northern shore of Somaliland to Obock, where the French have a foothold, the British flag waves once more.

but the European Powers who have parcelled out Africa amongst them claim <sup>The "Hinterland."</sup> the back country also. Hence Algeria and Tunis have a "hinterland"—the word has become naturalised in the language of diplomacy—stretching to within fifteen



ON THE CONGO, LOOKING TOWARDS THE MOUTH OF THE RIVER.

Abyssinia is an Italian protectorate, and Massowah an Italian town, though Perim, an island at the entrance to the Red Sea, is, like Aden on the opposite Arabian coast, a dependency of Great Britain. Beyond this, Egypt is regarded as the rightful lord, though perhaps it would be more correct to regard the protectors of Egypt as the true masters. For if the Nile Delta is still under the Khedive, it is likely to long remain within Britain's "sphere of influence." So much for the coast;

degrees of the equator, "marching," as the Scots say, with the northern limits of the British "hinterland" in the Niger region; while the other nations have been so liberal in dividing the black man's lands amongst them, that out of the 11,514,300 square miles, which is the latest estimate\* of the African area, not more than 2,021,583 remain unappropriated,

\* By Mr. Ravenstein. This estimate, however, includes all of the African islands, including St. Helena, Ascension, and Tristan da Cunha, far in the Atlantic.



though of course only a small portion of the remainder can be described as effectively occupied. But the interior, which, much less than half a century ago, had never been reached by any white man more than a comparatively short distance from the coast, has now been penetrated from the east and from the west, from the north and from the south, while the continent has been so often crossed from sea to sea that a new journey of this sort fails to arouse more than a languid interest in a world grown very *blasé* since Livingstone's day.

The sources of the great river of Egypt are no more a secret. "Honor e Nilo" is no longer to be sought, and the lakes which the old geographers had heard of are now laid down on the maps with more accuracy than were many European sheets of water a century ago. The Congo (p. 25) has been traced to its source, and most of its great tributaries followed far into the primeval forest. The Niger course is known with almost equal accuracy, and Timbuctoo is so familiar a city that a French gunboat has anchored off its port, and a French railway is likely before long to divert its trade to a French colony.

From Tripoli, and from Algeria southward, endless route-maps have enabled all the chief areas of the Sahara to be charted, and the negro kingdoms of the interior to be described so carefully that Bornu, and Kanem, and Wadu, and Baghirmi, and Lake Chad, around which they lie, are to-day far better known than were Ashanti and Dahomey in the days when Barth and Nachtigal were not. British colonists are at home in lands which were blanks on the maps of less than a century since, and on Lake Nyassa, discovered, or re-discovered, by Livingstone, there are not only mission stations, but steamers, and the trading posts of a large commercial company, and of several private adventurers, using the term in its older and better sense. The Victoria Nyanza, Tanganyika, and the Albert Nyanza are already, or will soon be, quite as much the centres of an incipient civilisation.

For the merchant and the missionary are there, and they are far up the Niger, and the Congo, and the Shiré, and Cardinal Lavigerie's militant order of monks are advancing from oasis to oasis into the very heart of the northern desert. The Congo and the Zambesi, the Rovuma and the Pungwe, are almost every day becoming more and more the high-roads of commerce. In short, Africa is waking up. The foreign slave trade is at an end, and though it is scarcely possible ever to entirely abolish that carried on in the interior, the efforts of the European Powers are likely to reduce it to a minimum. Twenty years ago, to use the words of Mr. Stanley in April, 1891, "England held sway over but 330,000 miles. To-day her power extends over two and three-quarter millions of miles. Four hundred European officers are engaged in Western Africa, 200 in Eastern Africa, and in South-Eastern Africa there are as many more. They have flotillas of steamers on the lakes now; even railways are running towards the spot where I found David Livingstone. Africa is six times larger than the continent of Europe, and it is time that its lands were explored and exploited for the benefit of civilisation. I saw, sixteen years ago, that the inhabitants themselves would never be able to bring their land to the state of civilisation which it ought to be brought to, and I felt then, when speaking for the first time to a powerful chief, like St. Augustine when he landed in Britain and told King Ethelbert of the truths he might find in the Gospel. There are now fifty missionary stations in Africa sowing the seeds to which David Livingstone gave his life, and I doubt not that there are children listening to me who will live to hear the good news that there are millions of Central Africans who have learned that stirring anthem, 'Glory to God in the highest, peace on earth, and goodwill to men.'"

#### OBSTACLES TO AFRICAN COLONISATION.

It will therefore be seen from the preceding pages that African exploration and settle-

ment have suffered from climate and from ignorance rather than from poverty of the soil or from hostility of the natives. The north was already occupied by a valorous people, who resisted every attempt to share the land with any stranger. The middle region was hot and sickly. The south was far away, and the cooler plateaus of the interior were unknown. The rivers were, for the first part of their course, bounded by malarious country fatal to the European constitution, and, when they began to drain healthier regions, were found to be impeded by cataracts which stopped navigation; while the unfriendly character of the natives increased as the sea was left behind.

But Australia, for most of the summer, is as hot as any part of Africa, and is infinitely poorer in resources, and much more distant from Europe, besides being without any great navigable rivers. Yet this remote country, the soil of which in 1792 claimed only a few hundred free settlers, is now the home of more than 4,000,000 people, and dotted with cities far superior to any in Africa.

North America was not colonised along the banks of its rivers, any more than South America owed much to the Orinoco, the Amazon, and the La Plata; and the savages disputed every foot-breadth of the soil with the advancing tide of immigration. Yet the United States, which in 1792 had not over five millions of whites, has now thirteen times as many. Central America is, over a large extent of its area, as pestilential as any part of Africa. Yet the progress of these fever-ravaged, volcano-harassed, earthquake-riven States has, in spite of civil war and bad government, been steady so far as population is concerned. Nevertheless, until well into this century, and, over a large area of its habitable portion, until very recently, Africa was almost left to itself, so far as European immigrants were concerned, a few traders on the coast and a few colonists in the south being the only white men within its bounds.

The truth seems to be that, just at the period when the longing eyes of Europe were

being devoted to Africa, the vast discoveries in another part of the world withdrew in that direction the enterprise, the capital, and the courage which would doubtless have otherwise been bestowed on a continent nearer home. Spain and Portugal had been eagerly aggressive in Northern

The discovery of America the leading obstacle to the development of Africa.

Africa, and meditating great things on the eastern and western sides of the continent, when news came that a Genoese mariner had lit upon a fairer world on the other side of the Atlantic. At first the tidings aroused comparatively little attention. Even in Spain, the islands which were supposed to be the western limits of India had so few attractions for the Lacklands of the Peninsula that the second expedition of Columbus had to be manned by galley-slaves. But this apathy was of short duration, as, year after year, every home-coming ship brought news, strange in itself, and stranger still as it passed in an exaggerated form from mouth to mouth, of the wealth of the country north and south of Hispaniola—of Mexico and Venezuela, Quito and Guiana, and the Golden City of Manoa, of the Pampas bordering the River of Silver, of the inconceivable riches of Peru—and by-and-by, in more sober language, of the good farming-lands in Virginia and New England. Everything was novel, everything wonderful; nothing dull, nothing trite from long familiarity.

With these rivals to face, Africa and its "golden joys" ceased to attract the adventurers. America was now the field of fortune to which hied the *soldados* and the swash-bucklers, the *condottieri* who had survived the hangman, the mercenaries who had learned their trade under Sforza of Milan or had inherited the traditions of Fra Moreale and Francis of Carmagnola, with a swarm of ne'er-do-wells in peril of axe and rope, the Grand Inquisitor, or the debtors' prison. The gallants who a few years before had been dreaming of looting Fez with Dom Sebastian, or colonising Mozambique with Albuquerque, could think of nothing less than the golden sun of Cuzco or the turquoise masks of

Mexico. Even the pirates, who had hitherto found Africa and the India-bound ships their richest prey, turned their prows to the West. Thus for ages the Black Continent was left to those not bold enough for the Indies or not fortunate enough to share in their plunder. Trade with it no doubt gradually grew up. Portuguese colonists (of a kind) were enticed to Angola and the opposite shore, and the mercantile settlements of various Powers, under the names of forts and factories, sweltered along the sultry shore of the Gulf of Guinea or braved malaria a little way up its rivers.

But the Guinea Trade was for three centuries the shame and the ruin of Africa. For whatever else might be bought from or sold to the dusky folk, the staple merchandise was black men and women, dragged from their homes to toil as slaves in the plantations of the New World. Hence, the discovery of America had a double effect upon Africa, since it first attracted the enterprise of the colonists that would most likely have found an outlet there, and then, by raising tribe against tribe, turned the country into a desert, and prevented anything like legitimate trade. Most of the early physical obstacles to the colonisation of Africa have vanished, or have been diminished by the resources of science or by the progress of discovery. But though the European and American slave trade is now a thing of the past, the hunting and sale of men still continues for the supply of the native markets, and until this ceases Africa will not settle down to the arts of peace.

It was only when America no longer afforded an easy road to fortune, when hostile tariffs and rivals, where of old there had been customers, forced Europe to find new fields for her growing population and her surplus manufactures, that Africa began to receive the attention which four centuries ago it had first attracted.

What shape this assumed, what agencies were at work in the former development of the continent, what likelihood there is of their becoming important factors in the future, will be the theme of these volumes. We shall

narrate this chequered tale sometimes by the hand of the explorers themselves, at other times from information supplied and revised by themselves or by those who took part in the work, and at all times from the most authentic materials.

#### THE EVOLUTION OF AFRICAN EXPLORATION.

At first sight it might seem as if the exploration of Africa had been conducted without plan or system—that it was taken up and dropped, begun again at some new part, and as suddenly tried once more in circumstances which appeared entirely unrelated to those which preceded it. To a certain extent this is true. The explorers who penetrated the continent in early days had no programme before them. They did not, like those under the auspices of the international scheme of recent years, work in co-operation, or with any mutual understanding. But in all history there is a motive at work, even when event follows event with the least semblance of law. And it is found that the universal law of evolution applies to the acts of men and nations quite as much as it does to the growth of plants and animals and the development of civilisation. Hence, in tracing the influences at work in opening up Africa, it is not difficult, for the purpose of study, to throw these into great groups.

An attempt has been made to classify the periods of African exploration\* during the last century or so into two great epochs. The first of these is from 1788 to 1850, when (up to 1830) the Niger problem was being solved by individual exploration, and the time after that date devoted to minor work in the Nile territories and in South Africa. The second epoch extends from 1850 to the present period, during which the explorations in Northern and Southern Equatorial Africa were connected with one another. Thus from 1850 to 1862 the Nile and Zambesi

The tendencies of a century of African explorations.

\* Supan's "Ein Jahrhundert der Afrika-Forschung"; Petermann's *Geographische Mittheilungen*, vol. xxxiv.; and Silva White, "Development of Africa" (1890).



BOERS ON THE "TREK."

problems, and the geography of the Soudan and the Sahara, occupied a number of travellers. From 1862 to 1877 the Congo problem was the one which engrossed most attention, and in the course of the journeys with that object in view the unknown lands between the eastern and western sides of Equatorial Africa were ransacked. From the latter of these dates, all that has been left in the way of exploration has been to fill in details and extend colonisation in tropical and sub-tropical Africa.

Compared with what the men of twenty or thirty years ago had before them, there is now little actual new country to be mapped.

Still the African explorer need not sit down and weep, for if he has not a new world to **Unexplored Africa.** conquer, he has a wider expanse of unknown regions to bring within the ken of the chartographer than the men of last century thought fit to lay down upon their blank maps. The Sahara, for example, has never been systematically explored, our knowledge of it being obtained simply from routes taken in various directions; so that there are still vast regions contiguous to the Soudan about which we know little, though it is not to be expected that such arid land has many secrets in store. Much of Morocco and the Marrocan Atlas is still not laid down on our maps. Back from the West Coast there are still many unvisited lands, and numbers of the Congo, and even of the Niger, tributaries, with the country between them, have still to be traced. The Liberians have done little to explore their "hinterland"; but before long the back countries of the French Congo and the German provinces in West Africa will be examined as completely as any in a continent where few regions are surveyed by any means more accurate than a rough reconnaissance. Even then, between the lines paced by travellers, much remains to be filled in; while anything like an exhaustive inquiry into the resources or natural history of any area outside of Egypt, Algeria, Tunis, and the British colonies is unknown. This is the heritage of the Coming Man.

But the development of Africa has not quite proceeded on the lines laid down by Dr. Supan. It has never been systematically explored, as might be inferred from his classification of the periods during which special regions were ransacked, or particular geographical problems solved. Nor were those who opened it up always explorers by calling; they became so, in many instances, by accident. They were slavers, or pirates, or visionaries looking for Prester John. Yet if we study the story of the evolution of Africa from darkness to daylight, it will be seen that though one motive often overlaid another, and all of them were at times actively in operation, there have been from time to time certain great influences at work in opening up the continent. Occasionally one has been dropped in order to take up a second, and again resumed. Yet on the whole it will be found convenient to throw the history of African discovery under certain great heads or tendencies, these tendencies being, in not a few cases, not geographical at all, and set in action by traders who never stirred far from the coast, cared little for learning, and even, in some instances, kept the knowledge of its resources as much as possible to themselves.

The traders who established the earliest "factories" along the West African shore had, we may take it, as a class, little desire to add to geographical knowledge. But in search of gold, and **The coast-traders as explorers.** ivory, and dye-woods, and of barbaric sultans, to whom, like Marlowe's wealthy Moor, pearls were like pebble-stones, some of them penetrated the rivers on the banks of which they had stationed themselves; or the necessity for their making friends with the black kings with whom they dealt led to embassies which added considerably to the knowledge of inner Africa. But these early pioneers were generally unlettered men, who did not think of preserving the records of their journeys, or if they did, reported only to their principals in Europe, who generally carefully concealed the journals of which they became possessed, lest their rivals might profit by the information.

To this day the same system holds good. The Oil River merchants kept what they knew out of print until concealment was no longer possible, and until Du Chaillu's time the Gaboon traders added little to the knowledge of African geography beyond the limits of their settlement.

But by-and-by competition on the coast abridged profits so severely that the more enterprising merchants bethought them of tapping the interior by other means than through the middlemen by whom the produce of inner Africa reached the sea. Then came that longing to reach the Upper Niger and the city of Timbuctoo, about the magnitude and riches of which exaggerated tales had for ages been filtering to Europe through native reports. This longing led to a host of expeditions, first from the west, and then, when the feverish character of the river-mouths became notorious, from the healthier north. These expeditions became very earnest affairs about a century ago, when the African Association was founded, and have continued at intervals to our own day, though the original motive has ceased to operate in the same way. But the seekers after Timbuctoo and the Niger sources were the lineal descendants of the men who, in quest of slaves and ivory, plunder, and Prester John, first broke ground in West Africa. It is even permissible to believe that some of the gentlemen who sent Mungo Park on his expedition were not altogether disinterested, since several of them were directly concerned in what was then the staple branch of the "Guinea trade," and no doubt hoped that his explorations might enable them to advance that lucrative and, a century ago, most respectable line of commerce.

However, long before the Niger was heard of, and long after its headwaters had ceased to be the *primum mobile* of African travel, the mystery of the Nile had aroused the attention of the world, and led to a vast amount of exploration, which has ceased only within our own day. It was always the great African mystery.

It was directly due to these speculations that the East African lakes were discovered, and the course of African exploration diverted from the north and west to that side of the continent. For the Nile lakes of Aristotle and Ptolemy were found in searching for a route more direct than that which followed the never-ending windings of the river of Egypt. These lakes having been discovered, and the populous native kingdoms on their banks brought to light, the ambition of Ismail Pasha (p. 32) to annex these regions was the beginning of a long train of miseries for Egypt, and a change in the fortunes of the Nile Valley, the end of which is not yet. Under the thin disguise of crushing the slave trade he established his officials far in the interior, and raised such animosities among the natives, that the insurrection of the Mahdi following rapidly upon the mutiny of the Army, due directly to discontent with the oppressive service entailed by these schemes of the Khedive, brought England into the Delta, and precipitated the lurid events which followed. To this far-reaching project of Ismail may be traced his own deposition, the death of Gordon, the loss of the Soudan, the occupation of Massowah by the Italians, and the protectorate of Abyssinia by the same power, the heroic stand of Emin Pasha, the transcontinental expedition of Stanley, which rescued him to so little purpose, and even the Anglo-German agreement, which resulted in Queen Victoria and Kaiser Wilhelm dividing up the greater part of Africa between them. This chapter, long though it has been, may not close for ages yet to come.

Meanwhile there had arrived, quietly at first, though not so peaceably afterwards, colonists to stay, instead of travellers to make a journey and return whence they came, or traders intent on earning a fortune to spend anywhere than in Africa. But as long as the slave traffic was the staple business of Africa, colonisation in the strict sense of the term was unknown. The "factories" were simply forts.

The East African lakes and their explorers.

The seekers after Timbuctoo and the Upper Niger.

The modern colonisation of Africa.

The seekers after the Nile sources.



the governors of which exercised no control over the surrounding country, nor made themselves responsible either for the conduct of the natives or for their defence. But when territorial rights and Governments were established, our wars with the natives began, either in repelling the aggressions of neighbouring tribes, or in defending our colonists against the savages whom we had annexed. This



ISMAIL PASHA, EX-KHEDIVE OF EGYPT.

introduced a long episode in the history of Africa, and led to many other developments in the opening up of the continent.

For the hunters who were attracted to South Africa by the immense swarms of elephants, lions, and other large game, pushed in pursuit of their quarry far beyond the bounds of civilisation, and, when animals became scarce in these regions, wandered still further afield, until East Africa and the regions in the vicinity of the lakes were not unfamiliar to them. Their descriptions of these regions led colonists to venture thither, and the Boers,

What the hunters did for Africa.

dissatisfied with British rule in the Cape, to found republics after their own way of thinking in what was then no man's land; their "trek," however (p. 29), was soon to be followed up by that of a more progressive race.

As Europe got ashamed of the wrong it had wrought Africa by encouraging the traffic in human beings, it endeavoured to make amends by sending teachers to the black people. These missionaries were for a long time the most active agents in adding to our knowledge of the country, one of them being the first Briton—if not the first European—to cross the continent, while his stimulus soon brought swarms of more professional explorers into the interior. The centres of civilisation they established attracted the better class of traders and woke up Europe to the horrors of the slave raids. The expedition of Stanley "in search of" Livingstone—who was not "lost"—drew attention to Tanganyika, and directly to the mission-fields lying ripe around that lake, while the next journey of the same explorer resulted in the missionaries going to Uganda, and to a great deal which will be best considered under succeeding sections. But while the missionaries have been important agents in opening up Africa, they have been innocent instruments in creating many of the disturbances between the whites and the natives, the Abyssinian war, among others, being traceable to the complications which their presence in the interior caused.

The share of the missionaries in opening up Africa.

The crossers of the continent form a prominent class among African explorers. Livingstone was the first of them, or, at least, the first who gave any tangible account of his journey, and in a more or less direct manner he led to the expeditions which followed his, the wanderings of the great missionary proving the turning-point in the exploitation of the continent, just as the establishment of the African Association, in 1788, may be regarded as the initiation of African exploration in earnest. These transcontinental journeys have now ceased to be geographical wonders,

The European crossers of the continent.

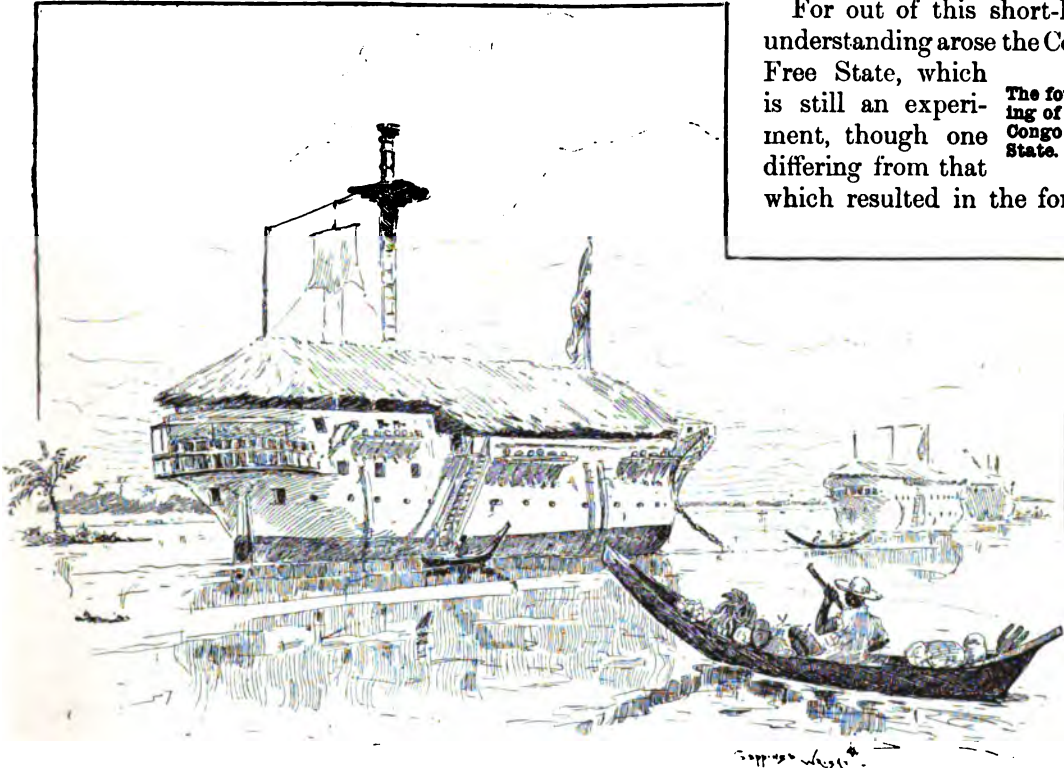
but the results which followed their completion have been of an importance so great and so far-reaching that it is almost impossible to exaggerate them.

For they led, *inter alia*, to the scheme of

several notable journeys were made under its auspices, and a stimulus was imparted to the development of the continent which it has never lost during the years that have elapsed since the formation of this geographical league.

For out of this short-lived understanding arose the Congo Free State, which is still an experiment, though one differing from that which resulted in the forma-

The founding of the Congo Free State.



OLD HULKS IN THE OIL RIVERS.

international exploration, each nation undertaking a special section, the travelers whom it despatched not overlapping the work of their colleagues, while the members of the Association were, theoretically at least, to be inspired by no motive less lofty than the desire to perform their task for the common good in the most perfect manner possible. Practically dealing with a host of ambitious men, some of them incompetent, and most of them inexperienced, the result did not come quite up to the lofty standard fixed at Brussels. This Golden Age of African exploration lasted but a short period; for it left out of account that intangible entity called Human Nature. Still,

tion of Liberia in so far that it is not administered by freed negroes, but by white men. Already, however, the decent pretence of independence has ceased; for as it was simply a philanthropic idea of the Belgian king, supported for years out of his privy purse, it has gradually become little less than a Belgian colony, governed entirely by Belgian officers. But though it is still from a commercial point of view a very moderate success, the stations that have been established on the banks of the Congo half across Africa have formed the basis from which an immense amount of exploration by its own officers and by missionaries has gone on, and is still proceeding.



Another epoch in the history of savage Africa evolved itself out of this airy scheme, since the jealousies which were aroused by the necessities for fixing the boundaries of the new province fired the ambition of States which had hitherto affected the rôle of disinterested philanthropists. But the self-denying clause in the compact by which the *État Indépendant du Congo* was established did not long interfere with the gratification of that earth-hunger by which so many of the European nations were troubled. Then began that scramble for Africa which, after a sort of pandemonium of annexation, settled down quietly to a grave partition, according to mutual agreements, though not without frictions and occasionally graver misunderstandings.

The summary partition of "unappropriated" Africa—for the lords of the soil, who may yet have something to say, were scantily consulted—led to the rise of the great commercial companies by which Africa is now to a large extent governed and exploited, if indeed the formation of these imitations of the mediæval Association which acquired for England so many possessions beyond the seas did not actually necessitate the annexations in question. These joint-stock sovereigns are at this moment the most remarkable of all the modern developments of Africa, for though its earliest settlements were largely due to corporations such as these, until lately they have been regarded as abandoned in favour of direct control by the Crown. It is therefore with the

formation of these guilds and their proceedings that we shall have last of all to deal. Already the diplomatic trouble they have caused, the expeditions of discovery and "relief" which have been undertaken by officials acting on their behalf, the pioneer journeys by their agents, and the opening out of regions hitherto scarcely known even by name, call for a longer chapter in the history of Africa than many of those recording the events of centuries prior to 1884.

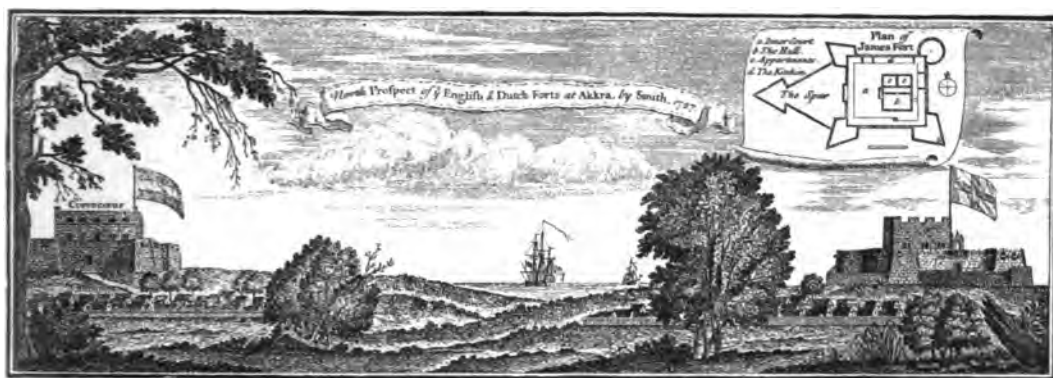
Under these headings—though possibly not always in the strict sequence indicated—it will be possible to find a place for most of the leading events which form the modern chronicles of a "continent" which is ceasing to be "dark." The narrative will, naturally, not be rigidly chronological. One series of events must at times necessarily overlap another, but, as arranged in these pages, the agencies at work in the development of a quarter of the world long left to itself will be better understood, and be less intricate, than if they were related after the usual historical fashion, as if they had occurred haphazard, without any law influencing their sequence.

And, last of all, after a table of dates in African history, we shall be in a position to cast the horoscope of the continent and its peoples, to venture as it were on some prophecy regarding the future of a land which it will take centuries to reclaim from savagedom, though the attempts made within the last fifty years far outstrip in magnitude all that had been accomplished in the five hundred that preceded them.

The  
scramble  
for Africa.

Africa under  
companies.

The parti-  
tion of  
Africa.



ENGLISH AND DUTCH FORTS AT ACCRA, WITH A PLAN OF JAMES FORT. (Reduced Facsimile of an Old Print.)

## CHAPTER II.

### THE GUINEA COAST AND THE OLD GUINEA TRADERS.

The Rainfall of Africa Denoted by the Absence or Presence of Woodland—The Bights and the Oil Rivers Delta—Description of its Principal Features—The Better Parts of Guinea—Climate of the Guinea Coast—The Romantic Days of Guinea—Old Divisions of the Guinea Coast—The Grain, Ivory, Gold, and Slave Coasts—Their Leading Features and Productions—The Rise and Fall of the Chartered Companies of West Africa—The Normans—The Portuguese—The Dutch—The French—The English—Wars Between them and their Rivals—Various Companies and the Modifications in their Charters—The Danes—Their Period of Prosperity and their Forts—The Brandenburgs and the Hanseatic Merchants Try their Fortune in the Guinea—The War between the English Company and the Dutch—Its Decay—The Monopoly Thrown Open—The Imperial Government Takes Over its Posts—The Associations of West Africa—Struggle for its Trade—The Ruined Forts of the Gold Coast and what Caused their Ruin.

THE voyager who sails from the Strait of Gibraltar down the Atlantic shores of Africa passes from a region of moderate, through a zone of scant, until he comes within the tropics to a country of heavy rainfall. This is seen in the character of the vegetation. In Morocco, except on the scalps of the hills, and here and there in the valleys, timber is sparse, though before the Arabs cut it down there were, so Pliny tells us, great forests of oak, and of arrar,\* and of argan,† through which roamed herds of elephants, animals no longer found north of the Sahara. But a little farther south, in the province of Sus, for instance, there are years in which the clouds

\* *Callitris quadrivalvis*—a cypress-like tree, the wood of which is held in such high esteem that it is not allowed to be exported.

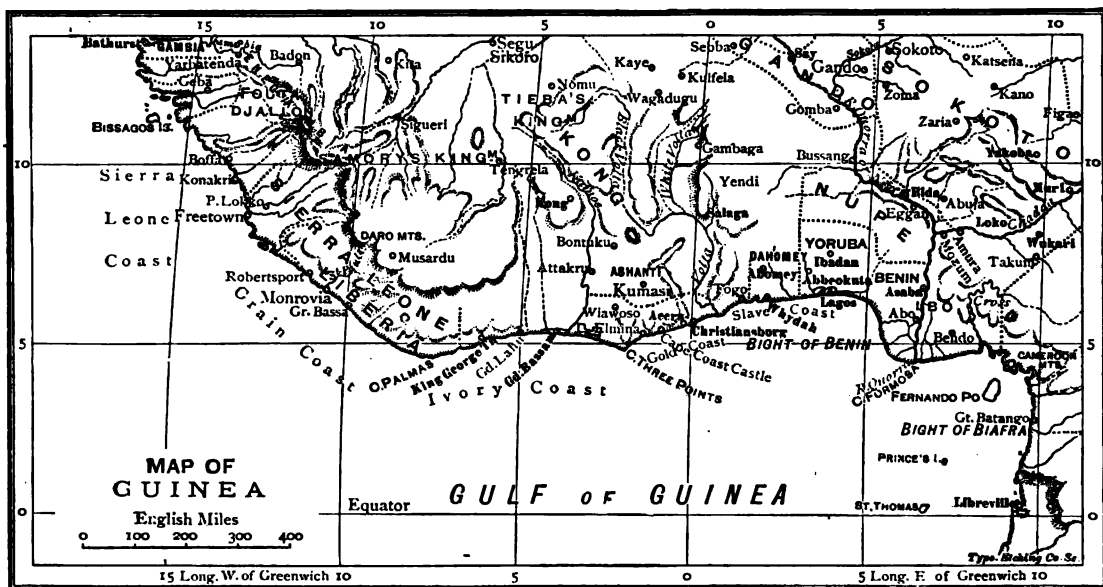
† *Argania Sideroxyylon*, a tree confined to Morocco. An oil extracted from its nuts is extensively used in Moorish cookery.

never burst, and famines are consequently frequent. The land here and for leagues beyond is parched and dry, and often desert, dotted with a few dates, and palmettoes, and prickly acacias, and roamed over by nomadic tribesmen, half robbers, half herdsmen, whose beast of burden is the camel, and whose trade, when not reaping their scanty patches of grain, or pasturing their fat-tailed sheep, is war, or the plunder and enslavement of the hapless seamen who may be wrecked on their inhospitable coast. From the southern termination of the empire of Sultan Moulai el Hassan to close on the border of the French territory of Senegambia, the country is almost desert; it is the westward termination of that droughty Sahara which, under this or some other corresponding name, extends in one broad belt from the Atlantic to the Red Sea.

But from St. Louis southward to the Portuguese colonies we enter upon a wetter, a

richer, and a more unhealthy region. This is the Guinea of the old writers.\* Its products vary, like its climates, in numerous particulars, though, take it as a whole, the land, physically, hygienically, and from an economic point of view, is very similar. It is not attractive at a distance; but it is better to examine most of it from the offing than closer at hand. All day long, as we sail and sail along it, we see little except a flat beach,

creeps into the sea, though even then the wooded banks and islets in its mouth conceal from the voyager this rift in the glistening sand and gleaming foam, whose hollow boom brings to the seaman many a memory of swamped boats and the ravenous sharks ever hovering in wait for such gruesome prey as frequent mishaps of this nature bring ready to their jaws. The shore is, indeed, often so low that the forest seems to rise out of the water,



MAP OF GUINEA.

backed by a dense jungle, and still further in the interior, if the haze which hangs over it clears up a little, a mountain range which marks the western edge of the hilly plateaus that occupy the interior of the country. And on the yellow sand resounds the monotonous thud! thud! of the Atlantic (p. 37) breaking in a curling wall of surf. There is seldom a gap in this long line of olive green, except where here and there a great river

the tops of the trees being, at a little distance, the first indications of the approach of land.

Here and there a solitary palm or cottonwood, a native village, or a whitewashed "factory," a spot too poor even for the rank tropical vegetation, or a headland, marking, like Cape Verd, the point where a mountain spur reaches the ocean, relieves the sameness of the long leagues of woodland between the "Great Desert" to the north and the "Great Thirst Land" to the south of it. There are better bits and there are worse bits; and among the latter are "the Bights," the insalubrity of which is celebrated in the doleful ditty already quoted (p. 18). For here the Niger and other

The Bights  
and the Oil  
Rivers.

\* The origin of this comprehensive term is disputed. It may be from Ginahoa, the first negro region visited by the Portuguese; from Ghana, the modern Kano; from the kingdom of Jennah, or Jenne, on the Upper Niger, or from Jenna, a coast town once of note, governed by a deputy of the "King" of Gambialand.

rivers crawl seaward through a huge series of forest-covered deltas, formed by the mud brought down by their own waters. This area is either swamp or plain, the former predom-

beautiful disguise. It "hides its foul breath with the sweetest of perfumes, and wears the smile of sunlight ever on its lips." But in the Delta, death, as if sure of its victims, throws



FLAT BEACH ON THE GUINEA COAST  
BACKED BY DENSE JUNGLE.

ating, and the soil a sticky black mud, extending over a region about as large as Ireland, intersected in every direction by lagoons and creeks and back-waters. Of all the sickly Bights these "Oil Rivers" are the most pestilential. In no part is fever to be avoided; but in some the malaria, as at Sierra Leone, puts on what a poetical traveller has called a

off the mask. "Once enter that gloomy land"—I am quoting the late Mr. Winwood Reade, a man whose great abilities the world is only now beginning to recognise—"and the impression can never be effaced. The rivers filthy as sewers; the slimy mud stinking in the sun; the loath-

some crocodiles lying prone upon it, and showing their white bellies as they sullenly plunge into the stream; the foamy, shark-haunted bars; the hideous aspect of the people, whose bodies are usually covered with sores; the traders with their corpse-like faces—all these can be remembered, but cannot be described."

So unhealthy is this region that the English traders never live ashore, but in the hulks of old East Indiamen or Atlantic liners anchored in the rivers, and thatched over to serve at once for dwelling and shop and warehouse until "the owners'" ships arrive from Liverpool to carry home the produce of their traffic with the natives (p. 33). There are, or were, whole hamlets of these hulks, the captains and occupants of which punished thieves and mutineers, appealing when need be to the British Commissioner, or his Vice-Consuls, under whom the Oil Rivers were placed when they became a protectorate of Great Britain, or to a gunboat when the negro "kings'" intestine quarrels or proceedings grew intolerable. On every river there is one of these traders' courts of arbitration; and, as the outlets of the Niger are numerous, there is no lack or justice of a kind. But the kind is not choice, for the type of men who take up their homes in this depressing region are not the pick of their native land. It has been called "a refuge of reckless and despairing" Britons.

The mortality is large, no doubt, yet some seem to enjoy the life, such as it is. Wherever any dry land is found on the banks of the rivers there are established native towns, each with its "king," who speaks broken English with a bad vocabulary, and is generally at loggerheads with some swamp sovereign farther up the stream, who has been interfering with his trade in palm-oil or kernels or camwood or ivory, blowing up his store of gunpowder, or helping himself to his rival's supply of wives. Opposite these villages the hulks are moored. Existence is monotonous in the extreme. There is little to go ashore for, nothing to stay on board for if business is not brisk. A feeling of wearisomeness and depression takes possession of the occupants, varied by bouts of fever, and sometimes of delirium tremens, which the muddy river and the banks of reeking ooze, and the interminable slimy mangrove swamps that fringe them, are not calculated to remove. The air is hot and foetid, and at night the deadly miasma "creeps

up from every creek, and gradually enfolds all objects in a damp white shroud; while the croaking of the bull-frogs, the cry of a night-bird, or the lapping of the restless tide against the side of the hulk, are the only sounds that break the oppressive silence." Without work and the afternoon sea-breeze, and the hope inspired by the arrival of a mail, the Bonny or Old Calabar or Brass River trader would die of exhaustion. "If ever a man was justified in seeking consolation in the flowing bowl, it would be in these rivers, which used to be the haunt of the Palm Oil Ruffian, a creature that would not have been tolerated even in Alsatia; but the genus is now rapidly dying out, and soon bids fair to be classed with the Plesiosaurus and other extinct reptiles." So much for Colonel Ellis, on whom I prefer to put the responsibility of this uncomplimentary verdict, since it is understood there are optimists who have a good word to say even for Bonny and the Brass River and the "P. O. R."

Business here is largely done on credit, and bad debts are so frequent that by the law of the Delta any member of a tribe is responsible for the liabilities of any other. Accordingly, if the trader grows impatient, all he has to do is to seize the oil puncheons passing his hulk, and permit the owner to settle matters with the recalcitrant debtor. The coast tribes, a degraded but numerous race, are, for the most part, middlemen, acting as intermediaries between the whites and the interior natives, though little by little this system has broken down, and will soon be permitted only when the convenience of the trader renders it advisable. For, in spite of its unhealthiness—an unhealthiness which only affects the whites—the Oil Rivers are among the most thickly populated and wealthiest parts of Western Africa. Many of the chiefs have become rich men out of direct traffic, commissions on the transactions of their people, and the presents or "dashes" of the traders who live amongst them—there being a regular series of gifts or this kind payable to the potentate in question. All of the Delta is a vast natural plantation

of oil-palms,\* from which is extracted some 60,000 tons of the yellow grease used in making the best qualities of English soaps, candles, and pomades, just as the French ones are compounded of the oil of the ground nut,† which, in like manner, is the chief export of the countries bordering the Senegal and Gambia farther north. And from it also, there is no scandal in remarking, a good deal of the "finest salad oil" is extracted, though, as a substitute for the olive, this humble vegetable, the "pea-nut" of America, is being run very closely by cotton-seed. So enormous, indeed, is the trade in palm-oil that the amount exported from the Niger Delta equals, if it does not surpass, in value, all the other commodities sent to the civilised world from the British, French, and Portuguese settlements. Yet at the beginning of the century the entire export of it from Africa did not exceed two hundred tons; for at that date little except slaves was shipped from this region, which came to be called the Oil Rivers. At that time Bonny, which now contributes 16,000 tons, exported 16,000 slaves.

All Guinea is, however, not so bad as the Niger Delta. Some portions of it are even moderately enjoyable to those who do not find the "seasoning fevers" unbearable. Gambia is little better than the region described; but Senegambia is reasonably healthy, and St. Louis, for West Africa, is a pleasant town. Sierra Leone bears an evil name among those who know only Sierra Leone. All manner of facetious tales are current regarding the fatal atmosphere "of the white man's grave"—how it takes three governors "to work it," one dead, one acting, and a third on his way out; how when a fresh official inquired as to his pension, he was told by the Colonial Office clerks that there was no precedent for any retiring allowance, "no one having ever lived to claim it,"‡ and so forth.

\* *Elæis guineensis*, a species peculiar to West Africa, from whence it has been introduced into the West Indies.

† *Arachis hypogæa*.

‡ This tale attaches also to the Consulate of the Bights, and, no doubt, to many other places besides.

And undeniably the cemetery of Freetown, and, still more patently, the Whitehall records, are painfully suggestive of there being some substratum of truth in these well-worn legends of the "charnel-house."

Lagos also is not accounted quite a sanatorium (p. 41). But Lagos, in spite of its terrible bar, impassable for weeks at a time, is almost an approach to a European town. Even some of the native towns are passable so far as pestilence is concerned. Between Accra and the Niger the country, like that on the Upper Gambia and Senegal, is open, with busy villages, large markets, and plains waving with corn and cotton. Abbeokuta is indeed a walled "city," twenty miles round; and Whydah, the port of Dahomey, though now a decaying place, its quondam importance being due to the slave trade, bears the remains of former briskness in the different forts and warehouses belonging to merchants of many nationalities. Cape Coast Castle (p. 40), Anamaboe, Dixcove, Accra (p. 35), Elmina, and a number of smaller stations, are, or were, places of commercial importance, and, of course, vastly superior to the Delta of the Nile; for they are villages with, in several instances, substantially built forts, and in most cases a permanent garrison of the West India Regiments.

But though they differ in degrees of grandeur, as well as in degree of unhealthiness, none of them are desirable places of residence from a sanitary point of view. Everywhere the day is extremely hot, but the nights are cool, and the decaying vegetation and stagnant water render malarious fever of constant occurrence. The year on the windward coast is divided into rainy and dry seasons. The rain, when it does fall, pours for from twelve to thirty hours without ceasing, while the pervading wet lasts at Sierra Leone for about four months, between the end of May and the beginning of September. But the rains advance from south to north, not beginning at Sierra Leone until they are over in the Bights, and not reaching Senegal until six or eight weeks after they have been deluging Sierra

Climate of  
the Guinea  
Coast.

Leone. Tornadoes are frequent during four or five months in the year; yet, except for the damage they do, are not prejudicial to health. The harmattan—"the doctor" of the par-boiled European—is a dry, cool, north-east wind, which withers trees, kills tender plants, splits doors and window-shutters, removes the veneer on furniture, and bends back the boards of books as if they had been exposed to the fire. The body is also affected. The eyes, lips, nostrils, and throat feel dry and uneasy, and by-and-by the skin begins to peel off. Nevertheless, as the thermometer falls ten or twelve degrees, Europeans welcome it with all these disadvantages; and even the natives, who complain of its coolness, admit that it cures old ulcers and skin diseases, interrupts the progress of epidemics, such as dysentery, small-pox, and ague, and renders the body less susceptible to infection. As long as it

of living in the vapour-bath known as the Guinea Coast.

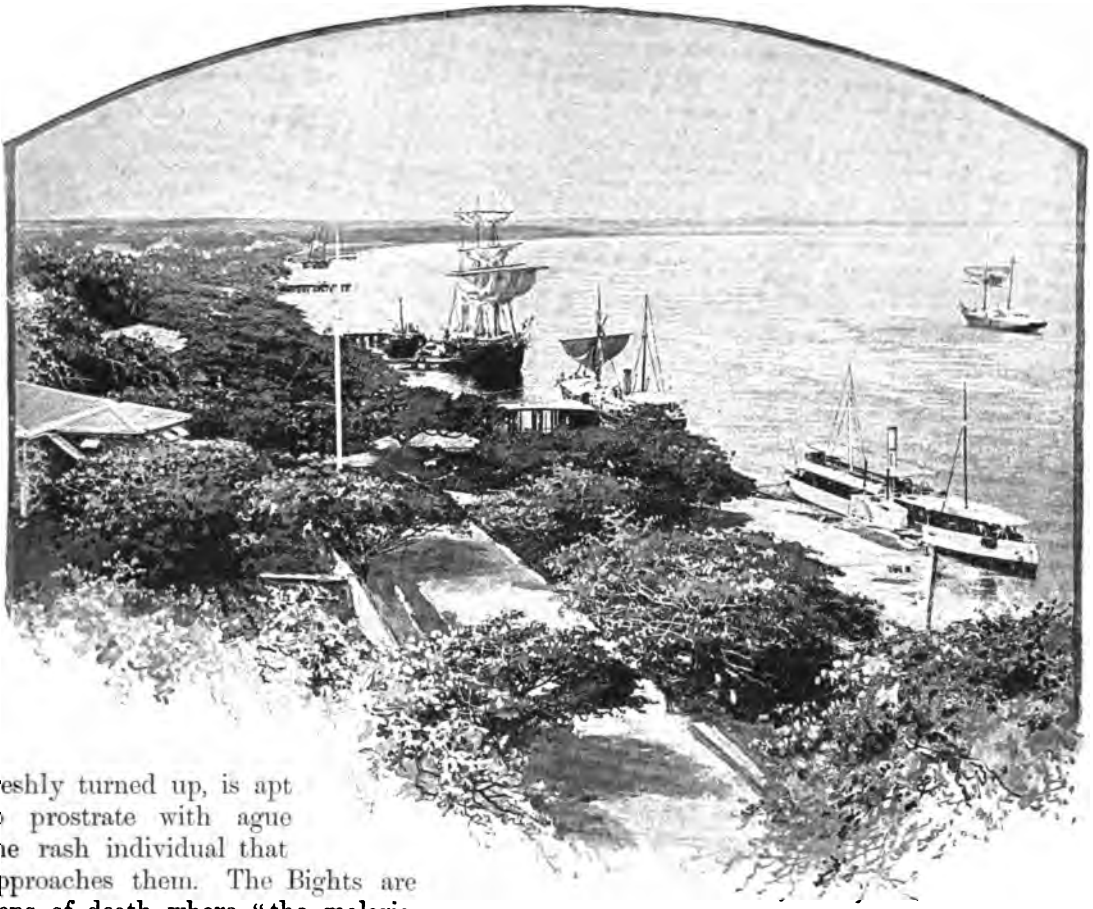
Of this abundance of vapour any book which has done service on the well-marked region here sketched (p. 36) bears ample proof. No part of the continent is good for literature. Even Northern Africa is for some months in the year apt to be wettish, and the Sahara, like the droughts common to the south of the Portuguese territory, destroys a volume by reason of the dry heat to which it is subjected. But in Guinea the covers soon fall off, cracked and shrivelled by the harmattan, mildewed by the rains, nibbled by cock-roaches or devoured by white ants. It is even said—so Mr. Reade affirms—that the leaves become depositories of disease germs, infecting the reader as he turns them over like the poisoned manuscripts of the "Arabian Nights." A musty smell arises from books or



CAPE COAST CASTLE.

lasts, which is generally about two weeks at a stretch, in December, January, and February, there is not the least dew or moisture in the air, though a kind of haze, obscuring the sun, moon, and stars, accompanies it, this atmospheric condition being in marked contrast to the copious dampness which at other periods of the year adds to the discomforts

clothes that have been long in the tropics. This, say the theorists, is due to the invisible fungus spores that produce the swamp fever. In like manner, a room long unopened, or a bed not recently aired, or the virgin soil



LAGOS.

freshly turned up, is apt to prostrate with ague the rash individual that approaches them. The Bights are dens of death where "the malaria, like a wild beast, sleeps through the day. But when night descends, and the bright sun has disappeared, it arises from its secret places and steals along the river-shore, and floats on the land-breeze to the vessels that are lying in the roads, and winds its way up the mountain, and creeps into the town, and through the windows that are open, to many a swinging hammock, to many a bedside. Sleep, sweet sleep, in England the restorer, is in Africa a peril and a snare."

For no matter how Guinea differs—and its tribes are varied in their habits, their tongues, their customs, their faiths, their degrees of faithlessness, and their origin, just as their products are not the same throughout the enormous stretch of coast which goes under that name—it has this characteristic in common. It is all malarious. It is, a traveller

tells us, who has been "down" again and again with fever in almost every portion of it, uniformly bad; though there are, no doubt, districts in other tropical and semi-tropical countries quite as unhealthy as any part of Western Africa. From the Senegal River to Little Fish Bay, from the Desert of the Moors to the Desert of the Hottentots, from latitude  $15^{\circ}$  N. to latitude  $15^{\circ}$  S.—a sinuous coastline of several thousand miles—there is not a cubic inch of air which is not in the night-time impregnated with malaria. No European resident escapes the fever, and even the natives suffer from it, though in a less degree. For a time he may imagine he is to be the favoured exception to the general rule. He may for days, and possibly weeks, feel.



perfectly well, and even be charmed with the climate. But one day, when he is least expecting the visitation, it arrives, first in the cold, then in the hot, stage, until a burst of perspiration relieves him, and, it may be, "cuts" the fever. However, the chances are it will come back again and again; when, if the patient or his friends be wise, he will leave "the coast," to save the little life the demon has left within him. For every repetition of this exaggerated form of ague leaves the body weaker, and more liable to other diseases, if it does not, as it sometimes does, create complaints of its own. No regularity of life can save the most provident of men from it. Temperance is essential, but total abstinence is no safeguard. Busy men, with plenty of work to do and plenty of internal resources to fall back upon, enjoy the nearest approach to immunity, and, contrary to the general impression, fair men, men of what is called the sanguine temperament, are usually better able to bear up against it and the lassitude, lack of elasticity and buoyancy that eat into the vitals of every individual who lives long enough to enjoy the humble distinction of being an "old coaster." None, however, escape—not even at Accra, now comparatively healthy. Few white women, happily, live on this shore. To them maternity is too often death, and they are peculiarly constituted if they long retain their beauty, and their children are exceptional if they do not wither and die like the tender bud under the blast of the desert sirocco.

West Africa is prosaic enough now. It is all divided into colonies, to which no colonists come, ruled by regulation governors, and the common type of Colonial Office clerks, who issue yearly reports, and squabble with the black Britons for whose benefit this machinery is kept going, and at intervals appear at the Colonial Institute with papers descriptive of the "boundless resources" of the swamps for which they are officially bound to do the best. They have even been known to say

something for the climate,\* and there is a case on record in which an Irish governor served two terms by choice at Sierra Leone, and would have taken a third had not a post been found for him to which the suspicion of bureaucratic homicide might not so readily attach.

There are now no fortunes to be made here, either honestly or, as some of the earlier ones were earned, not quite so honestly. The official can hope to save little money, and promotion, beyond a certain point, is slow. For "if a man can bear the climate and the Liberated Africans, the Colonial Office appreciates these rare and rhinoceros-like qualities too well to transfer them to another sphere." The days of mercantile venturing also are past. Fortunes are more readily lost than won upon the coast; the trade is regular, the competition is severe, and the profits are depressingly small.

How the traders live, and the placemen work, how the colonies took their modern shape, and what their value is to their present possessors, will form the theme of a later section of this book. We have in the meantime to deal with an earlier, a more romantic, a more stirring, and, it must be admitted, a less respectable period in the history of the country.

For vile though this region is, "the spirit of man" included, dread though the pests of fever and mosquitoes are at all times—the worm, which bores under the skin when the wayfarer least suspects mischief, ring-worm, elephantiasis, craw-craw, and the million insect plagues that make life barely worth living—this portion of the continent was the scene of the earliest of African explorations.

\* On the 13th of May, 1874, Lord Carnarvon, on the strength of some such minute as this, informed the House of Lords that the Gold Coast was as healthy as London, and more so than many English towns. His august audience took this astounding statement very placidly. But the region in question has not yet quite recovered this certificate of character. Yet the invalid who, after his tenth or twelfth fever, is carried on board the homeward-bound steamer, feels that official flattery and Colonial Office ignorance are no guarantee against malaria.

The romantic days of Guinea.

Here the first African voyagers touched. On this shore the pioneers of the mediæval African traders settled. It was in Guinea where the Europeans took their first grasp of the soil of Africa south of the Atlas, where they obtained those crude ideas of the continent which for three centuries they communicated to their countrymen in the shape that Lieutenant Pistol enunciated them to Justice Shallow and his guests.

For the soil, fatal though it is in places, and sickly everywhere, is rich in all the vegetable products of the tropics. It is so amazingly fertile that Sierra Leone ought to supply all England with tropical products. The baobab, the palm, the cocoanut, the orange, the lemon, the locust-tree, the shea or butter-tree, the coffee-shrub, the nutmeg, and the cinnamon, are easily grown. Maize and millet, and rice and yams, kola nuts and earth nuts, are abundant. The oil-palm yields its welcome grease along almost the entire coast, and down the rivers that intersect its dark forests come ebony and cam-wood, gum-arabic from the interior, ivory tusks hewn out of the skulls of elephants slain in the jungles around their head-waters, and the still more precious gold-dust, from which were coined the pieces that for nearly two centuries circulated under the name of "guineas," this title and the elephant stamped upon them denoting the region whence the metal of which they were made had come (p. 50). The names applied to the different parts of the country expressed roughly the products for which each portion was most notable. Thus the northern portion is known as the Grain Coast. For here was traded the Attare, Malaguetta pepper, or Grains of Paradise, the pungent aromatic seeds of a plant belonging to the ginger order.\* Until the better condition of the East drove it out of the market,

**Divisions of  
Guinea.  
The Grain  
Coast.**

towards the close of the eighteenth century, it was extensively used, under the name of Guinea pepper, to flavour food. It is still employed in veterinary practice, and at one time was still more widely in demand to increase the pungency of fermented liquors, bad gin being made drinkable by virtue of the Grains of Paradise infused into it.

South of this region is the Ivory Coast, the Tand Kust, or Tooth Coast, of the Dutch, which extended beyond the Rio da Sueirio Costa of the Portuguese.

**The Ivory  
Coast.**

The Dutch furthermore divided it into the country of the good and the country of the bad people, the boundary between them being the Boutry River. But in reality none of them were anything but indifferent, a verdict admitted by the fact that all the trade was carried on on board the ships, or if on shore, with great precaution, the natives, after the Normans quitted the land, objecting to have any European settlements in their country.

Farther south is the Gold Coast, being the best-known and the most affected by Europeans of any part of Guinea, and south of this, on the other side of the Volta, lies the Slave Coast.

**The Gold  
Coast.**

**The Slave  
Coast.**

But whether grain, or ivory, or gold, or negroes were the staple of these regions, which still bear the old names, slaves were the most lucrative of the commodities obtained from all of them. It was mainly for the convenience of purchasing "servants," at first for any part of the world, and latterly altogether for the plantations in America, that the coast became dotted with the forts and factories of different European nations. These merchants were in no way Government officials. All the recognition given them by the Home Powers was a charter of incorporation, certain privileges in the way of exclusive trading, and occasionally remission of duties upon their imported goods and exported stores. It was an age of private enterprise, when one company of merchants laid hold of India, and another became the owners of a large section of North America. In time, the authority passed out of the hands of the African

\* *Amomum Grana Paradisi*. The name Guinea pepper is, however, also applied to the berries of the capsicum, to the dried fruits of Cubebs, and to the seeds of *Hebzelia æthiopica*. Malaguetta is a corruption of the native "Emaneghetha"; Grains of Paradise is the name given to the first specimens brought to Italy by the Moors.

merchants just as it passed out of those of the Indian and the Hudson Bay Companies, and the factories became the Government Houses of colonies, and the traders who gathered into the growing towns around them merely artisans and shopkeepers, payers of rates and taxes.

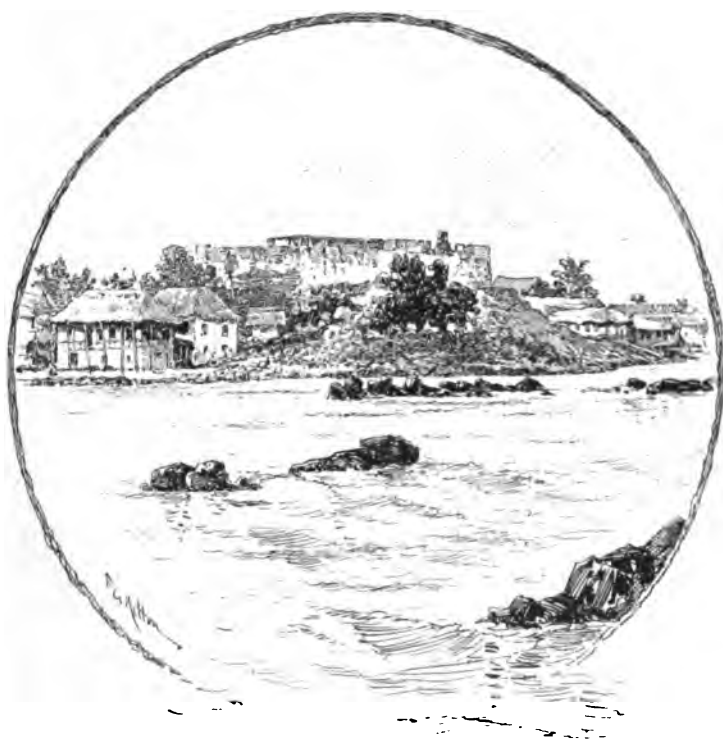
That, however, was not the notion when the merchants of Dieppe and Rouen established

succeeding the unhappy death of Charles VI. in 1422 fell so heavily on the commerce of Africa that from that day it began to decline, until at the end of the sixteenth century none of the many Norman forts remained, except that in the Senegal, which afterwards became the nucleus of the town of St. Louis. Meanwhile the Portuguese, Dutch, English, and Spaniards took advantage of the failing energies of their rivals to push their own business in the same region. The first-named, had, indeed, never abandoned their claim to be the discoverers of this coast, and they were undoubtedly the first people who ever attempted to found in Western Africa anything worthy the name of colonies.

The earliest appearance of the "Portugals" in that capacity was in 1465. **The Portuguese.** In the course of

a few years they built one fort on the island of Arguin, another on the site of the old Norman settlement (remains of which can still be traced), re-named St. George del Mina, and extended their posts southwards until they founded São Paulo de Loango, in what is still the colony of Angola, where by-and-by we shall visit them, if,

peradventure, Angola by that time still owns Dom Carlos for its lord. Under the favour of Pope Martin V., who granted to the Portuguese the right of seizing and confiscating all the property of infidels for the good of their souls, according at the same time a plenary indulgence for the benefit of all who might perish in such pious enterprises, the Lusitanians thrived amazingly until a chartered company was formed with a monopoly of all the trade on the Gold Coast. Axim was speedily the site of a fort, and then



DIXCOVE.

themselves early in the fourteenth century on the Senegal River and along the shores of West Africa as far as Sierra Leone, built Little Paris and Little Dieppe on the Grain Coast, extended their posts to La Mine d'Or in 1382, and to Accra, Kormantin, and elsewhere as trade grew brisker, until they became wealthy out of honest traffic in gold and ivory and Guinea pepper. But the part the Dukes of Normandy took in the civil wars of France

**The rise and fall of the chartered companies of West Africa. The Normans.**



ST. GEORGE DEL MINA.

began the erection of one at Cape Coast, or Cabo Corso—or Corse—as the name really is; and so firmly convinced were the Portuguese of their permanence in this part of the world that the kings assumed the title, which they still bear, of “Lords of Guinea and of the navigation and commerce of Ethiopia.”

But Nemesis was waiting them in the shape of the Dutch, who, in spite of every effort to displace them, built a fort at “Cabo Corso,” and, aided by the natives,

whom the cruelty and avarice of the Portuguese had outraged, ousted the latter from the Castle of St. George, which is now more familiarly known as Cape Coast. The latter then retired to the island of St. Thomas, and soon began to take a secondary place on the shores of Guinea. But from that day until 1871, when they ceded to Britain the last of their posts, the Hollanders were one of the chief peoples in that part of the world.

Meanwhile the French had again begun to assert themselves and regain possession of some of their old posts. The merchants of Dieppe and Rouen, finding, for the reasons already noted, their trade no longer so profitable, sold their last remaining establishment to what was called the West India Company, who, however, used this privilege so badly that in 1673 the king was forced to assign their charter to a new association confined in its operations to the country between Cape Blanco and Sierra Leone, the monopoly of trading southwards to the Cape of Good Hope being accorded to another company. But their affairs soon falling into disorder, a fourth African or Sanaga (Senegal) Company



ENGLISH AND DUTCH FORTS AT KOMMENDAH. (Reduced Facsimile of an Old Print.)

took over their enterprise. This society, in its turn being no more successful than its predecessors, was in 1709 reconstructed by certain Rouen merchants as the Fifth Sanaga Company, which eight years later disposed of their possessions to the New West India or Mississippi Company, one of the many schemes emanating from the fertile brain of John Law. After various other changes, the British captured St. Louis and Senegal in 1758, and kept possession of them for twenty years, until by the peace of 1783 they were confirmed in the ownership, though at a later date they were again made over to their former owners. The Gum Company and the Senegal Company were two others of the French Proprietary Associations, though in 1791, being badly organised, the last of them was abolished by a decree of the Constituent Assembly, and the country gradually put under the direct control of the Central Government, though during the wars that followed the French forts frequently changed hands. Thus Goree was captured by the British in 1800, and was wrested from them in 1804; it again fell into their possession, but was restored at the general peace in 1815. Since that date it has been permitted to remain undisturbed, and is now a St. Louis on a small scale. Its citadel is much stronger than anything of the kind that Britain has on the West Coast; but its climate is infamous—yellow fever and small-pox being almost yearly visitants, *plus* the ordinary maladies of the country. Worse still, the establishment of Dakar on the mainland (Goree is an island) is threatening the prosperity of the place. It may be added that it was during the temporary British ownership (in 1782) that Governor Wall caused three soldiers of the Royal African Corps (many of whom were bad characters drafted from other regiments) to be flogged to death—an excess of discipline, carried out without a court-martial, or acquainting the Home Government, for which he was executed in 1802.

The English trade with the Guinea Coast was, like all these great enterprises, begun by independent merchant adventurers, sailing

out of English and other ports at their own risk and charges. We know that they were so engaged in the reigns of Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, and, the <sup>The English</sup> British Colonies having as yet no need of negro labour, the ships bartered only for gold, ivory, Guinea pepper, and the like, though, as the Portuguese captured them when they could, confiscating the vessels and cargoes without the least ground for redress, the masterful merchants ran no small peril in playing the part of "interlopers." However, their chance came by-and-by. War breaking out between England and Spain and Portugal, Queen Elizabeth granted a charter to a company of merchants to trade to this region; this charter, as usual, prohibiting all of her subjects not included in it from sharing in the monopoly thus decreed. In 1585 and 1588 she issued two patents. The first was to certain London adventurers trafficking to Morocco and the other Barbary States, and the second to the English merchants who had on their own account been trying to obtain some of the profit made by the traffic along the African shore "between the Sanaga and the Gambia" (p. 1).<sup>\*</sup> In 1592 their efforts had proved so successful that she chartered a new association for exploiting the coast from "the River Nonnica† to the south of Sierra Leone."

But either the trade had decayed or the traders had proved unequal to the tasks they undertook; for in the sixteenth year of James I.'s reign a new monopoly was decreed to Sir Robert Rich and other citizens of London, to take up and extend the commerce dropped by their predecessors. But this company were so injured by interlopers—private individuals, who defied them and their charter, and sold more cheaply than could the factors of the charterers, with their heavy expenses in the way of forts and garrisons, and, we may be sure, in "gratifications" to greedy courtiers—which in time grew to be known as "palm-oil"—that they soon abandoned the privileges accorded them. However, about

\* The Senegal and the Gambia.

† Nunez or Nougmos.

this period the Dutch success in cutting out the Portuguese fired the enterprising traders of the Thames with hopes of undermining both, so that in the seventh year of Charles I.'s reign he was induced to accord to Nicholas Crisp and his associates a new charter of the same nature as those which had preceded it. Under the Commonwealth this monopoly was renewed, though, in the confusion of the times, the Dutch (and the Danes also, who had by this time entered upon the scene) had taken the opportunity to recover much of their lost ground, and to enlarge and strengthen their forts, so that the Englishmen—both those concerned in the monopoly and the private traders, or interlopers—fell upon evil days. Their factories were taken and burnt, their goods pillaged, and their ships seized so frequently by the enemy, that in the course of a few years they were sufferers to the extent of £800,000, an enormous sum when the value of money at that date is taken into consideration.

Parliament, thereupon, in 1664, addressed Charles II., begging him to support the African trade, and "check the insolence of the Dutch." His remonstrances at the Hague having no effect, the first Dutch War followed as a final protest against this and other wrongs suffered at the Hollanders' hands. But the hostilities that ensued did little for the Guinea men generally, and least of all for the new "Company of Royal Adventurers of England Trading to Africa," which the king had chartered two years after his restoration, with power to do their best from the Strait of Gibraltar, in the north, to the Cape of Good Hope, in the south. For the infant association had to settle accounts with De Ruyter, whose fleet took Kormantin Castle and Takorary Fort,\* and seized the Company's vessels and effects to the value of

£200,000. The English, on their part, captured, among other places, Forts Witsen, Secondee and Cape Coast Castle, though they were not long permitted to retain these posts, Cape Coast Castle being the only stronghold that successfully resisted the attack of De Ruyter. The London Adventurers, nevertheless, kept their footing in Africa, and when peace came in 1667 each side, it was stipulated, was to be restored to the places it possessed before the war. By virtue of this article the Dutch West India Company kept possession of the British fort at Kormantin and the British Cape Coast Castle, which they had retaken from the Dutch before the war actually broke out. During the irregular hostilities that preceded that first arbitrament of arms, Kormantin had, in like manner, been captured by De Ruyter, "by the assistance of the natives of one of the adjacent countries, who had been bribed by the Dutch general at Elmina," though their power to effect this was a fatal knowledge to impart to the natives, for some years later it was carried by assault from the Ashantis.

The stipulation as to recession, nevertheless, came too late to be of much use to the British. The three years had crippled them beyond the power of any treaty to heal the wounds inflicted. Accordingly, they were glad enough, in the hope of saving further loss, to accept a sum of money in consideration of their surrendering into the hands of the Crown their briefly enjoyed charter. This was duly made over by letters patent to the Royal African Company, which for seventy-eight years,† greatly to their own profit, and not a little to the benefit of England, were virtual rulers of the parts of West Africa not held by any other Power, though then, as subsequently, the Crown accepted no responsibility for the acts of its subjects, permitting them to make their own bargains with the native chiefs. From the piratical port of Sallee in Northern Morocco to the southern part of the continent this new association of adventurers had all the privileges which their charter

\* This place often changed hands; English, Dutch, Brandenburgers, Swedes (during a faint attempt to gain a footing on the coast), and Danes having had their turns of it. The English, according to the Dutch, obtained possession of it in 1665 by clandestine means (which is likely enough), though even after De Ruyter had recaptured it, its old masters suffered reverses. At the date of Bosman's narrative (1700) it had been abandoned, and the town burnt by the Adomese.

† Namely, from 1672 to 1750.

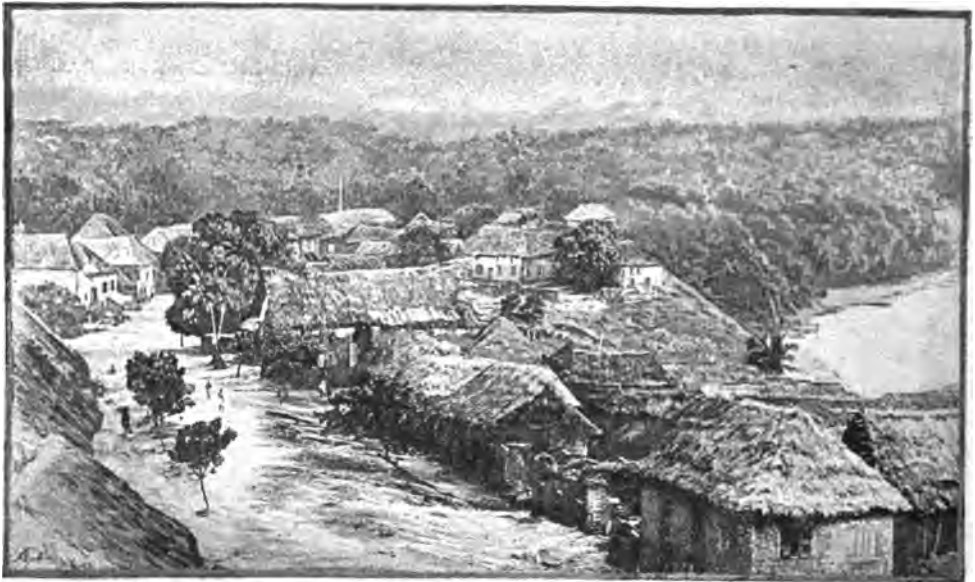
could grant and their rivals allow, and carried on their operations with such vigour, so far as Guinea was concerned, that, beginning with Cape Coast Castle, the only portion of their predecessors' possessions left them to buy,\* they had forts or factories at Accra, Dixcove, Winnebah, Secondee, Kommendah, and Anamaboe—all on the Gold Coast, and three of them within musket-shot of the Dutch strongholds. The Danes

**The Danes.** had by this time Christiansborg, Fredericksborg, and Quittah along the same shore. Then the new company purchased and built a fort at Whydah, now the seaport of the King of Dahomey, but at that time a part of the Savi territory, so that very speedily the British trade on the Guinea Coast was superior to that of every other nation except the Dutch.

The traders of that nation lost no oppor-

goodwill of the natives for permission to make the settlements mentioned, as well as for transporting from England the soldiers, mechanics, provisions, arms, ammunition, and other necessities for holding and protecting these fortified settlements, difficulties not rendered any the less by the long war which ensued with France.

Yet, in spite of all this hazard and anxiety, the Company followed up their projects so energetically that they were soon regarded as the only rivals of the Dutch, and, so far as the volume of their trade was concerned, their equals in every respect. Every year they imported some seventy thousand pounds' worth of woollen goods, and other British manufactures, and the slave trade having by this time grown to vast dimensions, they supplied the American colonies with great numbers of negroes, at a moderate rate, and in so



SECONDEE TOWN.

tunity of annoying the new-comers. Indeed, open hostilities often ensued, and ended not without bloodshed on each side. Vast expenses were incurred in purchasing the

\* They paid £34,000 for it, and made it six times larger, stronger, and more commodious than before.

encouraging a manner, that they sometimes trusted the planters to the value of one hundred thousand pounds, and upwards, till they could conveniently pay it. Then they also exported vast quantities of red wood, elephants' tusks, and the like, besides such a

quantity of gold-dust that they frequently coined\* from thirty to forty thousand guineas at a time, which pieces, from the elephant below the king's head, were—and are still—known as “elephant guineas” (p. 50).

On the north coast, where opposition was

Hope; the Senegal Company, which had hitherto enjoyed a monopoly of the whole of West Africa, as has been seen (p. 45), being confined to the region between the river



CHRISTIANSBORG CASTLE.

less keen, the Company, it might have been imagined, would have met with even more success. But this was not the case. The Dutch were in possession of Arguin and Goree; the Senegal Company—a French monopoly established in 1673—held the small fort of St. Louis, on an island within the bar of the Senegal River; and the Royal African Company had one establishment (St. James Fort) in the Gambia River and another on the River Sierra Leone. For some years the *status quo* was permitted to remain undisturbed—the companies of each nation trading freely to all the places on the coast not in the actual province of the other. But in 1677 and 1678 the French captured the Dutch forts of Arguin and Goree, and had their ownership confiscated by the Treaty of Nimeguen. About the same period a French Guinea Company was given the trade of the coast from Sierra Leone to the Cape of Good

mentioned and Cape Blanco. The contract for supplying slaves to the Spanish West Indies being transferred to Great Britain, this new company got into such financial difficulties that their monopoly was withdrawn, and the trade of that part of Africa hitherto in their hands was laid open to all the French king's subjects. This continued from 1716 to 1720.

The Senegal Company were more aggressive, claiming the sole privilege of trading from Cape Blanco to the River Gambia, a distance of about five hundred miles, and they **The Brandenburgers.** would fain, as early as 1681, have prevented the English company from doing business on that part of the coast. But not then being strong enough to contest this point, they contented themselves with merely seizing and confiscating ships belonging to the Portuguese, Dutch, and Prussians, or “Brandenburgers,” the latter of whom had begun to creep out of the Baltic in the hope

\* Chiefly in the reign of James II.



of picking up a few of the crumbs of this lucrative branch of commerce. Then, in 1685, they renewed their claims against the English company, and continued to harass them at all points until, as we have seen, war broke out between the two countries in the year 1690. This war, which seriously hampered the Senegal Company, almost ruined its rivals. Ship after ship, fort after fort, had been captured and destroyed, and the worst of all its calamity was that in 1695 a squadron of French privateers plundered the English post in the Gambia, and then razed it to the ground. To add to these misfortunes, when piping times of peace arrived the hapless



ELEPHANT GUINEA.

Royal African Company found the French settled in that river and claiming an equal share with themselves of the trade which had hitherto been theirs alone.

Finally, Parliament decreed that, in order the better to extend the African trade, it should for fourteen years—from the 24th of June, 1698, to the 24th of June, 1712—be thrown open to all comers, the Royal African Company, in consideration of their keeping up the forts and castles on the coast, being permitted to exact ten per cent. duty on all goods imported into the country throughout which they had up to that date a commercial monopoly. On the expiration of this Act it was renewed, though the Company still continued the chief traders in the country, the situation of their posts giving them an advantage over the private traders. Yet the latter, being able to work at less expense, undersold them in the American slave trade, and were in consequence unscrupulously opposed by those who were still the virtual rulers of the region.

The African Company, on the other hand, complained loudly that the import duties did not cover one half of the cost they had been put to in maintaining the forts and their garrisons. Then the gold trade decayed, and the price of slaves rose to so extravagant a figure that the Company were often in such financial difficulties that the directors obtained from Parliament, in 1730, £10,000 to enable them to pay their way, which subsidy, ostensibly for the support of the forts and factories deemed essential for the protection of the trade, was, with a few exceptions, continued every year until 1752, when the corporation was dissolved and their possessions were vested in a new company.

Henceforward the trade was declared free and open, and, in compensation for the loss of the import duties of ten per cent., Parliament agreed to an annual grant of £10,000 for the maintenance of the castles which figure so frequently in this narrative, and still bulk so largely on the Guinea Coast. The African Company as merchants carried on their business after the old fashion. They were not monopolists, but, like the Hudson Bay Company when their charter was taken away, or the East India Company when interlopers were permitted, they managed to make a very fair profit out of their bargain with the Government. At that time they had about a dozen forts, castles, and settlements scattered along the coast, or rather more than all other European nations had amongst them. But their rivalry with their neighbours continued as bitter as ever, and fighting was not unfrequent with the Dutch, the English as a rule having the best of the contests, which lasted until peace was restored in 1782. Meanwhile, under various pretexts, the Company had been continuous in its applications for Government money. From 1750 to 1807 it received on an average £13,500 a year, and from the latter year to 1821 this subsidy rose to an annual grant of about £23,000.

But in the interval the association was expiring. Competition had abridged its gains, and the impossibility of the slave trade being any longer openly pursued, without other

sources of gain being developed, made it only too willing to retire from so profitless a shore.

And so it came to pass, in 1821, that the Imperial Government took over the Company's forts and settlements, only Cape Coast, Anamaboe, Dixcove, and Accra being retained as fortified places. The rest were permitted to fall into decay. Then came the colonial era of the Guinea Coast, the story of which will afford material for a future chapter in the history of the development of Africa. In course of time the Dutch and the English forts had got rather mixed up—so many had been captured and deserted and repossessed, and so many more had been built in the course of the hot rivalry of former years to intercept each other's trade or to share in it. Thus in Accra (p. 35) there were actually two Governments: the Dutch in what is now called Ussher Town, and the English in James Town, each Government having its own fort. And as the English levied duties upon imported goods, and the Dutch did not, the squabbles over smuggling were as frequent as they were well-founded. Meanwhile the Dutch and Danes abandoned their hold on this part of the world with patriotic reluctance. Little by little, and occasionally, as in the case of the Cape of Good Hope, in huge lumps at a time, their territories beyond the sea had been leaving them. But in 1868 the Hollanders agreed to all places to the east of a line drawn from the Sweet River (near Elmina) to the Ashanti frontier being abandoned to Great Britain, while all to the west of that boundary were to be handed over to Holland. What these were need not be recalled. It was a bad arrangement at best, and was not carried out without hostile demonstrations by the natives, instigated, it is believed, by the officials whose occupation was gone when the pestilential spots which they had administered on the slenderest of salaries were surrendered to England. Accordingly, it did not work well, and in 1872 came to an end, when all the remaining Dutch posts and lands in West Africa were bartered to Great Britain for certain equivalents in the Malay Archipelago.

As for the Danes, they had recognised the inevitable long before that year; for in 1850, Christiansborg at Accra, and the fort of Quittah, which they had held for the best part of two centuries, were sold to Great Britain, who then—for the Brandenburgers, like the Hanseatic merchants and the faint-hearted Swedes, had long given up the attempt to keep their footing—divided with France and Portugal in a small way the ownership of that intertropical region of which the Lusitanian sovereigns still describe themselves as the lords. All the Gold Coast was England's—she had ousted or bartered out every rival.

Whether so feverish a land was, even in the era of its greatest prosperity, worth struggling for, or is, now that its best days are gone, worth retaining, are questions the consideration of which must be reserved until a later period. What we are at present interested in learning is that it was here that Europe first laid hold of Africa, and as the Portuguese territories on the east coast never were anything but colonies in name, and even in Lisbon were not mentioned with pride, it was from this region that Europe first obtained its ideas of Africa, ideas which have mischievously influenced the civilisation of the continent for three centuries, and even yet are not eradicated from the popular corpus of inherited impressions.

It was from this death-dealing shore that the earliest of African explorations started, and the shore to which so many travellers never returned. Hence it was accepted as a typical, instead of an exceptional portion of the continent. This reason alone ought to be our excuse for dwelling at some length upon the early traders of this shore. But it is impossible to understand much of what followed without being aware of the beginnings of African exploitation and exploration, the struggles of the rival nations for a share of Pistol's "golden joys," the evil deeds wrought by the traffic in ivory and men, and the courage, the enterprise, the persistency with which English merchants clung to the establishments which they had

The associations of West Africa.

formed in one of the least inviting parts of the world. For it was in this way—in good and in evil, but always by self-reliance and foresight—that Englishmen did their country's business in far-away lands. The African traders on a small scale, though the beginnings of the one were as large as those of the others, were simply what the East India Company and the Hudson Bay Company were in other parts of the globe. And it is not a little curious to see that, so far as Africa is concerned, Englishmen are returning after three centuries to the fashion in which they began. They are developing it by companies, chartered, encouraged, protected no doubt, supported, it may be, by the Imperial Government, but still simply, in their initiative, associations of traders who venture their money for the glory of their native land, it is to be hoped, but primarily, we may take it, for the filling of their own pockets.

The history of the Guinea companies, which



SECONDEE FORT.

we have traced, affords precedents for what has been done and is doing. It also provides warnings against the rocks upon which some of its successors, separated by so many ages, may split.

**The precedents of the Guinea companies.**

It is, indeed, almost pathetic to read of the eagerness with which different nations struggled for the trade of Guinea. Up to the time of the Revolution,\* the French African Company was allowed an exemption from all duties on merchandise exported to Africa, and from half the customs on all goods imported from Africa, and on all American products bought with the price given for African negroes sold there. The Guinea traders, moreover, were freed from tolls of any kind on their goods passing through France, were entitled to a bounty of thirteen livres on every bondman carried across the Atlantic, and a bounty of twenty livres on every eight ounces of gold-dust brought into France.

In like manner, the thrifter States-General of Holland allowed the Dutch West India Company (for so the African association was called) the following extraordinary aids and immunities. It was entitled to a subsidy of thirty-eight thousand florins per annum, a duty of three per cent. on all merchandise exported to and imported from any place between Newfoundland and Florida, a duty of two per cent. on goods exported to or imported from any place on the continent of America, from Florida to the Orinoco River, including Curaçoa—these percentages amounting to something like one hundred thousand florins per annum. The patient Dutchmen were moreover entitled to a duty of five guilders per last on all ships trading to Cuba, Hispaniola, Jamaica, Puerto Rico, and the other West India Islands, or to any place from the Orinoco to the Straits of Magellan, and “from thence to the Straits of Annian,”† computed at three thousand florins a year. Then there were the “clear profits of the

\* Actually up to the year 1786, when the Senegal Company, by a decree in Council, were ordered to pay 260,749 livres in defrayment of the colonial expenses, though, in addition to many other privileges, they were granted the exclusive right of the slave trade.

† A mythical strait connecting the Atlantic and Pacific, said to have been discovered in about the 58th or 60th parallel of N. latitude by Gaspar de Cortereal. It was in reality an exaggerated account of the Strait of Juan de Fuca, explored nearly three centuries later.



HOUSSA POLICEMEN IN THE BRITISH SERVICE.

colony of Isscape," considered equal to twenty thousand florins; one-third of the net income of the colony of Surinam, estimated at six thousand florins, and all the profits arising from the captures and licences which they were authorised to make upon or grant to such Portuguese ships as came for slaves, a perquisite worth at least ten thousand florins per annum. In short, the Dutch Company received as subsidies—one year with another—two hundred and seventy-one thousand six hundred florins, or about £25,000, which was, of course, in addition to the enormous profits which were for many years made out of their trading operations. Hence, the Parliamentary grants made to the English companies, over which economists now wax indignant, were absolutely necessary to prevent England's tentative hold of the West African shore from being prematurely released.

All this is, however, a tale of the past. There are still plenty of traders in West Africa, some the agents of firms, some on their own account, and many the representatives of

companies. But they have no special privileges, and no forts, or castles, or factories which can in the remotest manner claim this lofty title. Yet the strong places of the old traders were, in many instances, lordly dwelling-places. They were no mere switch-and-daub huts with a feeble stockade, or log shanties, surrounded by a picket of trees, like so many of the Hudson's Bay posts. As any man who visits the Gold Coast can see for himself, most of them were substantial buildings, fortified after the most approved system, equal to a siege of some duration and the assaults of artillery more powerful than the trade muskets of Ashanti or of Fanti.

Cape Coast Castle is not a fortress which could give a creditable account of itself in an encounter with a modern war-ship, but it is not likely to fall before any native force ever likely to be brought against it. Moree, five miles to the eastward, boasts of another fortress in ruins,\* and every nine or ten miles

\* Fort Nassau, built by the Dutch, and their chief post when the Portuguese had Elmina. It was provided with eighteen pieces of ordnance, mounted on four batteries, and garrisoned by seventy or eighty men.

The ruined  
forts of the  
Gold Coast.

along the coast one comes upon massive strongholds, now crumbling into dust—their very names no longer remembered—though to have reared them must have taxed the energies and resources of their architects. Some are still the residences of District Commissioners and other minor colonial officials, but most of them are little better than qualified ruins, shorn of almost every shred of their pristine glory. All of them are built in naturally strong positions, where there are good landing-places, sheltered from the surf, and look as if they had been intended to repel aggression by sea, as well as the less formidable onslaughts of the natives from the landward side (pp. 35, 40, 44, 45, 49, 52, etc.).

Between Elmina and Apollonia, a distance of ninety miles, there are nine uninhabited forts of this description—Vredenburg, Kommandah Fort, Chama Fort, Fort Batenstein at Boutry, Fort Dorothea at Aquidah, Fort Brandenburg at Cape Three Points, Prince's Castle, Fort Elise Carthage at the mouth of the Ankobra River, and Apollonia Fort—and three inhabited ones, Secondee, Dixcove, and Axim.

Vredenburg was a Dutch fort at Kommandah, built in 1688 (p. 45), with batteries mounting twenty-three cannon, though these proved none too many to repulse the attack made upon it by the natives in 1695, which attempt was the origin of the Coomassian War. Close by was an English fort, also with four batteries, and so strong that a Dutch trader, writing in 1700, regrets that it will be impossible to displace these rivals, who were doing much injury to the trade, even had he at his disposal the five thousand pounds' worth of black mercenaries employed in the Coomassian campaign. Chama was another of the Batavian strongholds, known as St. Sebastian to the Portuguese, from whom it was captured; but though it was at the time only walled in by palisades, the English, with their allies the Jabishians, were unable to take it. At Insuma, which the Dutch knew as Dikjeschoptt, the English built a small fort in 1691, after they had several times

disputed the land with the Brandenburgers, who had set up the Elector's flag there. But the natives swindled them so scandalously with sophisticated gold, and were so apt to besiege the residents, that they made little out of it until—so writes Mynheer Bosman, Chief Factor of the Dutch at Elmina—the white men and the black agreed jointly to cheat all the ships that came to trade by putting what in California is known as "bogus dust" upon them. One vessel was in this way defrauded of £1,700, and the trick grew so common that Insuma became "the false mint of Guinea"—the price of the article being about a crown in good gold for forty shillings' worth of false. It was vain to complain to the English chief governor of the coast. For "to complain to him was to go to the devil to be confessed," since this honest gentleman, "participating in the fraud, would by no means help" the swindled captains—a statement that affords a striking picture of the commercial morality of West Africa two centuries ago. Batenstein Fort, at Boutry, was for several years a drain on the Dutchmen's pockets. Dorothea, like Fredericksborg near Pokquesoe and the "fort-house" at Tacrana, belonged to the Prussian (Brandenburg) Company of Embden, which, though chiefly officered by Dutchmen, never did much good on the coast, owing to bad luck and bad management, some of the factors, like "Jan van Laar, an Anabaptist," having "a much better talent at drinking of brandy than at business." But Boutry bore the reputation of being the healthiest place on the coast, just as Chama had the character, up to the date of its surrender by the Dutch, of being the most deadly spot in all that region. Prince's Castle, once a fine place, is now scarcely known, even by name, to residents at places only a few miles away; like so many other places—and several of the forts were destroyed in the wars, never to be rebuilt—it is no longer of use. These castles, built at enormous cost, all the materials, as well as the workmen employed on them, having been brought from Europe,

were garrisoned by trained soldiers, so that, at the most modest calculation, there must, in the palmy days of the Guinea Coast, have been thousands of white men where to-day it would be difficult to number a couple of hundred, or perhaps even a single white soldier, the few troops employed being either men of the so-called West India Regiments, or Houssa policemen, a much more capable set of peace-makers (p. 53).

Everything in that part of the world seems to have been steadily going backward for the last century. The trade routes which the Dutch and Portuguese opened up have been forgotten, or been neglected. Ten miles in the interior is a *terra incognita* to the modern "coaster," and we are only now beginning to re-discover the places out of which every year so much gold was obtained that it is calculated Europe has first and last imported some thirty or forty millions from West Africa alone, while the explorations made in search of slaves and other treasures have been sedulously concealed, and so apathetically followed up that, in spite of all that has been done in the past, West Africa is still a region quite virgin in parts for the explorer anxious to break fresh ground.

And the reason why these lordly castles fell into decay, why whites and negroes have alike deserted the coast, why trade is languishing and fortunes the rarest of acquisitions, is that

the chief articles of commerce on the coast were not dye-woods and ivory, or even gold-dust, but black men and women. The forts were erected for the convenience of the slave trade, and its abolition was the death-knell of this once flourishing region. In short, just as Rome was built by robbers, and the origin of the Australian colonies was a penal settlement, so the first step in the regeneration of Africa was depopulating it by European adventurers, who, whatever else they were, must be pronounced the resettlers of stolen flesh and blood.\*

\* From amid the plethora of literature regarding the operations and trading of the old African companies, the following may be selected: "Reflections and Considerations upon the Constitution and Management of the Trade to Africk from 1600 to 1709 offered to the House of Commons by the Royal African Company"; Appendix to Barbot's "Description of Guinea"; "Answer of the Company of Royal Adventurers Trading into Africa to the Petition of Sir P. Painter, concerning H.M. Plantations in America" (1667); Wilkinson's "Treatise on the Intrigues and Arbitrary Proceedings of the Guiney Company, also how prejudicial they are to the American Planters" (1690); "View of the State of the Trade to Africa" (1708); "Case of Royal African Company, with Supplement" (1730); "Observations on the Trade to Africa" (1748); "African Trade the Pillar and Support of the British Trade in America" (1745); "Importance of the African Company's Forts and Settlements" (1745); "Reasons for Settling the Trade to Africa" (*n.d.*); Astley's "Collection of Voyages and Travels" (1743), vol. ii., p. 158; Bosman's "Guinea" (1720); Ellis's "African Sketches" (1881) and "Land of Fetish" (1883); Reade's "African Sketch-Book" (1873), etc. etc.

## CHAPTER III.

## FORTS AND BOND MEN: THE SLAVE TRADE AND THE SLAVE TRADERS.

A Modern West African Factory—The Bristol-Barque Traders—The Old Fort Traders—Life in Fort James in the Early Part of the Eighteenth Century—What now Remains of the Once Busy Place—The Dangers of the old Fort Traders—The Dutch Forts and the Way they were Conducted—Slaves Latterly the Chief Commerce of West Africa—Rise and Culmination of this Trade—Numbers of Human Beings Exported—Kidnapping—How Brought from the Interior—The Profits of the Slave Trade—The Slave Merchants—A Picture of a Lordly Trader of the Nineteenth Century—The Middle Passage—Humanity in Private Life not Incompatible with Brutality in this Branch of Commerce—Its “Respectability”—How it was Defended from a Political, Economical, and even Moral Point of View—Its Gradual Decline, and Disappearance as a Branch of Foreign Traffic—Reasons for this—Captain Snelgrave Regards it of Benefit to all Concerned, the Slaves Included—Talk in the House of Commons—Dr. Johnson’s Hatred of Slavery and the Slave Traffic—Gradual Restrictions upon it Consequent upon an Outcry in Europe—History of this Agitation.

THE West African fort of the early and the palmier days of the Guinea trade was, we have seen, a more important affair than the modern “factory”—the old name, both in this region and in America, for a trading-post. But such a place is very different from what the modern use of the term would imply. In an African factory there are no tall chimneys, no five-storeyed rows of windows, no “hands,” no screech of steam-whistles, no whirr of treadles, no eternal sough of engines. It is a solitary place of one, or at most two, floors, surrounded by a verandah, and standing in the middle of an inclosure (p. 21). Nothing is manufactured on the place, but everything is sold, from a suit of cast-off uniform to a gill of Hamburg gin; and as the business is done almost entirely by barter—in which the “merchant” (for he would scorn to be called a shopkeeper) prices his trade goods at one hundred per cent. over what he paid, and buys the palm-oil, or kernels, or camwood, in exchange at one half of what they will fetch in Liverpool—trade, when there is any doing and competition is not of the “cut-throat” order, is quite profitable enough to be eagerly contended for.

But nobody is in a hurry. The climate and the abundance of time forbid haste. When customers are reported, Kroo boys—a labouring tribe from Cape Palmas and its vicinity, who are about the only freemen in West Africa who do any work at all—roll the puncheons into the sheds, and the trader or his clerks leisurably

turn out of the hammocks in which they have been dozing under the verandah, or in their rooms over the shop, to inspect the oil which the black men have been gauging, or to “dash”—that is, to “tip”—the owners who, if rivalry is keen, have perhaps been brought in by touts, scattered in his interest along the beach or up the rivers, and to put everybody in a generous mood by free libations of very ardent spirits.

There is also still a good deal of the old “Bristol-barque” trade flourishing on the coast between Cape Palmas and Grand Bassam. Ships are loaded with trade goods, which are calculated to last for a round voyage of from twelve to fifteen months. They are actually floating warehouses, and, during the time they anchor off a part of the coast without factories, barter for whatever is saleable, and send the result home by the mail-steamer, returning themselves when their cargo of cloth and beads, rum and gin, salt, tobacco, and gunpowder is sold out. At one time this way of doing business was more common than now. But it is less frequent than of old, and only profitable under conditions not found on the entire coast of Guinea.

## THE OLD FORT TRADERS.

Last century, or perhaps a little earlier, competition was undoubtedly keen enough. But the traders ashore were altogether a more lordly set of gentlemen than their successors in these duller days. Profits were good, in spite of rivalry, and the men who made money





for the merchants of London or Bristol, of Emblen, Amsterdam, or Marseilles, insisted on being lodged after a more sumptuous fashion than serves the less handsomely though still liberally paid inheritors of their trade and traditions. It was an age of corporations, so that whether the factors and writers, or by whatever name they were called, were Britons or Brandenburgs, Danes or Dutchmen, in the employ of the Hanseatic merchants, or of the French, or of the Swedes, they were all in the pay of a great association, who loved to do business after a grandiose fashion. At some forts there was a better, at others a worse, table. But at none of them were the staff badly fed or badly drunken, and, as occasion served, they had all the luxuries that the country could supply.

One instance will afford an idea of the kind of garrison a trading factory of those times supported. The date is the beginning of last century, and the post is Fort James, in the Gambia River, which, after various changes or fortune, ended its days of profitableness in the hands of the English. It was built on James' Island in mid-stream, here three or four miles broad, and seems to have been a strong place, as strong places were looked upon in 1730, when Francis Moore, Writer in the service of the Royal African Company, having nothing better to pass away the time, wrote a description of it—such description not being, however, a part of the duties he had to perform for a yearly wage of thirty pounds and "the run of his teeth." There were three chief merchants—the first of whom acted as governor, the second as warehouse-keeper, and the third as accountant—eight factors, thirteen writers or clerks, a wax-refiner, a tanner, a surgeon, three surgeon's mates, a surveyor, two gardeners, two masons, an interpreter or "linguister," a steward, an armourer, a "bombay,"\* two coopers, a joiner, a carpenter, a purveyor, and a gunner. In addition, there was a garrison, consisting of a captain, a sergeant, a drummer, and thirty-three private soldiers, though a few years earlier, when the Dutch

\* Bombardier.

were making themselves disagreeable, the military inmates of the fort numbered from sixty to seventy whites, beside "groomettes," or free black Sepoys. Then to wait on all this company of Europeans, or people passing as such, there were thirty-two "castle slaves."

Besides the establishment described, there were sloops, shallops, canoes, and boats, with their crews, and eight out-factories with black servants belonging to them, besides the white factors, writers, and "linguisters." These included Joar and Jilifri, where a large business was done in beads, beeswax, ivory, slaves, and gold. The gold was brought to the forts and factories, not usually in gold-dust as elsewhere, but in small bars, big in the middle and turned round into rings, worth from ten to forty shillings each. This commodity was traded by Mandingo merchants known as Joncoes, who, however, were extremely reticent as to the country from which they came. The same people brought down the ivory, the slaves, and the beeswax, derived from domestic bees, which is still an article of commerce in that part of the country. The method of bartering was then, as it is practically still, by "bars," a bar being a certain quantity of goods of any kind equal in value to a bar of iron when the traders first came to the Gambia, for iron being the article most esteemed became the standard by which everything else was appraised. Thus a pound of fringe, two pounds of gunpowder, an ounce of silver, and a hundred gun-flints were each worth a bar. Again, twenty leaves of tobacco were considered a bar of tobacco, and a gallon of well-watered spirits a bar of rum, a bar being reckoned, about the close of the last century, at an average of two shillings. Thus a slave priced at £15 was said to be worth 150 bars. Hence every species of trading goods was reckoned in this currency, which rose or fell in money value "according to the goods asked for." "Spread-eagle dollars," crystal beads, iron bars, brass pans, and "arrongoes" were called the "heads of the goods," because they were the dearest. Thus, when the factors in the forts made their bargains with the

native dealers, they always agreed how many of the heads of the goods they would give for each slave. This might be three or four if the slave were worth forty or fifty, but when this article was dearer—worth, say, eighty bars apiece—then the factor had to give five, and sometimes six, of the heads for every slave, when an assortment of the goods by bars of different kinds which came up to the price was made out.

The factors of the old companies were rather fond of writing their experiences, and of exposing the conduct and character of their rivals; so that we possess a tolerably clear account of the life of those pioneers of African colonisation, or at least, of African commerce. The larger forts were ordered with great regularity, though naturally the steadiness of the officials depended a good deal upon the character of their superiors. In Fort James there were several tables, the writers dining at what was known as the Second. They had fresh beef in plenty, an ox being killed every day; and as the natives brought in hosts of fowls for sale, those who did not care for beef could have chickens at their choice. All the tables were freely supplied with vegetables out of the Company's garden at Jilifri; flour bread was made freshly every day; and those who liked oysters—in West Africa a muddy mollusc at best—could pick what he pleased off the shore at low water "at the north-north-west" part of the island. Everybody had wine and brandy by paying for them, and a reasonable share of beer when there was sufficient among the stores, so that, the climate and the isolation apart, the Royal African Company's people were not in such evil case as many colonial officials at the present hour.

In the days of its prosperity, Fort James—which was named after the Duke of York, afterwards James II.—was indeed a much more stately establishment than the woe-begone capital of the present colony of the Gambia, to which the remnant of its officials were transferred when the old Company expired in bankruptcy. For when the trade of

the Gambia was thrown open, the business done here was every year less and less. By the time Mungo Park visited it (1795), its gross exports amounted to no more than £20,000; and twenty-five years later, the rights of the Company having been transferred to the Crown, Fort James ceased to be occupied, Bathurst being considered a better site for the colonial capital. Thus a place which had been taken and retaken, battered down and rebuilt, was permitted to fall a prey to time and the African races.

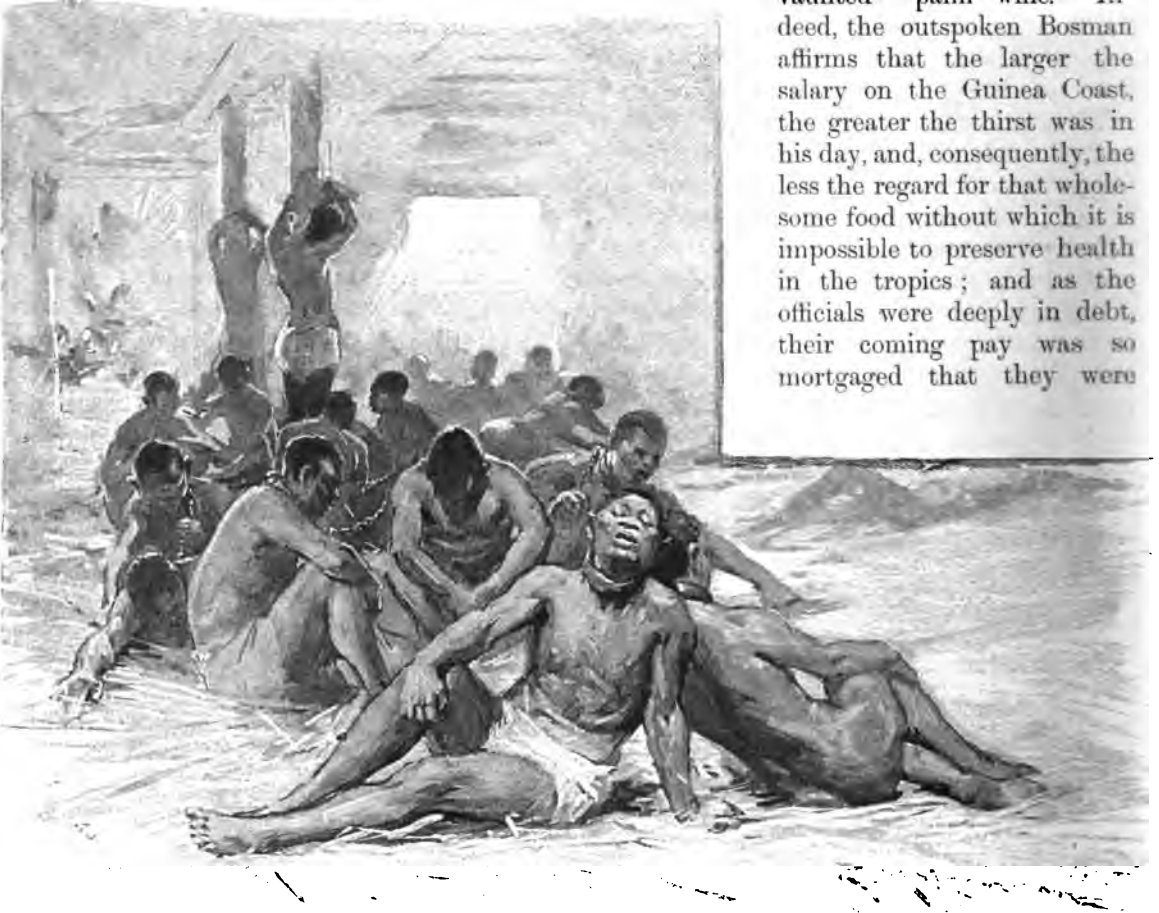
The curious pilgrim who visits it nowadays sees little evidence of its former grandeur, except in the solid lime and ashlar masonry, cracked and fissured by the rank tropical vegetation which has insinuated itself into every crevice. Walls have fallen here and there, others have tumbled into dust, and everywhere huge pieces have been riven asunder in search of those treasures which for no reason in the world are so persistently believed to be hidden in every old building along the African coast. But the great quadrangle can still be traced, and the lozenge-shaped bastions, each of them lined with good brickwork, were still standing when Captains Burton and Cameron examined the spot some years ago. The horse-shoe redoubts, three in number, "with batteries along the palisades from one to another," described by Francis Moore, were there, with four old iron cannon out of the sixty or seventy which once upon a time presented so formidable a front to Monsieur de Gennes, who destroyed it in 1695; to Captain de la Roque, who captured it in 1702, and paid for his victory with his life; and to the squadron of privateers under M. Parent, who attacked it for the last time in 1709. But the ancient slave-barracoons, the dwelling-houses, the barracks, the stores, the salt-house,\* the "linguist's room," the cotton-house, the powder magazine, and the rest of the places marked on Moore's plan, are all more or less in ruins, striking monuments of the rise, culmination, and decline of

\* Salt was a great article of trade with the interior tribes.

the old commerce of the region in which England made her first attempt to gain a footing on the African continent (p. 35).

In the smaller forts there was less dignity, and possibly more dissipation. Indeed, on the

the fermented juice of the palm, which, by the exercise of some perseverance, is quite capable of intoxicating, though it requires a longer training than most white men are capable of undergoing to acquire a taste for a liquor so like soapsuds as this much vaunted "palm-wine." Indeed, the outspoken Bosman affirms that the larger the salary on the Guinea Coast, the greater the thirst was in his day, and, consequently, the less the regard for that wholesome food without which it is impossible to preserve health in the tropics; and as the officials were deeply in debt, their coming pay was so mortgaged that they were



SLAVE BARRACON.

Gambia we read more than once in the records of factors dying of drinking, accounted heavy even in an age very prone to look upon the wine when it was red, and of offences against the canons of conventionality openly committed. Drinking was indeed the bane of those old traders. The factors drank freely, and the soldiers and many members of the staff often laid out their pay the moment it was received either in brandy or in

compelled to live and die on the Guinea Coast. But, according to the soldier's maxim, that a "bloody war and a sickly season" are his best friends, the factor did not object to the unhealthiness of the region, since it kept up the steady flow of promotion among those who survived, while the dead were, of course, beyond the reach of any anxiety touching a rise in place and pay. For, so argues the old Dutch factor, "if men



BARTERING FOR SLAVES AT A FORT ON THE GUINEA COAST.

lived here as long as in Europe, it would not be worth while to come hither, and a man would be obliged to wait too long before he got a good post, without which nobody will return rich from Guinea, the chief persons there being the only people who can lay up anything." The English forts were, according to contemporary opinion, the worst of all the European posts for indulgence in drunkenness, and the most slovenly. When Dutch posts were in their vicinity, the Englishmen were apt, in spite of all agreements to the contrary, to "greedily entertain" all the deserters from their rivals, so that in time many of the British posts were manned by the scum of a class at no time the most desirable members of any sort of society. These soldiers were permitted to drink to any extent, as their officers had an interest in the profits derived from the sale of a "liquor made of brandy, water, lime-juice, and sugar," for which the men paid twice its value. "And those who spend but little money that way are sure to be very well beaten, they taking no care whether the soldier at pay-day saves gold enough to buy victuals, for it is sufficient if he have but spent it in punch; by which excessive tippling and sorry feeding most of the garrison look as if they were hag-ridden."

It is likely enough that this tale was quite true; for during our occupation of Tangier, Captain Kirk is affirmed to have paid his "lambs" in liquor, out of which he had a heavy profit, and, in consequence, had to parade them very early in the morning, since at a later hour in the day they were too drunk to be disciplined. So besotted, indeed, were the English traders by devotion to Bacchus, combined with an equally inordinate addiction to flesh, that not a year passed without a superior officer dying, while the mortality among the factors was too great to be kept count of. Most of the traders were addicted to other weaknesses than the bottle. Some lived pretty much after the native fashion, so far as polygamy was concerned. A certain Edward Barter, a mulatto, more powerful on the Guinea coast than any three white men, pretended to

be a Christian, and could read and write. But though lawfully married in England, he had eight wives "in the country"; and, our informant adds, this compromising fact in no way detracted from the esteem in which Mr. Barter's moral character was held by his English associates, "since most of their chief officers or governours follow the mulatto's example pretty close; for I believe most of their present agents have about six." This was at Cabo Corso—that is, Cape Coast—upon the Danish Mount (p. 40).

But the old factors had something more to do than to drink punch, eat beef, and marry "country wives," as the phrase is, to express a somewhat similar practice still in vogue, or even to buy wax and ivory, and gold, and "negro servants"; for they had often to defend their forts, and their own lives and their employers' property, against hostile onsets by the warlike tribes of the interior, or even of their own immediate neighbourhood. Thus the Anteans captured the English post at Zakonde. Christiansborg, the Danish fort at Accra (p. 49), a square building mounting twenty guns, was in 1693, owing to the garrison being weakened by death, captured by the natives. For a few days the negroes rioted in plunder, and the old chief, dressed in the Danish commandant's uniform, and addressed by his name, mimicked to the best of his ability the language and acts of his prototype. "He thundered at all the English and Zealandish interlopers, by way of salute, with his cannon, as if there could never be an end to the powder." Then two Danish men-of-war, aided by gifts and the intercession of the Dutch, succeeded in regaining the place. Such mishaps did not, however, always end so happily. There is, for example, a tragical tradition connected with Fort Elise Carthago, a deserted post at the mouth of the Ankobra River. This place was in Dutch hands when it was besieged by the natives of the surrounding country; who fancied that the commandant had a large quantity of gold ready for shipment. Knowing, probably from sad experience, of some similar mishaps elsewhere,

The dangers  
of the old  
fort traders.



CAPTURE OF CHRISTIANSBORG CASTLE BY THE NEGROES IN 1683 (p. 62).



the fate which would await them, the stout-hearted Hollander fought until all his lead was expended and his garrison shot down one by one. Seeing that he could hold out no longer, and could expect no mercy from his savage enemies, he determined, as many a desperate man in like case has done before, to sell his life dearly. With that intention he utilised the last hours at his disposal by placing several barrels of gunpowder under the "palaver," or audience-hall, of the fort, and lighting a slow match, which he placed in communication with the powder. He then surrendered at discretion, and invited the eager negroes to come into the hall to receive the gold supposed to be there. Scarcely, however, had the place been filled before the mine exploded, blowing the fort and all within it into atoms. This story is told by Colonel Ellis, and is, no doubt, historical; for the place was never rebuilt, and its ruined walls, now almost covered with bush, alone remain to commemorate this tragedy of the Guinea trade.

Those old Dutch forts were on quite as lordly a scale as their English rivals, and, if we are to believe the Dutch, much better managed. At St. George del Mina, their principal place on the Gold Coast (p. 45), there was a general, or chief governor, a chief factor, and chief fiscal, with very fine warehouses for storing the goods brought from Europe, and "the trade" which they carried off in return. Gold was the chief article bartered for here, and in those days must have been a profitable affair for all concerned, since it was reckoned that, early in the last century, as much as £230,000 of the precious metal was every year exported from the Gold Coast. This was brought down by the negroes, who, after it was weighed, assayed, and purified—and, as sham dust was very common, it was most carefully examined—received the stipulated value in goods. No credit was given except at the factor's own risk. These negroes were usually the slaves of their masters; but, for policy's sake, the head of the caravan was always treated by the white traders not as a serf, but as a

great merchant, in case he might take offence, and go to the English, Danes, or Brandenburgers.

In addition to the dignitaries mentioned, the Dutch had in the forts a garrison of soldiers, out of whose ranks, when qualified, clerks and other assistants were sometimes chosen. The assistant received sixteen gulden a month, and twenty gulden more for board wages, so that their pay was pretty much the same as that of the English. His first step in promotion was to be an under-factor, with twenty gulden a month, and, his chief business being to buy gold, he required to exercise much shrewdness, not to say honesty. Accordingly, when a sub-factor was noticed to be inclined to extravagance, he was apt to be watched very closely, since the factor was responsible to the company for his intromissions. If, however, he behaved well, and the season was reasonably unhealthy, the under-factor would soon become a factor, and be sent to take charge of an outpost, at a salary of thirty-six gulden a month, and an allowance of ten gulden for a servant or two, besides the usual twenty gulden for his food. If provided with good interest, he might even rise to command one of the minor forts, with double this salary, or become chief factor at Elmina, an official who was the second person on the coast, with a stipend of one hundred gulden a month and allowances; though the governor-general, with three hundred gulden a month and corresponding perquisites, was a dignitary the appointment of whom the directors in Holland usually reserved to themselves.

Then there was the chief fiscal, with fifty gulden a month, and ten gulden for a servant, besides the liberty of the general's table, and one-third of all the gold seized from unlawful traders or interlopers, whether whites or negroes, and one-third of the fines imposed upon them, or upon offending officials of the company. The bookkeeper-general at Elmina was also a person of considerable consequence, with emoluments amounting to one hundred and five gulden per month. Under him were an assistant, or secretary, and the garrison book-



keeper, who though not paid a high salary, had the privilege of selling by auction the effects of all persons who died upon the coast, at a

salary of twenty gulden, the tenth of all fines, did his best to enlarge the number of them by spying on the other officials for the purpose of detecting any breach of the rules, and was held in contempt accordingly.

Lastly, there was a chaplain, with a monthly stipend of one hundred gulden, and a clerk, at a fifth of the salary; the first having, in addition, an allowance of ten gulden for a servant, and a place at the governor's table. The States-General of Holland of those days, as Dugald Dalgetty remembered with a wry face, were strict disciplinarians as regards the outward observances of morality. And, if the Gold Coast officials were licentious, it was not

the blame of their masters, who paid the parson the same salary as the chief factor of Elmina. Every man capable of getting out of bed had, on pain of being fined twenty - five

stivers, to attend church every day, except on Sundays and Thursdays, when the smart-money for absence was doubled. In all, Elmina possessed in its palmy days a director-general, a chaplain, a fiscal, a chief factor—and sometimes two or three in addition—seven or eight factors, nine or ten sub-factors, eighteen or twenty assistants, a warehouse-keeper, an accountant-general, the under-bookkeeper, the garrison accountant, the clerk of the Church, the auditor or “informer,” besides the soldiers and their officers. The supreme control of the coast was in the hands of the director-general, who, in cases of emergency, asked the advice of the Council, which consisted of himself, the fiscal, the chief factor, the ensign or bannerman (in command of the garrison), and sometimes the accountant-general, though, as a rule, the only result of



COCOA-NUT PALM. (*Cocos nucifera*.)

commission of four per cent. on the sum they brought. The officer held in least esteem in the Dutch forts was the under-fiscal, auditor, or actually informer, who receiving, besides his

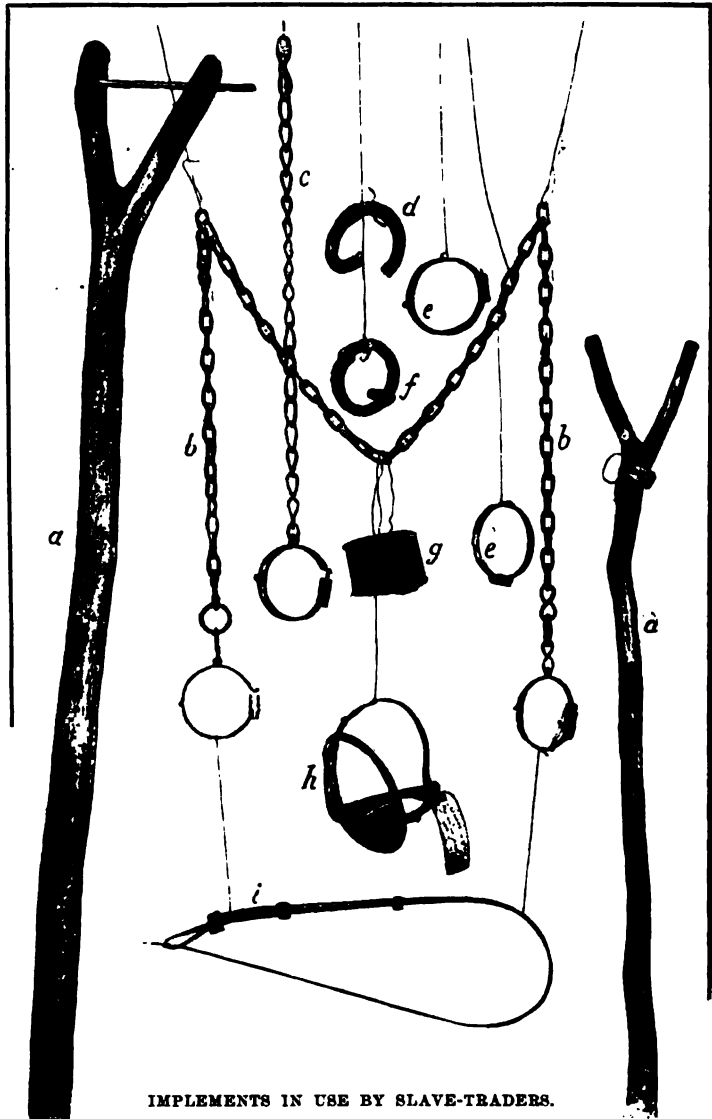
their meetings was to register the opinion of the supreme ruler, on whose goodwill all the members were dependent, and to divide amongst them the responsibility of acts often arbitrary, and sometimes perilous for him to do alone.

## THE SLAVE TRADE.

But whatever were the commodities bartered on the Guinea Coast, the one which latterly threw all others into the shade was slaves. Slavery has always existed in Africá. Bondage was invariably the lot of prisoners captured in war who were not sacrificed or eaten, and long before the whites traded to Africa the negro kings trafficked with the Moors of the Barbary States in the surplus of their own subjects who had committed crimes, or in those of their neighbours who had fallen into their hands in the course of those inter-tribal hostilities which then, as now, were a common feature of savage life. But the bondage of black man to black man, or even of the negroes to the Arabs, was mild compared to that which was the lot of the sons of Ham when the American planters, finding that white men could not, and red men would not, cultivate their cane and cotton fields, deported them to labour in the New World.

In Africa they were at home, among men of a kindred race, with the possibility of obtaining their freedom by some turn of fortune, or, in any case, not regarded as so infinitely inferior to their masters that there were ethnologists ready to pronounce the swart labourers who arrived by the ship-load from Bonny

and Whydah and the Congo to be only a superior species of chimpanzee. In Africa the slave of one day might be the master



### IMPLEMENTS IN USE BY SLAVE-TRADERS.

(By permission of the British and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society.)

a, a, The Yoke or Gorse; b, c, Chains used to fasten slaves; d, Iron ring welded on to limb of a slave, which has to be severed by a chisel in order to be removed; e, Fetters; f, Rope used to bind slaves; g, Iron Collar; h, Helmet used for gagging slaves, with piece of iron to force tongue down; i, Curbash or whip made of rhinoceros hide.

of another, as in Morocco, to this hour, the black bondwoman may become the mother of an Emperor, and the black bondman the commander of an army, the governor of

a province, or the head of a religious sect, as influential as the Sultan himself. In America, on the contrary, it was seldom that the slave could attain freedom, even under the most degrading conditions.

Among the many crimes that history lays to the charge of the British nation is the circumstance that an Englishman

**The rise and growth of the African slave trade.**

was the first individual who saw in the buying and selling of Africans a source of gain greater than the traffic in gold-dust and ivory. This personage was the celebrated Sir John Hawkins, who, in 1562, "ran" the first English cargo of slaves to the West Indies, an offence against humanity which he scarcely expiated by his doughty deeds in after days, when, with Drake, he fought against the Armada at home, and perished off Puerto Rico in an unsuccessful expedition against the Spaniards abroad. But, in reality, the Portuguese and Spaniards set the example, which Hawkins merely imitated. As early as 1503, African slaves were working in the mines of Hispaniola, Mexico, and Peru, or cultivating the soil, a capacity in which they were found more manageable than as toilers underground. But it was not until 1517 that the commerce in human beings was fully established, Charles V. having granted to Lebrera, a Fleming, the exclusive privilege of importing 4,000 slaves every year, a monopoly which the concessionnaire disposed of for 25,000 ducats to the Genoese merchants. The Portuguese and Spaniards never intermitted their activity in this dreadful traffic, though other nations soon ran rivalry with them; among these the English were not long in taking the lead, and they continued, until the trade was abolished, to be the principal dealers in human beings between Africa and America.

From 1680 to 1786 fully 2,130,000 negroes were imported into English colonies, Jamaica in the course of eighty years absorbing 610,000. In one year, 1793—and it was not an exceptional one—the different European Powers landed in the New World 74,000 slaves, those

brought by the British being 38,000; while in 1771 there sailed from England to Africa 192 ships provided with accommodation for 47,146 negroes. At a later date the traffic rather increased than diminished. Soon Brazil alone took an average of 78,000 and Cuba 60,000 per annum, though this did not include those rescued by cruisers after the trade had been declared illegal, those thrown into the sea to avoid capture, or those who died during the passage. As late as 1830, 150,000 human beings were carried every year across the Atlantic and sold as bondmen, in spite of the fact that all nations except Spain, Portugal and Brazil had made the trade penal. This was Sir Fowell Buxton's estimate. Captain Maclean—the husband of the hapless "L. E. L."—who as Governor of the Gold Coast in 1834 was in a good position to ascertain the truth, estimated the number carried off in that year from the Bights of Benin and Biafra at 140,000. Four years later there were on that coast, under Portuguese colours, 200 slave-vessels; and my late friend, the venerable James McQueen, who for many years was the link between the old and the modern students of African geography, estimated from personal observations made in 1837 that 196,146 men and women were carried from their homes to a lifelong slavery in Brazil and the Spanish colonies. Again, if the value of the Manchester goods exclusively manufactured for the most reprehensible branch of "the Guinea trade" is made the basis of the calculation, allowing £4 as the average cost-price of each slave, less than sixty years ago, exclusive of the thousands sent to Persia, Turkey, Arabia, and the Mohammedan States of Africa, or owned by the negro potentates, 250,000 is not too high an estimate of the enforced emigration by which every twelve months Africa—and almost solely the region now under consideration—was drained.

The wonder was not that Africa did not progress in civilisation, or that it was, over vast fertile regions, thinly populated, but that it was not turned into a desert. In reality, nothing shows the recuperative character of





ARAB SLAVE RAID (p. 67)



the negro races, their enormous vitality, compared with the American Indians and other savage peoples, more than the fact that in a few years the country recovered—as it will recover still more rapidly in the near future—this ceaseless bleeding in the shape of the deportation of its youngest and strongest inhabitants. For there was no market for old men and women, weaklings, or young children. In the slave raids the able-bodied alone were taken; the rest were knocked on the head. And it was by such murderous raids that most of the slaves sold to the white men were obtained. It was not often that the latter themselves stole the negroes, though even of that, in earlier times at least, they were much less innocent than the excellent Mr. Norris\* would have us believe.

For Herr Wadström, who in 1787 and 1788 made a journey to the Coast of Guinea, affirms in the most positive manner that in places where there were no settlements Europeans often lay in ambush for the natives, seized them and kept them in confinement until they could be shipped off to the colonies.† This knavery, therefore, seldom came to the notice of their honest countrymen, who would have regarded with indignation “private pillage,” while ready enough to profit by that undertaken in a public way. Such dishonourable traders seem to have been the forerunners of the South Sea “blackbirders”; for penetrating up the great river in search of business, they either invited the natives on board on the pretence of buying, or insisted on hostages being delivered up as security for their good behaviour—black traders or black hostages running a parlously small chance of ever seeing the village again if, peradventure, the wind served when these transactions were approaching a close. Such an “interloper” naturally never visited that river or that part of the coast again, though the next vessel

which arrived without suspicion of the villainy of its predecessor was apt to pay the penalty of his crime (p. 60). But no scruple was entertained regarding the natives kidnapping each other. Such stolen goods were legitimate merchandise. It was, indeed, an everyday occurrence for blacks to be entrapped into slavery, even by the people with whom they and their tribe were on terms of great cordiality.

But it took a long time for a negro chief to “fill an invoice” for four or five hundred slaves with such petty pilferings of human merchandise. He had to resort to stronger measures and to theft on a more wholesale scale. In the first place, all the prisoners and all the criminals in the tribe were sold into this kind of penal servitude for life, and it is certain that offences multiplied in a direct ratio to the demand for saleable offenders of this sort. It might also occasionally happen, as has happened in Morocco in our own day, that during times of famine the wretched natives would barter their freedom for the certainty of having something to eat, and, as is still the case in most parts of Africa, an insolvent debtor became the property of his creditor. But the very chance of obtaining prisoners encouraged quarrels among the slavery kings; and when no cause for hostilities existed, except that there were several slave-ships waiting for a cargo, a royal broker (and the chief was generally the principal merchant) would, without hesitation, fall upon a neighbouring tribe in order to supply the number of “servants” whom he had agreed to furnish. Latterly, such raids became the regular mode of obtaining prisoners, with the result that the internecine quarrels for which Africa has ever been notorious grew more and more truculent and continuous, and anything like legitimate commerce was impossible. To this day—or at least, until very recently—on the frontier behind Sierra Leone, Mendis or Kossais men may be often met with, armed with swords and spears, going about in couples hunting for slaves. If asked what they are doing, they answer, without hesitation, Colonel

\* “Memoirs of the Reign of Bossa Ahádee, King of Dahomy, an inland country of Guiney, to which are added the author’s journey to Abomey, the capital, and a short account of the African slave trade” (1789), p. 172.

† “Observations on the Slave Trade, and a Description of some part of the Coast of Guinea” (1789), p. 18.

Ellis tells us, that they are wanting to try to catch somebody, and they hold up the roll of braided cord which they carry to bind their captives as a proof that they are not common agriculturists, but *bond fide* slave-hunters. The slaves thus secured are, of course, not exported—for there being no market for them across the sea, there are now no purchasers on the African side—but carried across British territory and sold in the Sherbro country, whence they are finally disposed of to the Mohammedan rice-growers of the rivers between Sierra Leone and the Gambia.\*

Comparatively few slaves were drawn from the coast itself. The shore tribes were the middlemen, who obtained them from the

negotiations with the tribes so as to secure their custom in the near future.

Yet these journeys, made for the advancement of the least commendable object, helped directly to open up Africa, and by publishing to the world, through the agency of the explorers who followed, some of the horrors of this traffic in flesh and blood, conduced to its total abolition.

The agents who brought them to the coast were known as "slatees," and the gangs in which they travelled as "coffles." Both were infamous—so infamous, indeed, that though one might have imagined that it would have been to the interest of the owner to take care of his merchandise, the hardships of the journey were so great for years that the routes of the slave-gangs were marked by whitened skeletons of wretched captives, badly fed, heavily manacled, and cruelly treated, who had dropped by the way and been left where they fell to die or be eaten alive by wild beasts (pp. 65, 72, 73).

After reading the voluminous narratives of early travellers who were familiar with the slave trade, the evidence laid before the various Committees of Parliament which sat on the subject, and many facts obtained from later journeys with the Arabs in an opposite direction, it seems to us that there is no exaggeration in affirming that thirty-six per cent. of every "coffle" of slaves perished on the march to the coast, not to mention the horrors the survivors endured during the period they were shut up in barracoons waiting the arrival of a ship (p. 60), or the still more terrible agonies they had to bear when packed in the hold during the "middle passage" from Africa to America.

Yet it must not be supposed for a moment that the men who were engaged in this traffic were accounted anything but highly **The slave-merchants.** respectable merchants. It was in the first place extremely lucrative. Bristol and Liverpool fattened on it. Most of the "warmest" merchants were interested in it, and it is safe to say that only the most active, courageous, and enterprising skipper had a chance of commanding a ship fitted

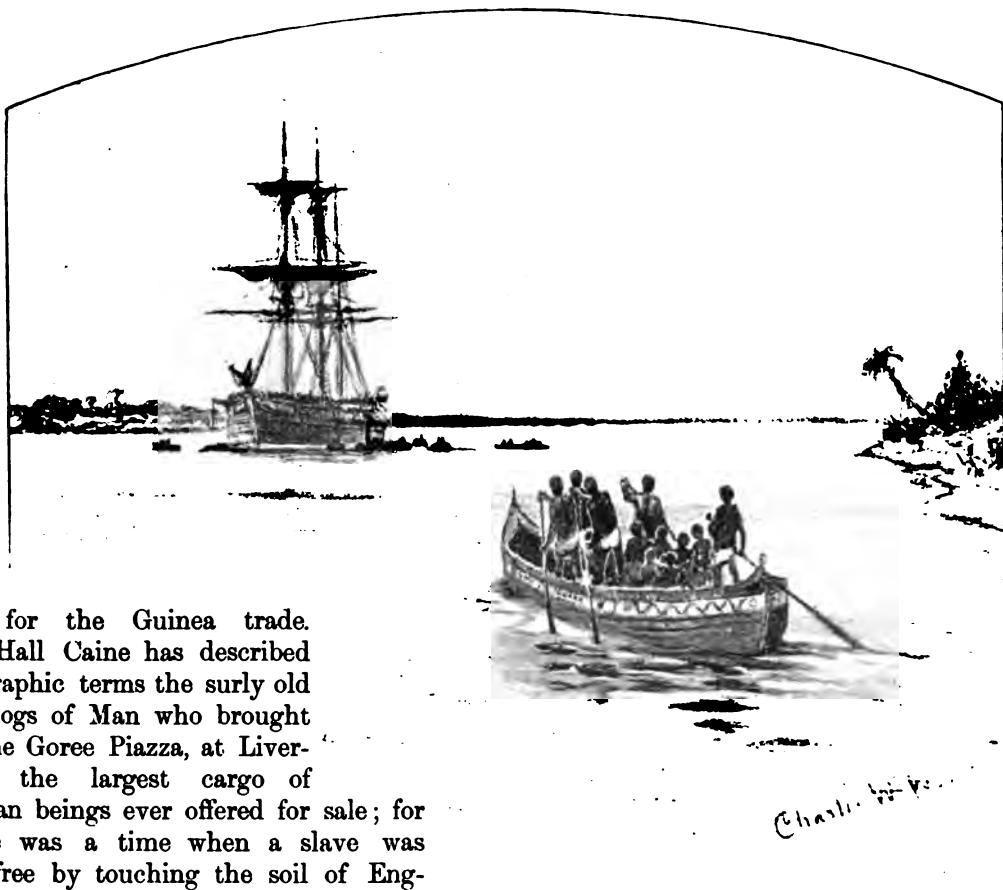


SIR T. POWELL BUXTON.

(From the Portrait by Sir George Hayter.)

interior people, and found their profit in selling them to the whites. Higher up the rivers, and wherever there were fortified trading-posts, the slave-merchants dealt directly with the agents of the chiefs and caravans who brought them from the East, though it was rare for the white merchants to penetrate far up the water-ways, and when they did so it was either to scan the resources of the country or to open up friendly

\* "West African Islands" (1885), p. 119.



out for the Guinea trade. Mr. Hall Caine has described in graphic terms the surly old sea-dogs of Man who brought to the Goree Piazza, at Liverpool, the largest cargo of human beings ever offered for sale; for there was a time when a slave was not free by touching the soil of England. There were four men—a sad quartet. One of them had only one arm and an iron hook, another had only one arm and one eye, a third had only one arm and a stump, a fourth was covered with scars from the iron of the chains which a slave had worn for twelve months at Barbadoes. “Just about enough humanity in the four to make one complete man, but with vigour enough, fire enough, heart enough—I daren’t say soul enough—in their dismembered old trunks to make ten men apiece; born searovers, true sons of Orry, their blood half brine.” Some of them, indeed, were—in their way—very excellent men; it was only when the trade became disreputable that the captain and crew shared in the infamy attaching to it, though—we venture to think—at no time were they very pleasant-mannered gentlemen. “Is this the great Mr. Pope?” was the exclamation

SLAVER ENTICING NATIVES ON BOARD.

of one on being presented to the weazened little author of the “Dunciad.” “Zounds! I have bought better men, body and soul, in the Bight of Benin for fifteen pieces of eight.”

But the blacks were to be obtained in early days, before competition had become so keen, for a great deal less than that. When M. Dancourt made his voyage in 1682,\* the price for a prime slave was ten francs, and, as the chattel was saleable in a Christian country for a hundred crowns,† the profit was considerably

\* “Voyage to the Canaries, Cape Verd, and the Coast of Africa, under the command of M. Dancourt.” Translated from the French of M. le Nacre by Edmund Goldsmid (1887). p. 35.

† The crown, or “Ecu,” varied in value from six francs or livres to three francs, the average worth of it about that period.



more than the 200 per cent. at which it was estimated at its worst-paying era. A fair—indeed, a very good—slave was then to be purchased for four or five jars of brandy, though the expense of transporting the merchandise to the auction-blocks in Virginia, or Louisiana, or Rio, or the West Indies, or even to snug New York, which in those days had not quite eschewed the “peculiar institution,” any more than had the Mother Country, was greater than his first cost on the shores of Senegal. At the Isle of St. Louis the ordinary articles given in exchange for hides, ivory, gum, and, we presume, for negroes, were linen, cotton, copper, pewter, iron, brandy, and “trifles of glass,” which resulted in a profit of 800 per cent., the cost and risk of carrying home the stuff being less than in the case of slaves. In 1859 the Portuguese, who dealt surreptitiously in slaves from the Congo region, we learn from a memorandum prepared by an American who aided that year in landing a cargo on the coast of Cuba, though he is mistaken in thinking that his was “the last slave-ship,” paid for men and women after something like the following tariff:—The trader had in the first place to “dash” the chief of the tribe among whom he settled for the privilege of erecting a barracoon, which, being built, was carefully protected by the members of the tribe constituting themselves its self-appointed guardians. A scale of prices was then agreed upon for negroes, according to age and sex. This averaged four yards of calico, one flint-lock musket, one six-pound keg of coarse gunpowder, one two-gallon keg of rum, some beads, and brass wire; in all, goods worth about thirty-four shillings for each black captured and landed in the barracoon by the tribe from their weaker neighbours. The tariff had been lower until within a few years prior to 1859, “when competition increased them” to the rates mentioned, a cynical commentary on the efficiency of the blockading squadron.

Numbers died on the way to the coast, many more while waiting a customer in the barracoons, and a large percentage while packed in the hold of the slave-ships making

“the middle passage.” As soon as they arrived from the interior the slaves were examined as to their physical condition by the surgeon attached to the factories, who arranged them in classes according to their state. Each serf was then branded with the name or arms of the owner, in order to prevent the “slatees” from exchanging them for worse, and also as a certificate of good quality, certain dealers or companies being noted for the grade of negroes whom they exported. Women were always one-fourth cheaper than men, though by dint of long practice there was never any difficulty in arriving at the value of the different lots (p. 61).

To save the expense of keeping them, at a charge of about twopence a day, they were usually sent on board at the **The Middle Passage** earliest possible moment, stark naked, the owner having stripped them of every rag they possessed, and in this condition they made the voyage, unless, indeed, the captain was charitable enough to supply some garment for each of them. As six or seven hundred were often shipped in one vessel, careful stowage was imperative: and assuredly no space was lost.

The Dutch boasted that their slavers were always cleaner than those of other nations. But none of them had much of which to boast. The stench in all was frightful when the hatches were taken off and the slave-decks aired. As the belief of the captives was that they were being taken to the white man's country to be eaten, with such a prospect before them mutiny was common among a people naturally ferocious and reckless of their lives. Not unfrequently ships have been captured, the crew murdered, and the craft run ashore by the slaves, while the cases in which revolts, sometimes caused by the sailors ill-using the wretched people under their control, were suppressed after a sanguinary struggle fill a large portion of every slaver's log-book. They were fed twice a day, and in fair weather allowed to come on deck, and on some ships they were served with pipes and tobacco, it being the object of the captain to

land his cargo in as good order as possible, every negro being credited to him at a commission of so much a head, the officers and crew also sharing in the profits of the enterprise.

It was only when the trade became an offence against the law of nations that the sufferings of the slaves grew atrocious. For the aim of the master was to pack as many as possible on board his vessel, the peril of making one run being only half of what was entailed in making two. In case the cruiser ran the slaver hard, and a prison cell or the yard-arm began to look perilously near, the captain never hesitated to save his own life by throwing the negroes overboard. This has been denied; but it happened within the memory of men still living. Thus, in 1831 the *Black Joke* and *Fair Rosamond* chased two slavers into the Bonny River; but finding it impracticable to escape in this direction, the slavers ran into a creek and began deliberately to toss their living cargo to the sharks, and before the cruisers could reach them had thus disposed of the greater number. A Spanish slaver, when captured, had made every preparation for blowing up the three hundred and twenty-five captives lying in the hold; and during another chase of a Spanish slaver by an English ship, the crew of the former noticed the other busily dropping casks overboard. Each cask was found to contain from one to two slaves. Instances of abominable cruelties, almost incredible were the stories not fully authenticated, might be quoted had these any direct bearing on the theme of our volumes, and the harder run was the slaver the more heartless was the harshness with which the victims were treated (p. 76).

It would, however, be a mistake to suppose that the captains engaged in the slave trade were monsters of iniquity any more than their employers were men of low commercial standing. On the contrary, many of them were much respected in private life; and as none but extremely smart men were engaged for a service which demanded great courage, shrewdness, and resource, it is certain

that the riff-raff of Liverpool and Bristol were not shipped for the Guinea trade. They followed a lawful branch of industry, and their owners and consignees were among the greatest folk in the ports whence they sailed or on the plantations to which they were bound.

Sir John Hawkins during his trips to the Canaries "by his tenderness and humanity had made himself much beloved," and was so little ashamed of his business that when he was dubbed a knight he chose for his crest a "demi-Moor in his proper colour, bound with a cord." On board the Portuguese brig *Veloz*, captured in 1837, was found a charming correspondence. The agent of the Pernambuco Slave Importing Company, to which she belonged, writes to his principals that, in spite of the kindness of the Queen of Benin in giving him forty-eight pairs, he was badly in need of leg-irons; and to his wife:—"Dear Spouse of my heart, I send you three fine mats and two parrots, one ram-goat for my little son John to play with, and three sea-horse teeth for our little daughter Henrietta, also a little girl, very pretty"—for whom this humane parent had paid two rolls of tobacco, twelve yards of flannel, and one piece of calico—"and a little black boy for Johnny. They have the mark O on the right arm"; and so forth, the cruel scars left by the branding iron being described with a professional callousness that suggests curious reflections regarding the composite condition of the mind of man.



CREST OF SIR JOHN  
HAWKINS.

A traffic so profitable, so lawful, and pursued by such humane men as the Portuguese factor whose epistle has just been quoted, was sure not to lack defenders. Captain Snelgrave (as

A defence  
of the  
slave trade.

worthy a man as ever ran negroes from Whydah to the Sugar Islands) was very sad to think that the "traffic in human creatures" might be accounted barbarous. But it had

this to be pleaded as its excuse, that the trade was to the advantage of both merchants and slaves, for the latter would be killed were they not sold, and on the plantations they lived better than they did at home. As many of the negroes were criminals, their absence was good for Africa; and as the tropics



SLAVES ON THE MARCH.

could not be cultivated without them, their presence there was excellent for the planters. And, finally, it goes without saying that the trade was good for the people who sold, bought, transported, and sold again the very peculiar goods in which the excellent gentleman mentioned dealt. But there were greater folk than master mariners to defend this traffic. Did it not, it was triumphantly asked, employ a large fleet of ships and absorb a vast amount of British manufactures, and find work for a host of seamen, mechanics, brokers, clerks, and the like, not to mention the millions of produce which the labour of these bondsmen reared in America and the West Indies?

As to the morality of the matter there surely could not be any doubt on the subject, since the

Society for Propagating Christianity, including half the episcopal bench, derived, as masters, from the labour of their slaves in the West Indies, an income which it spent in teaching the religion of peace and goodwill to men. That it was approved of by all sound patriots was evident from divers Acts of Parliament and utterances having all the force of a Royal decree. For did not a Statute of King William of pious memory affirm "that the trade was highly beneficial to the kingdom," and another of George II. that it was not only "very advantageous to Great Britain," but "necessary to the plantations," which Act, remarks Mr. Norris, with some acrimony, was made by "a Whig King and a Whig Parliament, who, when they dissolved the late African Company, granted a large sum

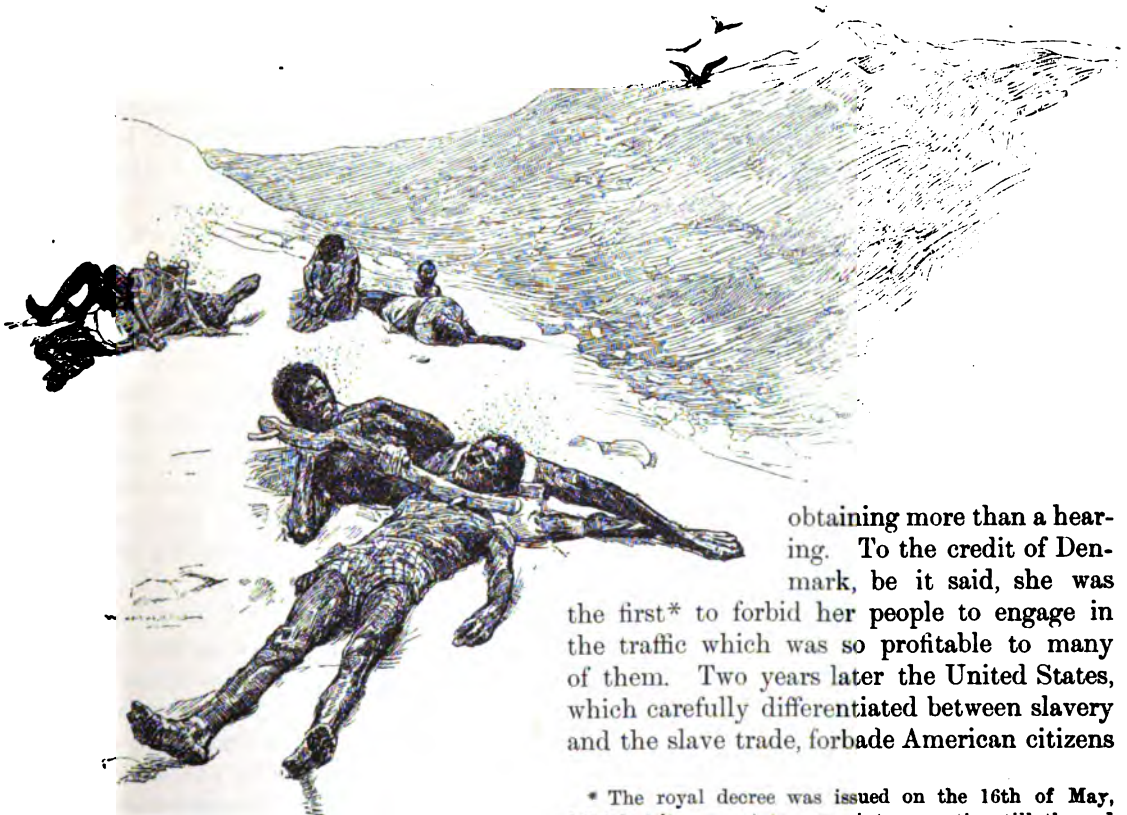
of money as a compensation for their rights, in order that a trade that was necessary and advantageous might be carried on with greater energy and success." In short—to parody another piece of optimism—the negro kings liked the slave trade; the Bristol merchants liked it; the captains liked it; the planters liked it; and it was the belief of some people whose utterances are not quite so remote as the days of Wilberforce and Buxton that the slaves liked it too.

Logic as feeble used to be heard night after night in the House of Commons when it was proposed to do away with the traffic, and a century later, when the aftermath of the trade was a huge civil war in the land to which the negroes had been carried. With quite as much reason highway robbery might have been defended on the plea that it stimulated the breeding of swift roadsters; that

burglary helped the ironmongery trade by encouraging the manufacture of good locks and superior window-fastenings; or that pocket-picking was a branch of industry that provided employment for many sharp-fingered youths, a host of policemen to look after them, a legion of lawyers to put them into prison, and a battalion of turnkeys to see that they did not get out.

But all these arguments did not prevent an ever increasing number of people from doubting that, however serviceable the black labourers were in the sugar, tobacco, and cotton fields, the capture and carrying them across the Atlantic were bad for Africa and bad for Europe. Even so severe a Tory as Dr. Johnson was fond of toasting "The next rebellion of the Jamaica blacks." Vested interests were, however, strong enough to prevent the advocates of abolition from

**The decline  
of the  
slave trade.**



SLAVES LEFT TO DIE.

obtaining more than a hearing. To the credit of Denmark, be it said, she was the first\* to forbid her people to engage in the traffic which was so profitable to many of them. Two years later the United States, which carefully differentiated between slavery and the slave trade, forbade American citizens

\* The royal decree was issued on the 16th of May, 1792, but it was not to come into operation till the end of 1802.

to participate in the exportation of negroes to foreign countries, and in 1794—the Act to come into operation in 1804—prohibited the introduction of Africans into their own dominions. Great Britain, which had been the earliest and most strenuous opponent of this commerce, was able in 1807, after a stout struggle in Parliament and out of it, to abolish the slave trade so far as she was concerned. The Bourbons never made any



WILLIAM WILBERFORCE.  
(After the portrait by Sir Joseph Slater.)

advances to what they regarded as a revolutionary reform. But at the Congress of Vienna, in 1814, France agreed in principle that the slave trade should be done away with as soon as possible, entering at the same time into a treaty with Great Britain which provided that no foreigners should in future import slaves into the French colonies, and that after the 1st of June, 1819, the traffic should be entirely stopped, this postponement being dictated by a wish to introduce a fresh stock of slaves into Hayti should that island be recovered. During Napoleon's brief reign, in 1815, a decree was issued which ended the trade for good and all, an Act which was confirmed at the second Peace of Paris, in November of that year, though it was not effectually carried out until

March, 1818. In 1815 Portuguese subjects were forbidden to carry on the slave trade north of the Equator, and the year 1823 was fixed as the date beyond which it should be everywhere unlawful, though the time was subsequently extended to 1830; and on England paying the Portuguese a compensation of £300,000, a royal edict was issued in 1836 prohibiting the export of slaves from any of the Portuguese possessions. In like manner England paid £400,000 to the Spaniards in 1820, on condition that they too should cease to buy African negroes. But though the Governments of both countries concerned carried out the contract, it is notorious that the bargain was violated again and again by Portuguese and Spanish subjects, and that in too many instances the local officials in Africa openly connived at this infringement of a compact of which they disapproved, in so far that it robbed them and their friends of a great deal of unholy profit. The Dutch trade was closed in 1814, on the Swedes ending theirs a year earlier; and by the Peace of Ghent, in 1814, the United States and England mutually bound themselves to do what lay in their power to extinguish a traffic which had by this time been recognised as infamous, whether carried on as prior to 1788, in an entirely unrestricted manner, or, as after that date until its abolition, under regulations ordained by various Acts of Parliament. It was at once prohibited in several of the South American States when they shook off the yoke of Spain, though others, like Brazil (on separating from Portugal) continued to countenance a trade which her planters considered essential to their prosperity. In 1831 and 1833 most of the Powers agreed to a right of mutual search, a proviso which rendered the traffic much more difficult than before, and by the Ashburton Treaty (1842) Great Britain and the United States arranged for the joint maintenance of squadrons for preventing the exportation of slaves from the Guinea Coast.

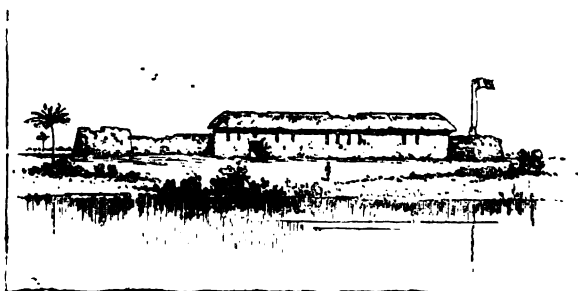
In this way, officially at least, the slave trade, so far as it could be carried on under the flags of European nations, became a perilous

occupation. But it did not cease. There were Brazil and Cuba eager for more black people, and the Southern United States in no way inimical to a cargo of negroes being quietly run into one of the Carolina creeks, and no questions asked. Hence, for many years the cruisers seldom had their anchors down, and Sierra Leone, which had been founded for the reception of captured slaves, had no reason to complain of a lack of fresh colonists. Portugal and Brazil—or, at least, Portuguese and Brazilian subjects—scarcely made any secret of continuing to carry on the traffic: only they had to look out for the cruisers. Whydah was the chief port, and here the Da Souzas and Medeiros lorded it like kings on the profits they made out of the thousands of blacks whom the King of Dahomey poured into their barracoons. The founder of the Da Souza family—old Francesco Felles of that ilk—was a Brazilian farmer who in 1810 came to the Guinea Coast, and for nearly forty years was in rank and influence only second to the King of Dahomey, and in wealth far superior to him. He died in 1849, leaving more than a hundred children, the tawny descendants of whom now form quite a caste in Whydah, declining to intermarry with any of the natives, though in morals they are in no way their superiors. Lavish hospitality was, however, the rule with old Da Souza, and Senhor Medeiros, who in days not very distant exported an enormous number of slaves, kept open house for all comers.

But the "forts" of Whydah are now in decay, and the entire place bears the impress of fallen fortunes. Incomes, once upon a time reckoned by tens of thousands, are barely countable by as many hundreds; and though the gold-inlaid bedsteads, the musical-boxes, arms, silk, and other costly articles purchased at exorbitant prices in the days of reckless extravagance, are still there, the huckstering of palm-oil is a poor business compared with the lucrative trade of an era never to return.

Pedro Blanco, a well-educated Spaniard of a good Malaga family, whose "factory" was at the mouth of the Gallenas River, rivalled the

Whydah magnates in the extent of his operations in "black ivory." All the approaches



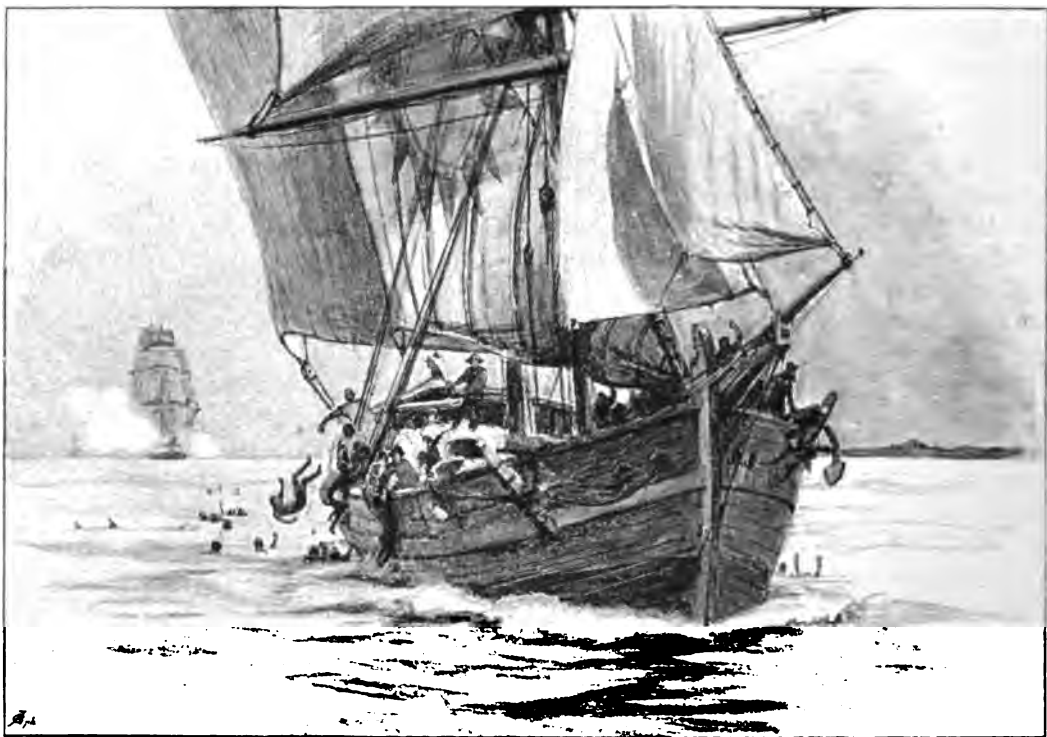
THE OLD FRENCH PORT AT WHYDAH.

to his establishment were carefully guarded by watch-towers, in which were men constantly sweeping the horizon with powerful telescopes to give timely warning to his slave fleets of any cruisers being in sight. At the first sign of danger, warnings were signalled to the barracoons for miles up the river, so that when the war-ships arrived nothing except a few bales of harmless merchandise were to be seen, while the notorious slaver was ready to receive the officers with the utmost kindness, assuring them that he had long ago abandoned the business which had brought them to his humble abode. Then, after the cruisers had left, suspicious that they had been outwitted, the two or three thousand negroes Señor Blanco had in stock would be brought from the jungle and the mangrove swamps where they had been hurriedly concealed. Up to the year 1839 the sunburnt little Rothschild of the Guinea Coast, whose paper was freely accepted in all the money markets of Europe, lived on the Gallenas River, his commercial cares being latterly shared by his sister. Then, finding the business declining, he returned to Havannah with his enormous fortune, dying in that city within the memory of the present writer. He was amazingly successful in his evil trade, seldom losing a vessel, and so fortunate in the prices he obtained in Cuba and South America that he could well afford an occasional capture by the oft-disappointed war-ships. His establishment is described by



those who visited it in the days of its prosperity as quite princely in its barbaric splendour. He had depôts on the islands at the mouth of the river. Higher up, on another island, was his private residence, an establishment of the most luxurious decription; and still farther up were his savage seraglio, and twelve barracoons, each of them containing from 100 to 500 slaves ready for transhipment when required. All this is, however, a tale of the past. Nowadays there is little on the Gallenas River to remind the visitor that Pedro Blanco ever lived, except the ruins of his depôts, or of

speculation. And they found the profits quite equal to the risks. Vessels were specially built for the trade, and thus, so long as the slavers could outsail the cruisers, with the experienced spies the former had in their pay all along the African shore, the chance of the latter overhauling the man-thief was not great enough to check a good many trying their luck in the venture. Saucy brigs lay in the fever-infested mouths of the West African rivers, waiting their chance to elude the war-ships, and then, when a favourable opportunity occurred, the white sails were spread to the



SLAVER CHASED BY MAN-O'-WAR.

the little palace in which he dispensed such regal hospitality.

Naturally when the laws of nations frowned on the slave trade the price of slaves rose, but this fact rendered the business of "running" them all the more attractive to the reckless men engaged in risking their necks in the

What followed prohibition.

breeze, and then, hey! for Cuba or Carolina. For there is no doubt but that cargoes of slaves were every now and then "run" on the southern shores of the United States up to the date of the Civil War, and on those of Cuba and Brazil close to the period when by the abolition of slavery in these countries such merchandise had no marketable value. A



capture was occasionally made, and, if the captain was not a "smart" man, the law was now and then vindicated on his person. But there was rarely any adequate punishment meted out to either commander or crew. Let the cruiser board a suspected slaver, and suddenly the captain was only a passenger, and the crew members of every nationality under the sun except that under the flag of which the capture was made. The irons were, of course, either carefully concealed or tossed overboard, so that, in spite of the suspicious equipment of slave-decks, and an amount of coarse provisions and water-casks out of all proportion to the ship's company, there was generally a difficulty in getting the rascals condemned. Nor did the presence of negroes always secure a conviction: for they might only be labourers. The result was that in most cases the blacks were, at worst, landed on the Seychelles, at Sierra Leone, or in Liberia, and the captain and crew at the nearest port, the value of the ship being divided among the officers and seamen of the cruiser that had made the capture. All that the preventive squadron did was to confine the trade to fewer speculators, and, having rendered it more risky, compel men to cram a larger cargo into a smaller space, and to pursue it with greater barbarity than ever. Steam made the business still more perilous, for the cruisers could then out-chase them,



SLAVE MARKET IN WEST AFRICA.

since a steam-slaver afforded, unless very large, too little cargo-room.

But what ended the export of negroes from Africa was not the war-ships or the treaties under which they pursued their unhealthy work, or the smiting of the callous public conscience, but the fact that, by the abolition of slavery in countries which were formerly ready to purchase the contraband article, there were no more customers for the slaves. Then it stopped. Yet, were slavery to be again decreed lawful, it is perfectly certain that plenty of slaves would cross the Atlantic.



However, though the exportation of the people of Africa is now at an end, slavery and the slave trade are still flourishing, and will continue to flourish until slaves are no longer marketable. The Arabs hunt them from the East Coast to all around the great lakes and the head-waters of the Nile, the Niger, and the Congo, for the home demand. Every year thousands are sold in Morocco, and it is believed in the remoter parts of Tripoli and Tunis, and even

**The end  
of the slave  
trade.**



THE PRICE OF A SLAVE.

on the frontier of Southern Algeria; and in spite of the East African cruisers and the prohibition of the trade in the Sultan of Zanzibar's dominions (Zanzibar being at one time a great slave mart), and, of course, in those of the European Powers who have divided this coast amongst them, numbers, it is believed, find their way into Arabia and Abyssinia, while many are disposed of to the Central African potentates who may not have opportunities of capturing them in their own inter-tribal raids and robberies. This infamy we shall have occasion to come across very frequently before we are done with Africa. For the present we have only to do with the

Guinea trade, and even there merely in so far as it aided in the development of Africa by calling attention to its unexplored parts, or retarded its progress by preventing merchants or the people from thinking of any resources other than the lucrative one which came to an end when Brazil, in 1888, abolished slavery. From that day a new life began for Africa. For so long as this South American market was open to illicit merchandise in the shape of human beings from Africa, so long would there be a chance of someone trying to profit by their sale. If any proof more circumstantial than a knowledge of human greed were required, it is supplied by the fact that though in 1830 a traffic which four years previously had been "abolished" was declared piracy by the Emperor of Brazil, up to 1850, by the connivance of the local authorities, 54,000 Africans continued to be annually imported. In Africa the slave trade was an unmitigated misery—a crime unredeemed by one extenuating circumstance. It caused war, bloodshed, and every kind of wretchedness, and it impeded, or rather, destroyed, all honest industry. Wherever slavery has been stopped, it has been found that a greater export of ivory, gold-dust, ebony, palm-oil, and other products of legitimate African commerce, has followed, and that the natives become more industrious and less brutal than before. On the other hand, it is questionable whether many parts of America could have been settled, or some parts of it cultivated, to this day, without negro aid. To the "Guinea trade" we owe the earliest impulse to African exploration and commerce, and it must never be forgotten that to it we are indebted for the writings of such doughty men and such gallant seamen and historians as Dampier, Hawkins, Bosman, Jannequin, Barbot, and others. It may, nevertheless, be a moot question whether we have not purchased the heritage of their works at far too dear a rate.

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE CORSAIRS OF AFRICA.

Piracy as an Agent in the Non-development of Africa -- Some Notorious African Pirates -- Davis, England, Lowther, Massey, Roberts, Avery--The Madagascar Pirate Colony--The Pirate Princes--Congdon, Claydon, Taylor, White--John Plantain--Audacity of the Pirates--The Ways of Pirates--The Pirate of Fact and of Fiction Two Different Personages--The Decadence of Piracy as a Profession--The Experiences of Captain William Snelgrave, of the *Bird Galley*--The Laws of the Lawless--The Legends of Buried Treasure--Baselessness of these Tales--The Pirates' Friends and Resettlers--The Isles de Los and their Memories--The End of Piracy, and how it was brought about--The Barbary Pirates--The Rovers of Tripoli, Tunis, and Algiers--The Morocco Pirates--The Sallee Rovers--The Riff Pirates--The Last of their Order.

BUT if there were thieves on land there were also thieves on sea, and the sea wolf, contrary to the proverb, ate the land wolf whenever an opportunity occurred. The Guinea ships were, indeed, for a long time the favourite prey of the pirates, the gold-dust on board of them being the principal attraction. And as the sea between Africa and America was the highway of vessels doubling the Cape of Good Hope, or on the way round Cape Horn or through the Magellan Strait, this coast had more than enough of these gentry. Slaves were, however, not despised, and cases are known in which, long after the slave trade was accounted piratical, robbers waited until a vessel laden with negroes had run the blockade of cruisers, then quietly overhauled her, transferred her crew, and sailed for the destined port. The Guinea-bound vessels were likewise worthy of attention, since they contained bales of cloth and ammunition, and, after the negro kings took a liking to Maria Theresa dollars, a store of specie, which the pirates preferred to goods of any description. Accordingly any account of the early struggles of the African trade, and of the obstacles which lay in the way of African development, would be incomplete without a sketch of the rovers who, for a long period, played so uncomfortable a part towards the more or less legitimate traders on the Guinea sea-board. Few of the latter-day corsairs were not familiar with this region. Some of them, indeed, had, before joining the

pirates' ranks, been engaged in the service of one of the companies which at different times ruled this coast, and, in one instance at least, a notable member of the fraternity of sea-thieves was the officer in command of a Gambia fort.

Among the most notorious of the pirates plying their trade on the African coast was Howel Davis, a Welshman, who had the boldness to anchor under the guns of Fort James, on the Gambia, and land between files of musqueteers, in the guise of a merchant bound from Liverpool for the Senegal, but forced to take refuge in the river to escape the pursuit of two French men-of-war. The governor credited the tale, and, prior to "slaving him to the full extent of" the supposed cargo of iron and plate on board the pseudo-merchant's vessel, entertained the pirates hospitably. Meanwhile, the latter had been maturing their plans, and, when the garrison were off their guard, seized the place without shedding a drop of blood. Many of the soldiers joined Davis; those who did not were confined in one of his ships, and then, no fear of a recapture being apprehended, the pirates proceeded to ransack the castle, after a prolonged carouse, which was the preface and the end of every act of these ruffians' lives. The contents of the fort, however, disappointed them. A large sum of money having been despatched a few days before, they found no more than £2,000 in bar gold to divide, in addition to various articles of value, which they duly

Some noted  
African  
pirates.

carried on board, after dismounting the guns, demolishing the fortifications, and doing all the harm they could. Strengthened by the alliance of two French cut-throats, Cochelyn and La Boise, he next drove the garrison out of the Sierra Leone fort. Three of a trade never agreeing, especially when in strong drink, as the devotees of sea-robbery generally were, they parted company, each continuing his course, seizing, and plundering, and scuttling when the merchantmen were weak, or fighting with might and main when they were strong. This fell out to be the case with a Dutchman of thirty guns and ninety men, which struck after an engagement off Cape Apollonia which lasted from one o'clock in the afternoon until next morning. Equipping the captured ship, Davis set sail for the Bay of Anamaboe, where he took several vessels waiting to take on board slaves, gold, and ivory. One of them he made a present of to the Dutch captain and his crew, and allowed them to depart in quest of what fortune might have still in store for them. All this time the fort ashore (p. 48) was puzzled at these somewhat peculiar proceedings, only firing at Davis's vessel when it dawned upon the commandant that the latest arrivals were pirates. "Davis fired also, and hoisted the black colours," but, adds the historian from whom we obtain these particulars, not receiving any damage, "deemed it prudent to depart." Still in luck, he was so fortunate the day after leaving this spot as to make a prize of a Dutch ship conveying the governor of Accra to Holland, and, what was much more to the point, £15,000, "besides a large quantity of merchant goods and other valuable articles." At Princess Isle, however, Davis's fortune deserted him. For here, finding that his vessel had sprung a leak, he entered the port under English colours, pretending to be a man-of-war sent out in search of some pirates who had been heard of in that quarter. The Portuguese governor affected great delight at seeing so distinguished a visitor—in those days uniform was not worn in the Navy—and insisted on escorting him to the fort with a guard of honour. Davis kept up the

character of a naval captain by being rowed ashore by nine men, and, furthermore, to combine business with pleasure, seized a French ship which happened to arrive, on the plea that she had on board some articles which he knew belonged to pirates. All this time, whatever might have been the governor's suspicions, the corsair was not molested. He cleaned his arms, caulked his ship, mended his sails, and generally put everything into trim for another voyage, meditating, meanwhile, to play the fort here the same trick that he had played the Gambia one—or to seize the chief personages while dining in his cabin, and not release them without the payment of a heavy ransom. Fortunately for them, however, a negro who had got wind of the plot, swam ashore in the night and gave information to the governor of what was in store for them. The result was that when the pirate came ashore next morning to invite and convey on board the selected guests, he was received with a salvo of musketry, so well-directed that every man of the party fell, except one who escaped to the boat. Davis died with the rest—in his agony, firing his pistols at the people who approached him. This is the usual tale (p. 85). But two Capuchin Friars told Captain Snelgrave another version not so creditable to the governor. For, according to these eye-witnesses, that functionary was well aware who Davis was, but winked at his proceedings, "out of the great gain he and his chief people made out of the pirates." It was only when he got afraid of the King of Portugal hearing of his conduct that he plotted their destruction. If we may believe these Friars, Davis had no intention of holding the officials to ransom.

England was another notorious scourer of the West African coast about the beginning of last century (p. 81). But though he had a certain success between the Gambia and Cape Coast Castle, his infamy is more associated with the East Indies than with the Dark Continent. He is described by some of his contemporaries as too amiable for a pirate. That also was the opinion of his crew, who displaced

him in favour of Taylor, a ferocious miscreant who tortured prisoners to extract information. This villain—one of the worst of an evil tribe—had originally served in the Royal Navy, and ended his career by commanding a Spanish war-ship engaged in harassing the English logwood-cutters in the Bay of Honduras.

George Lowther (p. 83) was another of the rascals that kept merchant captains awake during their watch. He sailed from the Thames as second mate of the *Gambra Castle*, an armed vessel belonging to the Royal African Company. On board was Major Massey and a troop of soldiers intended to re-garrison Fort James, recently sacked and dismantled by Captain Davis. Quarrelling with the merchants over the provisioning of his men, Massey joined Lowther, who also had taken umbrage at his commander, and seizing the ship, started out on a course of piracy. The partnership was, however, not of long duration. Lowther was a thief, and not too bold a one either. His aim was to plunder merchantmen with as little risk and as great a profit as possible, and then to make for Madagascar or other safe spot in which to enjoy it. Massey had become a robber more by force of circumstances than by inclination. At heart, he remained a soldier, and, after the first flush of lawlessness was over, seemed anxious to appear in his military character, and, by redeeming the past, save his neck on returning to England. He accordingly proposed to land with fifty or sixty men, and raid the French settlements about Senegal. The vote of the majority was, however, against what they regarded as rashness without any compensation in the shape of gain. The minority, nevertheless, remained unconvinced, and were on the eve of trying conclusions with the other side when a sail was reported. A few hands and a supply of necessities was the most that was got out of her, and Lowther proposed to scuttle the ship with her passengers; to this the more humane Massey objected, which course of action broadened the gulf between the two factions on board. The

next day, a small sloop being taken, the military captain announced his intention to part company with the pirates, and, his men following him, he sailed for Jamaica, and there telling a plausible tale, made his peace with the governor, and was despatched in search of his late associate. Not finding him, he returned to England and again told his tale to the African Company. But these men of business, less easily convinced than the governor,



CAPTAIN EDWARD ENGLAND.\*

returned him for answer "that he should be fairly hanged": the which he duly was, upon the evidence of his own letters and the witnesses of his proceedings on the Gambia River. Lowther, finding the African coast too hot for him, forthwith confined his operations to the West Indies, where, having been forced to take refuge in the woods by the crew of a ship that proved too strong for him, he shot himself in despair of any death more

\* The portraits of Pirates in this chapter have been reproduced, on a smaller scale, from the plates in Captain Charles Johnson's "General History of the Lives and Adventures . . . of the most famous Pyrates" (1734).

honourable than the gibbet or more agreeable than starvation.

Bartholomew Roberts (p. 87) was an honest sailor until Davis took his ship on the Guinea Coast, when he was induced to adopt the career in which he gained so evil an eminence that, on the death of the captain, he was elected, by the crew, commander in his place. This dignity he accepted with the remark, that, "since he had dipped his hands in muddy water, and must be a pirate, it was better being a commander than a private man." And, forthwith, to justify the choice of his associates, the new captain landed thirty men, who, under cover of a cannonade from the ship, drove the Portuguese who had killed Davis out of their fort. The robbers then tumbled the guns into the sea, fired the place, and, after battering down a few houses and taking all they could lay hands on,\* sailed again for the Guinea Coast and took prizes galore, the crews of several of them—as was not uncommonly the case—joining their captors, and preying on others in their turn. After a cruise in the West Indies and along the American coast, Roberts returned to Guinea, and, single-handed, overpowered two well-armed French ships, with which he sailed for Sierra Leone, where the robbers remained unmolested for seven weeks, "enjoying themselves in all the splendour and luxury of a piratical life," bartering their plunder to the honest traders ashore. The supply of canary, or the wherewithal to provide it, growing short, the pirates put to sea again and soon captured several vessels. On board one of these was a clergyman whom they tried to persuade to join them as chaplain, assuring him that he "should want for nothing, and his only work would be to make punch and pray." But the parson declining this tempting plurality, they let him go with all his property, and, to "banish care and sober reflection," they retired, for a time, into a convenient harbour at Old Calabar, where they

\* A Portuguese account affirms that he never landed, contenting himself with bombarding the town from a raft, the water being too shallow for the ship to get near enough, though in the end doing little damage.

"cleaned, refitted, divided their booty, and for a considerable time caroused," a period of festivity and mirth, "according to their usual custom, prolonged until the want of means recalled them to reason and existence." But this was the last cruise of Bartholomew Roberts, of Pembrokeshire. For rum not having conduced to sober reflection, he permitted himself to be decoyed into a fight by the *Swallow* man-of-war, Captain, Sir Chaloner Ogle, and died fighting, clothed in his best, his pistols slung over his shoulders, and a gold chain about his neck, just as his crew cried for quarter. Being duly tried, "according to the different Acts of Parliament," his men were promptly hanged at Cape Coast Castle.

Avery (p. 92) was another of the pirates whose evil reputation has descended to us. The mate of an English vessel commissioned by the Spanish Government to prevent the French trading with South America from Martinique, he persuaded the crew to seize the ship and do business on their own account. It was, however, not on the West but on the East Coast of Africa that Avery, from his stronghold in Madagascar, carried on his piracies, and his place in the Newgate Pantheon is mainly due to the fact that early in his career he captured a ship of the Great Mogul, engaged in conveying one of his daughters and her retinue to Djeddah, for the Mecca pilgrimage. Some very undiplomatic correspondence which the incident precipitated between the then powerful Mohannedan Emperor of Hindostan and the comparatively feeble East India Company obtained for this pirate captain a greater celebrity than his personal abilities deserved, and an absurdly exaggerated report of his wealth. But out of this, mainly diamonds and other jewels, he was cheated by some worthy Bristol merchants, fitting agents for the robber who had swindled his comrades out of their share of the plunder which they had stolen from the dusky mariners. Then at Bideford, skulking under a false name, wretchedly poor, in vain trying to extract from the knaves who had him

in their power a few of the guineas for which he had risked his life, the pirate died. Some of his immediate companions lay hidden in Ireland until they obtained King William's pardon, and were thus enabled to begin afresh as honest men, or, more likely, to start on another bout of piracy when a likely chief made his appearance. The rest of Avery's companions—those to whom he had given the slip with the Mogul's diamonds—made their way to



CAPTAIN GEORGE LOWTHER.

Madagascar, where they found plenty of their own sort.

For many years, ever since the brothers Tew, instead of sailing for the Gambia under a commission from the Governor of the Bermudas with the object of seizing the French factory, had turned pirates and had settled with their plunder on the Madagascar coast, this island had been a favourite haunt of the baser order of sea-robbers. At the time referred to, the island was in quite a savage condition, and on the Sakkalava coast,

The  
Madagascar  
pirate  
colony.

where the Hova authority was feeble, the country was divided up among numerous rival chiefs, each anxious for the assistance that the new-comers could render him. The pirates and their fire-arms, until then unknown, were therefore welcome allies, and soon became so dreaded that their appearance in the ranks of the enemy was enough to put the opposing army to flight. It is, perhaps, unnecessary to add that the reward they exacted for their services was enormous. Each pirate became a little prince, with a retinue of slaves cultivating the soil for him, and a harem, the extent of which was limited solely by the conveniences which the uxorious white pagan had for provisioning it. By-and-by, these petty kings fell to warring among themselves, and in the civil war that ensued their number was considerably reduced. Although these, with few exceptions, were men of the lowest origin, they speedily developed a fine aptitude for tyranny, revenging on the Sakkalava blacks years of rough usage in the fo'c's'le. Their power over their dependents was exercised in the most wanton manner, the punishment for the least offence being a shot through the head. A conspiracy was then formed to destroy them root and branch, and would have been successful had not a native woman, who was partial to the pirates, run twenty miles in three hours to warn her friends of their danger, so that when the conspirators arrived the pirates were ready to receive them. This narrow escape made them more cautious. No longer relying on terrorism, they resolved on the policy of *divide et impera*, though possibly they knew it by another name. Fomenting jealousies among the native tribes without themselves taking part in the feuds, they sheltered the vanquished, and thus increased their strength until no one dared oppose them in open warfare, though, in order more effectually to guard against surprise, either from the exasperated Malagasies or from each other, they vied as to who should possess the strongest retreat in the most retired spot in the middle of his petty principality.

Living in this manner, dreading and dreaded by all, they were found by the famous Captain Woods Rogers, the privateer (whose mate was in after years Alexander Selkirk), when he came to Madagascar in search of slaves. He touched upon a part of the coast where no ship had been for seven or eight years before, and here he met with pirates who had been on the island for a quarter of a century. There were only eleven of the original stock left, but they were represented by a numerous offspring of children and grandchildren. At first they were struck with terror at the sight of Rogers's vessel, dreading that it was a war-ship sent to seize them. Reassured, however, by a short conversation with some of the crew—in whom they doubtless recognised kindred spirits—the old pirates crept out of their secret abodes, and by-and-by ventured on board attended like princes, albeit, having been so long without access to the stores from which they had been in the habit of supplying their wants, their majesties were, so far as garments were concerned, extremely out at elbows. They were not exactly ragged, for they wore the skins of wild beasts in their natural condition, without stockings or shoes on their feet, "so that they resembled the picture of Hercules in the lion's skin; and being overgrown with beards and hair upon their bodies, they appeared the most savage figures that the human imagination could well conceive" (p. 89). The slaves that they disposed of to the privateer soon provided more suitable clothing, and the necessities of which they were sadly in need. Meanwhile they became very familiar, though they do not seem to have had intelligence enough to feel any interest in what had been going on in the world since they deserted it, in this respect resembling the "squawmen," "beach-combers," and other modern adopters of a savage life. If they had originally cared much for the ways of civilised men, they would not have so long abandoned them.

But the old passion for other men's goods soon began to revive within them. They examined, with suspicious interest, every part

of the vessel, making friends with the men and inviting them on shore with a unanimity which convinced the captain that, had it not been for the strong guard he kept, these scoundrels would have carried out their intention of seizing the vessel. They had, indeed, already attempted to corrupt the sailors, and, as the privateer's men were largely recruited from the same class as the pirates, might have been successful—for they had several boats—had not the wary commander prohibited the crew, except the agent employed to purchase the slaves, from having any intercourse with them. Woods Rogers tells us that one of these Madagascar kinglets had been a Thames waterman, who, having committed a murder, fled to the West Indies, where he turned pirate. The rest of them had been before the mast, and not one of them was able to read or write.

A few years later—namely, in 1721—we have another glimpse of the Madagascar pirates. This time it is not by a slaver—and in those days there was not much to choose between the resetter of stolen men and the footpad of the high seas—but by a naval officer who, in the discharge of his professional duties, had to come in contact with these ruffians. At that period, Charnock Point, on St. Mary's Island, showed that it had been much frequented by "pyrates" for many years previous to the visit in question. The remains of Captain Avery's fortifications were to be seen, as well as part of the cargoes of several merchant ships that had been destroyed by the freebooters and left to rot on the beach, the natives not appreciating the articles of which they had been composed. There were in that year many Europeans settled about Madagascar, all of them more or less connected with piracy. Congdon, Claydon, Taylor (p. 81), and White were men of note among these "eschatoi andron," and Robert Drury, whose narrative was probably edited by Defoe, was, in spite of his efforts to conceal the fact, no doubt during his pretended fifteen years' captivity on this island mixed up with them, if not actually a member of the fraternity;



DEATH OF CAPTAIN DAVIS AT PRINCESS ISLAND.



for we know that he sailed with White, who was in after years one of the most notorious of the Madagascar gang. But in 1721 John Plantain was the chief of the kinglets already described. This individual was a native of Chocolate Hole, in Jamaica, though of English parentage, and before settling down in Ranter Bay had been an associate of Roberts, England, and other well-known corsairs. At Ranter Bay he was surrounded by a crowd of native serfs and English and mulatto hangers-on, who helped him in his enterprises, shared in his plunder, and composed in his praise songs of which the refrain was "Plantain, King of Ranter Bay." At one time he owned a thousand slaves, and, after a series of civil wars with native chiefs and white "princes" over a certain Eleanora Brown, the mulatto daughter of a slaver, who, in addition to being very pretty, was valued by her husband for her piety, he meditated the conquest of the entire island. At that date many of the natives spoke a little English, so frequent had their intercourse been with pirates, and, as might have been expected from the kind of example set them, were about as vile a set of rascals as the African islands had to exhibit. However, Plantain seems to have gradually tired of being a Sakkalava kinglet, for we find him, soon afterwards, leaving Madagascar to join Angria, the Indian pirate prince against whom the East India Company had to despatch so many expeditions. To this day there are numerous traces of the old freebooters who had their retreat in Madagascar. But they seem to have gradually died out. Either they were murdered by the natives, or murdered each other, which might, in the circumstances, be called a natural death; or they left on another cruise and ended their career on the Dry Tortugas, or in the Execution Dock, or at Gallows Point, not far from Kingston, in Jamaica, where the remnants of the gibbets on which they hung in chains can still be seen; or they accepted one of those "Acts of Grace" which did more to encourage piracy than anything in the world except greed, cruel captains, and a love of laziness.

For at the period when the story of African exploration began in earnest the Madagascar men play little or no part in the tale of its seas.

The audacity of some of these gentry was enormous. They would not hesitate to attack a fort if it was weakly garrisoned, or, as we have seen, a war-ship if it carried not too heavy an armament. In 1693 they captured, in sight of the coast, two Danish men-of-war that had weakened their crew in order to garrison Christiansborg (p. 62). Now and then, however, they were meted out a treatment not much better than that with which they served others. Thus, we read how some French pirates, being stranded on the island of San Thomé, agreed with the captain of an English ship, "in consideration of a part of their prey," to carry them and their booty of gold, slaves, and ivory to the French islands. But the skipper played them false; for, after getting the plunder on board, he hauled up his anchor and paid the pirates for the cargo with what is known in sea-faring parlance as the "flying jib."

#### THE WAYS OF PIRATES.

These were the pirates of fact; and though it is no business of ours to study the American pirates, those of that continent were not a whit better, their ways and life being identical. Those of fiction are not quite according to the live model of which some specimens have been sketched. Indeed, the attraction which these freebooters have invariably possessed for the writers of story-books is difficult to understand. A housebreaker is seldom a romantic personage, but a sea-robber seems, in the eyes of the boys' novelist, to possess every attribute of the picturesque. It must be admitted that the picturesqueness is a recent addition to his character, for the earlier writers knew too much of the real corsair to palm off upon their readers anything so absurd as their successors have pictured with such acceptance. There has, in truth, grown up to be a pirate of fiction and a pirate of fact, though by the long conventionalism which the latter has enjoyed in print and on the stage he has been received as the veritable

The pirate of fact and of fiction.

corsair whom steam and the telegraph, rather than improved morals or the dread of the yard-arm, drove from the high seas. Every boy knows and too many admire him. He is always dark, often good-looking, and has, in nine cases out of ten, a redundancy of glossy curls. A brace of pistols, a cutlass, and a belt with a big buckle are indispensable. His language is spiced with maritime expletives, and is strictly grammatical, which is explained by the fact of the pirate captain having been a man of high degree, driven to evil courses by oppression, a lawyer, or a cross in love. A lady, always young, very beautiful, and generally dark, is usually seen peeping out of his cabin ports, and the robber, though he never fails to order his male captives to walk the plank, is chivalrous to an embarrassing degree when female passengers fall into his hands. And, above all, the pirate is invariably rich beyond the dreams of avarice. His craft is ballasted with dollars and pieces of eight, golden candlesticks and silver chalices wrenched from Peruvian churches, pearl necklaces torn from the necks of Spanish donnas, emerald rings stripped from the brown fingers of Indian kings, diamonds never seen out of the valley where Sindbad found them, and bars of the precious metals numerous enough to pave such a road as that over which La Palata rode his golden-shod horse into the capital of Peru.

But instead of turning this loot into current coin at the earliest date, and either retiring from business lest a worse fate overtake him in Execution Dock or at Gallows Point,\* or at least spending it in riotous living, the pirate of fiction is afflicted with a craving for burying it on some desert island, and has a trick of dying without digging it up again. Finally, the secret is revealed on his death-bed by the sole survivor of the corsair crew, though even he never manages to explain why he has all

these years been shipping at "three pound ten and his victuals," and finally taking shelter in the workhouse, with the wealth of Potosi for the taking away.

This is the pirate of Mr. Stevenson, of Mr. Besant, of Mr. Knight, and of other ingenious gentlemen, not omitting Sir Walter Scott and Lord Byron, who have evolved him



CAPTAIN BARTHOLOMEW ROBERTS.

from the depths of their inner consciousness. But this romantic creation of the stage, who risks his neck never to get any good out of the venture, is not at all like the sea-robbers of Captain William Snelgrave, who, in the month of April, 1719, trading for negroes to "the River Sieraleon," in the *Bird Galley*, was "taken" by them, hard by that pestilential stream.† Nor do we read anything corresponding to the novelist's picture of the pirates in the volume of Clement Downing,‡ lieutenant

\* As late as the beginning of this century, Michael Scott describes in "Tom Cringle's Log," still the most graphic account of Jamaica in existence, twenty-five Cuban pirates strung up one morning—the "John Crow" buzzards hovering around for the feast that awaited them.

† "An Account of Guinea and the Slave Trade. . . . A Relation of the Author being taken by Pirates, and the many dangers he underwent" (1754), pp. 193–288.

‡ "A Compendious History of the Indian Wars; with an Account of the rise, progress, strength, and forces of Augria, the Pirate, etc." (1737.)

of the *Revenge* grab, who sailed against Angria and John Plantain, who, as we have seen, after plundering for eight years on his own account, left the Madagascar settlement to become chief admiral of the Indian corsair. In vain do we search Captain Johnson's History\* of these scamps for the prototype of the rover of fiction; and Defoe, who had seen scores of them dangling in chains, and listened to the narratives of hosts of seafaring men who knew more about these folk than they cared to proclaim at St. Paul's Cross, was too realistic ever to make Captain Singleton, or Captain Avery (whose history he wrote), or the scoundrels with whom Captain George Roberts had so uncommonly bad a time off the Azores, the romantic personages of the modern story-books. Finally, the real pirate, in all his brutality, treachery, and greed, may be seen in that curious book† written by Aaron Smith, "who was himself afterwards tried at the Old Bailey as a pirate, and acquitted," though, it must be admitted, the very peculiar proceedings of Aaron while avowedly mate of a West Indian pirate scarcely warranted the jury in taking so lenient a view of his case. And if anyone cares to study the ways of the vulgar, unromantic sea-robber, he will find ample materials in the "Newgate Calendar," in the trial of Benito Soto, one of the old-fashioned sort, who was duly hanged at Gibraltar, on the 25th of January, 1830, as the reward of his deeds in the brig *El Defensor de Pedro*,‡ and in a host of printed documents and manuscript journals that have passed through the hands of the writer of these pages.

The student of social history with a clinging belief in the trade not being without some redeeming features is fain to confess that piracy is one of the callings which, like prize-fighting and

professional patriotism, has suffered so gradual a deterioration that when it died of inanition and the hangman scarcely a decent blackguard died with it. Yet, it was not always so. The Phœceans of Greece and the Vikings of Scandinavia were driven to the sea owing to the sterility of the land, and the Cilicians, against whom Pompey sailed with a mighty fleet and army, were, in common with the Etruscans and Carthaginians (who received peace from the Romans on the condition that they did not sail, either for the purpose of peace or piracy, beyond Cape Faro), rovers of a character not to be compared with the scoundrels who kept the executioner so busy in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

The mediæval pirate represented by Hugh Despenser and the corsairs against whose depredations in the Baltic the Hanseatic League was formed were decidedly on a lower level than their predecessors. Yet, even some of the rovers who infested the European seas at the close of the sixteenth and the beginning of the seventeenth century were, in their way, notable folk. Some of them had even a dash of patriotism. They had been privateersmen and seamen of the Queen's Navy, who found, after the stormy days of Elizabeth were over, nothing to do in their line of life. For years they had been employed in enriching themselves by robbing the Spaniards along the Spanish main, and it was sometimes difficult to say whether Drake, and Hawkins, and Raleigh, and the worthies whose names are bracketed with theirs, were not more pirates than patriots. Indeed, for a long time afterwards the masterless men who plied their trade under the name of buccaneers—among the most notable of whom was Sir Henry Morgan, Vice-Governor of Jamaica (p. 95)—made a pretence of waging private war only on the enemies of their country, though, even at the best of times, they were not over-particular as to the flag which their intended victim flew.

Still, the worst of them had their picturesque points. Even when driven from the British seas and compelled to settle on the Barbary coast, where they were men of consequence

\* "History of the Lives and Adventures. . . . with an account of the Voyages and Plunders, of the most famous Pyrates." (1734.)

† "The Atrocities of the Pirates, etc." (1824.)

‡ "A Narrative of the Atrocities committed by the Crew of the Piratical Brig *El Defensor de Pedro*, etc." (1830.)

until the Moors had learned the pirates' business from them, several displayed thriftiness, and even a tawdry ambition. Ward, a "poor English sailor," retired from business, and when William Lithgow, the Scottish traveller, visited Tunis in the early years of James the First's reign, he found him a General, who,

Cellis were so unfortunate as to be hanged by Queen Elizabeth of blessed memory, the historian must not forget that the "gallant merchant ship" which brought the first news of the Spanish Armada to Plymouth was, in reality, a pirate, commanded by a good fellow named Flenning on whose head a price had



DISCOVERY OF THE MADAGASCAR PIRATE COLONY BY CAPTAIN WOODS ROGERS.

"in despite of his denied acceptance in England, had turned Turk, and built there a fair palace, beautified with rich marble and alabaster stones." With him were living fifteen English renegadoes, "whose lives and countenances were both alike, even as desperate as disdainful." However, the old Bashaw was what Lithgow calls "placable," and not only gave his countryman a safe conduct to Algiers, but, at various times, invited him to dine. Easton, another English pirate of Elizabethan days, saved enough of his ill-gotten gains to buy a Marquisate in Savoy, and though Clinton, Pursser, and

long been set. In short, as Scaliger puts it, in a strain of doubtful compliment, "*Nulli melius piraticam exercent quam Angli.*" And, no doubt, if so evil a trade could be exercised in a goodly fashion, the English, at the worst period of its history—namely, towards the close of last century—exercised it in a less sordid manner than the mulattoes, Brazilians, and the scum of the West Indies and the Spanish main to whom it was latterly abandoned, just as the Chinese and Malays, who are now the sole followers of this ancient craft, are, if possible, even viler than the mongrel rapsCALLIONS in question.

At the time we make their acquaintance, about a century or so ago, the typical "rover of the sea" appears as a more or less unmitigated ruffian, ignorant, murderous, seldom relieved by a spark of generosity, without foresight, or any thought except for his immediate enjoyment. It is rare that one comes upon a pirate captain of decent origin. Most of the fraternity seem to have been mutineers who distinguished themselves by stealing ships from their owners, or natives of West Indian islands and other haunts of pirates who had never been engaged in any other trade. It is certain that none of them ever came honestly by the vessel with which they first began business, and, so far from these thieves displaying that honour which, according to the proverb, exists among men of the same kidney, from Morgan who swindled his comrades out of the plunder of Porto Bello, and Avery who gave his associates the slip (p. 82), down to the meanest robber who ever stole the cargo of a coaster, the captain was always suspected, and in most cases was guilty, of trying to cheat his crew of their just share of what they had helped to win.

In a volume on the subject, Mr. Howard Pyle mixes up buccaneers, privateers, and pirates as all belonging to one class. This is erroneous. No doubt the buccaneers latterly fell from the moderate amount of virtue with which they began; but at first they were simply traders in cattle, and to the end affected to prey upon the Spaniards alone. In like manner, the privateers were private war-ships bearing the King's commission, and though at present not recognised, will, we may be sure, in case of another great naval war breaking out, be again in demand. But when peace came, many privateersmen turned pirates—the change, except that it carried with it the risk of the yard-arm, being scarcely noticeable—just as Captain John Smith, of Virginia, tells us, many masterless men, with nothing to do, or out of revenge at the way they had been treated, took to the high seas, soon after the peace with Spain, in James the First's reign, had inundated the country with

idle sailors. Captain Kidd, indeed, was the commander of a privateer who, finding little lawful prey, attacked any craft which came in his way in order to find means to satisfy the rapacity of his owners. And, as the master was, so were the crew, only, if possible, a little worse. How far the idealisation of a pirate chief can be carried may be seen by comparing Scott's glorification of John Smith Gow (who, with seven of his fellows, was hanged at Execution Dock in 1725) with the true tale of his fiendish depredations in the Orkney Islands.

Here and there we come upon one not quite so bad as the others, and mere brute courage was a trait which, on the principle of natural selection and the survival of the fittest, was never lacking in any of them. Roberts, when quartermaster of Davis, more than once saved captured crews and passengers from barbarity, and, a ruthless ruffian in other respects, throughout his career never compelled anyone to join him. He took to piracy from choice, not from want of employment, but "from a roving, wild, and boisterous turn of mind." It was his usual declaration that "in an honest service, there was commonly low wages and hard labour: in this, plenty, satiety, pleasure and ease, liberty and power; and who would not balance creditor on this side when all the hazard that is run for it at worst is only a sour look or two at chocking?" And his courage was evinced by the crews of two-and-twenty vessels scuttling before him when he swaggered into the Newfoundland harbour of Trepassi, with the "Jolly Roger" at his mast-head, drums beating, and trumpets sounding, and soon afterwards destroyed ten French ships on the Banks, except one of twenty-six guns, which he seized and carried off. A score of even more courageous acts might be recorded; several have been already mentioned. But if their bull-dog pluck was unquestionable, their ferocity was equally indubitable. Lolonais is said to have split the breast of a Spanish prisoner, plucked the heart out, and gnawed it. Low lopped off the ears of an English merchant skipper and made him eat them with salt and pepper, or,

as others say, broiled his lips before him; and Teach (p. 99), the "Black Beard" of a hundred legends, whose chief ambition was to be thought in league with the Devil, was an unmitigated savage, who did his best to earn the reputation after which he hankered. Even Davis, though not quite so unredeemed a ruffian—he is praised for his generosity by those who might have experienced his malignity—was wont to declare, when asked where his money was, that only he and the Devil knew, and that the longest liver was to have it. Yet though Hades, and their likelihood of soon reaching it, was a constant theme of conversation with these abandoned miscreants, in a way they were permeated by religious superstition. They were anxious to have a chaplain "to pray and make the punch" on board Roberts's craft, and when there was an election of a new captain, after Davis's death, it was earnestly stipulated that the chosen personage "should not be a papist."

As an illustration of the squalid life of a West African pirate, it may be useful to give the experience of Captain Snelgrave of the *Bird* galley, an honest gentleman in the Guinea trade, who, after being chased by a Sallee rover off the Canary Islands, was so very unfortunate when running into the Sierra Leone River\* as to fall into the hands of three pirates, who, having taken ten English ships before his arrival, made up their complement to four by seizing the *Bird* galley also. These pirates were Davis, Cochelyn, and La Boise, sea-robbers with whom we have already met. The pirate in whose clutches Captain Snelgrave was more especially held was Cochelyn, a very ignorant and brutish villain, who had been elected for these very qualities, his ship's company having resolved never to have again "a gentleman-like commander" like Moody, a celebrated pirate of that day, whom his crew had cast adrift with twelve

others in an open boat which was never afterwards heard of; but as Moody was in the habit of cheating his men, the morality of the pirate world rose a trifle by his disappearance.

Mr. Snelgrave having, as in duty bound, defended his vessel from the night attack in which she was taken, mainly by his crew, under the influence of a mate who turned traitor, calling for quarter before they had struck a decisive blow, was worse used than was wont. One ruffian shot at him, and another tried to cleave his skull with a cutlass, the few men who stood by being served with about equal atrocity. Everything he had about him was taken by the pirates, and as the vessel was laden with liquor all of them were soon riotously drunk. Anything like order was impossible, and the captain and quartermaster, who on board a pirate ship had almost control of the master, never tried to keep discipline among the cut-throats on board, most of whom were either forced men or the crews of captured ships who had willingly thrown in their lot with their captors. Poor Snelgrave, as a loyal subject of King George, was, however, less grieved at seeing his owner's cargo pillaged, and his own chest and private venture made free with, than at hearing the Pretender toasted by the name of King James the Third. For this proved them "doubly on the side of the gallows, both as traitors and pirates." Seafaring men, worthy Master Snelgrave admits, are consumedly given to profane language; but such a pandemonium of oaths and blasphemy as went on all night, while he in vain attempted to sleep in his hammock, had not hitherto come within his experience. Wanton waste and destruction were the order of the day. Bales of valuable goods and all the books were tossed overboard, the bales because they had no use for the woollens they contained, and the books in case they "might breed mischief enough to prevent some of their comrades from" proceeding on the course they had entered upon; and though the pillaged seamen who had remained faithful to the captain begged for them, several casks of

\* The Rokel, Rokelle, Tagrin, or Mitomba River; the Rohung Dakell, or Stream of Scales, of the Timni tribe, possibly the "flumen Bambotum crocodilis et hippopotamis refertum" of Pliny.

"Irish beef" met the same fate, the pirates preferring the English "junk." Webs of fine linen were spread on the dirty decks for the drunken crew to lie on, and then, when they were sleeping off the fumes of the liquor, which they drank out of the bottles, by simply "nicking" the neck with cutlasses, their comrades, masquerading in embroidered coats and periwigs, would, as a bit of playfulness, throw buckets of claret over them.



CAPTAIN AVERY.

Now and then Captain Snelgrave met with exceptional civility from some of his captors who had known him of old, and ascertained that his men spoke well of him. As a rule, however, he was in daily danger of his life from the brutes, who were rarely sober, and, worst of all, ten of his own men and his mate "entered with the pirates," the mate, it appears, having had all along hankerings after this life. Ashore were several merchants, who seem, either out of fear or for the sake of profit, to have been on the friendliest terms with the pirates, receiving presents from them, and acting as resettlers of the stolen goods,

though at times befriending as best they could the unfortunate mariners. The profusion of the thieves with their plunder made them courted everywhere, men and women, black and white, giving them an equally warm welcome the moment they landed. About this period, indeed, the fact of a party of sailors spending money lavishly in any port always laid them open to the suspicion of not having come honestly by it, a suspicion usually strengthened by their truculent conduct in the alehouses in which they caroused.

The ruffians, who were seldom sober, were all the time quarrelling with each other over breaches of "the rules," accusing a comrade of keeping some "stuff" for himself, instead of putting it into the common chest to be sold at the foremast, or of meditating treachery in some other fashion. The Devil and the Bottomless Pit were eternally in their mouths, and the probability of their reaching the latter goal at an early date and in a sudden fashion the commonplaces of their blasphemous conversation. Once they set the ship on fire by their carelessness, and on another occasion, by the merest good-luck, missed blowing up the powder magazine. Yet amid their debauchery there were some who were anxious to abandon the lives they were leading, and the quartermaster, though he died yelling the most lurid profanity, displayed before his career closed a dreadful terror at the thought of meeting the ally whose name he had so often invoked. When re-naming the vessel which they had stolen, the scoundrels—all of whom were robbers, and most of them murderers, hardened in every form of crime—were careful to offer up a prayer that "God would bless the *Windham* galley"—in the piratical course upon which she was entering.

All the officers of a pirate ship were elective, but of the captains especially, and their endeavours to assume greater power than "the rules" gave them authority to exercise, the men were very jealous. No vice was strange to them. Few atrocities made them hesitate. But, though there were always plenty of Delilahs in the pirate ports,







WALKING THE PLANK (p. 98).

the fair lady with the raven locks peering out of the stern windows was a fiction; for one of the strictest laws of pirates was that, in order to prevent jealousy and the trouble it would bring, no woman should on any condition be permitted on board, and, as the captain was the creature of the crew who

the rule was the contrary. The pirates bore no ill-will towards the seamen, who belonged to their own class. The "King's ships" were, of course, disliked by them. So were many of the merchant captains. Their excuse for pirating was, indeed, to take revenge upon "cruel merchant captains, with hearts as



MAROONED.

elected him, it is certain that he would never be permitted to infringe this regulation. Hence such undesirable passengers were always landed as soon as possible, and, whatever might have been the case in individual instances, it was one of the most stringent articles in their code that injury to any female captive was to be punished by death.

Nor is there a much firmer basis for the legend of "walking the plank." Cases of this have occurred, and there are instances of torture being applied to captives, and of vessels being scuttled with all on board; but

hard as stone, who keelhaul men and flog them and starve them to the bone." And all capitalists were fair prey to these early socialists, who, it may be noted, were, during the Revolution, almost to a man adherents of the Pretender: some, indeed, took the trouble of carrying his commission, in the hope that it would be respected by foreign Powers, just as one Bartholomew Sharp, a "Brother of the Coast," escaped the gallows because he produced a warrant signed by an Indian chief who was styled the "King of Darien." Accordingly, the worst fate that usually befell

the crew of a captured ship was to be robbed and landed on some island, unless they chose to join the captors. And this, we regret to add, they did very frequently.

If the attacked vessel offered resistance, there was often severity displayed in revenge. Thus, we read of the captain of a French ship which was "taken" by the same pirates that so spitefully used Mr. Snelgrave, being hoisted up and down several times to the main-yard arm, with a rope about his neck, till he was almost dead, because he did not strike on the first firing. Again, we read that when an obnoxious captain was captured by a pirate commanded by his old boatswain, the wretched man was first pelted with broken bottles, then whipped round the deck, and finally shot, in repayment for the treatment his enemies had received in former days when their positions were reversed. But by "the articles" it was death to ill-use a prisoner "after quarter given." On the other hand, if the men gave the captain a good character, he was generally fairly treated, and even, as in the case of Mr. Snelgrave, offered part of the cargoes of captured ships, some stolen slaves, and an old vessel to set him up in business again. In reality, it was quite common simply to pillage a ship of what the pirates required, take a few men they were in need of, and then let her go. There was, also, another reason for using their captives without needless harshness—leaving out of account private vengeance in the case of a hard taskmaster falling into the grip of his quondam mate, or boatswain, or sailors, who had deserted his ship through his hard discipline—and this was the hope that, if they fell upon evil days, the clemency they had displayed might save their necks, and, in case no murder had been committed, might go far in securing them the benefit of those Acts of Clemency which, we shall see, did more to perpetuate piracy than any other agency at work.

All of them had "their rules," and these every pirate agreed to by signing the articles. Some of these were common to all ships, though

we may take it each captain had some peculiar to his own craft. Thus, the master had a double vote and a double share of the plunder, and if there was any difference of opinion as to the course the vessel was to sail, the captain—in cases where the decision was not left to him—settled the matter by vote. The officers had a share and a half, or a share and a quarter, and the sailors one share each, of all booty. Any attempt to embezzle was punished by "marooning"—i.e., being set ashore on some island where the offender could do little harm (p. 93); but desertion of the ship or arrant cowardice in battle was punished by death. Arms had always to be ready for action, and, if the compensation for disabling wounds differed on different ships, there was invariably a regular tariff for the loss of limbs—Lowther, for example, paying £150 as compensation for an arm or a leg put *hors-de-combat*. The man who first sighted a sail received the best pair of pistols on board, a reward so highly valued that they were sometimes sold for a large sum of money. In battle there was no appeal from the captain; but the quartermaster was an officer, a salt-water tribune, whose duty was to exercise a kind of control over the commander in the direct interest of the men. If such a thing as honour could be expected among thieves, it existed among the pirates; for theft from each other was so bitterly resented that slitting of the ears and nose was a common punishment for this offence. However, as the captain was generally selected as the most capable man in the ship, he could not long remain undeposed did he exhibit any weakness, so that the quartermaster ran a perilous risk when he tried to infringe on his authority.

But the legend about burying their "treasure" is one of the most unsubstantial of all the myths concerning the pirates. How it originated we have never been able to fathom. Most probably the notion had its beginning in the fact that, though many pirates had been captured, and all were supposed to have

The legends  
of buried  
treasure.

wrung vast riches from their unfortunate victims, it was seldom that they had anything on board which made the captors very wealthy in prize-money. The truth is that, though now and then—as in the rare cases of Davis, Kidd, Avery, England, and Taylor—a haul in the shape of jewels or money was made, the pirates seldom landed much specie. Nowadays, merchants do not sail with bags of gold; they pay in bills or in goods. And a hundred or two hundred years ago they took remarkably good care to limit their coin and bank-notes to the smallest possible dimensions. When they had plate to carry home they sailed under convoy; or the merchants took the opportunity of a war-ship visiting their port to despatch such treasure in a craft not at all likely to be meddled with by a sea-robber. The result was that the pirates rarely got any great amount of portable valuables. What they obtained was merchandise—silks, velvets, lace, cloth, wine, spices, and other goods; and these it is certain they did not bury, any more than they buried what bullion they now and then managed to find in the captain's strong box or in the seamen's chests. Why should they? If they managed to get into port, they required the "stuff" to enable them to indulge in one of those prolonged debauches of drinking, gambling, and worse, which so regularly alternated with their cruises, while, if captured, they were safe to swing, so that it was useless hiding their ill-gotten gains. What was more, considering the kind of crews on board pirates, it would have been extremely unsafe to let any amount of treasure lie *perdu* in Trinidad, or the Salvages, or elsewhere; for the chances were that, at the very next place the ship put in at, one or more of the hidiers would decamp and make it to their profit to inform another thief of the place where the booty lay. Teach, according to information given Clement Downing, buried several "chests well clamp'd with iron plates," at the upper end of a small sandy cove near "Mulberry Island, in York River, in Maryland." But if so, it was, we may be sure, soon disinterred, as

he was on excellent terms with the Governor of North Carolina. Captain Kidd did deposit in certain places a good deal of the jewels and plunder he picked up in the Eastern seas. But these hiding-places were almost always the houses of friends and accomplices, and the memorandum which he kept of them having been found in his desk, the whole was



SIR HENRY MORGAN.

recovered, though it did not amount to more than £14,000. Even then, it must be remembered, Kidd acted thus at a time when he was so certain of immunity from seizure that he entered Boston harbour. Hence, the probability is, he was trying to make away with some of his plunder to avoid the exactions of his secret partners.

On the contrary, whenever a pirate managed, in ordinary circumstances, to "make anything like a voyage," the unruly crew always insisted on getting ashore to spend their shares; and a pirate had no more trouble in disposing of his plunder at a price than a burglar has in finding a resetter to buy his "swag." When Captain Snelgrave met with an old school-



fellow among the Guinea pirates, he affected not to know him, "having formerly heard it had proved fatal to some who had been taken by pirates to own knowledge of them." But in many a port there were plenty of people who made much profit of "owning knowledge" of the sea-robbers. There was a sort of republic of them in "the pleasant Isle of Aves," anent which Charles Kingsley has a charming song, and another, we have seen, on even a greater scale in Madagascar. But on every coast haunted by them there were plenty of ports open to all comers, and no questions asked. Kidd had good friends on Gardiner's Island, near New York, albeit the owner of it was by patent permitted to bear the title of "lord." Desirous of visiting Boston, without too much cargo on board, he left part of his spare plunder with this gentleman, and his wife was quite willing to accept two pieces of rare Bengal muslin from the thriving desperado. At another time cloth of gold and a bag of sugar were amongst his gifts, and a bundle of quilts, four bales of goods, and some jewellery the articles left in charge of "Lord John." The Earl of Bellamont, at that time Governor of New York and Massachusetts, wrote home—as can be read in the State papers in Fetter Lane—that Long Island was a "receptacle of pirates, who are so cherished by the inhabitants that not a man of them is taken up." And no wonder that they were liked, for goods could be bought from them for next to nothing, while they paid bumper prices for everything they required. Yet it does not seem that his lordship ever brought any of the offenders to justice—a fact which may be explained by the circumstance that he was one of the adventurers who originally fitted out Kidd, and to that end, there is good reason for believing—as a large minority of the House of Peers believed one hundred and ninety-four years ago,—received bribes from him and other pirates for winking at their malpractices. New Providence was another pirate haunt, and there was a large settlement of them and their friends at Cape Fear. Rhode Island

was well-affected towards them. New York, even, was pronounced a regular rendezvous of theirs, on the excellent authority of Lord Bellamont: and his predecessor, Governor Fletcher, had gone so far as to fix the immunity to pirate seamen at £20 a head, though now and then it could be cheapened a little. "Red Sea men" spent money so freely that they debauched the courts of justice and public sentiment in South Carolina, and their resettlers, well known as such, sat at the Council Board, while "Blackbeard" actually stored his booty in the Provincial Secretary's barn, and had the Governor of North Carolina for an accomplice. He brought his prizes into Bathtown, and by order of the Governor, who shared in the plunder, had his captured ships condemned by a Court of Vice-Admiralty as lawful prizes taken from the Spaniards, though it was well known that most of them belonged to English merchants. This infamous Proconsul had to submit to the open insolence of his partner, and when it pleased "Blackbeard" to take to himself a fourteenth wife, though he had twelve still alive, the obsequious Governor performed the marriage ceremony.

It was needless for such men to bury their treasures. The truth is that the lavish expenditure of the pirates sapped the morality of the entire community. In London and Bristol and Liverpool, in New York and Boston and New Orleans, hosts of well-known buccaneers lived opulently, and in many a quiet English town there were well-to-do gentlemen, of seafaring antecedents and full-bodied conversation, who were strongly suspected of having received the slash on their cheek while in command of a craft not quite so reputable as a King's ship or a Letter of Marque. Fortunes were made out of buying from and selling to the pirates. The people of Bourbon were on very friendly terms with the British and Dutch *forbans* who frequented Madagascar and sold slaves to the French, and it required the pressure of the East India Company to induce the French colony to drop all intercourse with the pirates. Dr. Campbell, a

most respectable tenant of the best-rented part of Grub Street, bewails, in one of his publications, the hanging of Captain Green and his worthy mate, Mr. Mather; his sympathy, like that of the Duke of Argyll, being evidently more on the side of the criminal than on that of his victims.

The amnesty granted in 1721 to the pirates who chose to become colonists of Bourbon did not prevent them from attacking ships, even in the roadstead of St. Denis. The Viceroy of Goa had scarcely brought his vessel to anchor in that haven before a pirate

and Taylor were at Cochin, the fort exchanged salutes with them, and the Dutch Governor and his daughter not only sent and accepted gifts, but gave the pirates information of a useful character regarding likely vessels to be met with.

Yet the tradition that the pirates buried their ill-gotten gains, in spite of none having ever been found, is ineradicable. There have been scores of expeditions in search of these treasures, and only lately Mr. Knight's was one of the many parties that have ranged the Salvages and Trinidad in the hope of disinterring



TOUMBO, NEAR THE ISLES DE LOS, WITH PIRATE CRAFT IN THE OFFING.

brigantine of fifty guns captured her.\* The corsair was immediately invited to dine with the Governor, seating himself between His Excellency and the Portuguese Viceroy, then and there arranging for the latter's ransom, and, in spite of the pleasant tale told by Bernardin de St. Pierre of his refusing to take anything for the release of so agreeable a gentleman, actually carrying off the ship in default of getting the two thousand dollars demanded, for which misconduct Capitaine Olivier Levasseur was hanged at Bourbon on the 17th July, 1730, having failed to get himself included in the Act of Grace.† When England

\* Johnson attributes the adventure to England and Taylor, and declares that the vessel was disabled. This writer—erroneously, no doubt—also affirms that there were four million dollars' worth of diamonds on board of her.

† Introduction to "Robert Drury's Journal," etc., by Captain Oliver, R.A. (1890), pp. 24, 25.

gold, which never existed, save in the imagination of the authors of galley tales. There is scarcely an islet off the American coast but has been ransacked for Captain Kidd's buried dollars, in spite of the historical fact that his hiding-places were all cleared out by official hands more than 190 years ago. Oak Island, in Nova Scotia, was searched in 1891, and another rummage of the same kind was made on Wood Island, at the mouth of the Saco River, in Maine; but the seekers were scared away by "spirits," and have not yet resumed their futile labours. This kind of passion takes possession of certain men like a fever. Everyone has his "clue," and not one of the clues has the faintest streak of truth in it. There is a regular pirate-treasure mythology, which appeals to the imagination, regardless of the veracities; for the pirate of fiction is an individual so much more attractive than the

pirate of fact that it is vain to try and disestablish him in popular esteem.

Africa is also not without these treasure



CAPTAIN EDWARD LOW.

tales. All the old forts were, we have seen (p. 59), pulled to pieces in search of slavers' and pirates' gold, and the Isles de Los\* (p. 97) are still believed to be the hiding-place of the gold, etc., deposited, in the least secure of banks, by Bartholomew Roberts. These islands were, however, in the bad old days, favourite haunts both of pirates and slavers, for vessels of light draught could lie under the shelter of the land, where a war-ship could not venture, and even if it did, unless it sent boats out in search, would have some difficulty in detecting the lurking craft. These freebooters were bold to the point of aggression, and in some instances they did not get the worst of the encounter with the men-of-war. The *Camperdown*, a brig of sixteen guns, destroyed the British sloops *Rambler* and *Trial*; the *Paz*, which was under American colours, beat off the *Princess*

\* Properly, "Dos Idolos" (of the Idols).

*Charlotte*, and killed several of her crew; and the crew of the *Venganza* resisted the boats sent to take her until the last extremity, when, being boarded, they blew themselves up with their assailants. The Sierra Leone brig was so constantly roving about the Isles de Los and the adjacent rivers that she became an object of the greatest antipathy to the slavers and their kindred knaves, and two vessels—the *Dolores* and the *Temerario*—were avowedly fitted out for her destruction, but, happily, were captured before those followers of private warfare could compass their purpose. Even during recent years, long, low, piratical-looking craft, decked over the stern, and with raking masts carrying large lug-sails (p. 100), have been observed running cargoes of domestic slaves from Sherbro and other localities, into the rivers which here discharge into the sea, for sale, it is said, to the Mohammedan rice-growers on the banks of the great streams between Sierra Leone and the Gambia. If boarded by a Government vessel, the headman of the boat immediately declares that the women are his wives and daughters, and the men his sons or servants; and so apathetic are the slaves, that frequently they not only do not claim their freedom from the cruisers, but actually corroborate the lies of the dealer. Hence, it is difficult to stop the traffic, either here or on other parts of the coast, for it is hard to prove anything, unless, indeed, the cargo is manacled. Then the officials are easy in their minds as to the risks of making an illegal seizure, for the courts of law are pretty safe to give them a good deliverance. On Crawford Island a detachment of European troops—the Royal African Colonial Corps—was stationed in 1812 and 1813, to stop the slave trade and piracy combined which went on in and about the Isles de Los. But the men sickened and died of old habits, new rum, and the unhealthiness of the station, and here, as elsewhere in Africa, the export trade in human beings expired of the lack of customers.†

† Ellis: "West African Islands" (1885), pp. 113, 114.

African piracy, like the export African slave trade, is a thing of the past. It died, not, as some optimists have imagined, of "improved public morality, as the mouse dies under the exhausted receiver of the air-pump," but of steam, telegraphs, and improved postal communication. When these came into action, the pirates ran so slender a chance of escape that they found the business did not pay, and, their haunts being broken up, the fowl birds who nested there drifted into other pursuits. What remained of the old trade fell into the hands of the mongrels of the Spanish Main, though to a comparatively late date the Lafittes of New Orleans were more than suspected of clearing the Gulf of Mexico of slow-sailing craft. For a little longer, a few scoundrels of the "Bully Hayes" type—more

and though we hear every now and then of a Chinese act of piracy, it is rarely by means of junks, but by the more cowardly trick of a number of pirates entering themselves on board the mail-steamers as passengers, and then rising and falling upon the rest of the ship's company. In European seas, piracy is dead, for the so-called pirates of the *Flowery Land* and the *Lennie* were simply mutineers, who, whilst ready enough to rob their own ship after murdering the officers, made no attempt to extend their operations.

European piracy, though it occupies a large place in the history of the early relations of Africa and the whites, did little for the development of that continent. It helped, no doubt, to bring about the rapid employment of steam as a motive-power, of telegraphs between the centres of commerce, of better mail communication, and of banking facilities. It aided, also, in banding merchants into leagues like that of the Hansa, and in manning the navy and the privateers with sailors skilled in the use of weapons, since no merchant-ship, unless commanded by a Quaker, left port without being "well-found in small-arms and cannon round about." But in a much more direct manner it retarded the progress of trade and civilisation. It checked the enterprise of merchants, and, by the system of demoralisation which it wrought among seamen and their employers, made slaver, buccaneer, pirate, and privateer too frequently little better than convertible terms; for the one was, after all, only the other writ small. Yet the historian must not forget that, if piracy did little for the world, it tumbled up England a great deal. For the first levy of ship-money, in 1635, was made for the suppression of "pyrats," and we all know to what this most commendable of imposts (imposed in the wrong way) led King Charles and his subjects.

#### THE BARBARY PIRATES.

But long before white men had begun to harry ships on the high sea, and some time after they had ceased that calling, there was



CAPTAIN TEACH, ALIAS BLACKBEARD.

ship-stealers than pirates of the old sort—kept the Pacific Islands in subjects for conversation; but submarine cables and the ubiquitous gun-boats were soon too much for them. The general use of steam also all but ended the career of the Malay prau-men,



a form of African piracy more persistent, more blatant, and in its effects more far-reaching than any ever practised off the coast of Guinea. For all along the coast of North Africa, but particularly from the towns of Tripoli, Tunis (La Goletta), Algiers, and Sallee-Rabat, there were, until well into this century, nests of pirates pursuing

which sheltered them, and if they were by no means particular as to the flag flown by their victims, nominally, at least, they attacked



PIRATE VESSEL.



MERCHANT-SHIP UNDER CONVOY.

only the vessels of countries the sovereigns of which had not treaties with their masters. As a matter of fact, they followed too strictly the Koranic injunction to "war against infidels," and interpreted the term enemy as meaning everyone who was not avowedly a friend. But the worst feature of Barbary piracy was that the seamen and passengers captured were one and all reduced to a hopeless slavery, unless they turned Moslems (which many of them did),

their nefarious business openly under the auspices of, and, indeed, in most cases with the help of, the Powers under which they lived.

Perhaps, however, to apply the term pirates to these people is unfair. They were really privateers. Their ships, though fitted out solely to prey on commerce, were the fleets of the regencies

or escaped, or were ransomed by their relatives, their sovereign, or the religious brotherhoods who spent their lives collecting money for that purpose. It is only right to add that, when the Moors were caught, they had much the same measure meted out to them by the Christians; only the Moors were, as usual, a century or two behind Europe, since they

**The Tripoli,  
Tunis, and Al-  
giers rovers.**

carried on the practice long after "the Christians" had abandoned it.

These habits of theirs, however, led to many changes in the political geography of that portion of Africa north of the Atlas and west of Egypt—a country which, we have

the Knights of Malta, but many greater Powers that at one time or another laid siege to it. At this hour, however, Europe proper—for the Turks are not Europeans, only partially residents in Europe—has no part in the government of Tripoli, Barca, and



CAPE SPARTEL AND LIGHTHOUSE, MOROCCO.

seen, was the earliest part of the continent to be colonised by Europeans, though eruptions of the Arabs utterly effaced those settlements for more than twelve centuries. Yet it was owing to the malpractices of the new inhabitants of Barbary that European colonisation began afresh. Tripoli is still Turkish, but its piratical proceedings led to its more than once changing masters, and to a long chapter in its history which touches not only

Cyrenaica. Tunisia, in like manner, again and again brought upon it the heavy hand of Europe, and the capital has more than once been occupied by an enemy incensed beyond the limits of patience by the wrongs done by its "pirate" fleets. Its final occupation—"protection" is the official term—by France was not directly brought about by piracy, since piracy was by 1881 at an end; yet it would not be difficult to trace the encroachments

that led to the Franks becoming the virtual masters of what was formerly a regency of Turkey (though, in reality, an independent Power in everything but the name) to the ravages of its old corsairs. For it sprang out of the French conquest of Algeria, which originated in 1839 in the quarrels precipitated by the faithlessness of the Dey and his piratical subjects. This act led to many other developments, and is likely to be the parent of many more, besides the exploitation of this portion of North Africa and the Sahara, as far as Timbuctoo, as we shall have occasion to discuss more fully when the colonisation of Africa is traced.

To the piracy of Morocco are due many hostile relations with Europe—the occupation for long of its littoral, a host of invasions, blockades, and bombardments, and in our own day the Spanish war of 1859-60, which, though it led to no territorial changes, was a distinct landmark in those tireless efforts of Europe to obtain a more liberal commercial footing with the last and most backward of the independent Barbary States. Piracy and Christian slavery are now only memories of the Empire of Mulai el Hassan. He has nowadays no fleet, peaceful or piratical, and though he resents every effort to amend his ways after the European model, and keeps his crumbling towns in much the same fashion that they have been these thousand years or more, his all-pervading fear is to embroil himself with the infidel dogs whom, once upon a time, his fathers captured and enslaved.\*

Though piracy was formally ended by treaty in 1819, there were still occasional

outbreaks of it until a later date. In 1829, a boat party, that had landed from a vessel becalmed off Cape Spartel, only a few miles from Tangier (p. 101), were seized and never seen again; and in 1831, Sir Arthur Brooke tells us that "the country Moors on all parts of the coast are constantly on the look-out for Christians, and instantly make prisoners of all who have either landed accidentally or have been shipwrecked," a fact confirmed by the wife of the British Vice-Consul being seized at Cape Spartel, and escaping solely by her escort happily appearing in time. In 1828 the British had to blockade the Moorish coast, in retaliation for some damage done by the corsairs of his Shereefian Majesty, and next year the capture of an Austrian ship led to the bombardment of Tetuan, Azila, and Sallee-Rabat. In the same year Sir Arthur Brooke noticed the departure from Tangier, a town in sight of Gibraltar, of two Moorish brigs, "in the hope of pouncing upon some hapless Bremen or Hamburg merchantman," and mentions that Sweden and other States, to save themselves the expense of maintaining squadrons in the Mediterranean, actually paid the Sultan Mulai Abd-er-Rahman good round subsidies by way of propitiation. Still more recently, any seamen who were wrecked, or who incautiously landed on the Sus coast and the country on the southern frontier of Morocco, were certain to be seized. We possess numerous narratives of these captivities, the latest of which was that of Camille Douls, who, after severe hardships, was brought to the city of Morocco in 1887, and liberated by the British Minister, who happened just then to be on an embassy to that capital. But the most notorious pirates were the Riffians. It was they who, in 1859, after endless bickerings with Spain, compelled the latter Power—no way loth for an excuse—to invade the country, and, after defeating the Moorish troops, to occupy Tetuan for two years, and exact a heavy indemnity. These people are Berbers, the inhabitants of the country before the Arabs—or, for the matter of that, anyone else—came, and, secure in their still

\* The fullest history of Barbary piracy will be found (for Algeria, Tripoli, and Tunisia) in Mr. Lane-Poole's "Barbary Corsairs" (1890), Sir Lambert Playfair's "Scourge of Christendom" (1884), Admiral Jurien de la Gravière's "Les Corsaires Barbaresque" (1887), Count de Mas Latrie's "Les Relations et Commerce de L'Afrique Septentrionale ou Magreb avec les Nations Chrétiennes au Moyen Age" (1886), and (for Morocco) in the present writer's Introduction and Notes to "The Adventures of Thomas Pellow, of Penryn, Mariner" (1890).

unexplored mountain fastnesses of Er Riff, at which the geographer sailing down the Mediterranean looks with such longing, remain unchanged through the centuries. Nominally, they are subjects of the Sultan of Morocco. Practically, they are their own masters, and it fares badly with the tax-collector who is rash enough to enter the gorges on the sides of which are perched their fortified villages. Indeed, he seldom troubles them, permitting these refractory folk—whose country, though not five days' steam from London, is less known than many parts of the centre of Africa—to live unmolested. Some years ago, they quietly murdered the Bashaw whom the Sultan had sent to rule over Chechauan; and the two or three European travellers who have ventured into that town have done so only in disguise and at the risk of their lives—a fact that is not difficult of belief by those who have seen these independent tribesmen swaggering about Tetuan, musket on shoulder and knife in belt, ready to dispute the narrow way with any more chastened pedestrian. Their Mohammedanism is also more fanatical than orthodox; for, though the ground on which an infidel treads is to them unholy, the Riffians have no more compunction in eating the wild boar than they have in drinking the juice of their own grapes.

They were the last of the Sultan's subjects to abandon the capture of Christian ships and the enslavement of Christian sailors, and even yet it is clear, as recent incidents indicate, they are by no means averse from a bit of piracy, even in so awkward a spot for corsairs as the two Spanish Presidios of Alhucemas and Melilla. In reality, though the latter have a number of Hispanised Moors in their garrisons, the wild Arabs and Berbers have never paid more regard to the Unbeliever than to the Moslem, and, unless sharply looked after, are apt to indulge in the playful jest of taking a pot-shot at the Spanish sentry pacing his rounds. The veneer of civilisation that has been spread over the town Moors by long contact with

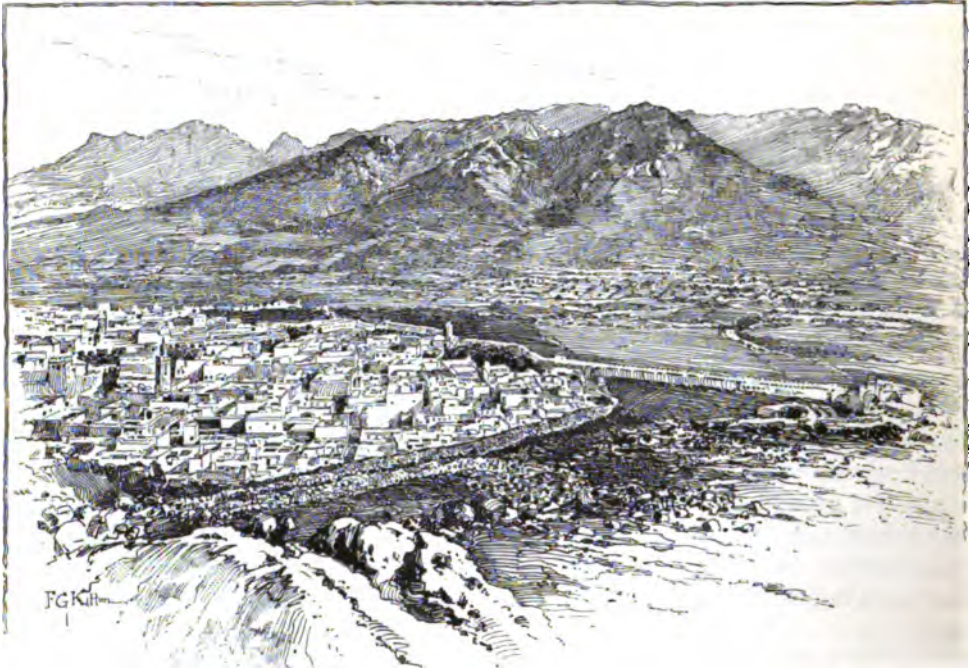
Europeans has not reached the Riffians, and, like the other mountaineers of Morocco, they know little of, and have less regard for, the might of the "Kafirs who fear not God."

Among these bold mountaineers—men who, with all their savagery, are infinitely preferable to the double-dealing, painfully polite, semi-cultured town Arab—the people of the village of Beni-boo-Gaffir, near Cape Ras ed Din, a few miles to the westward of Melilla, are the most notorious for their piratical habits. Steamers, of course, they never meddle with. But the small merchantmen who still form the bulk of the Mediterranean coasters used to dread being becalmed in the vicinity of this corsair haunt; for the chances were that the natives would immediately launch their large "kareebs," hidden in nooks or buried under sand, and make for the doomed craft, firing volleys to frighten the crew, who, if they did not escape in their boat, were certain to be either permanently enslaved or held to ransom (p. 105). However, provided they made no resistance, they were, though badly fed and hard worked, generally treated fairly well. But their vessel, after being stripped of every article of value, was burnt, even the clothes on the seamen's backs being replaced by old "djellabs," or garments of less elegance. It happened now and then that the becalmed craft managed to give its assailants more than they had bargained for. But this was a very rare occurrence, and only when the vessel carried guns; for the Riffians' "kareebs" were each manned by thirty or forty men, all armed with long muskets, pistols, and swords, and apt to exact a cruel retribution from those who failed to beat them off. Things went on in this way up to the year 1856, when Sir John Drummond Hay, for many years British Minister to the Shereefian Court, succeeded in rescuing some British prisoners, and exacting a promise that such conduct should not occur again. This vow, he maintains, has been faithfully observed, and, provided the outrages of 1889 and



1890 are explained as nothing more than a rude way of protesting against being supplied with contraband arms and other European goods, Sir John's claim is not unjustifiable. Still, when the Riffians' loose ideas on such subjects, and the old-fashioned Moslem's creed touching the violability of Kafir wealth, are considered, the merchant captain had better avoid the "Tres Forcas,"

Sallee and Mamorà were ports of far less importance than Tunis and Algiers, and the evil instincts of Tangier and Tetuan were kept in check by Gibraltar on one side and Ceuta on the other, they were long the scourges of small ships entering the Mediterranean. Sallee-Rabat (p. 105), on the Atlantic, was the strongest of these pirate dens, and its vessels—often owned, and always countenanced, by



TETUAN, IN MOROCCO, AND THE MOUNTAINS TO THE SOUTH.

unless he is sure of a wind, of his crew, and of his gunpowder.

The Riffians are, in short, "survivals," and, as such, interesting to the historian who is in no danger of falling into their hands. But there was a time when the mariner who approached "the gut of Gibraltar" began to scan the sea warily, so as to give a wide berth to the "Sallee Rovers" who, two centuries ago, so despitely used one Robinson Crusoe, of York, mariner. In those days piracy was the trade of a score of what are now crumbling ports along the Barbary shore. And though

the Sultan, who shared the profits—would sometimes have the boldness to lie under Lundy Island, to pounce upon merchantmen sailing out of Bristol, just as the Algerian rovers had the audacity to attack Baltimore, in Ireland. At that time not a year passed but hundreds of British and other sailors—not to speak of an occasional passenger—were marched into the interior. At Fez and Mequinez, and, to a smaller extent, at other inland cities, these ill-starred people were enslaved, beaten, and half starved. They were engaged in building houses and walls,

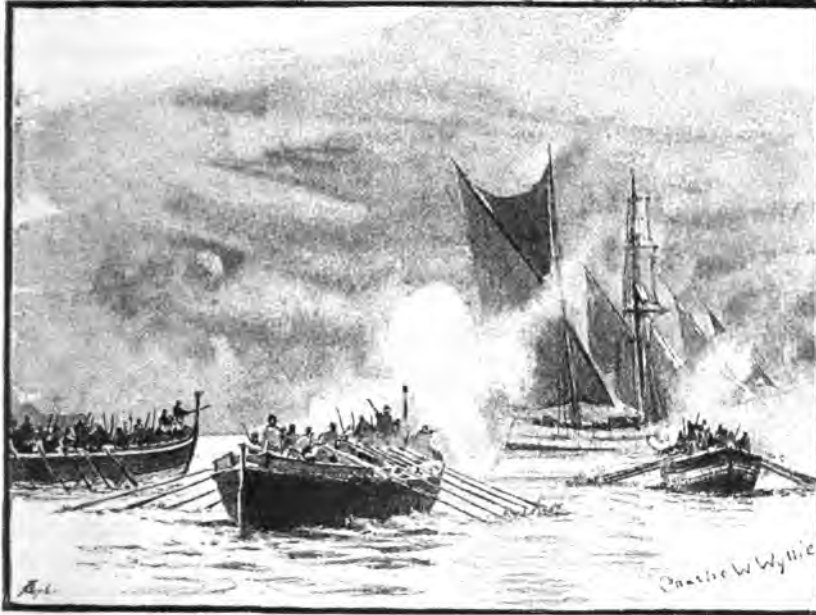
and in other occupations, until, through the bounty of the King, or the pity of the Redemptorist Fathers, or the self-sacrifice of relatives, their ransom arrived. Sometimes it never came. Then, unless they managed to escape, a life of slavery was their certain lot. Their only chance of avoiding it was to "turn Moor," and this many a despairing Briton did. Henceforward, his native land knew him

and, under new names, the John Smiths and Thomas Pellows of Penryn or of Plymouth sometimes rose high in the military service of the Sultan. In 1780,



SALLEE-RABAT.

"Omar, a Scotchman," was captain of a "zebek" of sixteen guns and one hundred and twenty-four men, and, at an earlier date, Pillet, a former French merchant, was for a twelvemonth the Governor of Sallee, the gates of which, however, his head ornamented soon



"KAREEBS" ATTACKING A MERCHANTMAN.

no more; for, as a subject of the Sultan, he was excluded from ransom, and was so closely watched that escape was seldom possible. But he was freed from the degraded position he formerly occupied,

afterwards. "One Carr" was, in 1727, Kaïd of the Jews, and in Mulai el Yezed's reign Mogador was garrisoned by two hundred and fifty French renegades, commanded by Boisselin, the son of a Parisian hatter.

## CHAPTER V.

## IN SEARCH OF PRESTER JOHN: A PAPER-CHASE.

The Course of the Niger—Early Tales of the Niger—Edrisi—Ibn Batuta—Leo Africanus—Timbuctoo and the Upper Niger Cities—The Renaissance of Geographical Exploration under the Portuguese—The Strange Myth of Prester John—Its Influence on African Exploration—Nunez Tristão's Hapless Attempt to Penetrate the Interior—The Joloff Prince and what came of his Story of Prester John's Kingdom—Embassies to the Niger Princes—What Sultan Mohammed thought of His Very Faithful Majesty—First Journeys into the Interior—What Truth is in Them—The Story of Andrew Battell of Leigh—Zebras, Gorillas, and Pygmies described by him—How Far he Anticipated Later Discoveries—The Last of Prester John as a Stimulus to the Exploration of Africa.

AFRICA within the last hundred years has been so ransacked in all its main features, so mapped and geologised and botanised and described, that we are apt to forget that there was a time within the memory of men still living when the features with which we are now so familiar were hotly discussed as non-existent. The Niger is, for example, a river so large that it might seem scarcely possible for anyone to miss the vast delta through which it enters the Atlantic. Still less would it appear possible for more than twenty centuries to elapse before travellers could agree as to its course to the sea, or, indeed, whether it was not the Nile, which flows into the Mediterranean, with the entire breadth of the continent between it and the flood with which it was confounded. Rising in the region now known as the States of Samori, inland from Sierra Leone and

**The course of the Niger.** Liberia, the Loma Mountain, which is the source of the Tembi, its earliest fountain-head, is not far distant from the beginnings of the Senegal and the Gambia, for which also it was for long mistaken. But the Niger (p. 112), though taking origin in the springs of this mountain, if we accept the Tembi as its chief stream, soon attracts other rivulets, which, uniting, form a goodly river, rolling north-easterly, as if it would follow the Nile by finding its outlet in the Mediterranean. But near Kabara, the port of the famous city of Timbuctoo, it takes a more easterly course for a couple of hundred miles. Before arriving at this point it has received the Mahel-Balevel

and swollen into a broad torrent, with, however, a tendency to split up into narrow channels, with back-waters, cross-creeks, and swamps.

Soon, however, collecting its force again, it turns sharply to the south-east, cutting its way through a rocky country, more picturesque than any of the low-banked, grain-bordered region which had been the main features of its banks from Samoriland to far beyond Kabara. Negro villages dot its banks in rapid succession. But Gogo, Say, Gompa, Bussa, Rabba, and Egga almost deserve the name of cities. At the last-named, the river, having forced its way through the Rennell Range of mountains, its even flow broken by many rapids, like those of Ansongo, takes a more southerly and westerly course, until the Benue, or Mother of Waters, joins it from the east, and swells the river which, though known for convenience' sake as the Niger, bears in every stretch of its long course a different name.\*

Before this confluence, though a broad river from the European point of view, it had not received many large tributaries. But the Benue,† before losing its identity in the Niger, has coursed for 860 miles, fed throughout

\* Joliba, Kworra, Mayo, and Kaki'nruwa are a few of its many designations. The word Niger or Nighir has nothing to do with the Latin *Niger*, black. It is most likely derived from the same root as the Berber *Ghir*, to this day applied to various streams in North Africa. The word is, however, very old, for Ptolemy and Pliny both use it.

† Also called the Shary and Tchadda.

its entire extent by rivers which, like the Mayo-Kebbi, are themselves of considerable dimensions, and their banks the home of populous nations, though explorations made only recently show that it has no connection with the basin of Lake Tchad, to the north of it.\* At the confluence of the two streams the Niger is about three-fourths of a mile wide, and the Benue rather larger, though they vary at different periods of the year, since the two rivers, having different gathering grounds, are not in flood at the same time. Their united current is, nevertheless, at any period of the year so broad that it looks like a lake, two miles in width, dotted with islands and sand-banks.

This vast river now leaves the sandstone plateau through which it had for many miles been winding its way among rapids and rocky islets, to enter a narrow gorge, by which it passes through a series of bold, picturesque hills, the limits—we may take it—of the old Atlantic shore before the flat coast formed by the mud brought down by the rivers had been formed. This delta, of which we have already spoken (p. 37), begins soon after leaving Onitsha, and stretches for about 120 miles along the coast, and for 140 or 150 miles inland. Through this flat, densely covered with bush, the great river, which for 2,500 miles has flowed along so majestically, through more than twelve degrees of latitude, crawls so secretly into the ocean that it took many centuries of exploration to establish so simple a fact. In the delta formed by the mud brought down by it through unnumbered ages, the river divides and subdivides, the different branches crossing and intercrossing with each other and with the lower courses of other rivers which, in like manner, creep seaward in this direction, until so intricate a network is formed that even were the delta accurately surveyed it would be impossible to say which was the Niger and which one of the many

other fetid floods collectively known as the Oil Rivers (p. 37). For in one direction the plain of mud extends to the Old Calabar or Cross River, and in the other to the lagoons around the colony of Lagos, though the channel chiefly used by vessels ascending the Niger is the Nun, which may be regarded as the most marked continuation of the river before it begins to divide.

On the drier part of the delta the river has low but regular banks, and where the "region of mud and miasma" has not begun the villages are embosomed amid plantations of plantains and sugar-cane (p. 117). By-and-by the ground is less raised above the gurgling current, though even here vast forests of oil-palms and other trees grow luxuriantly. Then the division between land and water is scarcely marked at high water. It is only when the tide goes out that the long, straggling roots of the swampy mangroves mark the first beginnings of soil, formed by the brown clay washed down by the river and strained through the rough sieve made by the network of these amphibious plants (p. 109). But, in time, as the delta widens seaward, the mangrove swamps will become dry land, and palm-trees take possession of the ground. Here, however, and for twenty miles inland, as far as the influence of the tide is felt in the dry season, these dense thickets shut out the view on every side. The voyager, as he steams to Sunday Island, sees little save the dark green wall on each side, the sluggish river underneath and the strip of blue sky overhead. From the deck of a ship sailing along the coast he sights barely that much. For, except a break here and there in the long line of dark green, there is little to indicate that among these slimy mangroves, rising to forty or fifty feet above the water, there rolls into the Gulf of Guinea the river which shares with the Nile the dignity of having attracted more explorers than any other in Africa, and which has cost more lives than any other part of this death-dealing continent.

All this is now the common heritage of

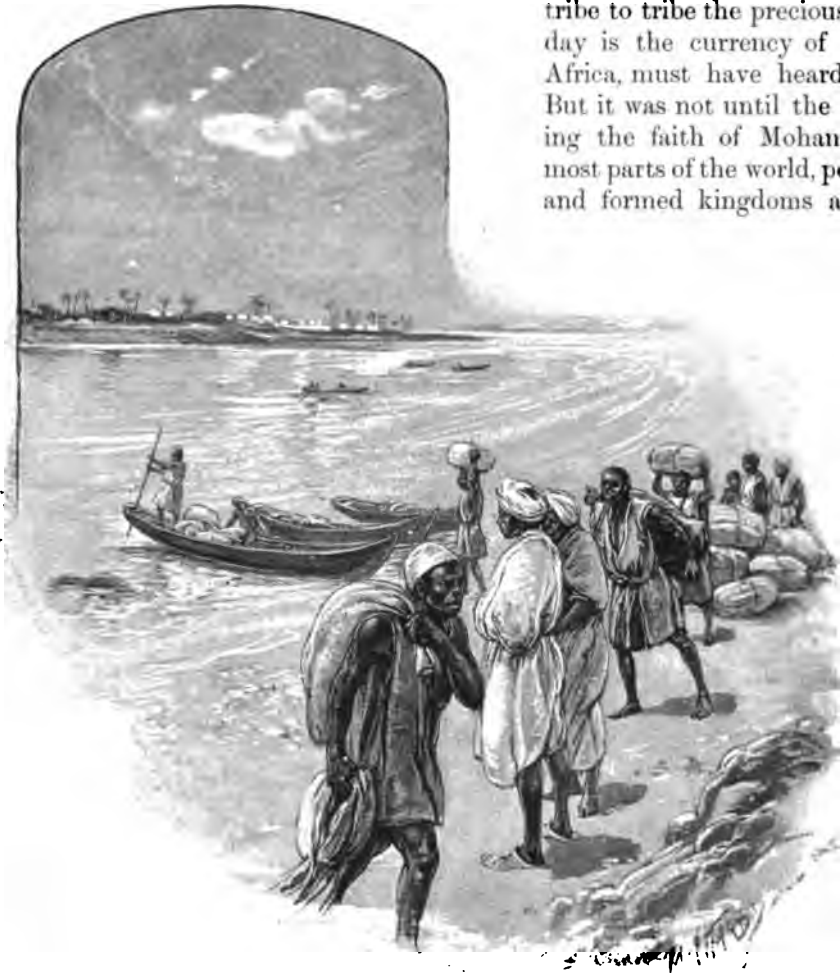
\* Macdonald: "Exploration of the Benue and its Northern Tributary, the Kebbi," *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, 1891, pp. 449-477.



geography. A century ago we knew about as little as we did in the days of Edrisi and Ibn-Batuta and Leo Africanus. **Early tales of the Niger.** Much was vague, and nearly everything speculative. It was known, or suspected

the country to the south-west of Egypt, had, after a thirsty journey over a sandy desert, reached a land of pygmies, watered by lakes and marshes, abounding with fruit-trees, and through which ran, from west to east, a great river. The salt-traders, who carried from tribe to tribe the precious article which to this day is the currency of many parts of inner Africa, must have heard of the same stream. But it was not until the Arabs, bent on carrying the faith of Mohammed into the uttermost parts of the world, penetrated the Soudan, and formed kingdoms and even empires on

the upper waters of the Niger, that the noise of the turmoil to which they gave rise began in these modern times to reach the ears of civilised men. And when the echo of their doings did find a place in the rude chronicles then beginning to be written, every fact was exaggerated, every little village enlarged into a town, every town of whitewashed huts roofed with reeds a city of so much wealth and splendour



SCENE ON THE NIGER, AT SUNSET.

—and the reputation of such a river could scarcely remain long concealed—that through the land of the Black Men flowed a mighty stream, which, if not the Nile, was quite as large. Herodotus, patiently jotting down on his tablets of wood the tales that he collected of far-away lands, had heard in Egypt of five young Nasamonians who, setting out from

that alongside of them even the capitals of the old world sank into insignificance. With such eagerness did these Asiatic fanatics press forward on their self-appointed mission of proselytism and, it must be admitted, of civilisation, that within less than a hundred years after the death of the Prophet there were schools and mosques in the

kingdom of Ghana, while we know from the statements made in the works of Arab historians that by 893, *i.e.*, two hundred and seventy years after the flight of Mohammed from Mecca, the Arabs, who by this time had overrun Northern Africa, and overthrown the stately monuments of Roman civilisation, were regularly sending caravans into the country between Tunis and the Upper Niger, just as they have been doing all the thousand years subsequently, and are doing at this very moment after much the same fashion that their

government. It was under one of these that Timbuctoo\* was founded as a trading station, which in time developed into the meeting-place of caravans from Morocco, Tripoli, Tunis, Egypt, the oases of the Sahara, and the Soudan. It was at no time a great political capital. Its wealth and importance depended upon its trade, and when the course of Central



MANGROVE THICKET.

fathers did when Haroun-Al-Raschid was Khalif of the East, and Egbert Overlord of England.

The pestilential swamps of the coast repelled the Moslem mercenaries. But in the healthy plateaux of the interior they so speedily brought the rude negroes into the fold of Islam that the Niger became the centre around which what were before mere broken tribes of savages became, outwardly, at least, self-respecting men, ruled by great warriors, and, in some instances, by sovereigns possessed in a remarkable degree of the art of

African commerce took other directions, and the traders no longer made for it, this city proportionately decreased in importance, though still a considerable market, and likely in future to be even more popular than it was when the Arab historians were so inspiring the imagination of European adventurers with tales of its grandeur that for more than a century the explorers of Africa may be described as Seekers after Timbuctoo. They penetrated

\* Timbuktu, as purists spell it, though the name in Arabic is really Tin Buktü; in Berber, Tumbutku; in Songhai, Timbutu.

the continent from the west and from the north. They struck the great river here, or they came upon it there. Their wanderings led them to regions often far away from the Niger; but the goal after which they all aimed, from Mungo Park to Oskar Lenz—or, perhaps, it would be more correct to say from George Thompson, who ascended the Gambia under the belief that it was the Niger, to Lieutenant Caron, who two hundred and seventy years later anchored in front of its port—was this almost mythical city of Niger-land. Like the ambition of certain folk to reach the North Pole, or to follow Leichhardt, or to discover the North-West Passage, or to find Franklin's log-books, the eagerness to share in the wealth or the glory to be won by being the first to enter this negro metropolis became a sort of passion. Every slave who came from the interior was questioned regarding it, and answered in exact accordance with the wishes of his interrogator, and a "Slatee" who could give, or pretend to give, any information regarding Timbuctoo was sure of a ready listener at any post from the Gaboon River to the Senegal.

Meanwhile, there were hot disputes about the river on which this much-talked-of city was built. Many geographers regarded the Niger and the Nile as identical,\* while others held by the Senegal as the seaward continuation of the river of whose upper waters the inland traders brought tales, and regarding which Edrisi and Leo the African had written in their volumes, which until well into this century were our principal authorities concerning the geography of the continent. Others insisted as stoutly on the Gambia, while a few followers of a short-lived faith fought for the Congo being the mouth of the river. Some even affirmed that it flowed into an inland basin. The only outlets to the Atlantic which nobody seems to have thought worthy

\* Up to well into this century there were geographers who held with the Arabs that the "Nil of the Negroes" was the upper portion of the Nile, and, considering the fact that the lower part of the former and the higher part of the latter were both unknown, the theory was by no means so absurd as we are now apt to consider it.

of notice were those breaks in the delta up which there is now some ground for believing that the Portuguese had penetrated in the sixteenth century, when they sent embassies to the Kings of Melli and Mosi, and even—so it is claimed—to the ruler of Songhai, on the Upper Niger. The wonderful revival of geographical exploration which began in the fifteenth century was led by the Portuguese. Their ships and their settlements were the first to discover and to take possession of the many new lands that were then not known even by name. Strange tales reached Europe of a Christian sovereign, very rich, very pious, and very powerful, who lived in the interior of Africa, and was known by the name of "Prester John." This phantom potentate is one of the strangest myths of the Middle Ages. At first he was rumoured to be the sovereign and priest of some great realm in the Far East. Then, after seeking him in Central Africa, Abyssinia was assigned as the land of Prester John, though not unlikely the confusion of Ethiopia with India, which is as old as Virgil, might be the cause of his home having been transferred, in the popular imagination, from Africa to Asia. Be that as it may, Abyssinia, until the myth died away, continued to be regarded as the true kingdom of this ecclesiastical monarch. Letters were sent to the sovereign of Abyssinia in that capacity, though, not improbably, the story of Prester John originated long before the people of that country had fully accepted the Christian faith.

At all events, when the Portuguese first began their voyages, which in a few years brought half the world to the knowledge of Europe, Abyssinia was not quite taken for granted as the seat of this sovereign. On Fra Mauro's map of 1459 there is a fine city figured as "the principal residence" of "Prete Janni" (p. 116), and forty years later Vasco da Gama heard—or thought that he heard—while prosecuting his voyage from Mozambique northward, of the same personage reigning in the interior. So firmly established was the

The myth  
of Prester  
John.

belief in the existence of this pope-king, that among the customary instructions received by the commanders of the expeditions, then so frequently setting out for Africa and India, was the order to inquire diligently of the inhabitants regarding Prester John,\* and whenever news of any likely monarch came to their ears, to lose no opportunity of penetrating inland in search of him. For if the close of the fifteenth century was full of commercial enterprise, it was also intensely tinged with religious fervour, and the Church, as the custodian of all the learning of the period, took care that their side of the great Portuguese expeditions, which Prince Henry the Navigator was despatching hither and thither, should not be neglected. The long, dreary expanse of havenless sandy shore between Morocco and Upper Guinea offered little chance of landing. But when the mariners saw the fertile shores of the Senegal and the Gambia, and were offered gold and ivory from the interior, then they remembered Prester John, just as their successors thought of Timbuctoo and the Moslem kings of the Upper Niger. Nunez Tristão's first essay in that direction was unfortunate, for he and a number of his men were killed in attempting to ascend a small river near the Rio Grande, without anyone ever hearing of Prester John and his empire.

But one day† there came to the settlement on Arguin island a Joloff Prince, who had much to tell of Timbuctoo and Jenné, of the vast trade carried on with these cities, and of a land beyond Timbuctoo in which dwelt a people who were neither Moors nor pagans, and must therefore be Christians, and if Christian, surely the subjects of the long-sought-for Prester John. How far this wily black, who had been exiled by his relatives, and was anxious to obtain the white man's aid in recovering his throne, was playing on the credulity of the Portuguese, of whose anxiety to

hear of a Christian land in the interior he was, of course, well aware, is an open question. At Lisbon, however, he clung to his tale, and professing no reluctance to be baptized, the pagan was duly admitted into the pale of Christendom, receiving at the same time—fit emblem of what was to follow—a coat of arms, consisting of a crown of gold on a vermillion field, with the quarters of Portugal in the border. He then did homage to the King as his Liege Lord, and to the Pope, in the person of his commissary, according to the forms usually adopted by Catholic princes. Meanwhile, at the tournaments of the Court the Joloff Prince exhibited some wonderful feats of horsemanship. His negro attendants ran alongside a galloping charger, leaped on while it was running its swiftest, and then sprang off again with the same promptitude as if it had been stopped for their convenience. These performances, like the horses on which they were learned, had doubtless been imported from the Arabs in the interior, or from those who had penetrated south from Morocco. By-and-by a fleet of twenty caravels was equipped under the command of Pero Vaz da Cunha, with a body of Dominican monks, under the orders of a brother of that order—the one for the subjection, the other for the conversion, of the natives. The Senegal was the river they selected for ascending, and here a fort was begun. But before it had proceeded far the Joloff Prince, seeing that the Portuguese were more intent on establishing themselves in the country than in re-seating him in power, quarrelled with his protectors, and being suspected of plotting with his kinsfolk against them, was, in the heat of a squabble, stabbed to death by the sullen commander of the expedition. About the same time, a pestilence broke out among the troops, with such fatal results that, though the fleet did not leave the river, the building of the fort was stopped. During this delay embassies were sent to the inland princes, several of the envoys being accredited to the King of Timbuctoo, though, unfortunately, no record has been kept of a visit which, were it confirmed, would give the

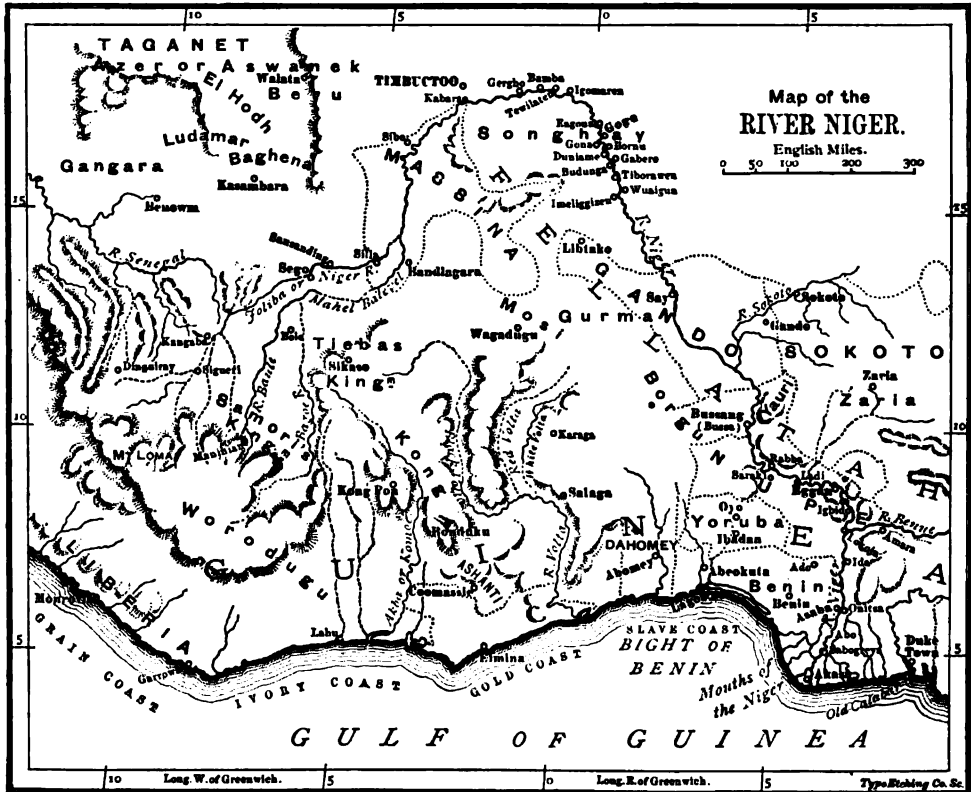
\* Oppert: "Der Presbyter Johannes in Sage und Geschichte" (2nd Ed., 1870); Zarnecke: "Der Prester Johannes" (1876-79); Yule: "Cathay and the Way Thither," pp. 173 *et seq.*, and "Marco Polo," 2nd Ed., vol. i., pp. 229-233, vol. ii., pp. 539-543.

† In 1489—three years before the Discovery of America.

Portuguese the credit of anticipating by more than three centuries the first entry of any European into that city.

Still seeking for Prester John—and perhaps also for gold and slaves—the Portuguese touched the coast here and there, sending messages to this “Prince” and that “Emperor,” full of inflated compliments to them

somewhere in the Niger country. Sultan Mohammed was, however, in no way inclined to bandy compliments with the Portuguese envoys, for he dismissed them promptly with the remark that he understood nothing of all this palaver about magnificent kings in the Infidel country. There were to his knowledge only four who answered that description—the



MAP OF THE RIVER NIGER.

and grandiose descriptions of the might and puissance of his Lusitanian Majesty. Among the black potentates to whom these early envoys were sent was a “Moerish”\* monarch with the not uncommon name of Mohammed, who ruled a country about 500 miles in the interior behind Cape Palmas, and therefore

\* In the earlier writers this term is used very vaguely. It meant at most only a Mohammedan in faith, though the name was not unfrequently applied to any dark folk—Pagan or Moslem, Berber, Arab, Negro, or Fulah.

King of Cairo, the King of Alimæm, the King of Baldac, and the King of Tucuroi. And, he added, of the “four thousand four hundred and four kings” of which he was the lineal descendant, not one had received or sent an embassy to any Christian prince; that he had no intention of introducing any such innovation on the wisdom of his ancestors; and that the envoys would be pleased to depart forthwith. Whereupon, adds the old chronicler, they lost no time in taking their departure.



But the ardour of His Very Faithful Majesty in search of Prester John was not to be damped by the boorish

**First  
journeys  
into the  
interior.**

curtness of Sultan Mohammed. Accordingly, another embassy was despatched from the Island of Arguin, where the Portuguese had built a fort and founded a factory, into the Hodem country, more than two hundred miles in the interior, on the headwater of the Niger. But though the Bambarrans and Ludamar people, whose home was in those parts, were quite willing for the white men to found a factory, and promised to make all needful inquiry about him, they, like everybody else consulted, had never heard of Prester John. And so the envoys came back again, as little successful in their errand as the seekers after the North Pole at a later day, though, like them, not without hopes of being able to find the long-sought-for goal.

Leaving out of all account the Latin braggadocio from which the Portuguese of those days, like their cousins in Spain, were not exempt, there cannot be any doubt that these early adventurers did penetrate far into the interior, and were acquainted with much of the Niger country long before the world at large knew anything about it. When the French and English came to the Senegal and Gambia, they found a considerable mixed Portuguese population established on these rivers; and even at Bambuk, when the French reached it, as they thought, for the first time, there were—as there are still all along the African coast—many words in the native language which attest the former presence of the enterprising people whose explorations, from jealousy of other nations, or from the ignorance or carelessness of those taking part in them, were permitted to pass out of memory without being committed to writing. It is possible that the few facts which remain would have been lost altogether had not the industrious De Barros collected them before they had vanished from the memory of man. From these records we learn that, though they knew much of the countries traversed

by the Gambia, the Senegal, and the Niger, they had no idea of the two latter being separate rivers, or of the fact of the Niger flowing for a certain portion of its course almost due eastward; but they must have had some idea of the length of that river, for De Barros expresses surprise that so long a stream did not pour more water into the ocean. They describe the populous towns and the fertile country on its banks. The ravages of the slave trade had not then begun; but the tribal wars were brisk long before the white man had been seen, and there was always a local traffic in serfs, which, however, was more than satisfied by the sale of criminals or prisoners taken in the campaign of one little king against another still smaller. Timbuctoo, where the merchants from Cairo, Tunis, Tlemçen, Fez, and Morocco met those from all other parts of Northern and Equatorial Africa, and Jenné farther to the west, which was a rendezvous for the traders nearer to the coast, were among the places which came within the knowledge of these Portuguese pioneers. They not only visited them, but they bought at El Mina (p. 44) and their other forts the gold which the natives of these lands brought to the coast. They were eye-witnesses of the dismal desert between Morocco and Cape Blanco, though, like the ancients, they had heard of the green “abeses,” or oases, which were not only centres of population, but stepping-stones by which the rolling sands could be crossed by caravans; and in their writings we read names now part of the everyday vocabulary of the whites in Northern Africa—of the “Sahel,” of the “Sahara,” and the “Azagar”—to express the relative richness and poverty of the region in question, though the terms are not now applied in exactly the same way that the Portuguese imagined they were four hundred years ago. But small though the land which actually owned the rule of Portugal was, it was enough for her sovereigns to style themselves Lords of Guinea. As such the explorers erected pillars on those parts of the coast at which they touched, some of them remaining

to this day,\* discovered and tried to explore the Congo, and failing to find the land of Prester John among its swamps, established in the Congo country, south of the river of that name, Christian missions, the remnants of which, among crumbling cities and ruined churches, we shall have occasion to describe when the story of the share which the Church soon took in the civilisation of Africa comes to be the subject of a later portion of this work. From the Congo country the Portuguese sent expedition after expedition either along the coast or up the rivers, founding colonies and missions and trading-posts, under stern soldiers and stout-hearted priests, and huxters whose courage was equal to that of either friar or musketeer.

It was a golden age for discovery which we are sketching. Half the world knew little of the other half. Not a ship came into port but she brought tidings of lands, and peoples, and products, all strange to the most learned of our countrymen, or to the books which existed in such small numbers that it was quite possible to remember them all by name. In every tavern, ear-ringed men, clad in watchet cloth, talked of regions the very whereabouts of which puzzled the oldest mariner in the company, and the little lads playing about the shore and the wharves could, by approaching a group of sailors come ashore, hear of realms and fights, goodly cities and fair havens, of which the wisest clerk in "Powl's Schoole" could not tell the position.

Portugal and Spain, it is true, had by the Pope's grace the monopoly of these outlandish voyages. But no priest or potentate, no bull or Vatican decree, could, or, for the matter of that, did, bar the valiant seamen of the Tudors long out of any ocean over which they wished to sail. Twenty years before Queen Elizabeth had ended her reign, Thomas Stevens, an English Jesuit, had reached India by way of the Cape of Good Hope, on board a Portuguese ship, and not long afterwards, John

Newbery and Ralph Fitch, "with six or seven other London merchants," had, first of their race, travelled overland through Aleppo, Bagdad, Bussorah, and Ormuz. Even the jealousy of the Spaniards could not keep the Briton out of the new world which the conquests of Cortes had just added to the Empire of the Indies. For Robert Tomson, of Andover, found his way to Mexico in the year 1554, and abode there with "many ancient men that were of the Conquerors," until, giving utterance to sentiments that smacked of heresy, the Englishman found it prudent to put the sea between him and New Spain. Yet, even this was not the first British venture to Mexico. This distinction must be reserved for "one Thomas Blake, a Scottisman," who had dwelt in the city for twenty years. Ten years later, Roger Bodenham, another Englishman, being unsuccessful in his trade with Fez, in Morocco, a fanatical town long subsequently closed to infidel merchants, stayed nine months in the city of Montezuma, and did so well that he brought back to Seville a cargo worth, in the money of that day, about £36,000.

We need not, therefore, be surprised to hear that in 1520, Andrew Battell, a fisherman of Leigh, in Essex, having a soul above the cockles and flounders of that Thames-mouth village, or even the salmon that ascended the then unfouled river, was exploring the coast of Africa on board a Portuguese ship which was looking out for a cargo of slaves, though, no doubt, the captain had strict orders also to be keeping an ear open for tales of Prester John. It is true that Andrew was nominally a prisoner on board "the Portugall," which, like most of its flag, was half-trader, half-privateer, with perhaps a dash of the pirate all through. They had rescued him from captivity among the Indians of Brazil, which possibly the wayward mariner found less agreeable than the fo'c'sle of a ship. At all events, he was by no means depressed by reason of his lot, and to this accident the world is indebted for a very curious discovery. Cruising up and down the coast in search of

\* Most of them have, however, been removed to museums.



slaves whom they might buy, or possibly freemen whom they might kidnap, the Portuguese fell in near the Morro, or Cliff,\* on the coast of Benguela, with a host of freebooters called Gagas or Giagas, who had

of free-lances had no land of their own. They were outlaws who lived by plunder and murder, and in pursuit of their calling had reached the coast with a multitude of captives whom they were glad to get quit of



PORTION OF FRA MAURO'S MAP OF ABYSSINIA.

(The white star shows representation of Preste Janni's principal residence.)

come through the Congo country and Angola from a region somewhat near the headwaters of the great river that Mr. Stanley's exploration rendered so famous nigh four hundred years afterwards. But this wandering tribe

\* Cape Morro.

for a few pence apiece. Never had a slaver met with such a bargain before, and naturally, when the robbers expressed a wish to be ferried over the Cona,† in order to harry the

† Probably the Quanza, or perhaps the Cuvo, a little south of Cape Morro.

Benguela people on the other side, the honest traders in human flesh were only too ready to oblige allies from whose depredations they expected still further profit. By eighties at a time they were accordingly carried over the river, and their landing covered by a discharge of musketry from the ships hard by. With such powerful assistance, the Benguelas, as might have been expected, were routed, their chief slain, and his body, with that of many of his tribesmen, devoured by the cannibal victors, while the survivors were huddled into the holds of the inhuman scoundrels who had constituted themselves partners with the savage Giagas.

For five months the black robbers continued to ravage Benguela, and the white ones to buy from them the produce of their raids. Loading and discharging, they passed to and fro between Africa and Brazil during that period, supplying the wherewithal for their allies ashore to steal, and then, as they filled up, hurrying off to a port with their cargo of men, women, and children. Such a business was too good to desert; for in all their evil dealings the Portuguese had never met with a people so ready to rob or so easy to defraud. But, returning one day to ship the usual freight, they found that the Giagas had left. Determined, however, not to lose such profitable customers, the Portuguese sent a party in search of them, and after several days' tramp overtook "the army," marching under the command of a new chief called Mofarigosat, who was just then meditating a fresh expedition against a neighbouring tribe. Finding, however, the white men in his power, the wily negro intimated that it was now their

turn to do a little fighting, and, seeing that there was no alternative, they had to consent.



PLANTAIN (*Musa paradisiaca*) PLANTATION.

The white men's firelocks being all-powerful, the war soon terminated, and the Portuguese having

SUGAR-CANE  
(*Saccharum officinarum*).

had enough of it, decided to take their departure. This the wily Mofarigosat declined to permit unless they left one of their number behind as a pledge for their early return. Having, naturally, no intention of doing anything of the kind, they readily consented, and as poor Battell was a foreigner

and a heretic, he was chosen as this perilous pawn

For a time the hostage was treated reasonably well. It was only when it became evident that his companions had left for good that the Giagas began to ill-treat him, and finally to discuss the advisability of putting him to death. But the chief, though in the minority, was strong enough to protect him and in the end to secure his freedom. Freedom in the African bush is, however, as Battell found it, a poor boon, and so, after wandering about half starved, and in hourly danger from wild beasts and prowling savages, he was fain, as the lesser of two evils, to return to his old friends the Giagas. Flattered apparently by his confidence in their amiability, they now looked upon Andrew as one of themselves, and during the four months longer he had to stay with them indulged in one wild orgie of "triumphing, drinking, dancing, and eating men's flesh," though the last-named habit he does not admit to have contracted. At length their roamings brought them near a Portuguese port, and their fetish-men, or "wizards" as the narrator calls them, having announced that it was the Devil's pleasure that the white man should depart, the hapless Essex seaman was glad enough to ship on board a slaver which just then was on the eve of sailing.

This at least is the tale told by Andrew Battell, of Leigh, to Richard Hakluyt, Prebendary of Westminster, and printed many years afterwards, by Master Purchas, in "His Pilgrimes." How far it is true, we have, of course, now no means of ascertaining, though there is no reason to doubt its substantial accuracy. The Giagas—by that name at all events—are not known to modern ethnologists. But that is not remarkable. Such a race of marauders, kept up as they were by the adoption of boys and girls from the tribes they conquered, all their own children being killed at birth, were not likely to last long as an independent organisation, even if the anger of their neighbours permitted the existence of a race who depended "on war for a supply of all they wanted," who

sowed without reaping, and cut down the palm-trees to extract the juice, instead of carefully tapping them after the ordinary fashion of a stationary people. But their customs, their cannibalism, their devil-worship and devil dances, their wizards or fetish-men, and the occasional human sacrifices, all agree with the general traits of the people at the headwaters of the Congo, where, according to Lopez, who also mentions them, they lived "particularly about a lake which gives rise" to that river. This, we may infer, is either Lake Moero or Lake Bongweolo, in which it is almost certain that the Lualaba, its chief tributary, or indeed its continuation, arises.\* Once upon a time they swept into the Lower Congo country, compelling the "King," whom this old Portuguese writer calls "Don Alvaro," to take refuge on an island in the river, until the Giagas, having consumed everything, were constrained to seek for further booty in another country. Merolla—Padre da Sorrento—was also familiar with these marauders, for he relates how he saw outside the Congo capital shambles in which human flesh had been sold by them while they occupied that place. They offered it liberally to the Portuguese who came to trade with them, but the latter were more desirous of buying living men "than to have their bellies filled with such barbarous food" as the corpses of dead ones.†

This, at least, supports one statement of Andrew Battell, and another fully as interesting has been confirmed by the discoveries of very recent years. For among the information picked up by him was a report that "to the north-east of Mani-Kesock are a kind of little people, called Matimbaz, which are no bigger than Boyes of twelve yeares olde, but verie thicke, and live onely upon fleshe, which they kill in the woods with their Bowes and Darts. They pay tribute to Mani-Kesock, and bring all their Elephants' teeth and tayles to him.

\* "Relazione del reame di Congo e delle vicini contrade di Odoardo Lopez Portoghese, per Philippo Pigafetta, etc." (1591), Book I., ch. i.

† Merolla: "Relazione fatta nel regno di Congo" (1692).

They will not enter into any of the Marombos' houses, nor will they suffer any to come where they dwell. And if by chance any Marombo or people of Loango passe where they dwell, then they will forsake that place, and go to another. The women carry Bow and Arrows as well as the men. And one of them will walk in the Woods alone, and kill the Pongos with their poisoned Arrows."\*

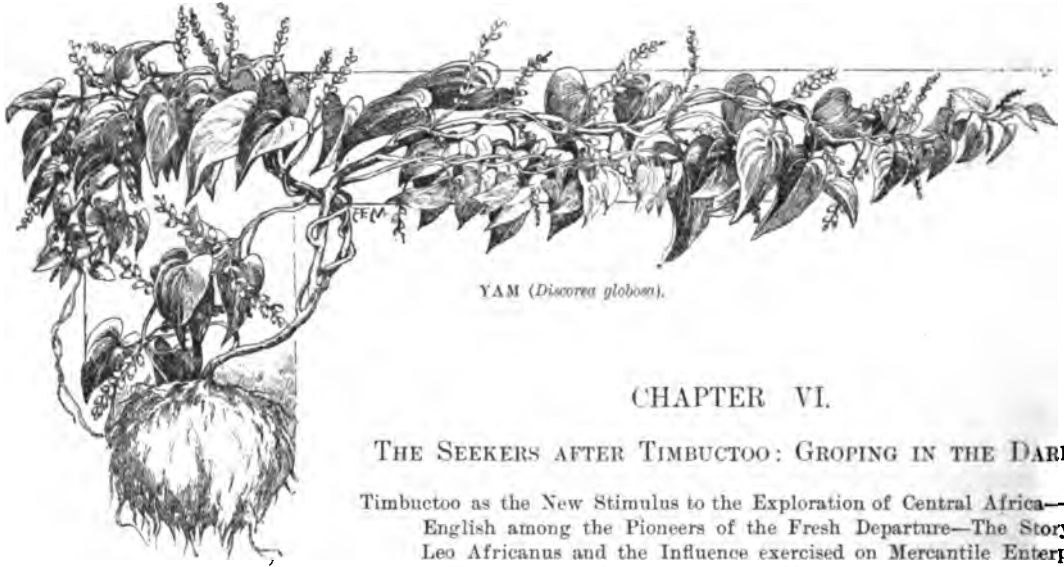
Then Battell goes on to give excellent descriptions of animals, such as the zebra, now well known, but at that date new to Europeans, and the pongo and gorilla, which were unquestionably the hairy men and women whose skins Hanno the Carthaginian (p. 20) hung up in the Temple of Juno, where they still remained at the taking of Carthage by the Romans. Yet when, more than 2,300 years afterwards, an African trader from the Gaboon—of whom we shall have something to say by-and-by—brought to London several specimens of the same animal, a great many people, who had never heard of Hanno, and a great many more who, having had the advantage of a classical education, ought to have been familiar with the "Periplus," imagined that some great zoological discovery had been made, though, it may be added, several travellers had in the interval between five hundred years before the Christian Era and eighteen hundred and sixty after it brought numbers of skulls and skeletons to Europe and America. Prester John was not found, but it was something to have seen the gorilla and the pigmy folk. For the latter were undoubtedly the same people whom Dr. Touchard described in 1861 in the country to the back of the Gaboon. They were also those from whose poisoned arrows Mr. Stanley's expedition suffered so much during their march through the great forest which covers so much of equatorial

Africa, and whose relatives Schweinfurth and others have described in various other parts of the Continent as living at the beck of the more powerful tribes around them, who have apparently at some early period invaded the land once held by these ancient lords of the soil.† But unless Aristotle and Herodotus are to be credited with giving us the first inkling of them, Andrew Battell, of Leigh, deserves the honour of bringing back from his captivity among Indians in Brazil, and Portuguese in Angola, and negroes in Africa, the earliest information about these curious little folk no bigger than "boyes of twelve yeares."

However, if Andrew Battell's pilgrimage is the first in which we learn anything of the Pigmies, it is the last in which we hear anything of Prester John. The world was getting too prosaic or too greedy for any such mythical hero. America had been discovered, and vast lands and strange peoples had to be conquered and brought into the bosom of the Church. The new route to the Indies had changed the course of commerce, and so from the close of the sixteenth century Prester John ceased to be the stimulus for any explorer, or a personage who figured in the instructions for any expedition, whether fitted out for the purchase of slaves, or to seek for the golden city of Manoa, of which Raleigh went in search, or for those Fountains of Perpetual Youth which Ponce de Leon so long sought in vain. For it so happened that just as the fabled king of a Christian land in Inner Africa vanished into the limbo of "working hypotheses," the tales of Timbuctoo, garish with gold-dust and ivory and ostrich-feathers, took his place, and for many a year were the *primum mobile* of African exploration, which, until there was little more to learn about it, concentrated in or about the Niger river.

\* "The Strange Adventures of Andrew Battell, of Leigh, in Essex, sent by the Portugals prisoner to Angola, who lived there and in the adjoining regions near eighteen years." [1589-1607.] ("Purchas, His Pilgrimes," 1625, lib. vii., chap. iii., p. 983.)

† The history of these pigmy races is fully described by Dr. Flower in the *Journal of the Anthropological Institute*, vol. xviii., p. 73; by M. Quatrefages in his work, "Les Pygmées" (1887); and, among others, by Miss A. Werner in the *Gentleman's Magazine*, 1890, p. 556.



YAM (*Discorea globosa*).

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO: GROPING IN THE DARK.

Timbuctoo as the New Stimulus to the Exploration of Central Africa—The English among the Pioneers of the Fresh Departure—The Story of Leo Africanus and the Influence exercised on Mercantile Enterprise by His Account of Timbuctoo—Ca da Mosto and the Salt Traders—Was the Water reached by them Lake Chad?—A Similar Mode of doing

Business in the Yoruba Country—What the English Merchants Determined to do—A Tale which came from Morocco regarding the Conquest of Timbuctoo by Sultan Ahmed II. and of the Enormous Quantity of Gold brought back by the Conquerors—What befell George Thompson in the ship *Catherine* of London—The Voyage of Richard Jobson up the Gambia—A Wondrous Tale of Gold—The Adventures of Claude Jannequin, Sieur de Rochefort, and other Frenchmen—Bartholomew Stibbs and his Doings—The Romantic Story of Job, Son of Solomon—The Foundation of the African Association—The Dawning of the Day.

AT no time did the English ever worry themselves over Prester John and his kingdom. They were prosaic folk, who searched after something more substantial than a sovereign who was at once priest and king, a combination for which the mariners who were winning for us the mastery of the sea in the days of the first Stuart and his predecessor had no stomach whatever. For, apart from some painful experiences that were still fresh in men's memories, the chances were that this Christian prince, even were he discovered, would be a Papist, and hence, as not a few sea-going folk had good reason to remember, heretics such as they would be apt to suffer in the inquisitions of countries professing that particular form of Christianity. It is true that, three years before Queen Elizabeth of blissful memory was laid among her fathers, John Pory, "lately of Goneuille and Caius College in Cambridge," had published, in his quaint version of the

**What was told by John Leo a More.**

"Geographical Historie of Africa," by John Leo a More," a long account of the "Empire of Prete Janni," compiled from the

writings of Malugucci and De Barros. But by this time Abyssinia had been fixed upon as the abode of the "Emperour," and nobody seemed to fancy that in this corner of Northern Africa there were great riches, though in "Amara castel" he "layde not up so much golde, because they knew not how to purifie it, but rather jewels and wedges of gold."

If, however, the English merchants read this story, much disappointment had rendered them callous to such tales. And, moreover, in an earlier portion of the work in question John Leo the Moor had to relate from his own knowledge how on the Upper Niger were the realms of many Moslem princes—Ghana, Wangara, Bornu, Cassina, Jenné, Melli, Guber, Zanfara, Walet, and, above all, the kingdom and city which he called Tombuto, and is now known under the name of Timbuctoo (p. 121). Other travellers, we have seen, had heard of this from second-hand description, and some, though they have left no records, might even have visited it. The Arab historians had told what had been told them, and Messer Alvise da Ca Da Mosto, "Gentleman of

Venice," related in 1504 how every year rock-salt was carried from a place called Tegazza to Timbuctoo and Melli, where it was sold for three hundred ducats the load, since the country was so hot that unless the people ate this mineral their blood would putrefy. From Timbuctoo the salt was carried to another still more interior country where there was a river or lake, but whether fresh or not he could not learn, though probably fresh,

This story evidently refers to Lake Tchad, and even now a like custom is followed in the intercourse between the negroes and Arabs in some districts; and I have heard almost the same tale told by Moorish traders to the Soudan of the manner in which business is done between 'them and some of the remoter tribes, justly suspicious of the Moslems' good faith in the matter of life and liberty. It was the way strangers not in the best of repute had to deal with the tribesmen of the Saharan coast not long ago, and to this day a somewhat similar method of buying and selling is, though from a different reason, the



TIMBUCTOO.



KABARA, THE PORT OF TIMBUCTOO.

otherwise there would have been no need of salt. Having reached the water, the salt-carriers made piles of it in a row, each marking his own, and having made sand-piles, they all turned back. "Then comes another generation of negroes who do not wish themselves to be seen or spoken to. They come with large barques that appear to issue from certain islands, and land, and having seen the salt, place a quantity of gold opposite each pile, and then return, leaving the gold and the salt; and when they are gone the salt negroes come, and if the quantity of gold pleases them, take the gold and leave the salt; and in this manner they make their trade without seeing each other, by a long and ancient custom;" and, adds Signor Ca da Mosto, "though it appear a hard thing to believe, I certify having had this information from many merchants, Arabs and Azanaghi, and likewise from persons worthy of credit."

custom in the Yoruba country, behind Lagos in West Africa. In this still primitive region a passing traveller may stop at any field or farm, and cook sufficient food from the standing crops for one meal, but it is considered a very heinous offence for him to carry any away. On the road-sides it is a common practice for maize-flour, starch, or bean bread, or cooked yams (p. 120), or akara (a ball of beans and pepper fried in palm-oil), to be carefully arranged on a mat for sale, while near at hand a broken calabash is placed for the receipt of cowries, the little shells that are the currency of the country. In passing by, Mr. Alvan Millson tells us his men would

choose what they wanted and put a number of cowries into the calabash, after consulting among themselves as to the exact price which they had paid at the last town or market-shed. For forty cowries (less than a half-penny) a man could fully satisfy his hunger—and the hunger of a negro marching from fifteen to twenty miles a day, with a heavy load on his head, is not easily appeased. "Though I had among my carriers men who were probably not unacquainted with leisured retirement within the walls of Lagos gaol, it never occurred to them to under-pay or take that of which they did not know the price. The owner of the articles would probably be a mile or two away, working placidly at home, while the mats did business for her at the roadside. Even an automatic postage-stamp machine would have no difficulty in realising a dividend in such a community."\* It is at the same time to be remembered that dishonesty in other forms—so much are morals a matter of conventionality—is as prevalent in Yoruba as elsewhere.

But to return to Timbuctoo. All the stories about it had hitherto been vague, tinctured with obvious falsehood even to the credulous minds of the men of 1600, and in all cases strained through many mouths ere reaching Europe. John Leo had, however, actually seen the city which he described. A Spanish Moor, born in Granada when that city was a Moslem capital, he had crossed into Africa with his family while a child, and after receiving the best education that Fez could supply, had been employed in various public offices which led him to travel over most of Northern Africa and Persia (though of this country he has not left any record), and to accompany his uncle on an embassy from the King of Fez to the Sultan of Timbuctoo. All throughout his journeys he kept a careful record of what he saw and heard, which served him in good stead in after years. For on a voyage to or from Egypt he was captured by a Venetian corsair, who presented him as a

slave to Pope Leo X. This enlightened pontiff, perceiving the manner of man the Moor was, converted him to Christianity (of a kind), gave him freedom, and encouraged him to remain in Rome by the bestowal of a liberal pension. Here he occupied himself in many learned labours, one of which was the expansion and translation into Italian of his Arabic manuscript. Published at a later date by the famous Ramusio, Secretary of the Venetian Council of Ten, the work of Leo Africanus, or Johannes Leo (for the Pope was his godfather), has been issued in many languages. For long it was the chief—almost the sole—authority on Africa, and to this day may be profitably studied for the description it gives of regions still imperfectly known to Europeans, and for its graphic picture of Northern Africa and the Niger regions four centuries ago.

Time has only confirmed the truth of Leo's descriptions, and among his most attractive sketches is that of Timbuctoo, which he says abounded in all the necessities of life except—as Ca da Mosto tells us—salt, which was dear owing to its being brought from Tegazza, 500 miles distant. Horses were not bred, but, as is still the case, were brought from Morocco, from which country also—as is the custom to this day—many manuscripts were imported. All other goods were saleable at a fine price; and as were the people, so was the king, rich and liberal to such a degree that he had married his daughters to two of the merchants of the town. The circulating medium, in addition to little shells (cowries), was unstamped pieces of gold, and, among other emblems of wealth, the precious metal was so plentiful that the king had many plates and sceptres of it, "some whereof weighed 1,300 pounds."† When to this fact was added the information that the inhabitants were mild and gentle, and—as the fashion of Africa is—

† This statement has been doubted. However, without vouching for Leo's exactitude, his words are plain enough—"Il re possiede gran ricchezza in piastre e verghe d'oro, delle quali alcuna e di peso di mille trecento libbre"—each Italian pound being twelve ounces.

\* *Proceedings of the Roy. Geog. Soc.*, 1891, p. 583.



spent a large portion of the night in singing and dancing, it may be certain that not a few gentlemen of England who read Master Pory's version, as it issued in 1600 from George Bishop's press in London, determined to try their fortunes in so promising a market. And, as we shall see presently, not a few cavaliers in France had come to a like conclusion when the same information had been put at their disposal by the version which Jean Temporal had issued at Lyons in 1556, and dedicated, in a curious preface, in which he talks of "our republic," to the first husband of Mary, Queen of Scots. The entire account does not occupy many lines, or the description of the Niger sovereignties many pages. Yet it is perhaps not too much to say that in the whole annals of literature there is not another passage which has conducted more materially to the progress of geography. For while the vague stories of wealthy realms in the interior which had for a century or more before been floating around among the African traders and slavers and pirates contributed little compared with the dream of Prester John and his realm to stimulate journeys into the interior of Africa, the two centuries or more of Niger exploration which followed may be directly credited to the brief narrative of this old Moorish traveller. Nor, indeed, has its effect even yet entirely vanished.

It was in those days of stay-at-home geographers, when one party was all for Ptolemy and the Ancients, and another all for Leo and the Moderns, that certain merchants of London town, into whose minds the words of the latter had sunk, determined, instead of wrangling over the matter in the Thames-side taverns, to find out the facts of the case for themselves. Not that Africa, and especially the Guinea coast of it, was strange to the English trader, even at that early date. For as we have seen (p. 46), certain merchants of Exeter had for twenty years been trading with the Gambia and the Senegal, with such effect that they had driven all but a solitary Portuguese out of the latter river, though in the former the Portuguese were so numerous

and so jealous of the new arrivals that they formed a conspiracy to seize their ships and massacre the crews. It is satisfactory to know that, even at a time when ascetic virtue was not a feature in the Guinea trader, the Englishmen had so far ingratiated themselves with the natives that they were told one bar of iron from them would be more welcome than forty from the "Portugals." In those days there were English merchants in Morocco, then far more liberal in sentiment than it became at a later period when piracy and the wrongs of their countrymen from Spain had aroused all the fanaticism of the Moors.

And from one of them we learn that other people besides the English and French had got ambitious of reaching Timbuctoo. For this gentleman writes to a correspondent in London in 1594 that there had just arrived from Gago a caravan of Moors with thirty mules laden with gold, though the merchant adds that of seventeen hundred men who left for Timbuctoo one-third perished in the desert from lack of water. Arrived there, the negroes tried to defend themselves with the assegais and poisoned arrows of which Leo speaks; but their courage was of little avail against the firelocks of the Moors, who took the town, and from thence proceeded to Gago, where the inhabitants were slain so fast that they were fain to yield, and "to pay tribute by the yere." That for Timbuctoo was "sixty quintals\* by the yere, the goodness whereof you know. The report is that Mahomet brought with him such an infinite treasure as I never heard of. It doth appear that they have more gold than any other part of the world beside. The King of Morocco is like to the greatest prince in the world for money if he keep this country"—which, it may be added, he did not do for long, except in name.

This is the first account we have of the overthrow of the Songhai dynasty by Joudou Zergon, "a Cahia of the Andalouzes," or

**The Sultan of Morocco's Captain takes Timbuctoo and brings back great store of gold.**

\* Taking the quintal at 112 lbs. avoirdupois—about 6,720 lbs.

Spanish Moors, who had marched against the Soudan princes under the orders of Ahmed II., El-Manssur, who, on account of the wealth he won by the plunder of their cities, obtained in his later years the name of El-Dehebi, or "the Golden," a title bestowed more than 130 years later on another Sultan of Morocco. The account is, no doubt, substantially correct; for in those days Timbuctoo and Jenné were the centres to which much of the alluvial gold of West Africa converged.

It was with the echo of these stories resounding among the warehouses of Wapping and the counting-houses of Lombard Street that certain merchants of London, forming themselves into a "Company of Adventurers," despatched George Thompson, a Barbary merchant, on an errand which,

hapless though it was, will for ever remain memorable as the first of the many to which it gave birth. It was a notable journey for geography. Yet commercially the *Catherine*, a vessel of one hundred and twenty tons, with a cargo valued at less than £1,860, was a humble enough beginning for an enterprise which two and a half centuries later culminated in the Royal Niger Company. The Gambia was the river selected for exploration, Thompson's employers evidently inclining to the theory that this was the seaward end of the river known so long under the name of Niger. For this stream, therefore, he set sail in 1618, with instructions that as soon as the water became too shallow he was to leave the ship and continue his inland voyage in boats. Accordingly, leaving his vessel (p. 125) at a place called Kasson, he rowed up stream for a long distance, finding the natives very friendly, much inclined for trade, and anxious for a factory being established in their country. Meanwhile news of a sad misfortune reached him. For, during his absence, the *Catherine* had been seized, and the crew murdered, by some Portuguese and mulattoes whom they had admitted on board.

It may be remembered that the former had been for more than a century settled in this

part of Africa, and had begun to regard themselves as the rightful owners of the country, though the English and other traders had never recognised any such claim. In no way discouraged by the loss of his vessel, Thompson despatched some of his people to England to inform the Company of his bad luck, and, at the same time, to ask for further remittances. The London merchants were valiant men, for immediately the *St. John*, a craft of fifty tons, set sail, though unfortunately arriving short-handed, owing to several men having been washed overboard, and at the worst season for trade. Thompson sent her back "with letters of further hope," in the meantime ascending the river with the eight men he had with him and what goods had been brought by the last arrival.

This was the last seen of the first explorer of the Gambia. For on a third vessel, larger and better-found than any of its predecessors, reaching the river next year, the first news which the commander received was that Thompson had been murdered early in the spring. Rowing up the river with two white men and several negroes, he reached as high as Tenda,\* some seventy or eighty miles above, where he wished to confer with a salt-trader, widely known in those times by the name of Buckar Sano. At Tenda, which was far beyond any point reached hitherto, he found the merchant from home, having gone with a train of 300 salt-laden donkeys into the interior, though he learned that caravans from Barbary frequented the district. Whether this circumstance unduly elated Thompson, who, being a Barbary merchant, was therefore likely to do good business with these people, or the climate had affected his brain, we know not. The reports that reached his countrymen were that he had treated, not only the natives, but his own party, with such intolerable hauteur that quarrels broke out with the latter, and in one of them he was slain. The true facts were, however, never known, for the survivors kept their own counsel, and Thompson, like so many other

\* Koba Tenda of Park.

traders, had committed nothing to writing, so that in case of his effects being seized by rivals they should not benefit by his discoveries. All his talk before his death was,

same manner that they had treated their predecessors.

The captain of the last vessel sent to succour George Thompson was Richard



THOMPSON LEAVING HIS VESSEL (p. 124).

indeed, how best to fortify the river, build castles and factories, and bar the upper part of the stream against anyone who might wish to follow in his track. And that these precautions were not uncalled for is proved by the fact that the Portuguese mongrels on the river had been bribing some of the natives to waylay and murder these pioneers after the

Jobson. We have no further particulars regarding this famous name in the annals of West African discovery, except that he was a native of London, but whether he had been already in the Guinea trade is not readily to be ascertained from the narratives to which his name is attached. His first voyage was a

**The inland  
voyage of  
Captain  
Richard  
Jobson.**

failure; for though he went up the river as far as Tenda, and seized a boat containing the effects of Hector Nunez, who was considered the ringleader in the destruction of the *Catherine*, his efforts were thwarted by the jealousy of certain persons on board who were in the interest of a faction among his employers at home. These latter, permeated with the Guild jealousy of the time, were, it seems, annoyed that any adventurers save ordinary traders should have been admitted into the Company, and so, to discourage the newcomers, they managed to man the vessel with their own creatures, and to conjoin with them as super-cargo "one Low," who by his spite and meddlesomeness rendered the voyage a loss instead of the success it might have been.

However, the story which Jobson has to tell is one of the most interesting in those early tales of adventure, and, as the first earnest attempt to reach the gold countries of the Upper Niger and the famous city of Timbuctoo, is worthy of being re-told. Leaving Gravesend in 1620 with two vessels, one of 200 and the other of 50 tons, he sailed up the Gambia, arriving at the place called Kasson, governed by a Portuguese, and inhabited by a large warlike population. But as soon as the vessel heaved in sight the Portuguese fled, after offering high bribes to the negroes to entrap and destroy this expedition in the same way that they had fallen upon that in the *Catherine*. Proceeding still farther up the river, the English adventurers arrived at Jerakonda, where two of Thompson's men were met with. At Oranto the factory which his predecessor had built was reached. And here the expedition was visited by Summa Tumba, a blind chief subject to the King of Kantara. This magnate was profuse in his compliments, and, the object of his flattery being produced, proceeded without further loss of time to "drown his wits in the *aqua vitæ* we brought him." Brandy, indeed, even at that early date, as, unfortunately, to a very recent period, was one of the prime articles of trade along the Guinea Coast, and even as far into the interior as the trader-explorers had

reached. It was the first thing that the people who crowded round Jobson's party asked for in exchange for produce, and those who had nothing to sell begged for it as a gift. But the people from the interior always asked for salt. It was their currency, their standard of luxury, a rich man being one who "ate salt with his food," and hence without this commodity the "golden joys" which filled Captain Jobson's imagination were not capable of realisation. For among the cargo there was not enough, which shows how blindly the early traders were groping in the dark the moment they left the coast. But even this circumstance did not deter those stout-hearted pioneers of African exploration. Pilots, it is not necessary to add, were in those days as little known as charts, and soon after leaving Oranto the dangers of the rapidly shoaling river were increased by the difficulty of obtaining provisions, and of doing business in a barren country where villages were few and wild animals proportionately numerous. The flat regions had now long been left behind, and a mountainous country is mentioned as among the features seen from the deck. Hippopotami were so common that the places where they came ashore to feed were "beaten with tracks as large as a London highway." At Barra-konda, the first plateau which indicates the old sea-coast (p. 16) was marked by cataracts that prevented a free passage into the interior. However, by winding through narrow side-ways they passed round the rocks, and though the tide was no longer with them, and they had to stem the increasing current of the river, they managed to make some headway with their craft. Owing to the rocks, nevertheless, they could not sail during the night, while the terrible heat of the sun prevented them from dragging the boat except for a few hours in the cool of the morning and the evening. Shoals and sand-banks now became more and more frequent, and as it was often necessary to enter the water to ease off the craft from places on which it grounded, the men were in momentary fear of being seized



JOBSON'S BOAT AGROUND IN THE GAMBIA (p. 126).



by the swarms of crocodiles that lurked under the banks or swam about in the open stream.

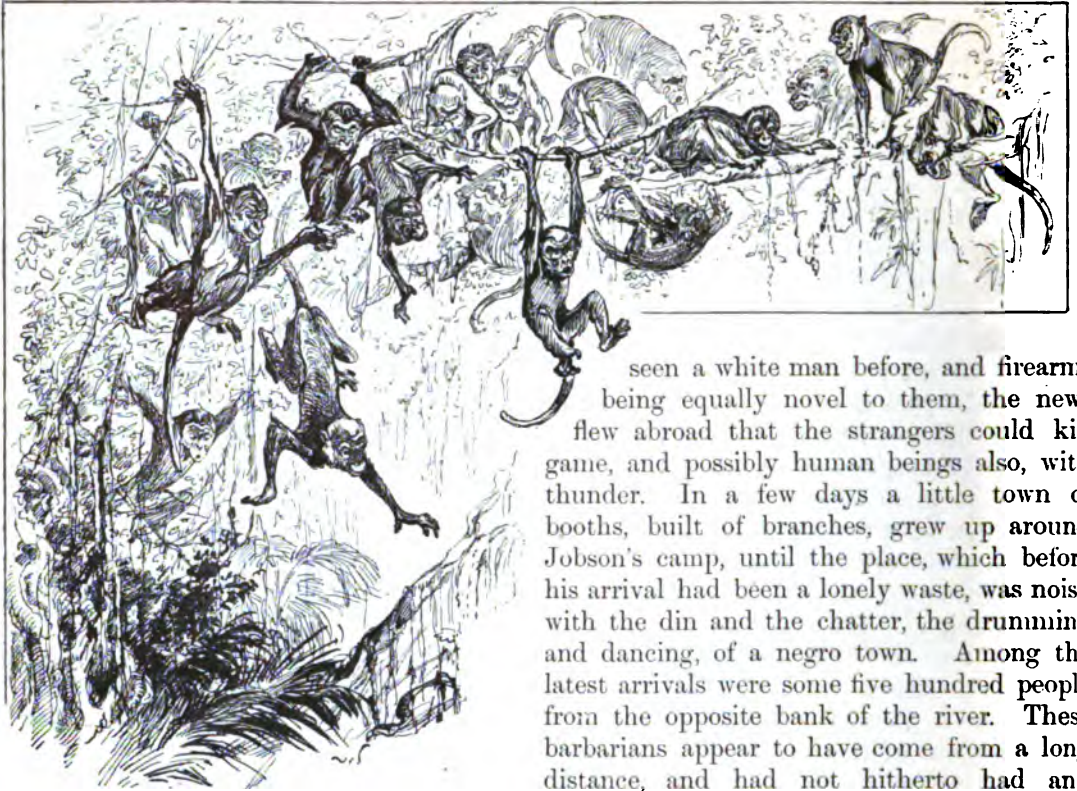
Myriads of mosquitoes added to their torments, and every night they were kept awake with roaring of lions and other wild animals in a land where, even at that period, "beast was more and more and man was less and less." Everything was new to them, as it was new to the rest of the world—the dense jungle, the insects that hummed through it, the gaudy-hued parrots, which the noise of the firelocks sent in swarming flocks out of the glossy-hued foliage. Monkeys, then little known in Europe, swung themselves from the branches to stare at the unwonted sight of white men rowing wearily against the stream, while huge flocks of baboons are described by them as trooping through the underbrush, filling the air with strange cries, except when "one great voice would exalt itself and the rest were hushed." Even at night, as they lay awake in fear of the wild beasts that had come out of their lairs, the myriads of fire-flies sparkling among the trees were to them as strange as the iridescent beetles and the gaudy-winged butterflies that met their eyes during the day, wearied with the monotony of date-palm, silk-, cotton-, india-rubber- and baobab-trees. One day, walking along the bank, Jobson came upon "sixteen great elephants hard by him." He discharged his piece at them, but, fortunately for him, did not wound any, otherwise, instead of the frightened animals rushing off in terror, the bold mariner might not have lived to tell his tale.

Crocodiles, in knots of twenty or thirty, would glare at the voyagers with greedy eyes, greatly to the terror of the negroes in the party. Towards break of day these reptiles—some of which "were thirty feet" long—"would call one to another, much resembling the sound of a deep well, and might be easily heard a league." Against these brutes the firelocks of the inexperienced sailors would, in any case, have been of little avail. But the muskets of those daring venturers into the

wilds of Africa were in such bad condition that they were useless for obtaining even a sufficient supply of food, though deer and birds were plentiful in the woods, missing fire just as frequently as not. What made matters worse, the natives from whom they had hitherto been able to buy, or to obtain as gifts, supplies of elephants' flesh, yams, no doubt, and other country produce, were nowhere to be seen. In vain did the explorers ascend a high mountain in hope of seeing some village. But "deserts replenished with wild beasts" were the burden of the reports brought back to the indefatigable commander of this chase after wealth.

At last, nearly eight weeks after beginning the river voyage, first by ship, then by pinnace, and finally by shallop, the hill of Tenda appeared in sight, and a request was despatched to the Mandingo king and to Buckar Sano, the black merchant, that they would come with a supply of provisions. The merchant soon appeared, not only with the provisions, but with one of his wives and daughters and a troop of forty attendants. Brandy being one of the articles which had not been given out, the native trader was regaled with it in such immoderation that he lay for the whole night "dead drunk" on board the boat. Warned, however, by this result of his inexperienced toping, he never permitted himself to transgress again, mainly because it enabled the white man to make the best of a bargain. Beef, mutton, and poultry were now cheap and abundant, and a brisk traffic began. Salt, however, was the only European commodity at all in demand, while slaves were "the trade" upon which the natives set the highest price. But just then Captain Jobson was more concerned about gold than serfs, though he affected indifference on the subject that was uppermost in his mind. A small quantity was produced, and then when the natives saw—what they were doubtless on the watch for—that the white man valued it, they launched into inflated descriptions of the abundance in which it existed and of the





"MONKEYS SWUNG THEMSELVES FROM THE BRANCHES" (p. 127).

splendour of the countries from which it was brought. .

Buckar Sano was even ready to affirm that he had been in a city the roofs of which were covered with gold, but that it was a long way south—at the distance of four moons. A four months' journey to men who had already had a two months' struggle with hunger, toil, the current, mosquitoes, and the heat, was not readily to be executed, though on second thoughts, considering the slow rate at which Africans travel, Jobson began to think that not improbably this El Dorado might be much nearer than the cunning middleman would fain make him believe. Meanwhile, the news of whites having arrived spread far and near, until in a few days the village was filled with vast crowds of people impelled thither either by curiosity or by the desire of bartering with the strangers. Many of them had never

**A city with golden roofs and other wonders.**

seen a white man before, and firearms being equally novel to them, the news flew abroad that the strangers could kill game, and possibly human beings also, with thunder. In a few days a little town of booths, built of branches, grew up around Jobson's camp, until the place, which before his arrival had been a lonely waste, was noisy with the din and the chatter, the drumming and dancing, of a negro town. Among the latest arrivals were some five hundred people from the opposite bank of the river. These barbarians appear to have come from a long distance, and had not hitherto had any relations with civilisation. Men and women alike were clothed only with the skins of wild animals girt about them, "the tails hanging as from the beasts." None of them were very bold in the presence of the English sailors, and the women, until they gained confidence enough to deal with them, ran and hid themselves in the bushes on the approach of any of the whites. But by-and-by that eagerness for traffic which is the most hopeful of all the negro characteristics that tend towards the ultimate civilisation of Africa, impelled them to ask for salt





BANANAS (*Musa sapientum*).

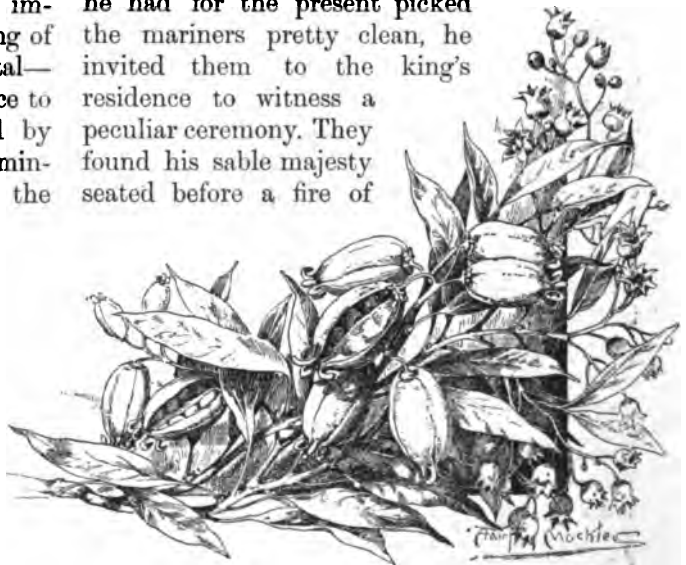
in exchange for hides and ivory. These folk were under the command of a tributary of the King of Kantara. But soon there arrived a

much more important contingent under the King of Jallakotta, now a walled town of 250 huts, but then evidently a much more important place, tributary to the "great King of Wali," a Moslem potentate whose capital—Medina, or "the City"—lay some distance to the south. This chief was surrounded by "his juddies, or fiddlers," musicians, or minstrels, who follow great folk for the purpose of celebrating their achievements, or amusing them by singing songs, to the accompaniment of instruments, in praise of themselves or their ancestors. Falling in with the humour of the ceremonious folk around him, Jobson now proceeded to invest Buckar Sano with the style and dignity of "white man's alcahade\* and merchant," putting a string of crystal beads round

\* Al Kaïd, or officer, a title picked up from the Moors.

his neck and a silver chain across his breast, while a cup of brandy was the material proof of the office being not without its advantages in the way of solace, and a salvo of five muskets the final confirmation of the new dignity. Among the varied arrivals were some people from Tombakunda, which Jobson supposed was Timbuktu, though in reality it is a place not far from the Gambia. A marabout, or holy man, who had known Thompson also arrived, offering to conduct the Englishmen to Monbar and Jaye, of which he was a native, if only they could get past that part of the river, the system of middlemen—one district exacting from those above it the right of doing business with those lower down—being then, as now, one of the principal obstacles in the way of the trader and explorer. For it is the fear of the white man reaching the interior countries, and thus trafficking directly with the people in that quarter, that has again and again prevented the jealous races nearer the coast from permitting them a free passage to the eastward.

Buckar Sano did not, however, intermit his attentions or his cordiality. Indeed, his cordiality was increased since he had been appointed "English merchant" with a percentage on every transaction, and now, after he had for the present picked the mariners pretty clean, he invited them to the king's residence to witness a peculiar ceremony. They found his sable majesty seated before a fire of



KOLA NUTS (*Sterculia acuminata*).

reeds with his *grandeos* about him. Buckar Sano joined the circle, but in a strange guise. For he stripped himself naked and lay down at full length on the ground before his sovereign, whereupon "*divers Marybouts*"—or, as we would say, *marabouts*—collected earth and covered him entirely over. Sano, while in this position, took up a quantity of earth and threw it into Jobson's lap, after which he arose and, stepping a little aside, dressed himself in his best clothes. Then he and his attendants, after making a pretence of shooting with a bow and arrow, came and laid their weapons before the Englishmen, explaining after all was over that the purport of these formalities was to signify that the King had made over to Jobson, Tenda and the entire country round about, at the price of a gallon of the best brandy, which the mariner paid, not without some doubt in his own mind whether his new dominion would ever return to him in hard coin as much as the strong water had cost in London town; though, in sooth, the sites of a good many cities of the New World have been purchased from the Indians for an even smaller equivalent in ardent spirits. But land was not what Captain Jobson hungered after. He longed for gold, and for Gogo and Timbuctoo, of which he had read in Master Pory's translation of Leo the Afriean, and in the letter sent to Anthony Dassel, of London, by Laurence Madoc, the English merchant in Morocco. He had every day on his voyage up the Gambia—which, like so many others, he took to be the Niger—expected to see the glittering minarets, and perhaps the golden roofs, of Timbuctoo, though, had he paid proper attention to Leo's words, he would have known that the houses in that city were, as many of them are still, simply thatched with reeds.

But the season was now getting late. He was out of goods fit for trade, and had all along been short of salt, which was what the natives were most in need of. Moreover, the river was getting no longer easily navigable. Rocks, and shoals, and sand-banks were becoming disagreeably frequent, as many a

navigator since his day has learnt to his cost. For beyond the part to which he reached, namely, what is now known as the mouth of the Nerico River, vessels drawing more than three feet of water cannot proceed, "shallows, sands, and rapid currents occurring in every reach, and navigation being extremely difficult."\* Beyond Yarbutenda the influence of the tide ceases, and even at that part it is scarcely noticeable. Accordingly declining, very reluctantly, the *marabouts'* offer to conduct him to the golden cities of the further interior, Jobson took advantage of the current to return to Barrakonda, which he reached in six days, or about half the time it had taken him to ascend, though part of the way was by land, chasing and wounding an elephant as they passed through the woods, and witnessing, as they loitered in the villages by the banks, many curious customs now quite familiar to the world, but at that time not so much as heard of by Europeans.

Fires were lighted under every large tree, and in those days as in ours, the noise of "shouts and drums, and country music, the roaring, shouting, and dancing," dinned the travellers' ears all night long. Mumbo Jumbo appeared to terrify evil-doers, much to the indignation of honest Jobson, who intimated his intention to discharge his musket at the first "*horey*," or devil, who might try his pranks in his presence, a threat that had so salutary effect that the pseudo-demon fell down in terror, speechless even to beg for mercy, though on being stripped he turned out to be a stout negro (p. 132). "The devil" was not ungrateful for the Briton's clemency. For on arriving at a place called Pompétane, to which he had sent no message, Jobson found a dinner provided for him, the hostess having obtained her information that the travellers were on the road from the "*horey*," who, no doubt, had run swiftly ahead by paths unknown to strangers. But Jobson, who, in spite of his bluff courage, was not above the superstitions

\* "Correspondence relating to the Recent Expedition to the Upper Gambia, under Administrator V. Gouldsbury, M.D." (Parliamentary Blue Book), with maps, 1881.

of his class, was rather staggered by what he regarded as a display of supernatural power on the part of an impostor whom he had so recently been ridiculing.

At Setico he met many Mohammedan merchants. This, at that time, was the highest point to which the Portuguese had carried their trade in slaves, salt, and gold. Here he witnessed the funeral of a leading marabout—much gold was buried with him, for use in Paradise—and had a proof about the same time of the rigidity with which the black Mohammedans obeyed the tenets of their faith. One of them was nearly drowned in a whirlpool, and taken out in a state apparently of total insensibility. Yet on brandy being applied as a restorative he closed his lips firmly against its entrance, and on recovering the first words which he eagerly asked, were whether he had swallowed any portion of the detestable liquor forbidden by the Prophet, declaring that he would rather have died than that the smallest drop of it should have passed his throat. This circumstance satisfied the voyagers, who had so recently witnessed drunken orgies on the upper river among the heathen, that even the creed of “false Mahound” was not without its elevating influence on the people who had adopted it.

Recovering the pinnacle which they had left here, the party then sailed down the river. But before doing so, they were in imminent peril from hippopotami, swarms of which still abounded to such an extent, that one stove in the boat so badly that it was with difficulty the leak could be stopped in time for the crew to reach the bank.

At Kassan, where the ship had been left, they found a sad tale of misfortunes awaiting them. The master and the greater part of the crew had died of the country fever, and of the remainder not more than four remained in a condition fit for work. Knowing, therefore, apart from the fact that he was imperfectly supplied with articles of barter, that it would be impossible for him to remain any longer in the Gambia with profit to his

employers, Jobson utilised what strength still remained to hoist the anchor and sail with all speed for England.

In London he seems not to have met with the warmest reception. He had to tell of cheap slaves and abundant ivory, gold in the interior, which he did not reach, elephants as “fearefull as forest stagges” and much more numerous, strange grains, bananas, lemons and oranges, palm-trees and palm-wine, Kola nuts,\* which, though bitter in themselves, made water “taste like white wine or sugar,” and so valuable that fifty would buy a slave. Then Captain Jobson piled up his periods on the subject of lions and ounces, of civet cats and baboons, which travelled, he said, in herds of three and four thousand under the leadership of the largest, like an army on the march, with vanguard and rearguard, the chattering of many voices hushed when “one great voice exalts itself,” and which formed an arbour in the woods “for their dancing and disport,” so cunningly fashioned that it looked as if made by the hands of man. But neither these, nor wild bulls nor wild boars, and antelopes, not to speak of “beasts unknown” and trees not one of which he could call “by an English name,” charmed the merchants on Sir Thomas Gresham’s bourse, who had every day in that dawning of a new age the opportunity of listening to mariners who had come from the Indies and Africa and from America with tales quite as strange.

The smiths, who were held next in esteem to the makers of gewgaws and charms and horse-gear, looked more promising. They might be utilised in connection with commerce. And then for the first time London heard a

\* Also called Guru nuts, the seeds of *Sterculia acuminata*. They contain an alkaloid akin to that in tea and coffee, and are still so highly valued in the Soudan that no gift is more acceptable. In times of scarcity one will buy a slave. The natives profess to be able to withstand hunger, thirst, sleep, and exhaustion by chewing them, though their power of clarifying water is not more than that of any other mucilaginous seeds. They are now imported, and made into various preparations, the value of which is doubtful.



good deal about the Mandingoes and Fulahs or Pulhs—"a tawny people much like to those vagrants among us called Egyptians"—who pastured their cattle on the mountain

circle of fires within which the stock were collected. The Mandingoes, who were negroes, which the Fulahs (p. 12) were not, worked scarcely any except during the two months



of seed-time and harvest. The women were, as they still are, the bondwomen and domestic drudges, who never ate with their husbands, but approached them kneeling. Being many of them Mohammedans, as were the Fulahs, polygamy was the rule, though even the Moslems had to limit their uxorious

CAPTAIN JOBSON AND THE PSEUDO-DEMON (p. 130).

tops during the rainy season, and in the river valleys when the weather was dry, fighting a hard fight against the wild beasts which, at a period before the natives had obtained firearms, were bold to the point of howling all night on the outside of the

propensities to four wives, while the pagans' establishment was restricted solely by the power to purchase brides from their parents, and to pay the king the commission he demanded as part of his Civil List on every transaction of this kind. Marriage by force,

which is one of the most ancient of ceremonies, and prevails to this day in an almost meaningless form even among civilised people, was then the rule. The bride was attacked by one party and stoutly defended by another, though this was a mere formality, since the former never failed to prevail in the end and carry off the wife to her husband.

All this, however, did not interest the keen

jealous of people from the Court end of London prying into their mysteries, did all they could to discourage any outsiders or interlopers from trying their fortune in any similar speculation. This pioneer effort to



BRITISH TRADING POST AT  
CAPE JUBY: THE CASTLE.



TRADERS AT CAPE JUBY.  
CASTLE AND FACTORY IN THE DISTANCE.

London merchants. They were more concerned when he told of the salt which was brought from the coast, carried into the interior on donkeys, and exchanged for gold, slaves, and Kola nuts, in much the same way that had been described more than a hundred years before. But, unfortunately, Richard Jobson brought back little gold or ivory, and no slaves; and Kola nuts, which nowadays are articles of commerce, were in the reign of King James I. nothing more than natural curiosities. They were not saleable, and the merchants not having despatched him simply to bring back the materials for a pleasant tale of travel, seem to have lost heart. Accordingly, though they numbered among them names as famous in the annals of early enterprise as Sir Thomas Button and Sir William St. John, the moneyed men despaired. The "Gentlemen Adventurers" were willing to go on; but the ordinary traders,

open up Africa, therefore, died of discouragement, and Captain Jobson's name appears no more in the annals of African discovery.\*

At no period did Prester John occupy a great deal of the Frenchman's mind. The subjects of his Most Christian Majesty were never quite so eager to propagate the Faith as those of his Very Faithful brother of Portugal, and, it may be added, by no means so ruthless as those of His Catholic Majesty of Spain when they did send missionaries into

*The tale told  
by Claude  
Jannequin,  
Sieur de  
Rochfort,  
and other  
Frenchmen.*

\* "The Golden Trade; or, the Discovery of the River Gambia, and the Golden Trade of the Ethiopians. Also the Commerce with a Great Black Merchant called Buckar Sano, and his Report of the Houses Covered with Gold, and other Strange Observations, for the Good of our own Country. Set down as they were Collected in travelling part of the years 1620 and 1621, by Richard Jobson, Gent." (1623): "A True Relation of Mr. Richard Jobson's Voyage, employed by Sir William St. John, Knight, and others, for the Discovery of the Gambia," "Purchas his Pilgrimes," vol. ii., p. 1567.

foreign parts. The light-hearted Celtic race were always more inclined to fraternise with the natives of any land to which they came than to convert or exterminate, or even to kidnap them. It is, therefore, not very probable that Claude Jannequin, *Sieur de Rochfort*, fired one day in the year 1637 with a longing to explore Africa, by the sight of a vessel in *Dieppe Harbour* bound for that continent, troubled his head concerning the Christian Emperor. A youth of good, even aristocratic, family, he had been what in a later day came to be called a scapegrace. He had accompanied the French Ambassador to England, in what capacity we are not told, but had left his service intending to seek his fortune abroad, and was strolling along *Dieppe quay* when he saw a vessel preparing to heave her anchor. Inquiring of some monks, they told him that she was bound "for *Sanega*, in Africa, near *Cape de Verde*." Instantly he declared that he would go. In vain the good men tried to dissuade the wayward youth from his resolution, for before the sails were spread the *Sieur de Rochfort* was entered on the ship's book as a soldier, performing the duties of captain's clerk. It was not a lofty post from which to write his name on the blank places of the earth. But Providence does its work by strange agents. Cortes, he remembered, was a briefless barrister, Balboa a bankrupt huxter, and the world was still ringing with the fame of a Spanish swineherd who had conquered Peru. It might, perchance, be that a like future was in store for the lad who was leaving France on one of the many missions that the still untrodden world had then in keeping for the adventurous.

The destination of the ship was the *Senegal River*, and, in order to build some small bark suited for ascending it beyond the limits or what had then been the ordinary navigation, they landed on the coast of the *Sahara*, to the north of *Cape Blanco*. What, except extreme ignorance, could have tempted them to select this part of Africa for such a purpose it is hard to imagine. A broad belt between the fertile North and the tropical South,

it is the sandiest, the driest, most barren region in all Africa, though with well-watered valleys here and there, inhabited by wandering tribes, pasturing flocks, cultivating a little grain, or living on the produce of the date-trees round their white-washed villages. But there are no harbours worthy of the name, and the people bear so invidious a reputation for seizing and keeping in slavery those who land or are driven on their coast, that traders give this treacherous shore a wide berth. Even yet there are only two settlements on it, the British trading-post on a ridge of rocks off *Cape Juby* (p. 133) and the rival one built by the Spaniards at *Rio del Oro*, which was intended to check-mate it. But the latter is a forlorn establishment, virtually abandoned since the people were attacked and some of them murdered by the predatory Arab and Berber nomads, while that at *Cape Juby*, though more fortunate, has more than once had to bear the brunt of a like hostility on the part of those who regard themselves as the rightful lords of the soil, and look upon the Infidel with the abhorrence bred of twelve centuries of ignorance and fanaticism. It was on this treeless, havenless coast that Captain Lambert, of the *Dieppe Expedition*, landed in the winter of 1637, for the purpose of building river-craft, a convenience for which, of all others, it was the worst suited. This impression the mariners were not long in imbibing; anything more desolate than the country about *Cape Blanco* it is hard to conceive. The soil is sand, and the sand everywhere so soft that it is impossible to flounder through it for fifty paces without being exhausted. Wood and water there are none, and in vain did they sink wells in the loose drifts in search of the latter. The appearance of a handful of natives who, impelled by curiosity or the desire for plunder, crept out from beyond the sandhills bore unmistakable testimony in their wild, lean, woebegone appearance to the poverty of the land. It was, however, impossible to induce them to approach, fearing, no doubt, and with reason, the good faith of the whites, with



whom their relations had hitherto been that of stealing or being stolen, kidnapping or being kidnapped. But as they were ready to barter the fish which they shot with arrows for the brandy, tobacco, and biscuit of the sailors, the articles offered in exchange were laid down at a safe distance between the contracting parties; the natives, on their part, taking them up and leaving fish in their place, decamped to a distance (p. 136). A long stay here proving unprofitable, as no timber was to be had, and no provisions except dried fish and maize, one bark only was built of wood brought from France. The vessel, which had all the time being rolling in the offing, the men landing with difficulty through the wall of surf that is continually breaking on this coast, then bore up for the Senegal.

This river disputed at that date with the Gambia for the distinction of being the seaward end of the Niger. We now know that all these rivers arise in common with some of Sierra Leone in a hilly country not far from each other. But in those days all was vague for more than a few miles from their mouths. Formed by the union of two streams so large that at their confluence at Bafulabé, the Bafing, or Black River, is 1,475 feet broad, and the Bakhoy, or White River, 800 feet, this united stream, receiving many important tributaries, flows for a thousand miles through what is known as the French colony of Senegal and the region of Senegambia, more or less navigable for the greater part of its course, until below Medina it presents a series of great reaches that continue to the sea. Unlike the Niger and the southern rivers, it does not creep into the Atlantic through a vast mud-formed delta, but is now deflected along the coast by the drifting sand-dunes that form a narrow barrier between it and the sea.

But navigation on the Senegal is always precarious. In the rainy season there is too much water and the plains of the lower river are for miles nothing but immense marshes that, when the hot weather comes,

breathe forth malaria. Then Lake Cayor, on the right bank of the Lower Senegal, and Lake Panieful on the left, receive the overflow of the river, constituting, as did Lake Mœris in ancient times for the Nile, and the Lake of Cambodia at the present day for the Mekong, vast reserve basins from which a supply is drawn in the long period of drought. For months in succession Lake Cayor forms the only drinking-pond for the wild beasts of the surrounding country. Thither they resort—or did resort—in crowds, and it is a sight that does a hunter's heart good to see lions, elephants, leopards, panthers, ounces, cheetahs, hyenas, lynxes, giraffes, gazelles, antelopes, monkeys, and jackals, all impelled by thirst, hieing to its edge to drink, just as during the season of flood they take refuge in the same tree, a common danger rendering them, if not "wondrous kind," at least tolerant of each other's society (p. 137).

The river itself and its tributaries during the rainless months, owing to the scantiness of its sources and the steepness of its upper course, combined with the rapid evaporation that sets in as soon as the torrential rains cease to fall, would speedily dry up in the inland parts of Senegal were it not for the natural dams. Sand ridges and rock barriers cross its bed, and behind these ledges the water accumulates in deep reaches, so that though troublesome transshipments are necessary between reach and reach—some of these difficulties being overcome by the railway now in course of construction between Khayes and the Niger—it is quite possible for vessels of very light draught to navigate the river even at the driest period. But it is only from the 1st of August to the 1st of October that the river is open as far as Medina to vessels not drawing more than eight feet. At Bakel, below the confluence of the Falemé—which flows through Bambuk—the river is navigable till the 1st of December, from Bakel to Saldé between the 15th of July and the 15th of December, and from Mafu to the sea, a distance of 215 miles, ships sail all the year round.\*

\* Henriques: "Les Colonies françaises," vol. v., pp. 63-71.

But in 1637, and for many a year afterwards, little of this was known. The facts accumulated gradually, and were often acquired at a cost of life, and suffering, and

Dieppe (p. 44) were said to have discovered the river in 1360, and the Portuguese had some trading-posts on its lower reaches in the fifteenth century, when the *Sieur de*



CAPTAIN LAMBERT BARTERING WITH THE NATIVES NEAR CAPE BLANCO (p. 135).

money, and the disappointments that make the hearts of men bitter, hard to be understood by the reader who has lightly skimmed the few lines into which the result of two centuries and a half of toil has been compressed. Yet though the navigators of

Rochfort and his companions entered it there were no white men either to welcome or to oppose them. All was strange and new—plants and animals and peoples. They, or some of them, had read Leo's account of the river, and might have wondered, if this

was the Niger, that more water did not pour seaward from a river that drained such a broad area of Africa. However, even this form of doubt did not come to more scientific geographers for generations afterwards. They were buoyed up by expecting at every

could have helped business, to vouch for the gables also being built of the same attractive metal.

As they ascended the river between the walls of forest that came down to the water's edge, they were struck with admiration



ANIMALS RESORTING TO LAKE CAYOR TO DRINK (p. 135).

bend of the current to see Timbuctoo and Gogo, or some of the golden-roofed houses that the black merchant had described to Richard Jobson; and no doubt the ambassadors from "the Damel and the Brak,"\* who arrived almost as soon as they had crossed the bar, were ready, if their affirmation

\* The supreme sovereign and his deputy.

at the perpetual verdure of the tropical jungle, and at the beautiful birds, unknown to naturalists,† that disported themselves

† Adanson was the first naturalist to break the soil in this virgin ground. He visited the river banks, a little way from the sea, during 1749-53. His "*Histoire Naturelle du Senegal*" (1757) has not been displaced from its eminence as an original authority by the many researches that have been made since.

among the branches of the strange trees. All the woods echoed with unwonted noises.

**A virgin river.** Every sound was heard with distinctness in the vast solitude. Nothing but welcome greeted them, the chiefs and the people vying with each other in their eagerness to traffic with the white men. Jaloffis, and Fulahs, and Mohammedan negroes were alike ready to do business with them or to exhibit the national sports for their amusement. One of the most notable of these was performed by a potentate whom the navigators describe as the "Kamalingo," or "King of the Moors of Barbary"—a Moslem sovereign from the Upper River no doubt, or possibly the leader of the caravans from Morocco—who undertook to vanquish a lion in single combat. On the day appointed the Frenchmen, in order to be out of harm's way, took their places in the trees surrounding the extemporised circus. This Kamalingo then mounted on horseback and, armed only with three javelins and a Moorish sword, actually slew the savage brute without sustaining more damage than a slight wound in his leg.

Most of the people with whom they came in contact seem to have been Mohammedans, terribly in awe of the marabouts, who sold them grisgris, or charms, consisting of an incantation or prayer written in Arabic on bits of paper, but otherwise not very strict observers of the Koran. But their Mohammedanism was marked in one respect. Unlike the Gambia people, they did not demand brandy either as a gift or as an article of barter. Iron bars, Rouen linen, red and blue frieze, sugar, silver bracelets, combs, looking-glasses, knives, beads, crystal and paper, with just a little grog if the receiver were not one of the Faithful, were the usual articles in demand, while ox-hides, the skins of wild beasts, ivory, gum-arabic, ostrich feathers, ambergris, and gold were what was mainly given in exchange. The heat was, however, very trying and, sleeping or waking, the mosquitoes, which they called "marignons," tortured the voyagers both on

the water and when they landed to stretch their legs in the many-echoed woods. The dews were, moreover, so heavy that "whoever sleeps overnight with his stomach bare would infallibly die next day." The ship's company were busily employed in making and burning bricks to build a house, unloading the goods to pay the customs or "dash" to the four kings who controlled the trade of the river, or in making a raft on which to receive "the trade" that was arriving from the up-river country. Others were sent into the woods to hunt stags and wild boars, while a sixth party were occupied in digging the foundation of the factory that is so notable a landmark in the history of French colonisation. For this house formed the first permanent settlement of the French, and it may, therefore, be regarded as the rude beginning of the colony of Senegal. Finally, as the ship was anchored outside the bar, the remainder of the men were busily at work taking the cargo to her in their little Sahara-built bark. In the meantime, good water was hard to obtain, and while the masons were striving to find a foundation in the oozy soil, the deadly climate of the river mouth was beginning to play havoc with their health, so that they were glad to begin the inland voyage in the bark, trading as they sailed up the stream. At Terrier Rouge, 210 miles above where St. Louis now stands, the Frenchmen found it difficult to proceed any farther. Then the mariners returned, pleased to escape out of a land where the people were either Moslems or pagans, who believed in charms, and credited the devil with helping them to write Arabic. For Jannequin, though a roving blade, was a good Catholic, and saw all men and all things through the spectacles of his creed. Nor was his geography much more enlightened, since he relates little regarding the interior with which we were not already acquainted, or which was better than a *réchauffé* of what he had read. But the expedition in which he took part must for ever remain famous in the annals of African exploration

in so far that it was the first to reach the limits of unimpeded navigation in the Senegal, or Sanaga, as it was then called, which was regarded by him as a branch of the Niger.

Their voyage home was more eventful than their stay in Africa. For on the island of St. Vincent, then uninhabited, they rescued the crew of a French ship, who had for weeks been living on tortoises; and they themselves fared so badly that, before they

reached Dieppe, what with contrary winds and fear of the Dunkerkers, who were harrying the coast, which made them wait until they could find consorts to share the danger of the passage, they were so reduced by hunger as to sell the clothes off their backs in order to buy food for their stomachs.\*

\* Jannequin: "Voyage de Lybie au Royaume de Senega le long du Niger, description des habitants qui sont le lon de ce fleuve, leur coutumes, etc." (1643.)



END OF THE COMBAT BETWEEN THE "KAMALINGO" AND THE LION (p. 138).



GOREE

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE TRAVELS OF ANDRÉ BRÜE, GENERAL OF THE ROYAL SENEGAL COMPANY.

The Arrival of André Brüe as Director of the Royal Senegal Company—His Character—Begins to Ascend the Senegal—Morfil Island and its Swarms of Elephants, Lions, Monkeys, Crocodiles, and Hippopotami—The Fulahs—The Siratik's Court—A Voyage towards Galam—A Man-eating Lion—A Flight of Locusts—A Congress of Monkeys—A Bee King—A Civil War and a Surly Sovereign—Loose-living Mohammedans—The Felu Cataract—News of Timbuctoo—Changes in the Country since this Early Voyage—Alterations in the Character of the People since Jannequin's Visit—Lust for Brandy—Begging—Costly Gifts—A Curious Traffic in Bilge-water—An Overland Journey to Cachao—Jews in Disguise—Society at Vintain—A Trader-missionary—A Spanish Gentleman with Negro Morals—The Flûpe—Cachao and its Manners—Present Condition of the Country—Other Explorations of Brüe—The Discovery of Bambuk by the Sieur Campagnon.

FOR long little more was attempted in the way of exploration from this time. The Norman Company, in whose service the Sieur de Rochfort was, had, in 1664, sold its trading rights to the West India Company, finding that even the favour of Richelieu, ever eager to extend the commerce of his country, was not sufficient to enable them to make headway against the Dutch at Arguin, Goree (p. 140), and Rufisque. Even the new association had in turn to yield to the Senegal Company in 1672, which seven years later, ruined by the war with Holland, ceded its privileges to another union of merchants, who again, in 1696, made over their rights to the association that took the title of the Royal Company—facts already hinted at in our chapter on the early Guinea traders. But these short-lived mercantile unions were content to build forts, to buy slaves and ivory, and, like the adventurers of the other European Powers, to try to seize—sometimes with good and just as often

with bad fortune—a share of the Guinea trade. The interior seemed to have lost charms for them, or they found it more profitable and less troublesome to barter for what was brought down the river, instead of going up stream themselves.

An exception to this rule was the Sieur André Brüe, who arrived as Director, or General, of the Royal Senegal Company, with his head-quarters at Fort St. Louis, at the mouth of the Senegal (p. 141). This remarkable man was an admirable combination of the merchant and the explorer, and, in spite of the apathy of his employers in France, made his labours in both capacities pay in a manner which later travellers must regard with something like envy. In 1697 he sailed up the stream to Morfil, a great island formed by the bifurcation of the river. This name means Isle of Ivory; for in those days the elephants, which have long ago retreated

A pioneer  
voyage to  
the Upper  
Senegal.

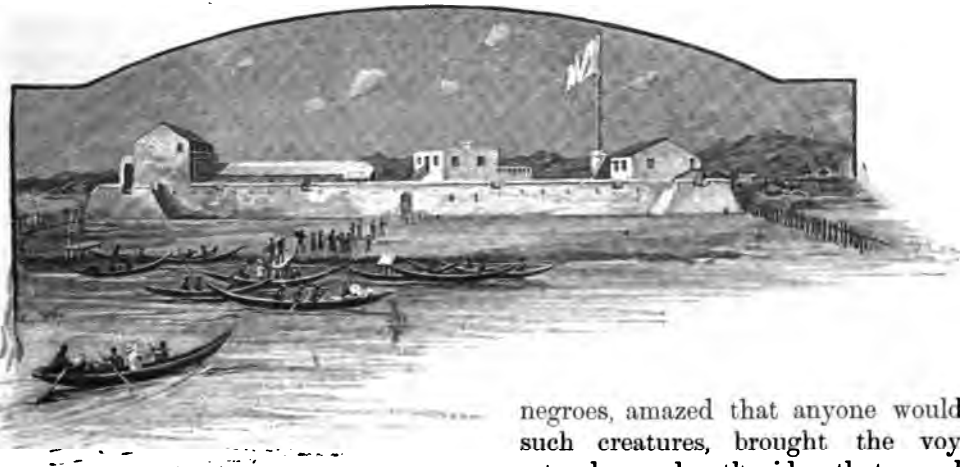
to Ferlo, the sources of the river, and the high country of the interior, went in herds of forty or fifty, and were quite harmless unless molested. As the negroes, until a few years before Brûe's visit, had no weapons except bows and arrows and spears, they captured them in pits covered with leaves and branches of trees (p. 145). Great numbers of lions also roamed through the valleys by the river-side, hippopotami reared their heads above the surface of the water, and every now and again a crocodile snapped up a wild duck, flocks of which swarmed in the quieter reaches. These brutes are still numerous in the Senegal, and must be very sharply looked after, as they often wander for miles back from the river in search of anything that they can snatch up, be it pig or dog, fowl or child.

But few lions are now seen, and the herds of elephants that then frequented Morfil

**Morfil  
Island.**

Island have long ago been killed off. Much of it was, indeed, cleared to grow millet, rice, indigo, and cotton, though,

venomous insects are still as fierce as ever. During the worst season the wealthier natives remove to higher grounds to avoid them, while the poorer ones sleep in the open air on a raised platform, beneath which a little smoky fire has been lighted (p. 144)—a custom adopted even in the houses of the Upper Niger country, though there the ague and not the insects is what it is intended to drive away. These clearings have, however, in part, at least, scared the leopards, once so numerous, and even the hyenas that haunt the abodes of man are less numerous than when the Sieur Brûe described the Senegal banks. Guinea-fowls and partridges are still abundant, and the great conical ant hills (p. 148) form as in his day striking objects in the landscape, while the aponogeton and other river weeds that block up the channel swarm with myriads of leeches, for which, since the change of fashion in surgical science, there is no longer a market. But the monkeys are as numerous as ever they were in the days when the



PORT ST. LOUIS.

owing to the partial exhaustion of the soil and the low rates that most of these crops now bring, the plantations are again lapsing into the virgin forest from which they were reclaimed. But the mosquitoes and other

negroes, amazed that anyone would buy such creatures, brought the voyagers rats also, under the idea that any living creature would be quite as welcome to these strange people. At Terrier Rouge—which is a district near the western extremity of this island, on the north side of the river, and the limit of Jannequin's journey—there was a great trade in gum-arabic carried on by the Moors, who collected it from the forests north of the river,



and the borders of the Sahara. Here the meadows were still rich, and vast herds of cattle pastured on them, though during the rainy season, when the country around was flooded, they had to be driven to higher ground. Still continuing up the river, Brûe passed Hovalada and Kahayda, both places of considerable trade, until, reaching Ghiorel, a message arrived from the Fulah "Siratik," or king, earnestly begging the favour of a visit in order that some trade matters in dispute should be settled without further loss of time.

As one of the objects that had brought Brûe up the Senegal was to see this potentate, he now set out for his country, lying at some distance from the river. The region through which they travelled for two days was flat, cultivated, and full of villages, and in places so covered with cattle that it was difficult for the French trader and his retinue of six factors, two interpreters, four trumpeters, and a host of negroes, bond and free, to make **The Siratik's rapid progress. At the Siratik's Court.**

Court the party were received with a barbaric welcome, though in truth the palace and its surroundings were more primitive than some of the abodes of those minor African princes whom the slave trade had begun to enrich. For it was simply a few thatched huts surrounded by a hedge of thorns, situated a little way from Gumel, the principal village of the little realm. His majesty's throne was a bed, on which he sat surrounded by his wives and daughters, squatted on mats upon the bare ground. The king, delighted with the gifts he had received, not only granted all that the factor asked for, but offered him the honour of an alliance in the shape of a princess of seventeen, his respectful refusal on the plea of his faith allowing of only one wife at a time (and that one he had already in France) arousing many speculations as to the kind of religion that admitted of that nonsense, and some speculation as to the morals of the white folk professing such a creed.

The king's forces, cavalry and infantry,

were, however, not despicable for an African sovereign, and the mode in which justice was administered was, on the whole, worthy of approval. The ten Privy Councillors by whom the sovereign was always surrounded examined the accused persons, or litigants, separately, and then furnished their report to the fountain-head of mercy. No advocate was allowed to interfere. Every man pleaded his own case, and whatever the sentence it was always executed without a moment's delay. Yet, few crimes were punished with death; the Siratik had found a better use for men than killing them. He compelled them to expiate their offences in what he was pleased to describe as "banishment," but which in reality meant sending them down the river to St. Louis for sale to the French Company. As for the insolvent debtor—in accordance with a custom of almost world-wide usage—when he could not pay what he owed, he and his whole family were sold into servitude, the king exacting as his contribution towards a Civil List one-third of the price.

However, M. Brûe's opportunities for observation were soon cut short by the pest of mosquitoes and other venomous flies compelling the king to remove to another part of his dominions, the advance guard—consisting of 160 horsemen—blaring trumpets and timbrels in an exceedingly inharmonious manner. After these came the female members of the royal family, mounted by twos on camels, though so completely enclosed in wicker baskets that no part of the ladies was to be seen except their heads. And, unlike most Mohammedans—the rural folk, perhaps, excepted—they made no pretence of veiling their faces from the admiring gaze of the stranger. Female attendants, riding donkeys, jogged by the side of their mistresses, endeavouring by constant chatter to keep them amused; and in the rear came the sovereign, his court, his belongings, and the mob of slaves and soldiers who follow in the train of even the humblest African potentate. For though it is often troublesome to take them along with him, it is decidedly dangerous

to leave them behind with the chances of their being bought over to the interest of a rival, and the certainty of plundering as a diversion for their too many idle hours. Then, last of all, more cavalry brought up the rear (p. 149).

Next year the *Sieur Brûe* made another voyage up the Senegal, reaching on this occasion as high as the kingdom of Galam, which is situated on or about the confluence of the two rivers which, united, form the main stream (p. 135). On the way he visited the *Siratik* again, and was received in quite as friendly a manner as before. In the interval, however, the Dutch had been endeavouring to win him over to their side by means of an embassy sent from one of their forts on the coast (p. 45). But whether the *Batavians* had been successful or not did not appear, since just at that moment the *Fulah* sovereign had what is known in the familiar metaphor of the West as "an axe to grind." In short, he wanted the white man's help in killing a ferocious lion that for weeks past had been the terror of the district. Four negroes, daring hunters, were accordingly sent to attack it. But, skilful though these men were, two were torn to pieces by it, a third was wounded, while the fourth would have shared the fate of his companions had he not by a happy chance given it the death-thrust with his lance.

At *Émbakane* the air suddenly grew dark by reason of a vast army of locusts that covered the sky. For two hours they continued flying across the river, in which, of course, the boats were blackened by them. Happily, however, for the seaward country, a south-west wind began to blow, and as the insects were unable to bear up against it, they were speedily wafted into the desert, there to die of hunger amid the sands in which they were originally hatched. At *Bietel* he found poultry abundant, and, what it seldom is in Africa, good also. A fat pullet could be bought for a sheet of paper, and eggs at a proportionately low figure.

A voyage  
towards  
Galam.

Lions,  
locusts,  
monkeys,  
and bees.

At *Tuabo*, on the *Galam* frontier, a swarm of red monkeys crowded the branches of the trees to have a view of the white-faced folk rowing up the river. The sight seemed to amaze them. All the time they chattered incessantly, evidently comparing notes regarding the curious people underneath, and then, as each detachment satisfied its curiosity, another took its place, with the utmost regularity and good-nature. By-and-by, however, the mischievous disposition of these animals began to exhibit itself in their tossing down dry branches and sticks into the vessel—a facetiousness that was answered by a discharge of musketry. Then, as the dead and wounded tumbled into the water, a mighty tumult arose. Loud cries resounded on every side, while others, sparing their grief for another occasion, rushed to collect stones and other missiles to hurl at the invaders—an unequal combat which went on for some time, until, worsted, the monkeys retreated in "angry parl" to the depths of their native forests. Wax was in their days, as in ours, a common product of the *Senegal* district, and at every village the natives kept swarms of bees for the sake of their honey. A person announcing himself as the "King of the Bees" came on board the shallop at one of the halting-places. He was covered with them from head to foot, and thousands more hovered around without doing him any injury, the man claiming to have such perfect control over them that he could even prevent his *protégés* from stinging anyone whom he took under his protection.

As *Brûe* proceeded up the river, news came that there had been a revolution in *Galam* which had resulted in the unseating of the old king by a rival, who sent to the Frenchman a curt intimation that, if he did not receive the customary dues, he would prevent him from ascending farther. No notice being taken of this threat, except an intimation that the white men would proceed, and be stopped at the peril of the new sovereign having his territory laid waste, the banks began to be crowded with excited negroes,

menacing destruction to the whites. In those days, however, traders were not so easily frightened as they are in a time of telegraphs and philanthropic societies whose business in life it is to make the way of the aborigines' oppressors extremely hard. So, firing a round of cannon without ball, and blowing his trumpets and beating his drums as if preparing for action, the irate Galamees

that it contained neither pig's flesh nor wine.

For by this time the travellers had passed out of the region of loose-living Moham-medans into a land where the tenets of the Koran were more strictly observed. It may, however, be added, that the Prophet having said nothing about brandy, his majesty, like a good many of his casuistical co-religionists, drank all that was put before him without any visible compunction of conscience. An income not having as yet been provided for the parvenu prince whom the rebellious chiefs had



NATIVE MODE OF SECURING PROTECTION FROM MOSQUITOES. (See p. 141.)

as promptly dispersed as they had assembled. At Burnaghi, finding that the revolutionary party were the actual power with which he had to treat, Monsieur Brûe, having no concern in the politics of Galam, paid his respects to the new king, and in time also paid him the "dues" that by now were exacted by every African chief as his right of every trader passing through his territory or doing business with his subjects. On a visit from the sovereign in person, cattle and poultry were presented by him, and a cup of chocolate was drunk, the host passing his word

called to reign over them, the king's hut was in no way different, either in dirt or in the absence of riches, from that of the meanest of his subjects, so that, except the few fowls and cows already given, he could make no return for the handsome gifts he had received. The west winds having begun to blow, the voyagers left the poverty-stricken king, and soon arrived at Baba Seghalie. Here the deposed monarch had taken refuge with a number of faithful followers, and, as he assured his visitors, he was still the lawful sovereign to whom the dues

ought and must be paid, otherwise, the African Bourbon declared, all trade should be stopped and the voyagers made prisoners on their return journey. The only reply to this threat was an announcement that, unless the monarch who did not know when he was

Timbuctoo, for it professed to do a large trade with that city, importing from it gold and ivory, while slaves were brought mainly from Bambarra, a region described as barren, but very populous, and therefore a fitting hunting-ground for dealers in flesh and blood.



METHOD OF CAPTURING ELEPHANTS EMPLOYED BY THE NEGROES BEFORE BRÛE'S TIME. (See p. 141.)

beaten decamped without further palaver, he and his son—who had delivered the message—would be seized as slaves, and forthwith deported as such to the American plantations. After this King ("Tonka") Mouka practised that discretion which even in Africa is the better part of valour. At Dramanet, a Mohammedan town of 4,000 inhabitants, the voyagers came into appreciable touch with

Hitherto, they had been accustomed to send their commodities to the English on the Gambia; but, now that there was a prospect of being able to sell them to traders on the spot, they eagerly crowded to the Frenchman's camp with these wares. In the meantime, while traffic was busily proceeding, a hostile army heaved in sight, and, the people of Dramanet not expecting any such unbidden

guests, managed to gain entrance to the city. It turned out to be the deposed Galam king, in high dudgeon at his contemptuous treatment by the French, and still determined to exact the dues paid to his successful rival and refused to him. But the townsmen speedily seizing their arms, the prudent invader beat a retreat, on the plea, which in the circumstances might be accepted as sincere, that rather than come to blows with the white folk he would abandon his lawful rights.

At Felu they reached the cataract that had hitherto formed the extreme limit of the Frenchman's knowledge of the river. Brûe, however, leaving his boats below it, passed by land to the falls, and was on his way to those of Govina, 120 miles farther up, when noticing that the Senegal was falling, he determined to return, in case he might be unable to pass some shoals lower down. Arriving at Dramanet, he fixed on a position for a fort which was to be the centre of French trade in this region, and in due time reached Fort St. Louis without any notable adventure.

This early voyage—the first, indeed, so far up the Senegal of which any record has descended to us—was a notable one in the annals of the opening up of Africa. It is still easy to follow it, for all the places he describes may be traced, though most of them have changed greatly for the worse since the *Sieur Brûe* first saw them. The country so high up the river is still largely self-governed, the French influence being seen more in the occasional ribbon of the Legion of Honour on the white robe of a native chief than in the actual insignia of authority; and even after a railway runs across the country, so wild a region will be a long time in feeling its influence. The little kings and chiefs still fight, every man for his own hand. It is only a general danger that compels them to sink their jealousies for the common weal. At the station where the Felu rocks form the cataract that impeded the voyage of Brûe,

there is a fort where the French were in 1854 besieged by the "Moors," who in the end were defeated with the loss of 600 men, though to this day the people of the Medina and Bambuk districts are sorely troubled by these warlike people from the interior seizing their cattle, and driving them away captive into the desert. But the slave trade, so far as the coast is concerned, is at an end, and perhaps the last monument of its existence is the ruins of the factory at Medina village, which was built about 1830 for the purpose of trafficking in gold and "black ivory." To the north-north-west of Galam there is still a vast, lone land where nomads wander in search of pasture, and, still farther away, the country of the desert-living "Moors," who, as of old, compensate for the poverty of their land by making raids on the flocks and herds of their more sedentary neighbours. A few hippopotami still disport themselves in the river, and travellers have not ceased to keep a sharp look-out both for lions and leopards. Buffaloes and antelopes are also plentiful, though elephants are every day getting rarer and rarer, if, indeed, there can be said to be any trade whatever in ivory brought from Senegambia proper. Salt is still the article most in demand, though greater familiarity with the white man and his ways has established a desire for superfluities unknown to the people in Brûe's time, when the chiefs, owing to the slave trade, were richer and the people poorer than nowadays, though golden chains, coral beads, and amber balls are no uncommon ornaments to see around the necks of ladies of high degree who squat veiled on the rich carpets of Fernagha, near Timbuctoo, with which the people of the Upper Senegal and Gambia continue to trade in spite of the greater accessibility of St. Louis and Bathurst and Sierra Leone.

Regiments of mandril monkeys may still be met with, gnashing their teeth as their rich relations approach, or fiercely aiming sticks at them as they did at Brûe's party

more than two hundred years ago. Civilisation has not affected them, and the troops of obscene hyenas obtain a sort of protection from the superstitious contempt of the natives. "Kill a bouki," so runs the adage, "and defile your gun!" Still, as of old, the caravans pay their dues to the chiefs or "kings," and the white men, though more feared than in Brûe's time, are not more respected, as might well be imagined after examining the infamous muskets and other goods which they sell to the confiding natives. Gold is found all through the country and is mined by the people in a rude way. Yet in French hands the business has not been successful, and all down the Falemé branch of the river may be seen ruined factories from which much was expected in the way of exploiting the wealth buried in the soil of the Bambuk country lying between this and the other tributary of the Senegal (p. 135). Most of the business is now transacted by Mandingo agents of European houses, who buy from the traders at Medina, and from caravans passing on their way to Bakel, and during the rainy season down the main tributary as far as the coast. Moors, Fulahs, the mixed race of Toucouleurs, Joloffs, and Sousous, still divide the country among them, and leave little undone in the way of mutual jealousy. The Mandingoes are, however, the great objects of dislike. Yet, curiously, these people, who are at once the commercial travellers, the priests, and the schoolmasters of the Senegal and all the Mohammedan country in that region, are not natives of the lands in which so many of them are settled. They come from Manding, in the interior, and are for the most part strict Mohammedans of fine commercial ability. Yet though republicans in their native land, their colonies are all monarchical. In Barra, for example, they form, as in many other places, a majority of the inhabitants, and the king and all his great folk are of the race. But they are not liked. They are "malinko"—"lazy dogs"—a word which it is said is the origin of the English "malingering," the term

applied to a skulker who affects illness to avoid work. That, however, is not the Mandingo excuse: they set their wives to do the vulgar toil, reserving to themselves the more ornamental department of trading and talking and getting the best of the white man. Yet no region in Africa is better fitted to support a large population.

The endless waterways by which the upper sources of the Senegal, the Gambia, the Sierra Leone Rivers, and the Niger are so connected that in some cases the overflow of the one falls into the other, will in future days render this vast area a busy home for a higher civilisation than that which at present finds a scanty subsistence from its resources. The country is now safe, and Ouddoarín, the spot where formerly so many European vessels were plundered, and Saldé, opposite Morfil Island, where the Fulah King once levied customs duties, amounting to as much as sixty pounds upon large vessels, are now surrounded by rich plantations, this monarch's power, like that of the many petty chiefs on the river who mulcted traders heavily, being now almost at an end.

It is, therefore, interesting to read the pioneer voyage of the Sieur Brûe. Yet ever since Jannequin's visit to the Senegal, people had been altering. They had been imbibing those "vices of civilisation" that are the first and too often the last benefits that savages gain by intercourse with Europeans. In the first place, the slave trade, with its evil influence in setting tribe against tribe in order to supply a greater quantity of the peculiar merchandise in demand than the ordinary aftermath of local wars and tribal crime could afford, had attained full vigour. Then no longer did all good Mohammedans look with horror on brandy. On the contrary, M. Brûe recommends cognac as always the most acceptable and profitable merchandise that can be carried into Africa. Curiously enough, the negroes in his day—as some of them do to a certain extent still—refused any bottle from which the

**Changes in the people between the visits of Jannequin and Brûe.**

smallest quantity had been taken. They would even prefer a small vessel full to a barrel of which even an inch from the bung-hole was empty. This curious notion may be compared with another still in full vigour on the Guinea Coast. Even at Cape Coast Castle, where experience ought to have taught them differently, the Fanti will not accept any coin



ANT HILL (11 FEET HIGH). [p. 131.]

that has not the head of the reigning sovereign: "for him dead and no good, sah." Again, in Abyssinia, and other parts of Africa, no silver coins except those bearing the image and superscription of Maria Theresa have currency. So much was this the case that the Austrian Government permitted to be struck for the use of Lord Napier's Abyssinian expedition, in 1868-9, a quantity of these thalers from the old dies in the Vienna Mint—the mere fact of pieces bright and unused

being dated more than a century ago arousing in the minds of the recipients no suspicion as to their genuineness.

Begging, which had early become an offensive feature in the African character, was, by the time of Brüe's visit to the Senegal, an ingrained practice among all classes. Whatever the effrontery of European beggars—and, in spite of rope and branding-iron, stocks, whipping-post and pillory, mendicancy in 1697 was by no means the most unfrequent sight in Dieppe and Paris—they were, this voyager assures us, modest, even retiring, compared with an African monarch. Everything was asked for, and every gift bestowed, instead of appeasing his greed, was considered simply as an opening for further demands. Then the wives and daughters, the queen, princesses, and princes, were set to bleed the hapless white man, and finally, after everything that interest or good-nature, generosity or fear, could extort from the newcomer was given, the begging began anew in the shape of an attempt to borrow without any intention of paying, or of obtaining goods on a credit that was not intended to be wiped out during the lifetime of the debtor. At last, when every expedient for plundering the merchant had been exhausted, or the latest demand refused, the invariable expedient was either to prohibit commerce or to load it with new imposts. And the worst of having any dealings with an African king, writes this shrewd trader, was that if any of them sent a trumpery present, he expected double or triple in return, and, the next time the stranger made his appearance, demanded as a right what had hitherto been given as a gratuity. Hence, in even the most disadvantageous market, the dearest article that could be procured was bought more cheaply than being received as a present. And as it was at the close of the seventeenth century, so is it when the nineteenth is coming to an end. Arms seem by this time to have been plentiful, silver-mounted pistols and silver-hilted swords being among the ordinary gauds of the chiefs, and the items in the "annual presents" that were





REMOVAL OF THE SIRATIK'S COURT: THE ADVANCE GUARD (p. 142).

extorted as tribute from the factors and captains who came to buy gum and gold and men and women. So eagerly indeed were the benefits—material not moral—derived from the presence of the traders appreciated, that the jealousy usually entertained regarding the building of forts was either feebler than of old or, at all events, not so openly displayed. For liberty to establish factories on the river was readily enough granted, no doubt with the inward reserve that the white man should pay dearly for the privilege of selling his goods at his own time.

Yet, though the simplicity of former days was rapidly disappearing, a certain ludicrous sophistication still held its own among those who only by a courteous conventionality could be called the fair sex. At Ghoriel the latter opened a somewhat peculiar trade with the seamen of Brûe's vessel. For some inexplicable reason—founded, perhaps, on the same basis as that which attributes virtue to any substance in a direct ratio to its nastiness—the women came to the conclusion that the bilge-water of the ship's hold was a sovereign remedy for toothache. Once this conclusion was arrived at, sufferers arrived from far and near to barter large quantities of milk for this evil-smelling liquid. The sailors naturally did not baulk the ladies in their wishes and, having fixed the price of this valuable commodity, would permit no abatement, gravely replacing the bilge-water in the pump when the amount of milk offered did not come up to their stipulated tariff.

Brûe stayed for eighteen years longer in Africa, making many voyages along the coast and a little way into the interior.

Thus, in 1700, being at the French factory at Albreda, on the north bank of the Gambia,

he crossed that river to the English fort that was afterwards called

James's, but at that date bore the name of King William, where he was entertained by the Governor, with whom in former years he had had many discussions regarding the rights of their respective nations to the trade of that region. Sailing

up the Vintain, or Vintang, tributary, which flows into the Gambia on the south side, the Frenchman came to a town of the same name, where again the English traders became his hosts. Here he was visited by the native chief, who went away very well pleased with the customary bottles of brandy. At that time many Portuguese lived in the village, and among the public buildings belonging to them was a church handsomer even than that at Jellefri, then the principal place on the Gambia, Bathurst, the present capital (p. 156), not having then come into existence. Some of these gentlemen paid the French party a stately visit of ceremony. They were dressed in long black cloaks, with spados, or long swords, "thrust up behind." They had also "poniards long enough for swords, and long chaplets of beads on their left hands and hanging over the pommels of their swords. They wore broad Quaker hats, and long moustachios, and made their compliments with great gravity." Society in Vintain was, however, in a somewhat primitive condition, as Monsieur Brûe, who was not prone to be too ascetic, soon discovered. Among the *grandees* whom he visited was a mulatto lady married to an English captain. He found her sitting, without any clothing at all, in the porch of her house, surrounded by a number of her slaves, spinning cotton. Her husband was from home, so that the visitor had not an opportunity of making the acquaintance of this humane gentleman. But they heard a few months later that domestic infelicities having broken out between them—it must be admitted not without good ground on her part—he seized the black baby that had been the bone of contention, and had it "pounded in a mortar and thrown to the dogs." For a few months there was an injudicial separation between this amiable couple. After a time, however, they made up their differences and everything went on as smoothly as if nothing had happened to ruffle the ordinary course of life on the Vintain.

Bees in those days hived in the mangroves in such numbers that wax was to be had

An overland  
journey to  
Cachao.

anywhere in almost incredible quantities. At Jerefa, higher up the stream, were French, English, and Portuguese factories that paid a yearly tribute to the king. This sovereign, "a little squat man of a pleasant countenance," had given his daughter in marriage to a Spaniard long settled here. Instead of, as usually happens in such case, the spouse of the savage wife being converted into a practical pagan, the husband claimed that he had argued his bride into Christianity, and that the king himself had secretly abjured his ancient faith, a course of action in which it seems he had been confirmed by a miracle. For having been thrown over a precipice by his stumbling horse, upon crying out "Jesu, my God, have mercy on me!" he found himself, without knowing how, on his road again, "to the great amazement of those present." Don Juan Felipe—a slave-trader, yet withal a most religious man—had offered to be at half the charge of a missionary, which the Portuguese declining, "it made him believe they were secretly Jews, who had only retired here from fear of the Jesuits' Inquisition. Although these gentlemen carry such large chaplets of beads, it is certain they live in no edifying manner."

From Jerefa they passed southward through a well-cultivated country, intersected by carefully constructed canals for rice-growing, the higher lands planted with millet, maize, peas of various kinds and water-melons of a superb quality. Excellent beef was to be had, and mutton was equally plentiful, though too fat, while poultry, eggs, and milk could be bought at rates surprisingly low even to people accustomed to the moderate prices that then prevailed on the banks of the Senegal. Huge bats as large as pigeons suspended themselves from the branches of the trees, and were killed by the natives for food, after peeling off their brown skins, which were supposed to be poisonous. Large conical mounds attracted the attention of the travellers, who supposed them to be tumuli. They were, however, only the ant hills now familiar to everyone in this region

of Africa. To them, as well as to the worms, the country owes much of its perpetual fertility, for both carry to the surface the rich unexhausted soil that is swept over the land by the rains.

But this fertile country had its drawbacks. Every village was surrounded by a double row of palisades, and Brûe passed one night in the house of a Spaniard, who had, at that early date, established himself thus far in the outer world, his dwelling being defended by four rows of stakes and eight cannon. This, however, was not to preserve him from attack by the natives, for Don Juan, a native of Cuba, was on excellent terms with his customers, few of whom failed to call upon him, or left without a needful of the coloured worsted which they valued as adornment for the necks and sleeves of the shirts that they had begun to wear. Don Juan had, moreover, in the matter of polygamy, adopted the manners of the country. But the savage Flûps, or Felûs, were the terror of this region, and it was to guard against them that the dwellings of the richer folk were fortified in this way. These people dwelt at that time between the Gambia and the Cachao River, and gave great trouble not only to the negroes, but to the Europeans also, doing little business with the latter, preferring to live by plunder, though the more civilised members of the race had cattle and goats and cultivated rice and millet. But the wilder ones were reputed to be cannibals, barbarous and cruel, giving no quarter to any white man who fell into their hands. Hence the Portuguese knew them as Bravos, or savages. It was through the country of this race that Brûe's route lay. As he passed along, well-armed and furnished with a sufficient escort, he saw a good deal of the Flûps and their ways. In some of the many rivers and small streams that he had to cross, he noticed the natives' skill with the canoe. With one hand the fisherman would steer his little craft, holding in the other his bow and arrow, and instantly, when he noticed a fish in the clear water, transfixing it with a shaft that seldom missed its aim.

How primitive a period we are treating of may be gathered from the fact that though traders had been on the coast for at least two centuries, and had penetrated a considerable distance into the interior, at many villages the Flûp women crowded round the traveller, admiring his dress, arms, and above all his hair, which they would not believe to be

of the Flûps. These factories, as was then the fashion—perhaps it would be more correct to say the necessity of the time—were much stronger structures than any force of natives could possibly capture. At one, fifteen guns were mounted on the pickets and bastions, and in all of them there were small garrisons of European troops, pallid



MANDINGO MARABOUT.

natural, as it hung down his back. Few of them had seen a white man before. Wax was produced in great quantities and formed the chief article of trade with the Portuguese, who had established themselves among them, living very much like the natives, and not more to be depended upon in a transaction. From Jam, or Janez, he descended by canoe to Cachao, a Portuguese settlement on the San Domingo, or Cachao River, sailing part of the way down the Cassamanche, which now flows through what is part of the French colony of that name: but in those days it was dotted on each bank with the forts of the Portuguese traders and the villages

wretches who showed "by their swelled bodies and ghastly looks the unhealthy situation they were placed in." In fact, they had now and then to fight against pirate ships and to be prepared for the accident of war breaking out between Portugal and the country to which a passing ship belonged.

Declining the hospitality of the commander at Boyta, the energetic French trader pushed forward to reach a rivulet by which he might enter the San Domingo. But night overtaking him, he was soon lost amid the swamps made by the network of streams and divided mouths into which so many of the West African rivers split up in flowing through the delta

formed by them just before reaching the sea. Bewildered by the geography of the country, the party were glad to take refuge in a Bagnun negro hut for the night, reaching, next evening, by the aid of horses and donkeys supplied by the King of the Bagnuns, Ghinghin (Zighinchor), a populous place, where the Portuguese had plantations worked by the "Gromettoes," or slaves, and doing a large business in wax, then naturally more valuable than in our day when gas, the electric light, and petroleum have so largely displaced candles. Bees and flowers and fruit-trees abounded, and swarms of monkeys preyed on the gardens and plantations, though with a prudence begot of long experience they avoided meddling with the bees.

Among the intricate interlacement of streams hereabouts the Flûp pirates were in those days very busy, often waylaying small ships and, if successful in their plans, murdering and robbing without the slightest compunction. So bold indeed were they—and well into the next century they practised the same manœuvres—that they did not at times hesitate to swim after the vessels when canoes were not at hand, and endeavour to climb on board in the teeth of a murderous fire from the deck. On the way to Cachao, down a pleasant river bounded with citron-trees, Brûe met with an English bark that had arrived from Lisbon with wine and fruit, by the commander of which he was received with the distinction due to his rank, and among other curiosities shown a swarm of bees that had settled on the rigging and were already busy at work.

Cachao was in those days, as it is in ours, a Portuguese town, heavily fortified against the "Papel negroes," who bore no love to their masters, though except for the purpose of trade the place was of little value. Beef was scarce and dear, goats were few in number, and sheep and pigs non-existent, and, with the exception of a few patches of rice and maize, the waving fields so common a feature of the more inland country were absent from this low,

swampy, miasmatic delta of river-silt. The houses—even the best of them—were poor cabins of mud, one storey high, roofed with canvas in the dry season and with fan-palm leaves in the rainy months. Every night heavy dews fell, and the clammy mist that rose from the estuary and the marshy flats when the sun went down was to the Portuguese of those times, as it is to the West Coaster of ours, the familiar harbinger of fevers and other death-dealing pests of this



FULAH GIRL.

lovely though dangerous portion of Africa. Even the church, in a Portuguese or Spanish colony usually the most prominent building in the place, was a poor affair, and the priests, like the Convent of Capuchins with its two friars, were among the most poverty-stricken of their order.

But the excuse was that "they had so little to do." Not that their flock was particularly pious. On the contrary, from the highest to the lowest the Portuguese in this sickly port were—as they are prone to be even yet in Africa—not by any means desirable acquaintances. The garrison, which was changed every three years, was composed of

criminals banished from Portugal, and so wretchedly paid that, instead of being a protection to the civil population, these cut-throats were the terror of everybody with anything to steal. Fires were of frequent occurrence, most of them incendiary, and it was a common belief that they were due to the soldiers, who hoped in the confusion to benefit by annexing their neighbours' goods. To add to the miseries of this African swamp, rain fell so frequently and in such abundance that Cachao bears even yet an evil reputation among the West African Colonies.

The picture that Brûe supplies of the life of this early Portuguese settlement may be accepted as typical of many others on the coast, and explains how the people of that country, though earlier than most others in Africa, have to-day the smallest share of it, and are more retrograde than any other colonists on the continent. Indolence was the rule, industry the exception. Though every article of food was costly, nobody took the trouble to breed poultry. Accordingly, when anything was wanted—were it only water—they had to go more than a musket-shot beyond their enclosure, and often with a guard to defend the slaves from their mortal enemies the Papels, many of whom lived in a quarter of the place known as the Villa Quinta. Vice of every kind was so rampant that the confessors had to take certain forms of it for granted and absolve the perpetrators without more ado. Ordinary decency was quite thrown aside, though in the matter of food the Portuguese of Cachao were, like all their race still, generally very sparing. Meat was eaten but once a day. Supper was always of fish, quantities of which of a poor quality could be obtained from the river hard by, though the abundance of alligators rendered angling a risky pastime, had the whites cared to indulge in any such exertion; and as guavas, oranges, citrons, and all kinds of tropical fruits, wild and planted, grew in great plenty, every meal began with a course of this suitable diet for a hot climate.

Slaves did all the work, though even these so mixed with the colonists that it was difficult to define where Portugal ended and Africa began. Half the so-called Portuguese were, at this early period, more blackamoors than Caucasian, and as the same miscegenation had been going on in all the other settlements along the African coast, the fact that Lisbon, Oporto, and other towns trading with Africa, have long been tinctured with negro blood need not cause amazement. For the exploitation of Africa has, among other influences upon the mother country, almost entirely transformed the city population of Portugal, the peasants in the interior and the higher classes almost alone escaping the general contamination of four centuries. As house-breaking was easy, owing to the walls being of mud, most people kept European dogs to bark (the native ones being usually bereft of that capacity), and a light burning all night, besides servants on the watch, who as soon as they heard any rogues moving fired upon them. A patrol paced the streets every night, though, as the men often turned robbers and had the right to question everyone they met, it was rare for anyone to escape the professional thief or the policeman who was set to catch him "without losing your hat or cloak."

But the most extraordinary institution of Cachao in 1700 was what was known as the "Bravos," white savages or assassins, who seem to have been a very truculent imitation in Africa of the Mohawks and Scourers who at an earlier period rendered it inadvisable for any without urgent business to stir abroad at night in the streets of London. The dress of those night adventurers was peculiar. "Conceive," writes the old traveller, "a man who above his clothes hath gotten a leathern apron, with a huge flapping bib, which covers a cuirass of mail or half-suit of armour. This apron, which falls but four fingers' breadth below the waist, is full of holes, in which are stuck two or three pairs of pocket-pistols and a brace of poniards. The left arm is charged with a small buckler, and the

hip with a long sword, or spado, whose scabbard is split, and flies open with a spring, to save the time and trouble of drawing it. When they go out on business or recreation this equipage is covered with a black cloak reaching down to the calf of the leg. But when they are upon an adventure, or fight a duel after the Portuguese manner, that is to assassinate somebody, they add to all their arms a short carbine or blunderbuss with a narrow mouth, and loaded with twenty and twenty-four balls, and a quarter of a pound of powder, with a forked stick to pilot it. To complete the dress, there is a large pair of spectacles, well fastened on the ears and affixed above the nose. When the bravo, thus equipped, arrives at the place of battle, he plants his carbine, gathers his cloak over his right hand, and in this posture bravely waits for the person who never thought of him. As soon as he sees him he bids him take care, and fires. It is hard to miss, for these pieces scatter their balls so as to cover a gate. If the unfortunate person is not quite dead, he says a 'Jesu Maria' over him, like a good Christian, and despatches him." Sometimes, however, they met with their match, in which case the bravo apologised in the grandiose fashion of his country, saying that it was all a mistake, but that the unfortunate mishap will teach him all the better to keep a sharp outlook for the person who was the unfortunate cause of the worshipful caballero having been subjected to the inconvenience of being shot at. This state of matters made, as the dignified General of the French Traders gravely remarks, a walk in the evening a perilous pastime in Cachao or, indeed, in any other Portuguese colony; for in all of them the same rule of ruffians prevailed. In the dark you were sure to be attacked, and if a link or a lantern were carried then every rascal had an excellent target from his hiding-place in some gloomy lane. "Smorcar! Put out your light!" was the cry, and if the order was not promptly obeyed, the chances were you would have the bullets whizzing about your ears.

Better far, therefore, to walk in the dark, with your hand on your sword, and, whenever the sound of a guitar was heard, to take a direction as far from the serenader as possible. For the guitar-twanger, while intent on playing court to his inamorata, had no mind to be disturbed. For as sure as the stranger passed under the window where he was engaged, the long spado was drawn, and the order "to the right" or "to the left" given in a voice which, unless the pedestrian was prepared to dispute it at the sword-point, had better be obeyed. Otherwise, "a dead man for Matins" would, as in Idaho in days not too remote for the writer to remember, be the languid gossip of next morning.

In such a sink of iniquity Portuguese women were few, and those not of the highest grade. Naturally also, no respectable dame cared to stir out of sight of her own home, in daylight or dark, or even to go to Mass, unless attended by her husband or brother as an escort. Moorish seclusion was the rule. Everybody except the negro slaves went veiled and robed so closely that only one eye and the toes could be seen—a custom still common in many parts of Spain and Portugal, and until lately the regulation dress of the ladies of Lima. So jealous were the men, that when one friend visited the house of another it was regarded—as in a strict Mohammedan family—as a breach of etiquette to ask after the host's wife, far less to request an opportunity of paying his respects to her. "For either of these impertinences is enough to risk a duel, or get the wife stabbed or poisoned."

Trade—as in Portuguese Africa still—was by no means "free." Nominally, it was strictly confined to the Portuguese. However, as the business done with Portugal was insufficient to make anybody rich, the "Sindiquanto," or Intendant, was quite ready—so long as it was made worth his while—to wink at this article in his instructions. "And if you do but save appearances, there is no difficulty in trading amongst them. Nay, it is said that the Company's officers themselves





ST. MARY'S, BATHURST.

are the best-natured in this way; so that you will always find vessels of French, English, Dutch, and other nations who put in here under pretence of wanting water, or some other misfortune," and bring off wax instead of water-butts.

And as it was in the days of the *Sieur Brûe*, so it is in ours. Trade, it is true, has altered

**Present  
condition  
of the  
country.**

somewhat. Ground-nuts, from which, after they arrive in *Marseilles* and *Lisbon*, "the best salad oil" is expressed, and *Kola* nuts, with a little cotton, now form the principal trade of this colony and of the French possessions hard by. Maize and millet are raised in small quantities, rice in the swamps about the town, and at times some indigo has been exported. But the tapping of the palm-trees—which cannot be cut down to get at the tender terminal shoot, which forms so delicate a dish, unless by the payment of a lordly price—is the business of a large portion of the population all along the coast. Thousands of gallons of this insipid liquor are every year carried to Bathurst and other settlements in the *Gambia* and *Senegal* country for the delectation of people who like a drink that, when fresh, tastes like sweet turnips, and when fermented like soap-suds flavoured with gin, and is in no respect wholesome, causing dysentery in Europeans and fearful evil diseases even in the more bibulous

natives. The *Mandingoes*—that curious race of Mohammedan negroes of whom we have already spoken—are the principal people all over this region, competing with the *Joloffs* as traders, the "*marabouts*," or priests (p. 152), being not only the teachers of what little learning there is, and of the *Koran*, but, as we have seen, the commercial travellers and middlemen of the country. But the *Jolas*, the *Flûps*, and the *Balingi*—the *Balongs* of *Brûe's* narrative—are still powers in the land, though no longer permitted to ride roughshod over their neighbours. Antelopes, gazelles, wild boars, leopards, and even lions, are still often seen, crocodiles are too frequent by far in the rivers, and the hippopotamus does not seem in all these years to have much diminished in number. The little red monkeys still toss leaves down on the traveller, and if they had the strength would toss something heavier. Pigeons coo in the woods, and the guinea-fowl may, on any river away from the coast, be seen drinking at the water's edge. White egrets are common features of the green plains, which here take the place of the dense forests farther south, and often at night the inexperienced traveller will be awoken by what sounds like the blast of a horn. But it is only the trumpet-bird calling to his mate. In the Mohammedan villages the order and dignity inseparable from even the least fanatical observance of the Prophet's law

contrast with the squalor and open vice of the pagan settlements. The marabout intones the Koran, and at early dawn and evening the hum may be heard of a village schoolmaster seated in the centre of a circle of boys learning to read from a scrap of the holy book on a bit of board, like the horn-book of old England, or laboriously forming Arabic characters in sand or by means of a bit of charcoal. But the pagan knows no letters and cares for none. His chief business is to marry, and were it

concerned—the bravos excepted—though, in truth, West Africa is not the region from which one expects the highest ethical lessons, as we shall learn when the story of colonisation comes to be told in these volumes.

Brüe during the eighteen years he passed in "Guinea" never again travelled so far afield, nor went as high up the Senegal as Galam,



FELOU FALLS, UPPER SENEGAL.

not for the necessity of obtaining the wherewithal to purchase a wife or a waist-cloth, he would be loth to stretch those manly thews of his. When he acquires a comfortable matrimonial stock, like all Africans, he lives at ease. For the female members of his family do what work is to be done on his provision-patch, tap his trees for the materials for a mild debauch, and, when a little ready money is desired, the disposal of a daughter will supply the funds. Where the English or French hold the reins, the country is at reasonable peace. Great wars are not permitted, and fighting, beyond what is required to let off the accumulated prejudices of tribe against tribe, or pagan against Moslem, is usually put down with a strong hand, more especially when these quarrels affect the white man's interest. But, as the Portuguese settlements were in Brüe's day, so they are still, so far as enterprise, and perhaps morals, are

though his agents established posts there, and carried on a prosperous trade with the natives, thus laying the foundation of the present colony in that region. He, however, visited the gum forests on the north bank of the river, and had many dealings with the King of Hoval—who in those days was subject to a potentate that dubbed himself, as was the fashion then, and is yet among the African princes, the Great Brak, "King of Kings"—and other dignitaries who had, as late as the beginning of the eighteenth century, mingled so little with Europeans that people of the first rank crowded from far and near

Brüe's  
other ex-  
plorations.

to have a look at the white men and a share of their brandy and other good things. But with these minor journeys we need not concern ourselves: they had nothing to do with the search for Timbuctoo, though Brüe never ceased to make inquiries about that city, or to accumulate information on the subject of its trade and the motley races that crowded to it. Brüe seems to have been intelligent and energetic beyond the capacity of his superiors in France to appreciate, for he had continually to urge them to take the most necessary steps for reaping the advantage of the treaties he formed. The fort which he urged them to build near Dramanet was placed on too low a position, so that at the first flood it was swept away, and during his absence in France to justify himself before the Company, the less prudent agent left in his place managed to dissolve the good understanding that Brüe's address had established between the French and the natives. The result was that, by dint of numbers, the latter cut off all supplies from the fort that replaced the one destroyed, and thus starved the inmates into surrender, after which they razed the building to the ground. Then for a long time we hear little of the Upper Senegal. However, in 1713, the *Sieur Richebourg* succeeded in re-establishing the factory at Mankanet, a little below Dramanet, and as Brüe returned to the government of the Senegal trade in the course of the following year, the opening up of the country went on again.

Factors were despatched in all directions, one of the journeys which he was very anxious to have undertaken being to Bambuk. To this country, accordingly, several of Brüe's agents set out, but after proceeding a little way on the road returned, terrified by the reports of the jealousy with which white men were regarded. At length Campagnon, a factor of higher courage than the rest, undertook the mission, and by insinuating himself into the good graces of the Farim of Kagnure, a town some forty-five miles up the Falemé,

**Campagnon's  
journey to  
Bambuk.**

on the frontier of Bambuk, obtained the escort of that chief's son as far as Sambanura. Here he was regarded with mingled feelings. Some were for killing him; others, more moderate, considered that the very least that could be done was to remove the intruder out of the country, with a warning never to return. However—such is the emollient influence of trade—the disposition of the country suffered an entire change as soon as the traveller opened his stores and began to distribute presents to this one and to barter on what they thought excellent terms with another, until before long all Sambanura regarded the factor with such goodwill that they began to thank Heaven and the Farim of Kagnure's son for conducting him thither. Guides to other towns were speedily forthcoming, and though at first he had invariably to overcome the same prejudices that he surmounted at Sambanura, in the end the tact of the Frenchman and the attractions of his packs had the same effect—a favourable reception was usually accorded. In a year and a half this intrepid pioneer traversed all the more important regions of Bambuk. Nevertheless, in one respect he never quite succeeded in disarming the natives' jealousy. In vain did he affect a desire to make tobacco pipes—as they did—of the “ghingan,” or golden earth, for which the country is famous. The region in which this is found most copiously was regarded as sacred ground. Even those most kindly disposed towards the stranger regarded the very act of his touching the pride of the land and the source of its wealth as close akin to high treason. All his arguments failed to convince them. For, as they truly remarked, it was idle to suppose that any man in his senses would undertake so long a journey simply to obtain material for the purpose he affected.

The result was a renewal of their old suspicions as to the white man's motives, and the Mandingo traders, who had hitherto had a monopoly of acting as middlemen in collecting and selling the gold, did their best to raise in the path of Campagnon the obstacles

that had, years before, prevented the journey of so energetic a pioneer as Brother Apollinaire, who, after serving the Royal Company in the capacity of a surgeon, had taken the habit and returned to Galam as its factor. Indeed, by this time there were many agencies at work against the French. The marabouts, or priests, were, of course, at no time their friends. Fanaticism and the self-interest of saints that were also traders, operated in rousing their jealousy of the newcomers,

conquered, all men fit to bear arms carried into slavery, and the rest set to work in the mines. However, in spite of this jealousy, the patient Frenchman, by dint of bribes and fair words, succeeded in obtaining all he wished, and opened up a commerce that for many years yielded great wealth to all concerned, and, as we shall see when the influence of the reopening of the gold diggings of Africa by white men is described, is still an important factor in the trade of Senegal. But this was



MOUNTAINS IN BAMBUK.

while from Southern Guinea came evil-disposed reports, through the caravans, that the French were dangerous folk to know, insinuating themselves by promises and presents, and, then, after they had gained the upper hand, throwing off the mask and becoming masters of the natives. Nor were the Moors, from the same motives, amicable to infidels who were their rivals in trade and infidels in faith. For other sinister influences afloat we hear of a letter which came to Senegal, all the way from Sallee, the pirate port of Morocco (p. 105), intimating, evidently with a view to alarm the natives, that the French were to be joined by a Moorish army, their country

not in André Brûe's day. All his representations regarding the ease with which Bam-buk could be conquered, or the alternative policy of gradually boring into the country little by little, had no effect on the apathetic Company, too well served by agents whom they could not appreciate. Yet for many a day afterwards the French did not neglect every opportunity of making themselves familiar with this region—Levens, Pelay, Legrand, and David all visiting it long before Park's journey rendered it a familiar name in English mouths.

This was, however, a far cry from the early years of the eighteenth century when the

Sieur Brûe, after many other adventures and some petty wars, returned to enjoy in France the fortune he had earned in his arduous labours. His after-life is not known. He kept voluminous journals, but he printed nothing himself, and had it not been for the industry of a clerical friend the world might have lost a curious chapter in the history of the early exploration of Africa.\* As for the Sieur Campagnon, who shared with him in the merit of being one of the pioneers in those early discoveries, he also returned to his native land. This little-remembered factor—for he was so unfortunate as to live in a day when every year brought forth a score of travellers with stranger tales than his to tell—had in him the makings at once of a diplomatist and a hero. Among other romantic tales told of his conduct, it is said that one day, returning

to Fort St. Louis (p. 141)—now a town of the same name—he found a lioness which had long been kept in captivity dying outside the walls. The poor animal had been seized with a distemper in the jaw, usually fatal to the species, and, unable to eat and reduced to the last extremity, had been thrown on the dunghill to perish. Campagnon, seeing some life in the sufferer, though her eyes were closed, and her gaping mouth full of ants, took pity on the creature, washed her throat with water, and poured some milk down it. This saved her life, and ever afterwards the grateful animal conceived such an affection for the person who had done her this good office that she would eat nothing but what he fed her with, and followed him up and down the Isle of St. Louis like a dog. Yet history, which would fain have had a more picturesque ending for the career of a man who had begun it so romantically, is forced to confess that he died many years afterwards a prosperous master mason and undertaker in Paris.

\* Labat: "Nouvelle relations de l'Afrique Occidentale," 5 vols. (1728)—consisting mainly of the narrative of Brûe's travels; Dumanet, "Nouvelle histoire de l'Afrique française," 2 vols. (1767); Henricque: "Les Colonies françaises," vol. v. (1891), etc.



BAMBARRA TYPE.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE BRITISH AND THE NIGER: THE AFRICAN ASSOCIATION.

The Vast Profits of the African Trade—Longings of the English to Discover the Wealth of Inner Africa—The Voyage of Bartholomew Stibbs up the Gambia—Its Disappointments—His Belief that the Gambia was not the Seaward End of the Niger—Harrison's Voyage in the same direction—The Strange Tale of Job ben Solomon, the King's Son who was taken for a Slave—Its Influence upon the Renewal of African Exploration—Growing Familiarity of the Natives of the Senegal and the Gambia with White Men—Their Insolence, Drunkenness, and General Depravity—Some Specimens of "Kings in their Own Country"—The Traders and the Natives—General Decadence of even Commercial Decency in "the Rivers"—Curious Trade Customs—Mumbo Jumbo—The African Association: its Founders and Early Agents—The Beginning of Exploration in Earnest by Men who were not Traders, but Travellers—Ledyard—Lucas—Watt and Winterbottom—Houghton—Hornemann—The Coming of Mungo Park.

EXPLORING in the days when the eighteenth century was young must have been a much more profitable occupation than in the closing years of the nineteenth. It paid its way, which, perhaps, many of the gentlemen whose tales will be told in these volumes may be ready to vouch is not the case at present. Thus, when Brûe returned from his journey to the acacia forests, he had in his possession 400,000 pounds of gum, besides slaves, ivory, ostrich feathers, and ambergris washed ashore on the coast and traded from tribe to tribe as a precious flavouring substance, while the number of negroes despatched every year to America and to Europe was, we have seen, prodigious. In two years—1685 and 1686—1,800 were bought at the Bissao and Bissagos Islands alone, and next year nearly half as many, not, of course, taking into account the cargoes picked up in every river, north and south. Hence, even with a little loss from plunder by the natives and peculation by the factors—luxurious gentlemen who, according to the frank tales told by Brûe, had slaves to wash their feet and comb their hair—the profits ought to have been great. Yet we know that company after company failed, and forts changed hands with such amazing rapidity that until we consider the story of the African colonies that began in trading-posts, the history of their ups and downs had best be left unwritten.

The English, we have already learned, had

not been exempt from these vicissitudes. They, too, had dreamed of Timbuctoo, and by the beginning of last century had been infected by the general longing to reach the interior from whence came the merchandise sold to them by the wily middlemen at profits altogether disproportionate to their trouble. The voyages of George Thompson and Richard Jobson had not been forgotten, though, in a way, they had not been successful, and the stories brought back to London and to the Gambia factories of the enterprise of the Frenchmen fired once more the English traders to discover whether in the interior there was more wealth than had hitherto been brought to the coast. One of these tales was that of a merchant in Charles the Second's day, who we now know was called Vermuyden, though, according to his own account, he carefully concealed his name lest he should be sent by the Government on another such expedition as that which he records. From this not altogether indisputable narrative,\* this merchant, after accumulating much wealth on the Gambia, had visited some of the interior gold-mines, washing sometimes as much as fifty-seven grains of gold from ten pounds of sand, a "prospect" good enough to rejoice the heart of a Californian or Australian. The explorer, however, gives us little indication of how far he ascended the river, or any account

\* It was found among Dr. Hooke's Posthumous Papers.

of the country except that while engaged in "rocking" the sands he was attacked by an incredible number of baboons, who would "listen to no oratory but guns," and who but for this species of persuasion would, he believes, have torn the party to pieces. At night a hippopotamus drove its teeth through their boat, a mishap that was avoided in future by hanging a lantern over the bows, these animals always keeping at some distance from light shining on the water. The prospectors, though provided with mercury, lead, and borax for amalgamating purposes, seem to have possessed little practical knowledge of gold-mining, a species of lore at that time difficult for any Englishman to obtain; for they would sometimes bring iron pyrites to the boat, under the notion that it was the precious metal, and were at times induced to try the divining-rod, though this instrument was never successful, possibly, the author suggests, because its virtues had dried up during the voyage from England to Africa. The entire narrative of Vermuyden is, however, tinctured with suspicion. He is too vague for the geographer, and though he is enthusiastic over the gold, no one has since his journey discovered the deposits from which he washed what "surprised him with joy and admiration," while the names and descriptions of the places passed look as if they had been taken from Jobson. However, Bartholomew Stibbs, who seems to have read his journal, expresses no doubt as to the truth of Vermuyden's story. Yet, if he did actually make the voyage he describes, he must, from the fact of his having been absent three months after passing Barrakonda, have gone far beyond any previous explorer, assuming that he did not loiter a great deal on the way, since Jobson spent no more than twelve days in covering the distance he went beyond the then bounds of European knowledge of the Gambia. Be that as it may—and, as no one has seen Vermuyden's journal except Stibbs, the doubt as to its authority must for ever remain unsolved—until the mariner just mentioned made his voyage, the interior of Africa had

been left undisturbed by Englishmen, who were now to enter upon that course of exploration which they have ever since pursued with such unremitting industry. The Dutch and the Danes never made any pretence of advancing knowledge. They remained in their factories on the coast, attending strictly to business, and leaving to others the task of pulling the chestnuts out of the fire for, as they hoped, the traders who had done nothing to help them. As for the Portuguese, they seem to have, at a very early date, abandoned any notion of competing with the Northerners in this region. They still kept factories and forts on the Guinea Coast and its islands (p. 45); but it was to Angola and the eastern side of the continent that their principal attention was given, and from which their journeys into the interior were directed. In these circumstances the Royal African Company, under the enlightened presidency of the Duke of Chandos, saw their chance. Its trade, as we have shown (p. 50), was not prospering: receipts were great, but expenditure was greater, and profits consequently were nothing. It was therefore resolved to find, after the English fashion, new markets in the interior, or, at least, new sources of gain that even the slave trade did not afford.

Accordingly, in 1723, Captain Bartholomew Stibbs was despatched on a voyage up the Gambia. At James Fort (p. 59) he found that the governor to whom he was accredited had succumbed to the climate, and that the factor was in no way inclined to expedite a journey from which possibly he foresaw little to his advantage. Canoes, the new-comer was curtly told, were not to be had, and, just as Captain Stibbs was in hope that an indignant letter which he had despatched would arouse this gentleman from his lethargy, his dead body was brought down the river in the Company's pinnace. He, too, had perished of a mental disorder, brought on by the miasma of the Lower Gambia. A month had thus been lost, the river was falling, and some of the explorer's best men were dying or dead, before they could set out on an



expedition that was already widely bruited abroad as a gold-hunt. Up to this date no such well-found party had ever set out on such an errand. It consisted of fifteen Europeans and thirty Africans, besides women and boys, who, not being on the pay-roll, did not count as members of the expedition. There were beside a "linguister," or interpreter, who, being a Christian, considered himself a white man, "though as black as coal," and a "balafeu," or native musician, to "cheer up the men and recruit them of an evening." Swarms of locusts, four or five miles in breadth, had eaten up the country before them, but wherever they passed the tribesmen displayed the same eagerness for trade that had been their characteristic when Jobson visited the region more than a century before. So anxious, indeed, were they for traffic that at places on the banks they erected, as their countrymen still do, rude fetishes, or charms, in the shape of crossed sticks, under the notion that this would induce the strangers to come ashore. As they neared Barrakonda, the natives declared that beyond that part all was barrenness and desolation. Stibbs, however, believing that this was a falsehood simply to obtain for themselves a monopoly of the trade, pushed on. But at Barrakonda he found one of those monuments of the slave trade with which so many subsequent travellers have become too familiar. This town was a mass of blackened ruins. No people were to be seen at a spot once the centre of a flourishing market for all the surrounding country, and the spacious plain stretching for miles back from the river was no longer grazed by cattle. All was desolation; a slave-hunting king had destroyed the place and carried the inhabitants down the river for sale to the English factories.

The sight was doubtless not a pleasant one, and to the negroes of the party seemed so suggestive of the fate that might await them that they refused to proceed farther. Beyond Barrakonda, they declared, no man had ever yet proceeded. It was the end of the world most likely, or, if there was any country

farther to the east, it could only be a country of savages, to travel among whom would be simply putting the lives of the entire party in danger. No arguments were of avail. In vain the diplomatic Stibbs tried to persuade them out of this folly. To no purpose did he endeavour to frighten them into obedience: they knew when they were well off, and had no intention either of being eaten or enslaved by the mythical folk beyond, or being starved to death in the desert, should this region be without inhabitants. Then the astute sailor resorted to the ultimate argument of all: he produced a brandy-bottle and told the timid Gambians to consult this oracle. The result was what he expected—all fear vanished, and in a few hours they were plying their oars, determined to go as far as the Europeans; with another bottle in their heads they would have agreed to go even farther.

The Barrakonda "cataract"—a barrier (in the dry season) formed by a ledge of rock crossing the river-bed—passed, they found that the world went a long way beyond. Not only was there country, but people living in it; and, so far from being truculent monsters, they were a harmless folk, who supplied the travellers with plenty of fowls and other provisions. But crocodiles, baboons and hippopotami became troublesome; and, worse still, the sand-flats and shoals were so frequent that, often sticking fast in mid-stream half-a-dozen times a day, Stibbs was compelled to return without even reaching as far as the limits of Jobson's voyage. This was Tenda, still some distance ahead.

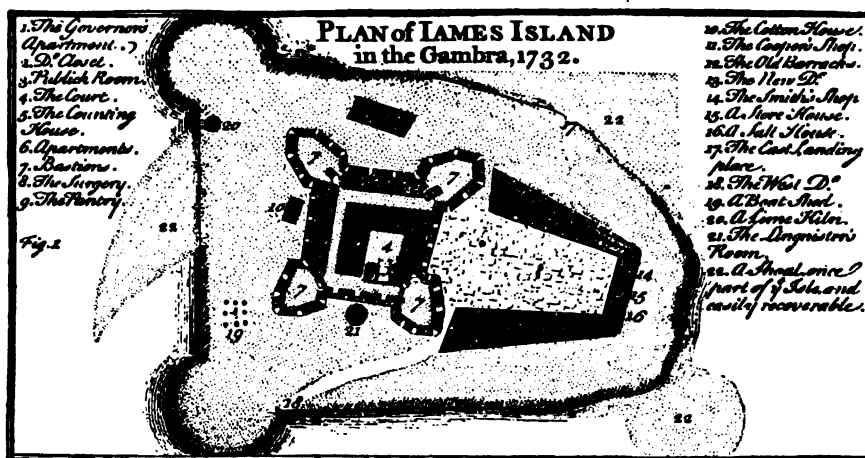
As might have been expected, Stibbs seems not to have been received very warmly by his disappointed employers. Even the traders on the lower river,\* who were in no way well disposed to outsiders from home being sent on such missions—albeit they had no wish to go on them in

*The strange history of Job, Son of Solomon.*

\* Among these was Francis Moore, of James Island, who published Stibbs's journal in the appendix to his "Travels into the Interior Parts of Africa" (1738), with an Introduction which in another place I have ventured to suggest was one of the earliest pieces of work executed by Samuel Johnson for Edward Cave, the publisher.

person—accused him of “undertaking to prove that the Gambia was not the Niger, nor a river of long course,” in both of which conclusions the explorer was perfectly correct. It would appear, however, from incidental references in his narrative, that though Stibbs was the first voyager up the Gambia of whom any record has been kept since Jobson made his attempt to reach Timbuctoo by that route, there had been other minor essays in the same direction during the interval, but, from no account having been preserved, the probability is that

neither proved nor disproved the identity of these streams with the Niger, was the story told by Job, Son of Solomon, “a king in his own country,” but at the time we make his acquaintance a “negro servant” in the colony of Maryland. It was so romantic, so instinct with possibilities, that it seized the popular imagination, gave a fresh start to African exploration, and, one would fain hope, sowed the seed of that detestation of the slave trade which in after-years produced so plentiful a crop. Job was the son of a chief of the



PLAN OF JAMES ISLAND, IN THE GAMBIA, 1732.

(After an old Print.)

they were all failures, even more pronounced than his own. Nor was Stibbs the only explorer of English name until the era of the journeys made under the African Association set in; for in 1732, Harrison, apparently an employé of the Trading Company, reached as far as Fataatenda, when, finding that the sloop could proceed no farther, he sent Captain Leach, with boats, for over sixty miles farther, where he was stopped by what he describes as an insurmountable ledge of rocks in the river-bed.

But what did more for African exploration than these monotonous stories of journeys up the Senegal and the Gambia, which never got any farther, and never reached Timbuctoo, and brought back no gold, and

Fulahs who united in his person the duties at once of prince and Moslem pontiff of the Bondu country, lying in the watershed between the Gambia and the Senegal. Having had occasion to visit the Gambia for business purposes, Job was strictly enjoined by his father not to cross the river, lest he should fall into the hands of the Mandingoes, who were bitter enemies of his race. But, impelled by curiosity, the young man neglected this precaution, and unattended by any of his retinue, he persuaded a negro merchant to enter the hostile territory with him as interpreter. Feeling the heat of the day oppressive, he hung his gold-mounted arms in a hut by the way, and lay down to sleep away in the shade the noontide sun. Not suspecting any danger, he and his





JOB, "SON OF SOLOMON," SURPRISED BY A PARTY OF MANDINGOES (p. 165).

companion, while thus defenceless, were surprised by a party of Mandingoes, seized, chained, and brought to Joar, where he was sold to Captain Pyke, then engaged in "completing an invoice of servants" for the "American plantations." Learning the rank of his chattel, the trader permitted him to send a message to his father, so that an opportunity of ransom might be afforded. But before the messengers of King Solomon arrived with the purchase-money, Job was well on his way to the New World. In Annapolis he was sold to the owner of a tobacco-plantation, who, finding that he had not been accustomed to labour, set him to herding cows. This occupation to a Fulah was congenial enough. However, he was annoyed by being watched by a boy when he retired to the woods to pray after the Moslem manner, until, wearied with the impertinences to which he was subjected without being able to complain, he determined to seek a more sympathetic master. Wandering into the county of Kent, then part of Delaware, he was seized as a fugitive slave and thrown into prison until his owner could be found. Fortunately for him he met with a Mr. Bluet, who, hearing him pronounce the words Allah and Mohammed, saw that he was a Mohammedan, and from his affable manner and the "easy composure of his countenance" no common bondman. By-and-by there came along a negro who spoke the Joloff language, as naturally many black men did in a day when every week hundreds of fresh arrivals from Africa were being poured into America. To this interpreter Job told his story, with the result that his "owner" fetched him home, and, evidently impressed by the rank of his chattel, or by the fact that the man was spirited enough to take care of himself, used him better than before his flight, allowing him a place to pray in and some conveniences calculated to render his life more tolerable.

In the meantime, Job wrote in Arabic to his father, but, owing to the vessel by which it was to reach the Upper Gambia having left England before the letter arrived, the epistle lay several months in London, where, happening to be seen

by the famous Mr., afterwards General, Oglethorpe, who occupied a high place in the African Company, that gentleman, touched by the pathetic tale of the royal captive, gave instructions to ransom and bring him to England, with the view of returning the hapless prince to his native country. This was done, and in April, 1733, Job arrived in London. The



WANDERING FULAH. (After Gray and Dockard.)

friend by whose exertions he had been rescued from slavery was James Edward Oglethorpe, the founder of Georgia, the friend of Wesley, Pope, and, in after-days, of Johnson and Boswell (p. 168). But before the African landed in Britain Oglethorpe had left on the voyage that resulted in founding the now flourishing city of Savannah. Job, however, found plenty of friends, by whom he was introduced to the King and Queen, and the royal family,

receiving, among other attentions, a gift of a gold watch from Her Majesty. The Duke of Montagu also invited him to his house, where he made the acquaintance of the principal personages in the capital; among them was Sir Hans Sloane, founder of the British Museum, by whom, after Job had learned to speak English, he was employed to translate some of the Arabic manuscripts in his library. Endowed with a prodigious memory, he wrote out three complete copies of the Koran, with no other aid than recollection, and without using the first in preparing the other two. Mechanism of all kinds took his fancy, and, though a zealous Mohammedan, he displayed quite as much anxiety to learn about "infidel" religions as regarding more secular branches of knowledge.

After more than a year's stay, he set out for Africa, and arrived at James Fort in August, 1734. In England Job's disposition had been of the gentlest; on the Gambia the very sight of individuals belonging to the nation that had sold him into slavery roused in his mind such violent antipathy that it was with difficulty he could be prevented from killing the first Mandingo whom he met. Every scrap of news he eagerly listened to; but of all the tidings which the Anglified Fulah heard, nothing delighted him so much as that the chief by whom he had been thrown into slavery was afterwards killed by the accidental discharge of his own pistol, Job expressing an earnest hope that this fatal weapon had been the one received as part of the price of his captivity. All the tidings the returning slave obtained were not, however, so pleasant as this. For after waiting impatiently four months for a letter which he had at once despatched to his father, messengers arrived with the information that the old king had died almost immediately on hearing that his son was again in Africa, and that his country, owing to a long war in which it was involved, was then in a very distracted condition. He also learned that one of his wives had married again, but that the new husband, hearing of

Job's return from a land so far away, had discreetly absconded. Determined, however, to wait no longer without seeing his friends and family, Job set off for Bondu, and in vain we search the literature of the African trade after that date for further tidings about him. He might have been killed, for if he had been captured he would soon have been heard of; or settling down to fight and be fought, to enslave instead of being enslaved, he, after the fashion of his people and his faith, soon sloughed off the veneer of civilisation obtained in the House of Bondage and in the land of the Infidels. At all events, Job, son of Solomon, Pontiff and King of Bondu, vanishes entirely from history, though, as we shall presently see, the interest aroused by his romantic story and his stay in London did so much to advance African exploration that his capture and captivity may not unjustly be set down to the credit of a traffic that has so little to be proud of.\*

By this time the Gambia and the Senegal were becoming familiar rivers. A voyage to Galam or to Barrakonda was no longer regarded as remarkable, while the natives, as we can gather from the journals of Francis Moore, who was trading on the former river for the African Company, had ceased to be even the moderately primitive folk they were in the days of Captain Jobson, or even in those of Captain Stibbs. Familiarity with the whites had improved neither their manners nor their morals. Begging was the rule; insolence was frequently superadded. The King of Barsalli was an average type of the kind of potentate who had grown up under the slave trade. Visiting Joar, he chose to reside in the factory, for no other reason than that he preferred its accommodation to that of his own house in the town, and took possession of the trader's

**The familiarity that bred contempt in West Africa.**

\*The story of Ayûb ibn Suleyman ibn Ibrahim, to give him his full Arabic name, is contained in Bluet's pamphlet, "Some Memoirs of the Life of Job, the Son of Solomon, the High Priest of Boonda, in Africa" (1734), and in Moore's "Travels," etc. (1738).

room and bedstead simply because they were the best in the place. Finding the white man objected to so cavalier a proceeding, his sable Majesty promptly proceeded to take the keys of the store-room from him, and there and then to help himself and his courtiers to whatever took their fancy in the shape of food and drink. But "brandy was his main hank," and he applied himself so freely to an anker of it that for three days the sovereign was in a state of "royal drunkenness." This supply being exhausted, he searched the house for more, though without effect until he came to a room where one of the servants of the Company lay ill. Espying a case that wore a promising aspect, he ordered it to be opened. In vain the owner affirmed from his sick-bed that it contained nothing but papers, "of no value to anyone save the owner." The King knew better than that—he was "too well acquainted with liquor-cases to be fobbed off with any such story"—and, to prove his discrimination, proceeded to open it and partake of the contents, which, as he expected, consisted of six gallons and a-half of excellent cognac. A fresh outburst of bacchanalian revelry followed, though, "to do the King justice," the sympathetic Moore admits, he often invited the factor whom he had robbed to take a share of his own brandy. When this supply was exhausted, and there seemed no chance of a fresh one being forthcoming, the party began to talk of taking their departure in search of a cellar better stocked. However, before doing so, they determined to make one more scrutiny of the premises, and as they were three hundred and the white men three, the King and his courtiers ran riot among the slender furnishings of Joar factory, pocketing everything they had a mind to, and then, seeing that there was no more to be had, took an adieu as ceremonious as if they had been the most welcome of guests.

Yet, to show the degradation that had befallen the Gambia River natives in the few years that had elapsed since they would die rather than touch wine, the King of Barsalli

was a zealous Mohammedan, and—when not drunk—prayed fervently. This, however, was only when nothing stronger than water was to be had, for if rum was plentiful—and His Majesty <sup>"A king in his own country."</sup> was not particular so long as the beverage was intoxicating—he used to rise at night, drink till daylight, then eat, and go to sleep near sunset; then he rose, drank copiously, and went to sleep until it was time to begin his tippling again. His unquenchable thirst kept his subjects in a perpetual terror; for whenever he found his supply of brandy running low, he despatched a message to Fort James requesting a cargo to be sent in exchange for slaves—a call that the honest British merchants met with alacrity. Meantime, while the liquor was coming up the river, the King would attack a neighbouring town, set fire to three parts of it, and, stationing his guards at the fourth, seize the people as they tried to escape. These captives were usually the subjects of his neighbour-chiefs. But if he happened not to be at war with anybody in particular, then his own people had to pay with their persons the brandy-bill at James Fort; for, unlike most of the African sovereigns, this ruffian's power seems to have been absolute. His chiefs did not require to be consulted, and as their king was so were they. They drank and robbed, kidnapped and enslaved, and when mad with rum would join their lord and master in his favourite pastime of shooting at the canoes passing up the river, shrieking with drunken merriment when a bullet made the paddle drop from a dead man's hands (p. 169).

The factors of this time we have already sketched. They were excellent examples for the black men around them. For their business was to be the receivers of stolen property, if they did not themselves steal, and, as a list of the whites who died at the stations in the Gambia from 1730 to 1735 shows, temperance in the chief article of their trade was not any more practised among themselves than it was preached to the natives. Thus, Mr. Robert Forbes, writer, at Joar, died of hard drinking,



and Mr. Houghton, at James Fort, of too heavy a dose of laudanum; Captain Major was killed by the natives of Kasson in revenge for an injury, and several men of Captain Williams' company by a mutiny of his slaves; Mr. Lowther, supercargo of the *Bumper* sloop, "was shot in the belly by his negroes," and



GENERAL OGLETHORPE. (From a Print.)

Mr. Railton, factor at Brako, died from "a fall, correcting his black boy perhaps too passionately;" while Mr. James Ellis is recorded in the document from which these edifying notes are extracted to have ended his career a "martyr to rum." Such heroes deserve to be recorded quite as much as the three slaves who were carried off by crocodiles in close proximity to the Company's trading-stations. The traders, even in the same employ, quarrelled bitterly, and sometimes carried their ill-will to each other so far that they would instigate the natives to insult and rob the white man against whom they had a grudge.

The best men of that period, no doubt,

did not seek employment in Africa, any more than the pick of London are nowadays to be found on the Guinea Coast. But, of late years, everything in Africa had been steadily deteriorating. Evil communications, the infamy of the traffic in which the men were engaged, and the horrible condition of society into which the outrages necessary for keeping the market supplied had plunged the natives, corrupted more and more manners never good. Kasson had become a town noted for doing mischief. No European could pass it without the risk of being insulted, until, being taken and plundered by a neighbouring potentate, the people became, as bullies are prone to become under such treatment, "the civilest on the whole river." Factories dotted each bank of the stream, more strongly fortified than in earlier times, since the country round about was almost always in a condition of chronic war. Business was not so easy as of old, and though the up-river people were not quite so insolent or so corrupt as those mentioned, they had some customs that were extremely undesirable from a commercial point of view. For instance, if a bargain were made, it could be repudiated in the course of the day on condition of the article bought being returned. This naturally led to extortion from the whites. Thus, a trader bought a cow, and, being a gentleman of eccentric taste, amputated its tail. This reaching the ear of the seller, he immediately saw his chance of demanding back the animal, claiming at the same time three hundred times the price originally paid, as compensation for the mutilation of his animal; and as the entire population backed up the habit and wont of the place, the trader was compelled to pay and wait his turn. This soon occurred; for visiting the place with an armed vessel, he enticed several of the principal people on board and clapped them in irons until restitution was made. Outwitted in this fashion, the African not being a revengeful individual, the sharpers admitted that they had been well served out, and resumed their intercourse, on the old amicable terms,

with the man who had collected old debts in so new a way. At Fatatenda the limits of the Company's traffic were reached. Here the Gambia is as broad as the Thames at London Bridge, the country of Kantara round about being a great plain continually echoing with the roar of wild beasts. The Company's

it in a secret place at night, stealing to his hoard to partake of a "night-cap" like a miser to his hidden heaps of gold.

Everybody of any consequence was in those days, as in ours, very much married. Whole villages consisted of one man, his wives, his children, and his slaves. To keep such a pack



THE KING OF BARSALLI'S PASTIME (p. 167).

factory was situated on a high rock near the water's edge, and the lonely agent in charge seems to have had about as agreeable a time with the king of that region as his colleague at Joar had with the bibulous sovereign of Barsalli. For brandy was what his up-river majesty lusted after on all his too numerous visits. He did not ask for it; he simply seized and drank it, so that the factor was compelled, if he was to have any for his own use, to bury

of termagants in order would have been difficult without the help of Mumbo Jumbo, the avenging evil spirit who arrives at intervals and inflicts dire punishment on all offenders against marital and other codes of morals, and who is possessed of an amount of local knowledge which in the minds of anyone less superstitious than the West African would raise a well-founded suspicion as to the local origin of this convenient demon-deity.

The traders were under the protection, such as it was, of the headman, but many of them preferred to protect themselves, and not a few seem, as happens still, to have sunk pretty well to the level of the savages around them. They believed in omens, if not in Mumbo Jumbo, or "Horeys" (p. 130), and were not sure whether there was not something in the Gambia belief that everyone who dies owes his death either to witchcraft or to breaking some vow; and one white man thoroughly believed in the Mandingo method of discovering a thief, by forcing the suspected person to dip his hands into boiling water. The result was invariably satisfactory. Either he refused to do so, when, of course, no further inquiry was necessary, or if he did they were scalded, a circumstance that settled his guilt without further demur. This trader, who happened to be master of a vessel, proceeded to test, after this summary manner, the innocence of his crew touching the loss of a musket. Naturally, all of them were scalded. But, unfortunately for the captain, just as he was triumphing over the success of his judicial process, the missing gun was unexpectedly found in his own custody, an awkward circumstance which for a time endangered his life at the hands of the not unjustly mutinous crew, who, happening to be negroes, lay in wait for him, and before long exacted an ample compensation for their wrongs.

#### THE AFRICAN ASSOCIATION.

All this time, though no regular exploration was going on in Africa—or at least in this part of it—Timbuctoo and the interior were not forgotten. Great quantities of African products were reaching England and other European countries every year, and the slaves despatched to the American plantations, in spite of many isolated voices raised here and there in protest against the iniquity of the traffic, were as numerous as ever. Adanson, the famous naturalist—after whom *Adansonia*, the Baobab-tree, or Monkey-bread (p. 64), is named—had explored the animal

and vegetable life of the Senegal, and his works had familiarised the cultured men of Europe with the tribes and plants and beasts, with the dark woods, the marigots or creeks, the overflow lakes, the gum-forests, the desert, and the ostriches coursing over it, the red-legged partridges and Guinea-fowls, the grey hares and Barbary quails, the sand-grouse and snipe, the graceful antelopes, clumsy river-horses, and the pigeons that cooed by the million in the dense woods. And Saugnier, cast away on the shores of the Sahara north of the Senegal, had added to the stores of geographical knowledge much interesting information regarding that country and the wild tribes inhabiting it.

The time had now come for that systematic exploration of Africa which for more than a century has never halted. All travelling previous to the period we have now arrived at, interesting and important though it was, may be regarded as simply preliminary to the great journeys of the next century—all the explorers who had hitherto felt their way into the interior as agents in advance for the explorers whose advent was now due. In England, geographers had long been divided into two camps—those who believed that the Gambia was the Niger mouth, and the remainder who held by the Senegal as its seaward end. High words unbecoming the dignity of science were wont to be uttered by the rival combatants, though, as the Senegal belonged to France, and France therefore leaned to the first-named hypothesis, the sturdy Briton preferred to accept the Gambia as his hold-by. And there was quite as much to be said for the one assertion as for the other, and neither was right; for, as we now know, the Niger is a river perfectly distinct from either of the two so long believed to be identical with it.

In 1788, however, the mists began to clear away. An impression seized some of the best minds of England that the Niger was not to be found and followed by expeditions up either the Gambia or the Senegal, which always ended at nearly the same place, the rivers falling just at the time when the latest

explorer was arriving at or getting a little beyond the farthest limits of his predecessor. Among geographers who shared this belief were Sir Joseph Banks, President of the Royal Society (p. 173), who twenty years before had accompanied Captain Cook on his famous expedition round the world, the Earl of Galloway, the Bishop of Llandaff, Lord Rawdon (afterwards Marquis of Hastings), General Conway, Sir Adam Fergusson, Mr. Beaufoy, and Major Rennell, at that period the most expert chartographer living. These gentlemen determined to form themselves into the African Association, the object of which was to send explorers to find and follow the Niger. This was on the 9th of June, 1788, and from that period until their labours were crowned with success, and the newly founded Geographical Society, with its more festive predecessor, the Raleigh Club, charged themselves with the work so long pursued by the older body, they ceased not to play a great part in the history of savage Africa.

The first emissary whom they despatched did nothing to deserve a place in this

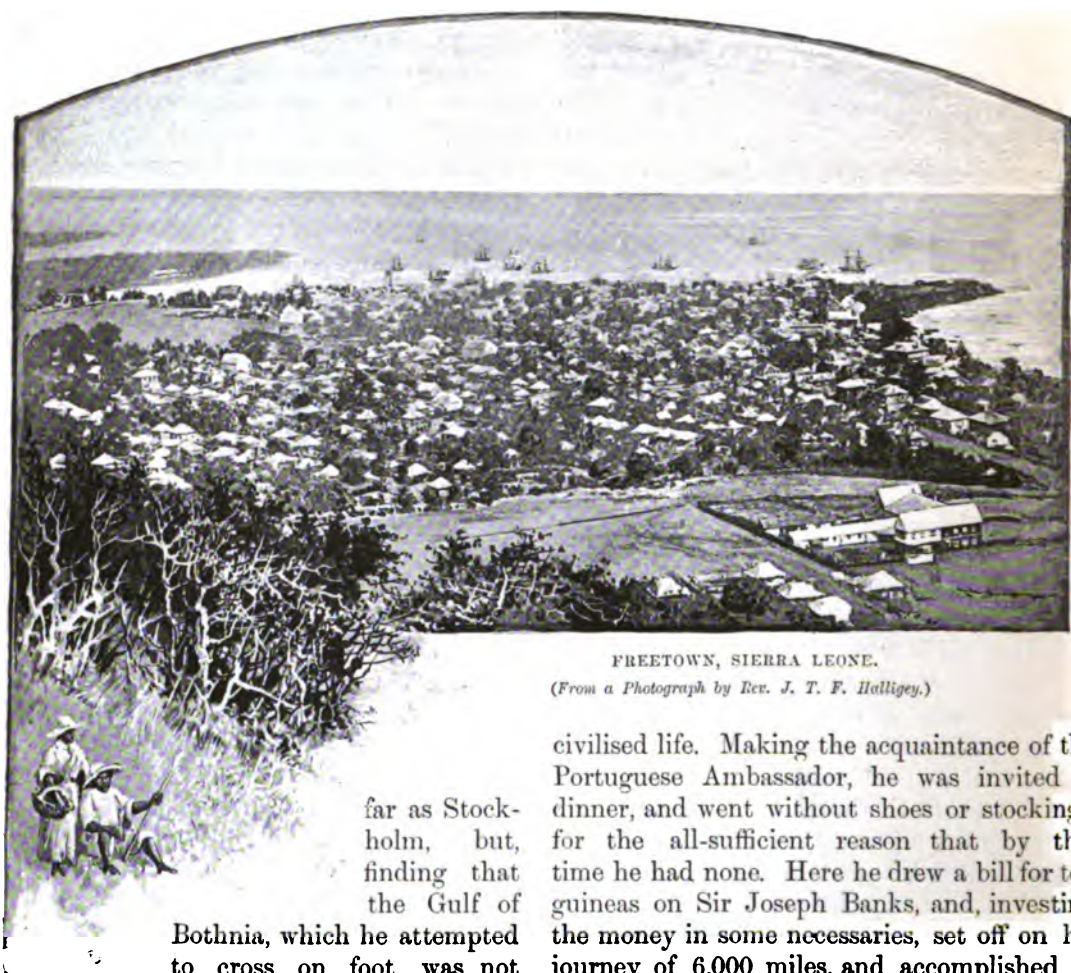
**Ledyard.** chronicle, except that he died on African soil. But the story of John Ledyard is so romantic that there would be a blank in the history of the seekers after Timbuctoo were he to be dismissed with so brief a notice. The son of a New England sea-captain, he soon deserted the law, to which he had been bred. But he was so little fascinated by the Missionary College for the Conversion of Red Indians which he then entered that, instead of trying to wean them from their savage ways, they managed to convert him so far that he ran away, and for a time wandered among the Six Nations to the borders of Canada. A second attempt to settle down to books was not much more successful; for, hewing down a tree, he formed a rude "dug-out," in which, with no more elaborate equipment than a bear-skin, an Ovid and a New Testament, he floated down the Connecticut River to Hartford, a distance of 130 miles along a stream broken by rapids, in the hope that some relatives who lived there

would put him in the way of something less vagabond. But the Hartford Ledyards seem to have come to the conclusion that a youth who had been lawyer, parson, and savage before he was nineteen was not the kind of person to help. For about this period, abandoning the Church and his native land, he shipped as a sailor from New London to Gibraltar; but, liking the sea no better than any of his many previous pursuits, he deserted, and when next seen was discovered by his captain among the awkward squad in red coats and black gaiters learning the goose-step on the Alameda parade-ground. A soldier's life appears not to have charmed him any more than a sailor's, since he readily permitted himself to be bought off and to return to New England in the ship in which he had left it. Seized with a romantic passion for discovering the "rich and noble family" from which he was descended—an amusement still much in favour with his countrymen—Ledyard soon afterwards took passage from New York to London, where, not being received with any marked fervour by his supposed kinsfolk, he enlisted in the marines, in order to qualify himself for a post in Captain Cook's third and last voyage. He succeeded in obtaining the office of ship's corporal, and in that capacity became known to Sir Joseph Banks. In the course of the voyage Ledyard took part in various minor explorations, and acquitted himself so well that on the return of the vessels he received his discharge, and tried to get up a fur-trading expedition to Nootka Sound. Failing in this venture—which in the course of the next thirty years yielded such enormous profits to various speculators—he endeavoured to enlist Sir Joseph Banks in a scheme for a journey across America from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The revolutionary war, which had then broken out, left England in no mood for American exploration, and so Ledyard lost the chance of anticipating Mackenzie, and Lewis, and Clark in traversing the continent from ocean to ocean. Sir Joseph, either out of charity or to get quit of the ship's corporal,



gave him ten guineas, and with this slender capital Ledyard set out for St. Petersburg, with the intention of first crossing Siberia and then, sailing from Kamschatka to Nootka Sound, reach the Atlantic by a route he had laid out for himself. He managed to get as

thence to Okzakoff. Modest assurance was one of the few equipments in which Ledyard was never deficient; or, perhaps it would be more kindly to say, the young New Englander was too much of an enthusiast ever to concern himself about the proprieties of



FREETOWN, SIERRA LEONE.

(From a Photograph by Rev. J. T. F. Hallihey.)

far as Stockholm, but, finding that the Gulf of

Bothnia, which he attempted to cross on foot, was not frozen all the way over, he

returned to the Swedish capital, determined to walk round the Gulf. This feat he actually accomplished in the depth of winter, reaching St. Petersburg without, we may well believe, considering the capital with which he started, the smallest amount of money in his pocket. Here, however, he made friends, and was permitted to accompany a detachment of stores to Yakutsk, and

civilised life. Making the acquaintance of the Portuguese Ambassador, he was invited to dinner, and went without shoes or stockings, for the all-sufficient reason that by this time he had none. Here he drew a bill for ten guineas on Sir Joseph Banks, and, investing the money in some necessities, set off on his journey of 6,000 miles, and accomplished it, when, without any explanation, he was seized in the name of the Empress Catherine, placed in a sledge between two soldiers, and conveyed, in the depth of winter, across two continents. Then, having arrived at the Polish frontier, the traveller was discharged with the curt intimation that if he returned to Russia again he would certainly be hanged, but that, if he had a mind to go back to England, his guards wished him a pleasant journey.

It is probable that Ledyard's name having been by this time whispered in connection with his abortive fur-company, jealousy of his supposed real object had led to this extremely autocratic proceeding. At all events, he had no recourse but to beg his way to Königsberg, where, arriving covered with rags and dirt, worn by hunger and hardship, and weakened by disease, without friends, credit, clothes, food, or the wherewithal to procure any, he was compelled to draw once more on Banks—this time for five guineas—and return to London. How could the man travel so far with so little? The answer he gave when this question was put to him by Mr. Beaufoy, Secretary of the African Association, may be useful to others. His sufferings were excessive, and, but for the compassionate temper of women, he must have perished during his long journey over a region where, even with the most ample of appliances for comfort, the hardships are exceptionally great. "I have observed among all nations," Ledyard wrote in his note-book, "that the women ornament themselves more than the men; that wherever found they are the same kind, civil, obliging, humane, tender beings; that they are ever inclined to be gay and cheerful, timorous and modest. They do not hesitate, like a man, to perform a hospitable or generous action; not haughty, nor arrogant, nor supercilious, but full of courtesy and fond of society; industrious, economical, ingenious; more liable in general to err than man, but in general, also, more virtuous and performing more good actions than he. I never addressed myself in the language of decency and friendship to a woman, whether civilised or savage, without receiving a decent and friendly answer; with men it has been often otherwise. In wandering over the barren plains of inhospitable Denmark, through honest Sweden, frozen Lapland, rude and churlish Finland, unprincipled Russia, and the widespread regions of the wandering Tartar, if hungry, dry, cold, wet, or sick, woman has ever been friendly to

me, and uniformly so; and to add to this virtue, so worthy of the appellation of benevolent, these actions have been performed in so free and kind a manner that if I was dry I drank the sweet draught, and if hungry ate the coarse morsel, with a double relish."

The courage and physique of this man marked him out as a fitting agent of the new Association. His "open countenance" and



SIR JOSEPH BANKS. (From a Print.)

"unquiet eye" seem to have impressed Mr. Beaufoy, though it may be questioned whether the two were compatible, and assuredly the explorer who professed himself in the evening ready "to start to-morrow morning" must have had a better notion of the dramatic effect of his words than of the careful preparation which a successful expedition demands. It is doubtful how far he might have redeemed his promises to do his best or perish in the attempt; for at Cairo, waiting for the

departure of the Sennaar caravan, he contracted a bilious fever which, treated with violent medicines, proved fatal. He confessed to have endured the extremities of human suffering, to have had food given to him in charity as a madman, and at times to have sheltered himself under that disguise to avoid a heavier calamity. "My distresses," he told Mr. Beaufoy, "have been greater than I have ever owned or will own to any man." Yet it is open to argument whether the eulogies on his fitness for the task assigned him were quite merited. Something more than mere energy without training is essential to the exploration of a new country, and the assurance that carries a man like Ledyard through Europe would not unlikely fail him in a region so widely different as Africa.

The next emissary of the Association was Mr. Lucas. Originally engaged in mercantile affairs in Cadiz, he had been captured by a Sallee rover, and passed three years in slavery in Morocco. On receiving his freedom he was appointed Vice-Consul in that country, where he resided sixteen years, and acquired a familiar acquaintance with the Moors and the Arabic language. This secured for him the post of Oriental Interpreter to the British Court, and, on his desiring to undertake any journey in the service of the Association, he was directed to try to reach Fezzan, on the route to Timbuctoo, by the way of Tripoli, returning *vid* the Gambia, or the West Coast generally, as he found most convenient. A revolt of the tribes under the Turkish Government, in the province of Tripoli, delayed his journey. Meanwhile two Shereefs, or descendants of Mohammed, arriving at the coast with slaves, senna, and other articles for sale, offered to take Mr. Lucas back with them to Fezzan, the sanctity of their persons rendering them, and those under their protection, independent of the disturbed condition of the country. The Bashaw of Tripoli, then a functionary almost independent of the Sultan of Turkey, though favourable to Mr. Lucas, would fain have dissuaded him from undertaking a

journey in which he might be held as a hostage by the rebel Arabs. But on the Shereefs pointing out that they had already sent a message to their king intimating the early arrival of a Christian, to preserve these holy men from suffering the indignity of having dust thrown over their heads (the only punishment which it is permitted to befall those of the Prophet's kin) should the Fezzan sovereign be angry at the disappointment, the party were permitted to leave on the 1st of February, 1789. They took that route by Mesurata which in after-days was so often followed, over a country dry and sandy, except where here and there among the stony tracts a little verdure grew, and in these places the ruins of a Roman temple or monument or tomb remained as a memorial of a time when the region, now so bare, barren, and forlorn, was one of the colonies of the World's masters.

On the fifth day they arrived at Mesurata, where the traveller was politely received by the Turkish governor, who, having resided in Italy, was better acquainted with the customs of Europeans than the Stamboul officials of that day were. But all attempts to hire camels from the rebel tribes proving useless, the party were compelled to halt until better times, and Mr. Lucas to return whence he came, after collecting from traders and others much useful, and, it afterwards proved, fairly accurate, information regarding the regions between the coast and the Niger, from which Major Rennell, aided by all the existing materials, compiled a map of Africa.

The North having for the time being proved a closed route, the Association next turned their attention to the West Coast.

At Sierra Leone a settlement had been formed for freed negroes.

Watt and  
Winter-  
bottom.

Accordingly from this basis Messrs. Watt and Winterbottom, in 1794, explored Futa Jallon, by sailing up the Rio Nunez to Kakundi, and thence for sixteen days through a country in many places barren, but in others extremely fruitful, and abounding in vast herds of cattle. This region seemed even then to have suffered



little at the hands of the white man, for at every village the travellers were hospitably entertained and conducted, with their baggage, in safety another stage on their journey. Labé they reckoned to contain 5,000 people. Here they heard much about Timbuctoo from the traders who went there regularly; but the road was represented as extremely dangerous. The ruler of Labé was anxious to send one of his sons to be educated in England, and at Timbo, the capital of Futa Jallon, a town of 7,000 inhabitants, the king was equally polite. Maize and rice were everywhere cultivated by the women, and, contrary to the rule elsewhere, carried to market by the men, who were sometimes absent on their trading journeys for eight weeks at a stretch. Cattle, horses, mules, asses, sheep, and goats pastured on the hills. Iron was mined and smelted by the women, who also weaved cloth, while their husbands worked in iron, silver, wood, and leather. Schools were plentiful; most of the people could read; books of law and theology were not uncommon, and, though the mosques were numerous, the natives were not then, any more than they are now, bigoted Mohammedans. Most of the towns were well fortified, considering the force likely to be brought against them. The reason was that the Fulahs were a warlike people, capable of placing 16,000 men in the field, and prone to hostilities against their neighbours, since "they could not obtain European goods without slaves, nor slaves without making war." However, only the young and strong were taken; the old and feeble, to avoid trouble, had their throats cut. But they excused themselves for this barbarity by declaring that the people whom they thus raided, robbed, and murdered "never pray to God," and that, as the European factories would sell guns, powder, and cloth for no other articles except black men and women, the people whom the travellers tried to persuade into more peaceful pursuits had no alternative. Moreover, did not "the Book" (the Koran) enjoin on the Faithful to make war against the Infidel? If, however, some Europeans

would settle in the country and show them how to grow produce saleable on the coast, they would gladly give up the slave trade, which, moreover, owing to European wars, was no longer profitable, few captives being bought. Finally, escorted by a strong body of Fulahs, they reached Sierra Leone (p. 172) by another route, having made a journey which, if followed up, might even then have diverted in the direction of the British colony much of the trade which, with unavailing regret, and in spite of all efforts to turn its course, now flows, and has for a long time past flowed, into the French settlements.

Undeterred, indeed rather stimulated, by the fate of his predecessor, the Association, which hitherto had always had more applicants for employment Houghton. than it could utilise, next engaged Major Houghton to try to reach the Niger and Timbuctoo by way of the Gambia. Leaving England in 1790, news was received from him up to July, 1791, when all tidings ceased. Houghton had been Consul in Morocco, and served at Goree, then seized from the French, so that he was a more capable traveller than most whom the Association had despatched. Wisely shunning the river route up the Gambia, he started overland attended by only a few followers, and reached Medina, the capital of Wuli, where he was received with great hospitality by the king (p. 184). Unhappily, however, a fire deprived him of a large share of the goods that constitute the ready-money of an African traveller, so that at the very outset he was hampered, in passing west to the Falemé through Bambuk, where also he was received with kindness. How he fared afterwards was detailed in a note sent to Dr. Laidley, at Pisania factory: "Major Houghton's compliments: is in good health, on his way to Timbuctoo, robbed of all his goods by Fenda Bucar's son." However, either he obtained more goods or was still in possession of some, for soon after he fell into the power of the Sahara Moors, was robbed of everything, and left to die naked and alone in the desert.

Frederick Hornemann was another agent of the Association. He was a learned German, a pupil of Blumenbach, Heeren, and **Hornemann** Heyne. Arriving in Egypt just before the French had landed, he was imprisoned by the Mamelukes. But, to the credit of Bonaparte, he freed him, offered him money, gave him passports, and forwarded his letters to the Association under his own seal. The object of this traveller was to reach the Niger by way of Egypt. This he did not actually accomplish, though he reached Fezzan by a route used before the days of Herodotus, and described by the Father of History. From this point he set out on a journey to Bornu, but whether he perished in the desert, or was murdered, no man knows, for in 1800 he disappeared from view and was never heard of again.

Hitherto the ill-success that had attended the efforts of the Association might have wearied men less earnest, and, so far as the majority of them were concerned, less self-

sacrificing. But if it did not deter Sir Joseph Banks and his colleagues, it unquestionably had a depressing effect upon the zeal of would-be travellers. Death by thirst, by the spear, by fever, by hunger, was not an inspiring outlook. All the unknown terrors of the desert were added to what was already too familiar, so that, instead of finding a dozen volunteers coming forward to take the place of the fallen explorer, the Association, for the first time in the seven years of its career, had to offer substantial inducements to entice a fresh adventurer to apply. They had not, however, long to wait, for in the spring of 1795 a young Scottish surgeon offered his services, which, to the lasting honour of the committee, were promptly accepted. The new traveller was destined to win a great name in the history of African exploration, and to redeem with his life the failures of his predecessors. His work, however, requires a long chapter to itself. For his name was Mungo Park.



GUM ACACIA (*Acacia senegalensis*).

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO: MUNGO PARK.

**Mungo Park—His Early Life—Leaves for the Gambia—Resides at Pisania—His Sympathy for the Slave Trade—The Natives of the Gambia since Moore's Day—Park sets out on his Journey—Its Perils—The Nature of the Country between the Gambia and the Senegal—Blackmailing Kings—Dishonest Guides—Charms—The Fulah Country—The Moral Influence of Mohammedanism—In the Senegal Valley—French Taste Apparent—Curious Ladies—An African King may be a Costly Acquaintance—A Perilous Night Journey—The King of Kajaaga and his Dues—A Friend in Need who Proves not to be a Friend Indeed—Park's Companions Begin to Lose Heart—Serawulis—Park Crosses the Senegal—Out of the Frying-pan into the Fire—Demba Sego and his Family Proceed to Business—How to Convert a Nation Wholesale—The Gratitude of the Jumbo Blacksmith—A Debt-collecting Mission—More of the Kasson Royal Family—Park Sets Out for Kaarta—War and Rumours of War—Evil Days Set In.**

THE physician is perhaps the best of all travellers. His education has naturally included most of the sciences necessary for the explorer who wishes to study what he sees among the people, the animals, and the plants of the regions traversed, while the healing art has ever been a passport to the favour of the rudest races. Hence most wanderers, even when not "qualified practitioners," have found it to their advantage to play the doctor, with results, if one may judge from the legends bequeathed to their successors, not always successful, though undeniably better than those of the native medicine-man, whose ill-will they generally manage to secure. Mungo Park was, however, one of the earliest of the explorer-surgeons of whom so many have appeared within the past century. A farmer's son, born on the 10th of September, 1771, at Fowlshiels, on the banks of the Yarrow, in Selkirkshire, the seventh child of a family of thirteen, in circumstances little raised above those of the northern crofter, he inherited no fortune, and received none, except the best education that the Selkirk Grammar School could afford. Except that he was dreamy and reserved, a great reader, and a student of the Border minstrelsy, which Scott was then collecting, there is no tradition of the future explorer being in any way distinguished above the run of the farmers' and tradesmen's boys who were his class-fellows. But, knowing that his father had to pinch and toil in order to afford him "the advantages" that he had not himself obtained, the lad studied hard,

though he disappointed his family in failing to be fired with the ambition of the rural Scot—"to wag his head in a pulpit." He preferred to be a doctor and, according to the country custom, was duly articled to Dr. Thomas Anderson, a medical practitioner in Selkirk, a town in which still reside some of his descendants engaged in the same profession. He was then fifteen years of age. In the next three years he acquired some routine knowledge of physic, and at the same time continued to pursue his classical and mathematical studies with a view to entering the University of Edinburgh, then in the heyday of its fame as a School of Medicine.\*

In 1789 he entered the University, and in the course of three sessions obtained a surgeon's diploma, a "qualification" which in those days entailed less trouble and expense than a degree, circumstances that may perhaps account for the absence of Park's name from the roll of Edinburgh Doctors of Medicine. In Edinburgh he had studied

**How a  
Selkirk  
surgeon  
became an  
African  
explorer.**

\* Many of the facts embodied in this sketch were obtained some years ago from a near relation of Park. But since then nearly everything of importance has been incorporated by Mr. Joseph Thomson, in his admirable work on "Mungo Park and the Niger" (1890), which may be regarded as the last word on the subject. The Reports of the African Association, H. B.'s "Life of Mungo Park" (1835), Wishaw's biography prefixed to the traveller's "Journal of a Mission into the Interior of Africa in 1805" (1815), and Park's own "Travels into the Interior Districts of Africa performed in the years 1795, 1796, and 1797," exhaust the original literature of the following chapters.

botany under Professor Rutherford, uncle of Sir Walter Scott, who was born in the same year as Park, and in after-life was one of his warmest friends. His interest in this science was heightened by his intimacy with James Dickson, a scientific gardener who had married his sister, and was already a botanist of wide repute. As the discover of *Dicksonia* and other species he had become favourably known to Sir Joseph Banks. This accident served to obtain for the young surgeon an introduction to the then Mæcenas of Science in England, by whose influence he was elected an Associate of the Linnean Society, then in the fifth year of its existence, and in 1793 received the post of assistant-surgeon on board the *Worcester* East Indiaman, on the eve of sailing on a voyage to Bencoolen, in Sumatra. A paper describing some new species of fishes that he discovered in the Malay Archipelago\* recommended him still further to Sir Joseph, so that, when it appeared that there was no further preferment for him as a sea-going surgeon, his offer to serve as one of the African Association's agents was gladly accepted.

Park was then twenty-four, tall, robust, studious, and sanguine (p. 20). Without any experience of travel, he had many of the qualifications for an explorer. His mind was naturally romantic, though this cast given it by the reading of many Border ballads was sobered by a taste for Scotch metaphysics of so pronounced a character that, instead of taking on his Sumatran voyage the last romance of Laurence Sterne or of Henry Mackenzie, the work which the young surgeon chose to "amuse him at sea" was Dugald Stewart's "Philosophy." He had, moreover, a fair knowledge of science, was imbued with deep piety, troubled with the demon of unrest and an ardent ambition to distinguish himself. He had in addition the advantages of being poor, a Scotsman, and of having nothing to do. As he wrote to his brother, "if I succeed, I shall acquire a greater

name than any ever did." This, indeed, was not difficult. For, as we have seen, everything had gone wrong with the African Association. Their agents had died on the threshold of their labours, or had done little after entering the field. Volunteers were not forthcoming, and, to make matters more discouraging for those who followed, news had just been received of the murder of Major Houghton, who alone had managed to reach anyway near the goal at which the Association aimed. There was therefore a chance for a fresh explorer who set a light value on his life, or, like Park, was not too well-informed concerning the perils of the way. And when a youth of twenty-four writes from London to Scotland that the expedition on which he was about to start would be a short one, for he was to have a trader to go "with him to Timbuctoo and back again," it is clear that he had the blessed advantage of ignorance to befriend him.

As Park's instructions were to start from the Gambia in search of the Niger and the city which had been the goal of so many previous half-hearted attempts, and was to be the spot at which so many more were to aim, he started on the 22nd of May, 1795, on board a trader bound for Pisania (now destroyed), on a part of the river above Macarthy's Island. Dr. Laidley, a Scotsman who had been the friend of Houghton, was still doing business there, and in him his young countryman found a warm friend and counsellor during the months he stayed there studying the Mandingo language and otherwise qualifying himself for a task so novel as that which he was sent to undertake. Determined to be independent of interpreters, who are apt to interpret as best suits their own interest, he spent several hours a day trying to master an intelligible acquaintance with the commercial tongue of this region, in picking up all the information that he could regarding the interior, and in amassing statistics on the subject of the Gambia trade, which, it may be added, was then, as formerly, almost

The first  
journey of  
Mungo Park

\* *Transactions of the Linnean Society*, vol. iii., p. 33 (November 4th, 1794).

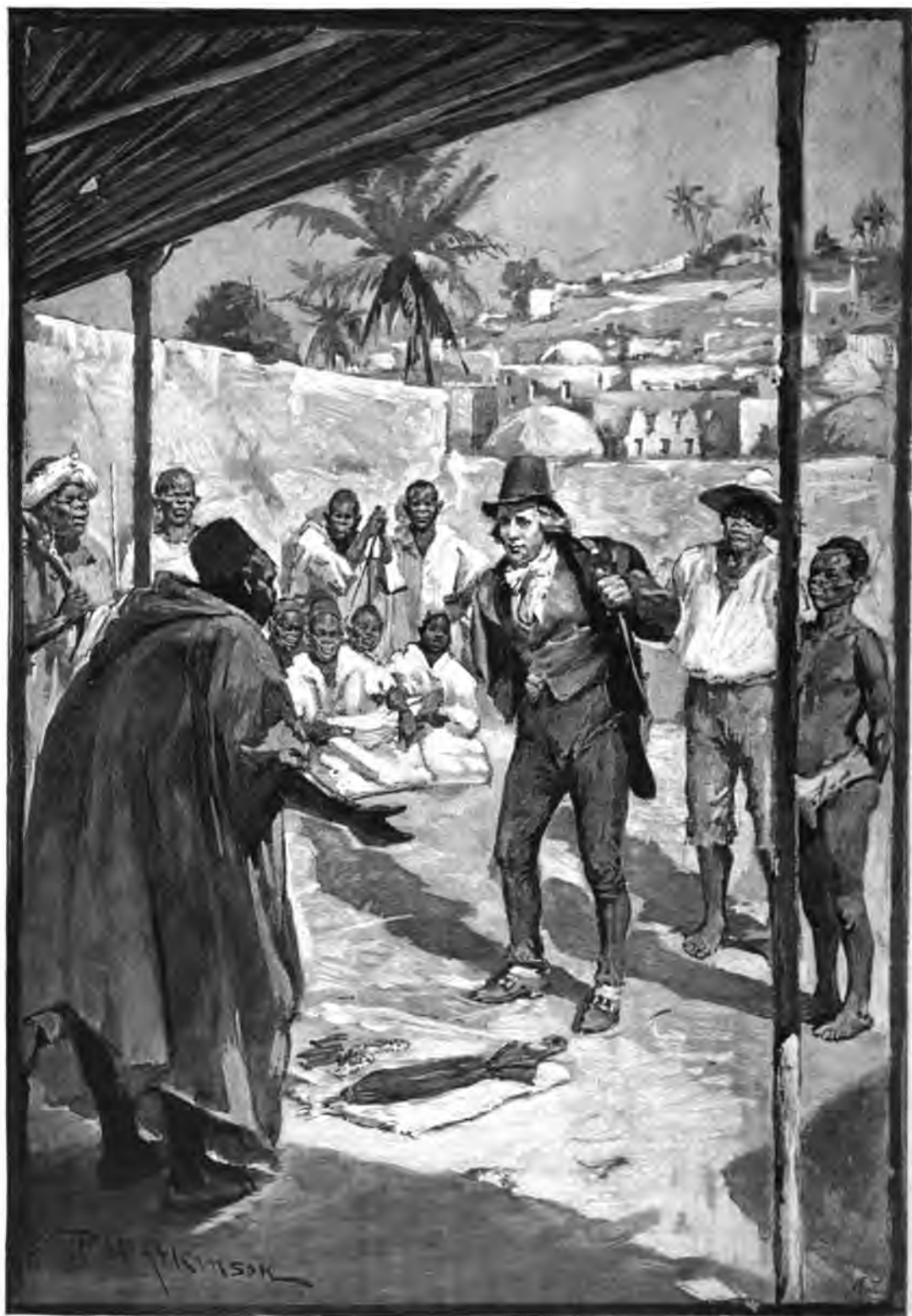
solely in slaves. Gold-dust and gum, Kola nuts and dye-woods, were mere incidents of the commerce of the river and of the interior from which it formed a highway to the coast.

Yet, though the explorer, fresh from the braes of Yarrow, saw every day men and women in manacles, it is in vain we search his journals for any expression condemnatory of the traffic. Even when he accompanies a caravan, or "coffe," of slaves he seems unconscious of the iniquity of the scenes which, as a traveller, he describes—of the long marches under the burning sun, of the chains, the loads, and the crack of the whip applied to the laggard, or the knife mercifully drawn across the throats of the dying or exhausted. Park was a man of genuine kind-heartedness, unaffected piety, and great family affection. But he had grown up to regard slavery as one of the institutions of his native country, and so essential to the prosperity of her colonies that he expressly declares that "a discontinuance of that commerce" would by no means be so beneficial as "many wise and worthy persons fondly expect." Why should he? His host, Dr. Laidley, was in the thick of it, and a better man than the hospitable Scot did not exist on the Tweed or the Gambia. And, yet, in Pisania factory barracoons (p. 60), he saw almost daily "the poor wretches, while waiting shipment, kept constantly fettered two and two together, and employed in the labours of the field, and, I am sorry to add, very scantily fed, as well as horribly treated." And finally, as Park must have known, at least one leading member of the African Association, namely, Mr. Bryan Edwards, with whom he lived on terms of intimacy, was a large slave-owner, directly concerned in this infamous traffic. It has, indeed, been more than once hinted that the interest of some members in African exploration was not entirely disinterested—that they looked to new fields to tap for negroes to export, and that Park's journals had been carefully edited by Edwards in order to weed them of any passages reflecting on the

merchandise in which he dealt. But of this there is no proof; otherwise he would unquestionably have deleted many harrowing pictures of the brutalities of the barracoons and the caravans. Yet, unconsciously, Park was an agent of the slave-traders, as was, more or less, every man who in those days touched the African shore. In the meantime he had to learn something of the continent less agreeable than its languages and natural history, for the rainy season arrived, and one night imprudently exposing himself to the heavy dews, he had his first "seasoning fever."

At Pisania, a small village in the King of Yani's territory, there were no white people except Dr. Laidley and two brothers of the name of Ainsley, <sup>Life at Pisania.</sup> with their dependents and black servants. Being higher up the river than most of the factories, the climate was better. The dense mangrove swamps characteristic of the seaward reaches of the West African floods, the fetid mud exhaling a sickening mist under the hot sun, was absent, and instead of an isolated clump of cocoa-nuts, or a silk-cotton tree here and there, the country, when not open, was a luxuriant forest. But when the tropical rains began to fall, Pisania, a hundred years ago, was no more lively a spot than any other Gambia trading-post. "Suffocating heats oppress by day, and the night is spent by the terrified traveller in listening to the croaking of frogs, of which the numbers are beyond imagination, the shrill cry of the jackal, and the deep howling of the hyena—a dismal concert interrupted only by the roar of such tremendous thunder as no person can form a conception of but those who have heard it."

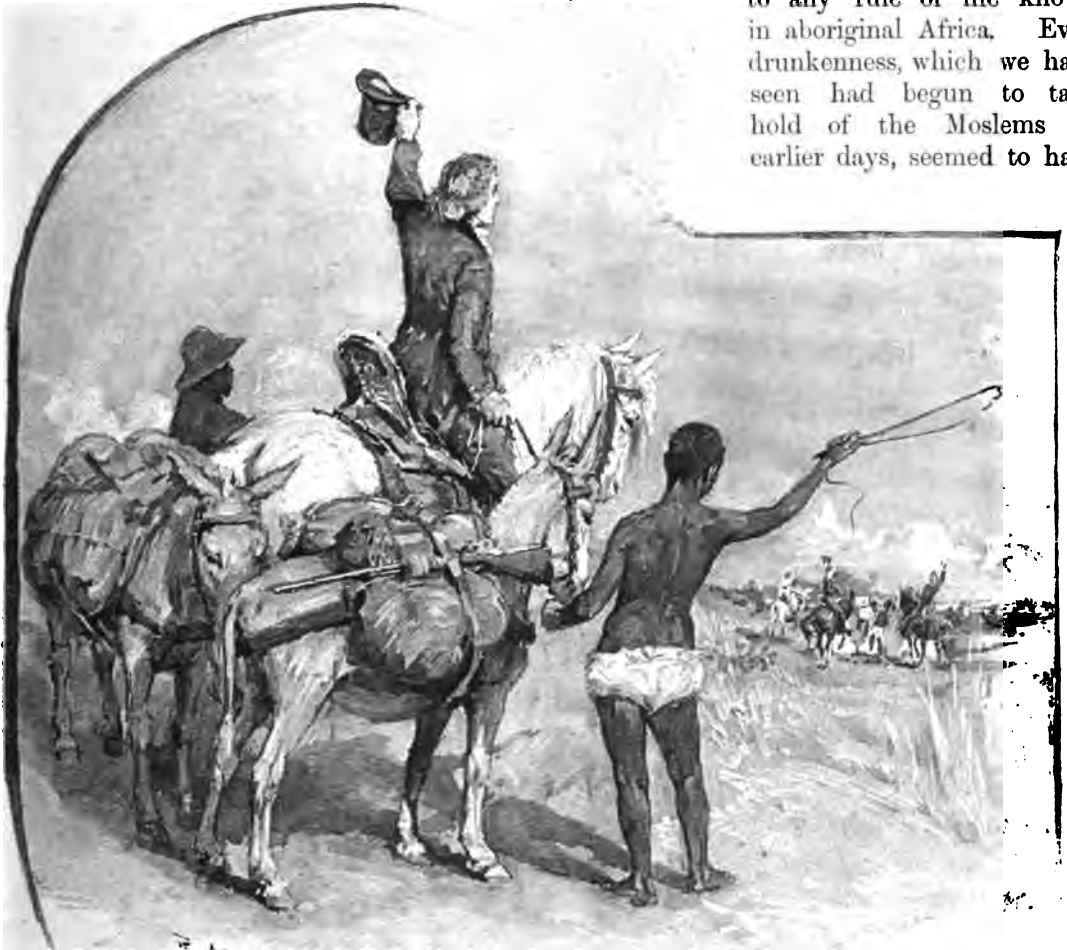
The natives since last we have taken note of their ways had been rapidly sinking in one direction and rising in another. They were, Park tells us, at the date of his visit divided into two great classes, the "Sonakies," or spirit-drinkers, and the "Bushreens," or Mohammedans. The first were the pagans, with whom the chief article of trade was rum or its



MUNGO PARK AND THE AFRICAN KING (p. 186)

equivalent, and after that the gunpowder necessary for the slave-raids. The Moslems, on the other hand, were rapidly extending their influence from the Upper Niger region,

hospitable to the stranger—possessed of a knowledge of reading and writing, living under established laws, and respecting a code of morals which, if far from being perfect, is infinitely superior to any rule of life known in aboriginal Africa. Even drunkenness, which we have seen had begun to take hold of the Moslems in earlier days, seemed to have



MUNGO PARK SETS OUT FROM PISANIA (p. 182).

which was their headquarters, to the Lower Senegal and Gambia, where their outer border was ever extending, greatly to the benefit of the country. Wherever the Mohammedan appears, the squalid pagan becomes a self-respecting man, decently clothed, dignified in his behaviour—often, though not always,

been abandoned by all save the viler of Bushreens and the half-pagan Johars. In those days no attempt had been made to stem the proselytism of Mohammedanism by Christianity; the African missions were yet to come. The Koran was the only book heard of on the Gambia of 1794, for



the priests or chaplains of the trading-posts—when any such provision was made for the spiritual wants of the dealers in flesh and blood—considered their duty done when the stipulated number of masses had been said or the regulation number of sermons preached to the white men. But, as the law of the Koran spread, reference to written documents became necessary, and as this knowledge, hitherto strange to the negroes, was confined to a few people, a race of professional advocates, dexterous as any of their brethren in other lands at making the worse seem the better cause, had arisen on the river banks. An ass belonging to a Serawuli, a negro people of the Upper Senegal, had broken into and destroyed a great part of a corn-patch belonging to a Mandingo, and the irate farmer, catching the offender, settled matters so far by cutting the donkey's throat. Thereupon the Serawuli "called a palaver," or, in other words, brought an action, and the lawyers proceeded to argue it out. For three days the talk went on. The owner of the ass pleaded that it was a most valuable beast. This the Mandingo admitted, but, as a set-off, affirmed that it had eaten more corn than it was worth. Thereupon experts in grain and in donkeys were summoned, and the court was favoured with some very hard swearing of the kind that we are accustomed to associate with scientific evidence. Yet, in the end, no agreement could be arrived at, and the palaver broke up, to be resumed at some future day when the litigants could agree upon some common basis of value.

But by-and-by the rains stopped, and, the travelling season having now begun, it was time for the traveller to try his fortune in the interior, then so mysterious, now so familiar to a score of traders and explorers. His outfit was modest in the extreme. The modern caravan-leader who impresses a dozen porters to carry his personal effects, his European wardrobe, his china and his plate, his boxes from the London dealer in delicacies, and his patent medicine-chest will read, with scorn

Park sets forth on his great adventure.

at the simple ways of a century ago, that the pioneer of African explorers bought a horse and two donkeys—the steed, a sprightly beast, which cost £7 10s.—and loaded them with provisions for two days, and some beads, amber, and tobacco for the purchase of a fresh supply. A few changes of linen and other necessary apparel, an umbrella, a compass, a sextant, a thermometer, two fowling-pieces, two pairs of pistols—all flint-locks be it remembered—and some other small articles, formed the total personal outfit, while Johnson, a free negro who spoke English, and Demba, a lively negro boy owned by Dr. Laidley, were the explorer's companions. Four chance travellers who were going part of the way joined the party, so that when Dr. Laidley and the two Ainsleys, with a number of their domestics, accompanied him for two days on his journey, no doubt never expecting to see him again, Mungo Park, it is clear from the pride with which the honest man relates these particulars, left for the unknown, in his opinion, after a fashion rather magnificent than otherwise.

On the afternoon of the 3rd of December his Pisanía friends bade him good-bye (p. 181), and then for the first time he realised the "deserts of vast eternity" that lay ahead. To the explorer of these days, who crosses Africa without the world losing its head and tramps half the way back again to get the clean shirts he has forgotten, the journey on which the Scot had entered would be regarded as of little moment. But in 1795 Africa was a blanker land than now. All was unknown, and *omne ignotum pro magnifico*—or at least *terribili*—was the rule. No man knew what a day's journey was to bring forth; on rising up in the morning he could buoy himself up with the thought that before evening he might see the golden-roofed houses or sleep in the famous city of Timbuctoo. Immediately ahead of Park lay what seemed a boundless forest covering a country the inhabitants of which were strangers to civilised life, and to most of whom a white man was still an object of curiosity and of plunder. He had for the first time in

his life parted entirely from European society, and might, from the hints he received on the way, share before long the fate that befell his predecessor. The country into which he was penetrating was ruled by a host of independent chiefs, who, like the barons of the Middle Ages, earned a precarious livelihood by plunder, either openly when they dared, or by exacting, on the ground of customs duties, blackmail from the caravans of native traders on their way to the coast with ivory, nuts, slaves, gum, or gold-dust, or returning with salt, cotton, gunpowder, rum, and muskets. Everything had to be paid for, food and shelter, wood if possible, and water always, the right of way, and the privilege of crossing a stream by swinging-bridge or rude ferry. A regular tariff was in force where the traffic was great. But more frequently the kinglet exacted a present, large or small, in proportion to the real or supposed wealth of the traveller. If he had nothing to give, or declined to be bled, his goods were seized, or his slaves compelled to change hands, and the well was locked, until the wayfarer, driven by thirst, made up his mind to yield to the extortion of the predatory despot. At the best of times, the endless stoppages to pay this "hongo," as it is called farther south, remind the elderly tourist of Germany before the Zollverein, or of Europe as it is depicted in the diaries of merchants and pilgrims when the douanier exacted his dues with an even more irritating power. As a white man, Park was naturally supposed to be rich beyond the dreams of avarice: the idea of anyone travelling so far from home for any other purpose than to win wealth was an idea too ridiculous for the African mind to grasp. If he had not quite realised this now familiar aspect of African travel, he was soon made aware of it; for as he was riding along, musing it may be on Border ballads, or on the qualitative nature of knowledge, he was awakened from his reverie by several men stopping his asses, and giving him to understand that he must go with them to Peckaba, to pay custom to the King of Wuli (p. 185). It was in vain that he

pleaded poverty, that he was not a merchant, and therefore ought not to be subject to dues. He might as well have talked of his impecuniosity to a Thames tide-waiter, and so he had to pay in the shape of four bars of tobacco for his majesty's private enjoyment. And as this species of plunder went on at irregular but rapid intervals, the two donkeys had before long an easy load to carry. Indeed, by the time he arrived at Kaarta, on the Upper Senegal, he was in the happy condition of having little of which he could be plundered.

Until he reached that kingdom his journey had, nevertheless, been comparatively pleasant, when the primitive appliances of African travel in 1795 are borne in mind. The coarse food, the rude surroundings, the lack of companionship, were soon scarcely drawbacks, while the road was beguiled by hourly observations of the then little-known habits of the natives. Now it was a Mohammedan village, orderly and outwardly decent, through which he passed, then a pagan one, squalid and dirty, with Mumbo Jumbo keeping order after the fashion that amused the earlier visitors to the Gambia country, while the pleasantly rolling country, diversified by woods and cultivated fields, and green with the herbage that had sprung up after the rains, was pleasant for the eye to survey. The crops had been reared, food was cheap, and, as Dr. Laidley had friends and customers all through the country, the traveller's credit was good, and the reception he received more friendly than was his after-lot. In the kingdom of Wuli he was hospitably entertained at Medina,\* the capital, though the aged king strenuously urged him not to accept what he had as yet seen of the people as types of those with

Between the  
Gambia and  
the Senegal.

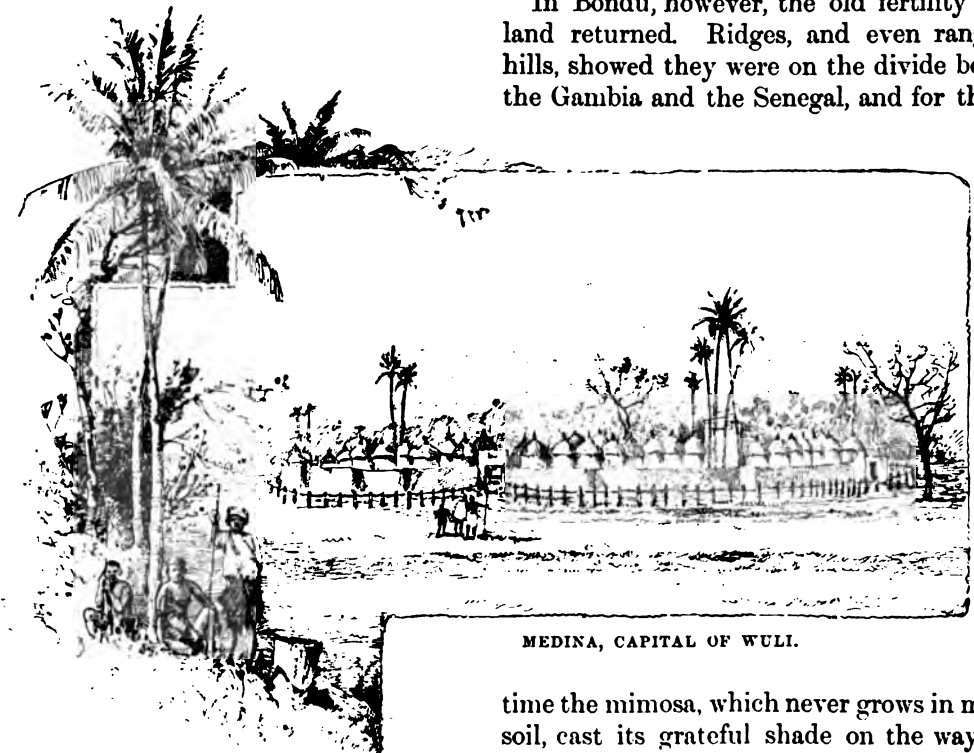
\* "Medina" is the Arabic word for "a city." The term is not uncommonly used among the negroes. Thus there is another Medina (Medine) on the Senegal, the people having evidently borrowed the name from the Moors on the frontier of this country. Sometimes, as in Morocco, the "Medina" is the residential quarter, as distinguished from the "Mellah," or Jewish district, and the "Kasbah," or section of the place occupied by the Governor and garrison.

whom he would soon come into contact. He was then in the region between the Gambia and the Senegal, for the latter of which rivers he was making in a north-easterly direction. Here most of the people, and all of the chiefs, were acquainted with white men and respected them. But to the east most of them had no such knowledge. In after-days he had good reason to remember this advice.

Between Wuli and Bondu he marched for two days across a waterless desert, and here the guides sent by the old king who counselled him to stay at home gave place to three hunters of the elephant, still numerous in this region. At this point the curiosity with which the traveller was examined indicated that he was passing into a country that the traders had not traversed to any extent, though, as one of the elephant-hunters took an early opportunity of absconding with the money he had received in advance, it would not seem that the native

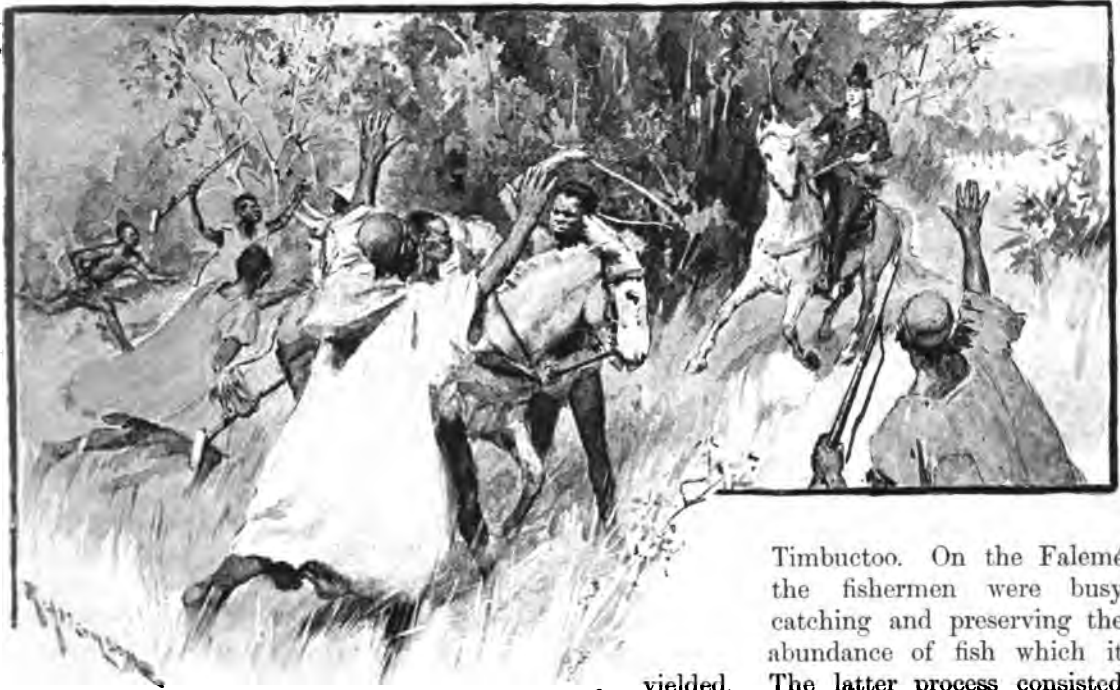
minds had been improved by lack of those evil communications which we have seen had long ago corrupted the manners of the people nearer the coast. The other two, however, kept their courage up after preparing a "saphie," grisgris, or charm, to avert misfortune. This consisted of little more than muttering a few sentences over a stone, which was afterwards spat upon and thrown three times in the direction the party intended to travel. By-and-by they reached a tree to which were fastened innumerable scraps of cloth, the votive offerings of the many travellers who had in this manner tried to propitiate Fortune—or by whatever name the evil spirit presiding over life and death was called,—before departing from this spot, which had been originally a watering-place. In order to keep up the courage of his little caravan, Park followed his predecessor's example. Signs of robbers now became suspiciously frequent and to guard against an attack the party had to keep watch all night.

In Bondu, however, the old fertility of the land returned. Ridges, and even ranges of hills, showed they were on the divide between the Gambia and the Senegal, and for the first



MEDINA, CAPITAL OF WULI.

time the mimosa, which never grows in marshy soil, cast its grateful shade on the wayfaring men. He had now entered the Fulah country.



PARK BLACKMAILED (p. 183).

These people\* are strict Mohammedans, tawny-complexioned, keen traders in anything, and of so warlike a character that they have carried their conquests from Lake Tchad to the Atlantic, and are a remarkable factor in the history of North-Western Africa. Shepherds, cattle-owners, slavers, and farmers, their villages exhibited a prosperity unknown to the purely pagan hamlets, and, instead of Mumbo Jumbo and fetish-trees, the visitor was pleased with the sight of neat mosques, from the little minarets of which the mueddin called five times a day the Faithful to prayer; by the turbaned schoolmaster, with his circle of urchins around him intoning the Koran or inscribing its Arabic characters in the sand; and among the objects that the marabouts exhibited to the visitor were various religious manuscripts, bought, no doubt, as they still are, from the Moorish traders who cross the Great Desert from Morocco on their way to

\* Also called, among other names, Peulhs, Fulbies, Fellatah, and Fillani.

Timbuctoo. On the Falemé the fishermen were busy catching and preserving the abundance of fish which it yielded. The latter process consisted in pounding them in a mortar while fresh, and then drying the fragments in the sun into large cakes or loaves, which, after being moistened with boiling water, are mixed with the kous-kousoo, the favourite Moorish dish of steamed farina and meat. These black fish-loaves are carried into the dry country to the eastward, forming a favourite article of commerce among the people where such food is almost unknown.

The party were now in the Valley of the Senegal, and the thin French gauzes and other tasteful articles of dress in which the women were clothed proclaimed the influence of a people who were still—in spite of the decay of the old *régime*—the arbiters of fashion in Africa as well as in Europe. But with Gallic taste the ladies had not acquired Gallic politeness. More importunate beggars, in truth, never existed. They begged for anything, for everything—for amber and for beads, for calico and for physic; and then, having torn his cloak and cut the buttons from his servant's coat, and pilfered a few sheets of writing-paper which they could not make use

In the  
Senegal  
Valley.

of, they one and all begged for "that great African specific, blood-letting." Nor were the ladies of the king, or Almami, of a bashful type, for they insisted that the white man's skin was artificial—his mother had dipped him in milk—while his nose had been pinched from its natural flatness into its unsightly elevation. His majesty was also every whit an African monarch. He did not bear the best of reputations, having, it was reported, pillaged Major Houghton most unmercifully while resident in Fatticonda, the town in which Park had now arrived. This incident he did not, however, refer to, and expressed surprise that the new-comer cared to purchase neither gold nor slaves, a circumstance that seemed to trouble the king, as a trick to avoid payment of the customary tribute. In this country when a stranger arrives it is usual for him to stand at the "Bentang"—a sort of covered stage that serves the purpose of a town-hall or "palaver" house—or other public place until someone invites him to become his guest. On this occasion Park lived in the house of a slatee, or slave-merchant; but the Almami, as the easiest way of bleeding the traveller, ordered him to come to the palace in the evening for a supply of provisions. Knowing what to expect, Park put on his best blue coat—scarlet and the like had gone out with the French Revolution—and carried with him his umbrella and a few other articles as a present for his majesty. The gift was welcome enough, and received with a due eulogy on the wealth and benevolence of the white men. But, added the sovereign, all that he had yet seen was poor in comparison with the brass-buttoned coat, which, were it his, should be worn on all public occasions, with a full acknowledgment of the donor's generosity. The only reply to such an ex-

An African king a costly acquaintance.

tremely broad hint was to strip off the coveted garment and lay it at the Almami's feet (p. 180). The cautious Scot had in reality put it on to prevent anyone from stealing it, so that he left a little chagrined at the result of his manœuvre. An exemption from customs dues

and the gift of a little gold, a jar of honey, and some fish-loaves were, however, the repayment of his involuntary generosity.

Lighter of heart and of load, the caravan left Fatticonda, and as the country beyond was a perilous one, even for travellers so poor as they, a bright moonlight was chosen for traversing it. Not a word was spoken. The pitter-patter of the donkeys, the shrieks and hoots of the night-birds, and the howls of wild beasts were about the only sounds that disturbed that lonely march. Everyone was on the alert, lest they should inadvertently stumble on the camp-fire of a robber band. Even the croaking of a frog, or the din of the myriad insects, were at times startling; but except when the rustle of a prowling hyena among the bushes raised the alarm of a lurking bandit, daylight came, and the country of Kajaaga, without the explorers meeting with any mishap. At Joag, the chief town, Park took up his residence in the house of the Duté, or judge, and was invited to attend the public dance in the evening.

He was now two hundred and forty-seven miles east of Pisania, and everything betokened a land in which there was little security for life or property. Every house was surrounded by a private wall, like the "insulæ" of the ancients, and the place itself, which at that time contained 2,000 inhabitants, was circled by a lofty barricade of baked clay, pierced with loopholes for musketry. If, however, the traveller imagined that he had escaped the rapacity of royal personages, he was soon undeceived by the arrival of an irate party of horsemen with a message from the King of Kajaaga—a Serawuli magnate—informing him that, having entered the country without paying duties, his entire property, people, horses, donkeys, and what little remained of the original loads, were forfeited to him. Park was now in a dilemma. However, accepting the advice of his landlord, he sent one-half of his goods to the greedy king, he and his people being forced to fast for the remainder of the stay, lest by the exhibition of what

little of his stuff was still to the fore he might be robbed of this also. For though the custom of the country gives the invited guest house-room, it does not enjoin the necessity of feeding him. While in this woeful plight, eating a handful of nuts presented to him by a passing slave, and chewing straws for lack of anything more substantial, the nephew of the Mandingo King of Kasson, on the north bank of the Senegal, arrived from an unsuccessful mission to the potentate at whose hands Park and his people were suffering. Hearing of their condition, this young prince—Demba Sego was his name—offered to be their guide and protector as far as his route home and theirs lay together. Park's companions had now had enough of it. Johnson, the English-speaking negro, was especially loth to proceed, dreading lest, in spite of all the charms he had purchased impartially from Moslem and from pagan, with so scanty a store of currency on the donkey's back, nothing but disaster awaited them. A more impartial person than the Jamaica slave might have arrived at the same opinion. Park, however, laughed away the black man's cowardice, and promptly accepted the offer of the Kasson king's nephew. Fearful of proceeding, but still more terrified to turn back, poor Johnson, who had passed the best part of his life among white men, compromised matters by tying a white chicken to a tree in the first wood through which they passed, as a sacrifice to the forest spirits—dreadful dryads—like all the black men's demons, white, with long hair, and generally as unlike themselves as possible. For some days the route had left the Fulah country, and passed through a pleasant region dotted with pasture-lands and great fields of millet.\* The inhabitants are Serawulis, jet-black men not to be distinguished from the Joloffs, and most of them pagans, though their judges and headmen are usually Mohammedans. All are

traders, rivalling the Mandingoes in the long journeys they undertake. When one of these far-travelled merchants returns, all the village gathers round him to hear the tale of his adventures, though mainly to share in his liberality. But if he has been unsuccessful, his levee is a short one, for there is nothing to be made out of a man who, in their expressive phraseology, "brings back nothing except the hair upon his head." All of them are very superstitious, believing not only in their own fetishes, but in the Moham-medan grisgris, saphies, or charms. Among their beliefs is the ill-luck of permitting a woman to eat an egg, and it is possible that the six ostrich-eggs placed on the six minarets of a little clay mosque, among date-trees not far from the Senegal, was in some way connected with this curious belief. At Kayi, a large village, they crossed Park crosses the Senegal, not far from the the Senegal, abandoned French trading-post of St. Joseph, and entered the kingdom of Kasson, or Kassani, with the name of which the reader of Brûe's narrative will be familiar.

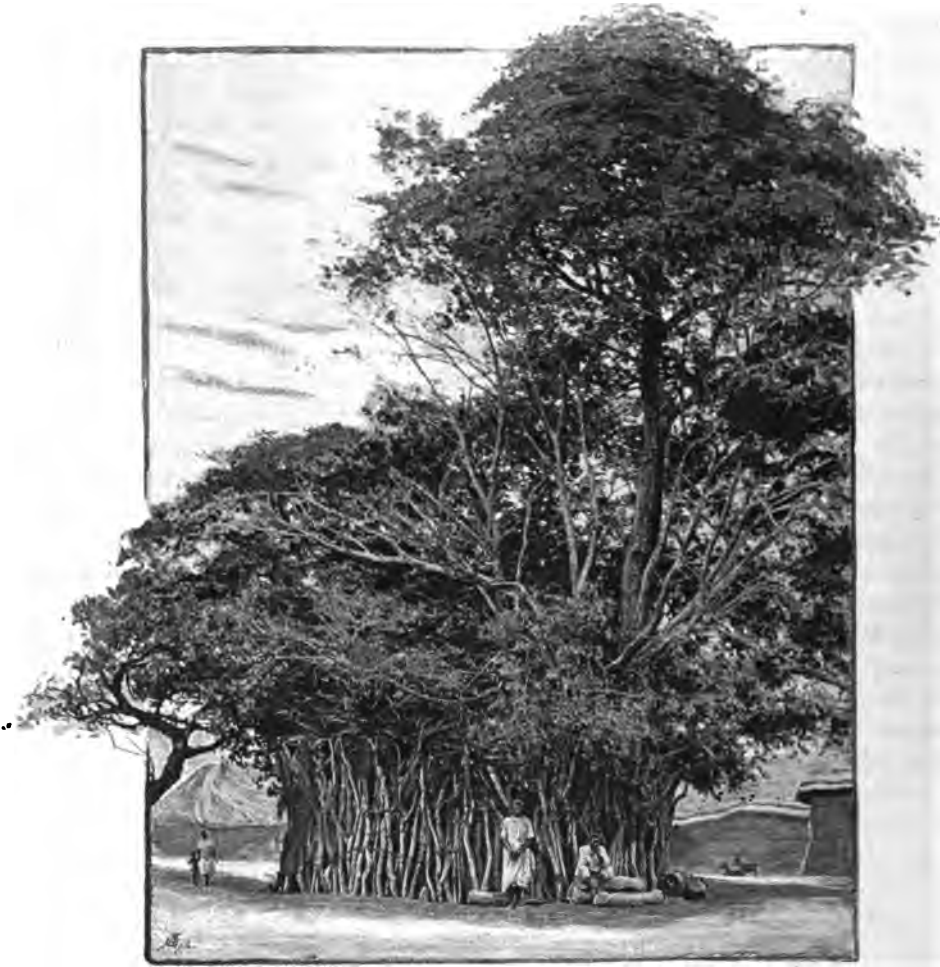
Then the disinterestedness of Demba Sego appeared in its true light, for no sooner had he landed the traveller in his uncle's dominions than he suggested to him the propriety—which in the circumstances might be translated the necessity—of rewarding his services by a handsome present. However, though beginning to think that he had got out of the devil's grasp in Kajaaga only to get into the deep sea at Kasson, the impoverished explorer, whom the last king's messengers had left very bare, was compelled to comply with as good a grace as might be, glad that, as the young prince had, even before landing, managed to capsize the canoe in his eagerness to rummage a tin box that attracted his fancy, he was content to take seven bars of amber and some tobacco.

At Tisi, Park lodged with Tiggiti Sego, father of his generous young friend, who even then did not lose sight of the fact that the white man was not yet stripped quite bare; for a slave having run away, the traveller's

\* *Sorghum vulgare*, the "dougoup" of the Joloffs, the "gaouri" of the Fulahs. Another variety, which Park calls "manio," was thought by him to be *Holcus cernuus*. "Sanio" he makes out to be *Holcus spicatus*.

horse was borrowed in order to allow Demba to join in the chase, the result of which was that the bondman was captured in half an hour, smartly flogged, and clapped into irons preparatory to being sold down the river, on

a land to the west of Bondu, to the effect that, unless the people of Kasson promptly embraced Mohammedanism, war would be the consequence, the steed and its equipments were once more requisitioned in order



FETISH-TREE, WITH PALISADE TO GUARD IT.

(From a Photograph by Rev. J. T. F. Halligey.)

much the same principle that a refractory negro in the old days "before the War" was deported from Virginia to the extreme South, as the best way of teaching him a more contrite heart. A taste for Park's horse having grown on the young man, it was put into steady requisition for a few days. For an expedition having arrived at Tisi with a curt message from the King of Futa Larra,

to send Demba on a fresh diplomatic errand. By the time the youthful Envoy had returned (the conversion of the entire inhabitants of Tisi having been accomplished in the meantime) the year 1796 had begun. Then Park's patience began to give way. In spite of the promptitude with which the threats of the King of Futa Larra\* had effected a change of

\* Foota Torra, according to Park's orthography.



faith, the new creed had not affected the old morals. Finding that the white man had still a few boxes, his host now insisted on receiving his dues, in addition to an acknowledgment of all the kindness he had derived from him, the use of the horse not being regarded as any set-off for the use of the borrower's roof-tree. Without waiting for a reply, Demba arrived for the present, demanding also to see

An  
avaricious  
royal  
family and  
a generous  
blacksmith.

father choose for himself. Before the hapless traveller had time to decide, the party began to open the baggage, Demba seizing as his special perquisite the tin box that had so much attracted his attention in crossing the Senegal. When the result of the rummage was



THE RETURNED BLACKSMITH (p. 190).

what was in store. Resistance being useless, seven bars of amber and five of tobacco were offered. After surveying the articles for some time, the engaging youth coolly laid them down with the remark that they were no kind of gift to offer a man like Tiggiti Sego, who had it in his power to take without permission whatever he fancied, adding that, if something better was not given, it was his intention to let his

over, something like half of what had escaped at Joag remained to the owner. Then began the turn of the traveller's companions. Even a blacksmith, who had accompanied the party all the way from Pisania, desirous of returning to his native country of Kasson, was exempted only on taking an oath that the articles his bundle contained were his own property. "There was, however, no remedy," Park tells us, and the meekness of the unprotected

explorer of 1796 compares favourably with the "revolverism" of some of his successors, who, like Dr. Peters, can find no fault with Mr. Thomson except that he did his work without killing anybody; "and having been under some obligation to Demba Sego for his attention towards me on the journey from Joag, I did not reproach him for his rapacity, but determined to quit Tisi the next morning. In the meanwhile, in order to raise the drooping spirits of my attendants, I purchased a fat sheep, and had it dressed for dinner."

Continuing his march over some small tributaries of the Senegal, he arrived at Jumbo, where the blacksmith, after four years' absence from home, was received with quite an ovation. To give dignity to the occasion, the honest fellow, who had tramped all the way from Pisania, was mounted on a horse, and, preceded by a minstrel, entered his native village amid salvoes of musketry, to which his quondam fellow-travellers good-naturedly contributed. His fellow-townsmen jumped with joy at seeing him, and the hired bard extemporised to the full value of his fee in honour of the courage of the long-absent smith, while the meeting between him and his blind mother is described as imbued with that "touch of nature" which "makes the whole world kin." Even the white man was neglected. Nobody seemed to have noticed the sight which in any other circumstances would have been the first to attract attention. It was only when the blacksmith, in the midst of his narrative of all that had befallen him, came to the story of how kindly he had been treated by the white man in whose company he had made so long a journey, and pointed to the place where Park sat, with the exclamation, "Appile ibi siring!"—"See him sitting there"—that all eyes were turned in his direction. He appeared to them like a being dropped from the clouds. Yet, in spite of the eulogium passed upon him, very few would approach too near the strange visitor. They had heard of white men before, and nothing much to their credit. It required, indeed, the blacksmith's assurance

that he was perfectly inoffensive and would hurt nobody before any of them ventured to touch Park's clothes. Even then, on the slightest movement or sudden glance at anyone, the women and children would scamper off with all the timidity they had exhibited when Jobson and Jannequin first visited these inland regions. In a few hours, however, they became quite reconciled to him, and lavished all manner of kindness on him during the day. The blacksmith in, particular never intermitted his attentions, and, when Park set out for Koniakary, insisted on escorting him so far on his journey.

On the way he called at Sulu to visit Selim Daukari, a Gambia trader of great reputation, on whom Dr. Laidley had given Park an order for the value of five slaves. This, happily, was duly honoured to the extent of three bondmen, though not before messengers arrived from the Kasson King inquiring why he had not come at once to Koniakary. Demba Sego Jalla appeared at first a better character than his relatives whose avarice had impoverished our traveller. He seemed to understand the object of his journey, and, instead of pillaging the poverty-stricken white man of what little remained, sent, in return for the trifling gift he could make him, a fine white bullock, white being the colour which in that part of the country was intended to mark particular favour. This, however, was about all that could be done for him. The route ahead was full of difficulties. Kasson and Kajaaga were at war. Kaarta, the next country he would come to, was involved in it, and Bambarra also had threatened hostilities. While waiting the arrival of news from the disturbed districts, gossip had spread abroad rumours of the enormous sums of money which the white man had received from Selim Daukari, and in due time the king's messengers arrived to demand half of it from him, in addition to handsome presents for themselves. There was nothing for it but to submit. Happily, however, the more experienced "Slatee" was able to compromise the extortion for a smaller sum, and enabled

him to set out for Kaarta, to which the war had not yet reached, not altogether bereft of the wherewithal to pay his way.

War and  
rumours  
of war.

As yet the land looked peaceful enough. All the vast plain was dotted with villages and cultivated fields, and so thickly populated that by tap of drum the King of Kasson could in those days summon 4,000 fighting men within a few hours. The country seemed to swarm everywhere with inhabitants, the native population being increased by the multitudes flocking in from Kaarta on account of the threatened Bambarra war.

Delays for guides were frequent, so that it was not until the tenth day after bidding farewell to the faithful blacksmith (who, of all men, asked for nothing) that Kemmu, the capital of Kaarta, in the midst of a sandy plain, mostly denuded of wood, appeared at a distance. As the little caravan neared the town the signs of coming war were more and more evident. Many villages were quite deserted, and, though usually food is so plentiful that the country people decline to accept any payment for meal and milk, extravagant prices, in view of the unsettled condition of affairs, were demanded for the most common necessities. White men seemed to be less and less known as Kaarta was approached, for at times the traveller was taken for a spirit, from which even armed horsemen fled in terror.

Daisi Koorabori proved to be a less

rapacious prince than his brethren already met with. He not only treated the stranger well, but gave him the best of advice. The country was so disturbed that to proceed meant almost certain death, and he was unwilling to be party to any such misfortune as the murder of a white man who had passed through his country; but if go he would, Ludamar, a Moorish province which belonged to his friend Ali, was his safest destination; from thence, with that sovereign's permission, he might pass to Sego, the capital of Bambarra. If not, he must stay where he was until the war was over. As this meant losing the dry season, the only alternative was to penetrate among the Moors into a country where Major Houghton had already been murdered.

Then accordingly he set out. He was now at the limits of a region even partially known, and was on the eve of penetrating a land where the white man was neither feared nor loved and his faith looked upon with abhorrence. How far he might go he knew not, but that he would require to retrace his weary steps was certain, while no explorer ever set out on a journey so long and perilous so slenderly provided with funds as this hardy Scot. For all that now remained was the balance of the gold-dust he had received from Selim Daukari, which, at the most, could not amount to more than between twelve and fifteen pounds, and on this sum he had to pay his way for an indefinite period.



THE WEST AFRICAN COFFEE PLANT (*Coffea liberica*)



MOORISH DOUAR, OR ENCAMPMENT.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO: MUNGO PARK.

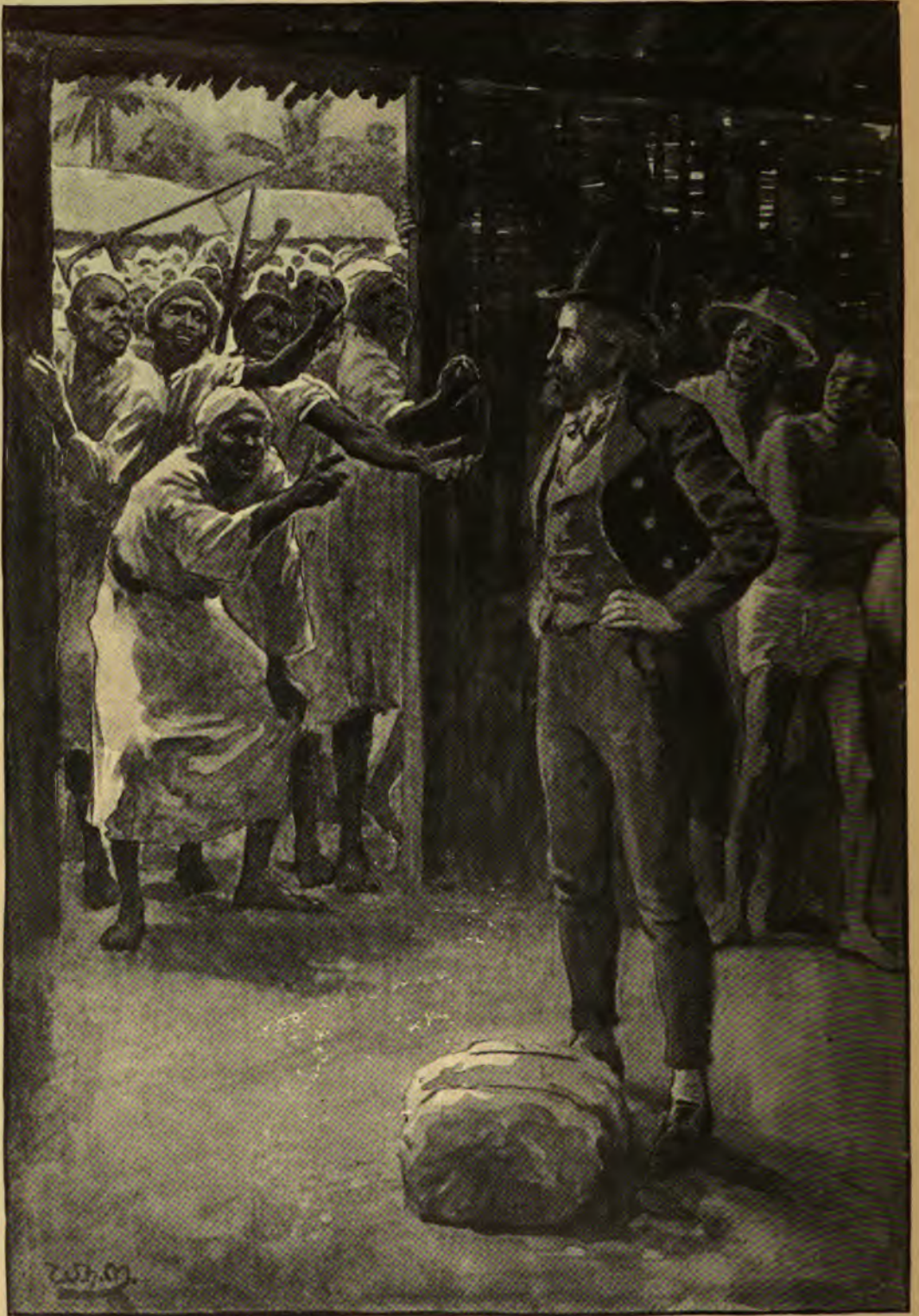
**Park** Enters the Country of the Moors—His Troubles Increase—New People but Old Manners—Ali's Camp—Some Unpleasant Experiences—Queen Fatima and the Shercefs—A Burst for Freedom—One Companion Deserts and Another is Sold into Slavery—Alone in the Desert—Inhospitability and Threatened Imprisonment from the Rich and Charity from the Poor—Selling Charms for a Livelihood—Traverses Bambarra—Reaches the Niger—Refused Permission to Enter the City of Sego—A Semi-civilised-looking Country—Kindness in Unexpected Quarters—A Song of Pity—Shell Money—A Forlorn Journey—Shea Butter—Park Determines to Return—The Miseries of the Homeward Route—Comfort in the Desert—A Slave Merchant Comes to the Rescue—Journey with a Slave "Coffle"—Reaches the Gambia, and Returns to England.

PARK had now arrived at the central stage of his journey, and had good reason to remember the advice tendered him by the Wuli king. He had left the land of the negroes proper—a race who, when Mohammedans at all, bear the burdens of Al Islam very lightly, and, though avaricious to the last degree, entertain no particular ill-will to the white man whom they pillage. But he was now entering the "country of the Moors"—people originally sprung from Arab ancestors, but, by long intermarrying with the black people whom they had conquered and amalgamated, mulattoes, in whom is combined all the ferocity and fanaticism of the stock by whose

name they are known, with the brutality of that which has imparted to their skin its swarthy shade. A less inviting horde it would be difficult to entrust one's life to, for they hate the Christian with all the bitterness of religious fanatics, and in the vindictive expression of their looks, and their wild, strange eyes, make no pretence of concealing it. Some of them—as they still do—lived in towns, but most wandered about the country in tents, robbing caravans, or engaged in wars undertaken for the purpose of pillage. Few of them had then had any direct dealings with the whites, and, being far removed from the possibility of experiencing his power, were in





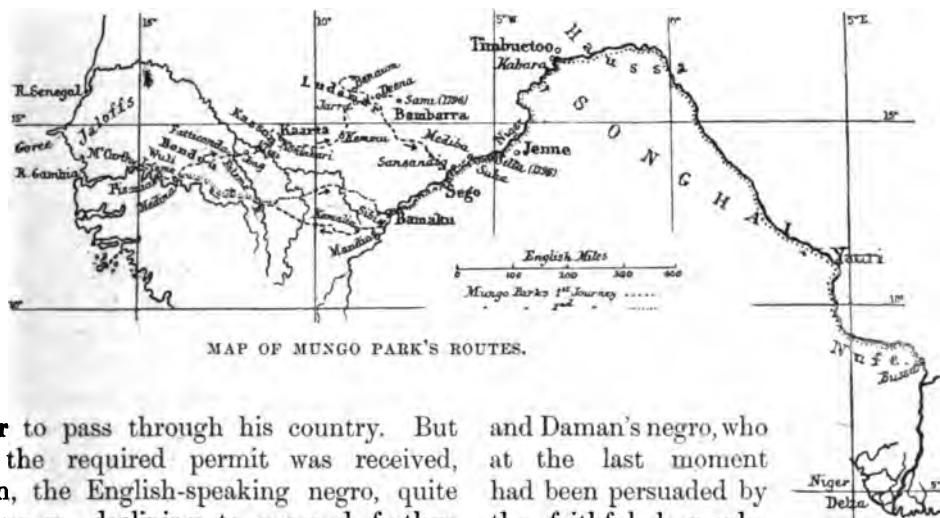


SCENE AT DINA: PARK INSULTED BY THE MOORS (p. 198).

noway inclined to treat the new-comer with the good-nature seldom lacking in the negroes who had robbed him so freely all the way from Pisanía to Kemmu. However, for a time all went well, three of Daisi's sons and about two hundred horsemen having convoyed him a little way on his road. Thieves there were, of course, and at the first halting-place he lost part of his now scanty baggage.

At Yarra, a large stone-built town, chiefly inhabited by negroes, he took up his residence for fourteen days in the house of Daman Jumma, a Gambia slatee, upon whom he had an order from Dr. Laidley for a debt, until permission could arrive from Ali for the

creating a quarrel, which would give them an excuse for seizing his baggage. Finding that their provocation had not the desired effect, they proceeded to plunder him of everything that took their fancy, on the plea that being an Infidel he was the lawful prize of any True Believer. Already his sextant had been stolen, so that for all purposes of exact geography his future progress was useless. To add to his miseries, the people whom he had brought from Yarra, seeing that everybody could rob the white man with impunity, refused to go any further. Accordingly, he left this den of ferocious thieves next day, without any other companion except the boy Demba



MAP OF MUNGO PARK'S ROUTES.

stranger to pass through his country. But before the required permit was received, Johnson, the English-speaking negro, quite lost courage, declining to proceed farther. Demba, however, consented to go on, and the trader with whom he was residing supplied the place of the recalcitrant West Indian by one of his own slaves.

It was not long before the character of the people was to be displayed. At Dina, the next town, the Moors predominated, and in their rancour to the **New people and old manners.** Christian forgot the precepts of their faith touching hospitality to the stranger. Gathering round the hut in which he had taken shelter, a surging mob hissed, shouted, and abused him, yelling every description of epithet in at the door, and even going so far as to spit in his face, with the object of

and Daman's negro, who at the last moment had been persuaded by the faithful boy who had followed him from Pisanía to continue true to his temporary master.

The land through which they travelled was dry and sandy, with few water-holes, and as they journeyed by moonlight to avoid the heat and the robbers, with the exception of the roaring of wild beasts, and difficulty of obtaining water, even when there were wells, by the numerous lions taking possession of these fountains, they were proceeding through Ludamar, almost to the borders of Bambarra, without any particular mishap, when messengers arrived from Ali with orders to convey him to that sovereign's camp, as his wife,



Fatima, wished to have a look at the latest curiosity in the shape of a white man. At this news the Yarra negro's courage finally gave way; but as black men were common enough in that region, he managed to escape unperceived. The camp of Ali was reached after four days' weary journey. A less picturesque affair of the kind it would be hard to imagine. The dirty tents were scattered over a wide space, and between them straggled camels, cattle, and goats, without any order or discipline being observed by the ragged horde that constituted his soldiery. On the new arrivals approaching, the people drawing water at the wells threw down their buckets, the men in the tents mounted their horses picketed hard by, and one and all alike came running, galloping, and bawling towards them, until the crowd became so dense that it was with difficulty that Ali's tent could be approached.

On gaining admittance to that potentate, the sight that met his eyes was not impressive. Ali, an old man of a peculiarly sinister cast of countenance, was engaged in the unkingly operation of clipping, before a looking-glass held by a slave, the few straggling hairs on his upper lip. This operation finished, he proceeded to bestow on Park a sullen and malignant survey, expressing some surprise when he heard that a knowledge of Arabic was not among his accomplishments, and then relapsed into silence. The ladies of his family were, however, more curious. Nothing was too minute for their inquisitiveness, no part of his dress too trivial not to be examined by their restless fingers. His pockets were turned inside out and the contents appropriated, and his waistcoat was unbuttoned to examine the whiteness of his skin. They even counted the number of his toes and fingers, in doubt whether, in spite of their endless questions, a creature so strangely faced was really a human being.

Fatima, the fattest and fairest wife—for among the Moors fatness and fairness are synonymous—for the gratification of whose

curiosity Park had been brought so far out of his way, being at a distance, he was ordered to remain until she returned, and slaves were sent to bring him food. This turned out to be a wild hog, which some boys tied to the tent-poles, inviting the Nazarene to kill and devour it. Thinking it would be unwise, in spite of his hunger, to touch an animal regarded with such extreme antipathy by the Mohammedans, he declined the insolent offer. The hog was then set free; but instead of rushing at the Christian, towards whom it was supposed to entertain an intense dislike, the irate boar ran amuck right and left, attacking without discrimination every person with whom it came in contact. However, the malicious Moors, not to be deprived of an opportunity of venting their malice on the Infidel, shut him and the pig up in the same hut. Yet even then the animal played Nemesis to its tormentors, for a thief creeping into the sty overnight to steal something from the human occupant, stumbled over the hog, and was bitten in the arm for his pains. Meanwhile, Park and his boy were treated not as guests, but as slaves. As barber to Ali's son, the Selkirk surgeon acquitted himself so badly that he was ignominiously discharged, much to his satisfaction, and ever afterwards, seeing that he had little chance of freedom if he proved too useful, it was his study to seem as incompetent as possible. Demba was, however, not so fortunate, for as grass-cutter he could scarcely plead ignorance; and by-and-by there arrived in the camp, much in fear of the fate that awaited him, the timid Johnson, who had been arrested at Yarra while meditating how best he could make his way back to his native Gambia.

His idleness, however, gave Park no intermission from annoyance. All day long he was kept, while parched with thirst, buttoning and unbuttoning his clothes for the satisfaction of the idle curiosity of the women, while the men would often gallop round and round him, twirling their muskets over their heads, and exhibiting feats of activity and horsemanship more for the gratification

Some uncomfortable experiences in Ali's camp.

of their malice than for his amusement, since they never failed to vomit the foulest epithets at the hapless traveller. At times, indeed, they would call out to him the words of the Moslem confession of faith, "La Illa ila Allah, wa Mohammed, arrasule, Allah" ("There is no God but God, and Mohammed is God's Apostle"), signifying at the same time with threatening gestures that unless he "testified" his throat would be cut. An old woman returning from a wedding in the camp told him she had brought him a present from the bride, and immediately discharged in his face the contents of a wooden bowl she carried in her hand. "Finding that it was the same sort of holy water with which among the Hottentots a priest is said to sprinkle a new-married couple, I began to suspect that the old lady was actuated by mischief or malice, but she gave me seriously to understand that it was a nuptial benediction, which on such occasions is always received by the young unmarried Moors as a mark of distinguished favour. This being the case, I wiped my face, and sent my acknowledgment to the lady." Little in the shape of kindness was bestowed upon him, and the inquisitiveness displayed by the women savoured, to our ideas, of gross indecency. Yet the Moors were so much shocked at the white man's nankeen breeches that even Ali, who was by no means a refined personage, requested him to discontinue their use.

Hunger was added to thirst. For as he happened to arrive during the fast of Ramadan, when no Mohammedan eats or drinks anything between sunrise and sunset, he was expected to conform to the same ascetic life. To beguile the tedium of his enforced leisure, Park began to learn the Arabic characters. This saved him from some annoyance, since the bystanders, seeing him industriously trying to shape letters in sand, got too interested in his 'prentice efforts to tease him. They preferred, when they were not ridiculing his clumsy attempts, to gratify their own vanity by teaching him the proper method of writing the holy tongue.

But nothing kept them from pillaging his bundles. As everywhere else, these were turned out, and his person was carefully searched to see whether he had not concealed some gold or amber, since the amount in his bags was so small. Nothing escaped them: instruments, watch, and pocket-compass, all were equally the objects of their avarice. The compass puzzled them much, for the needle always pointed to the Great Desert. This was magic so great that they resolved not to keep it, and their dread of this "jin"-like tool of brass and iron was not allayed by learning that the reason why it pointed to the interior was that the owner's mother lived in that direction, and it guided him to her home or to her grave. Ali's sons appear to have been truculent scoundrels. They insisted on his mending muskets, which he was unable to do, and more than once snapped pistols at his head and at that of his boy on the pretence that they were attempting to escape. Escape, indeed, was ever present to the mind of the Moors. For on the night when the hog bit the robber, the entire camp turned out at the alarm, Ali, among others, appearing on horseback, preparing to give chase should the Christian have, as was thought, run away. Everyone in reality suspected everyone else, and, as the king was in hourly dread of assassination, or of poison, he was the most timid of them all—never sleeping in the same tent for two nights in succession, nor at any time permitting more than a chosen wife to know the exact spot where he was to be found.

Anxious, however, to conciliate his oppressors, Park determined to bear meekly the ills he endured rather than risk, by resentment, others still worse. With patience he bore every insult and complied with every command, and never did time pass so heavily as when he was obliged to suffer from sunrise to sunset, with an unruffled countenance, the insults of people whom he not unjustly styles "the rudest savages on earth." For, so far as he was concerned, the daily amusement of the boys was to beat the hog, and of the

men and women to plague the Christian who shared its sty.

The end seemed at one time not far off; for a council was held to determine his fate. Several voices were loud for his execution; while others considered that to cut off his right hand, as if he had been a thief, would be the most fitting mark of ignominy to bestow upon him; but finally the proposal to put out his eyes obtained the unanimous consent of the Bushreens, on the ground that they were

mud from the gutters—a diet that often proved fatal to them. In these circumstances little fell to the captives, unless when a slave, out of pity, gave them some, or they managed to push in between the cattle at night to share the filthy contents of the tanks.

By-and-by the long-looked-for Fatima arrived. Though, as became a good Moslem, shocked at the sight of so depraved a creature as a Christian, she showed herself, after asking



HOUSEHOLD UTENSILS FROM THE WEST COAST OF AFRICA. (From Specimens in the British Museum.)

like those of a cat. This insensate cruelty would most likely have been carried into effect had not Ali resolved to delay the sentence until Queen Fatima returned. Meanwhile, it seemed as if death in any form would be welcome compared with the torture the captives were enduring from hunger, and still more from thirst. Water was every day getting scarcer and scarcer, and the sand so hot that even the negroes with their horny feet found it impossible to pass, in the heat of the day, from one part to another without protecting them with sandals.

Day and night the wells were crowded with cattle, fighting to get at the troughs, or devouring in their intolerable thirst the moist black

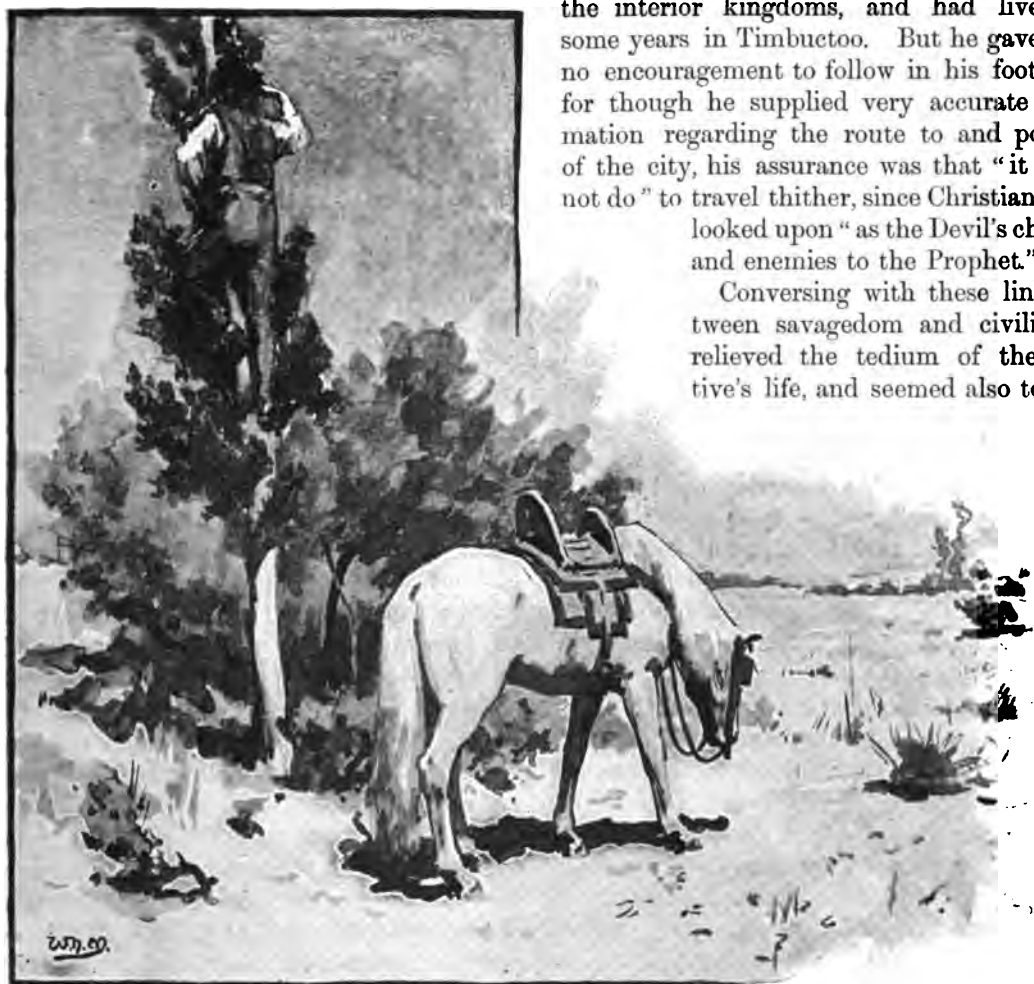
innumerable questions, not without a woman's kindly heart. For while the people of the camp were so afraid of polluting their vessels, by permitting so vile a being to drink out of them, that rather than run such a risk they would empty the contents, she presented him with a bowl of milk, and in other ways showed him almost the first kindness he had received since coming to the Benaum camp. As nothing further was said about his eyes being put out, it may be inferred that in other respects her intercession was favourable to the captives. Possibly also the arrival of an Arab merchant from Morocco—the Shereef Sidi Mohammed Mura Abdallah—was not without its influence

Ali's Queen  
Fatima and  
the Shereefa.

on these rude barbarians. This man of the Prophet's blood was a salt-trader, who, after a journey of four months across the Sus country and the sandy desert from Agadir, had come

Agadir,\* he had visited Gibraltar and could converse intelligibly in English. Another Shereef arrived about the same time; he also was a man of great intelligence, who had travelled extensively through many of the interior kingdoms, and had lived for some years in Timbuctoo. But he gave Park no encouragement to follow in his footsteps; for though he supplied very accurate information regarding the route to and position of the city, his assurance was that "it would not do" to travel thither, since Christians were looked upon "as the Devil's children, and enemies to the Prophet."

Conversing with these links between savagedom and civilisation relieved the tedium of the captive's life, and seemed also to have



PARK LOST IN THE DESERT (p. 199).

to trade for gold and slaves and ostrich-feathers with the inland parts of Africa, just as his countrymen had done for centuries, and as they still do after exactly the same fashion that they followed in former days. He was a person of much greater refinement than the people in the camp: since, apart from the fact that he was familiar with white merchants in Mogador and

impressed the fanatics around him with an idea that, if men of their holy ancestry could stoop to treat him with friendliness, he could not be quite so vile as they had hitherto concluded.

\* Swera (Sueira), and Santa Cruz, of Park's narrative, the first being the native name for Mogador, the second, the old Portuguese name of a place at one time a seat of considerable commerce with Europe, but now a tumble-down town without any resident whites.

Food, however, was no more plentiful than before: for, as Ali's slaves were left to supply the stranger's wants, they not infrequently neglected the task altogether, and in no instance performed it lavishly. On one occasion nothing was brought for two whole days, and a house-to-house begging by Demba, in the little negro village hard by, resulted in obtaining no better alms than a few handfuls of ground-nuts, which the lad readily shared with his master. The heat was so terrible that it was sometimes difficult to keep the hand more than a few seconds in the hot breeze which swept from the desert. The Moors themselves would lie all day on the sand in a semi-torpid condition, while Demba and Johnson, accustomed to the damp heat of the West Coast, became in time so dejected that even the cry of "kous-kouso" would fail to awaken them out of their heavy, uneasy slumbers. Park himself did not suffer in this way: his troubles were dim eyesight and laboured breathing, with tantalising dreams of running fountains of which he was about to partake, when suddenly he would awake to find himself still a thirsty sharer of the Benaum pig-sty.

The rainy season was now approaching, when the Moors retreat to the far interior. Park, seeing that there was no opportunity of escaping, obtained permission, through the intercession of Fatima, to accompany Ali to Yarra, whence he went to treat with the fugitive Kaartans who had solicited his assistance against Daisi, their native prince. This was better than being taken with them into the Great Desert. Demba, whose fidelity had deserved a better reward, was now seized by Ali as his own slave, on the plea that, being the interpreter of the Christian, he might perhaps conduct him to Bambarra. It was in vain that Park remonstrated against this high-handed conduct. All that he obtained was a significant hint, with a look that meant more, that if the white man did not instantly mount his horse he would share the same fate. The "old fool," as they called Johnson, might, however, if he pleased, stay

with him, and, possibly, when the danger that was apprehended had passed away, the boy would be sold, at the price of a common slave, to the slatee in whose house Park lived on his former visit. That good fortune does not seem to have been poor Demba's lot. His master shared his tears at parting and neither ever saw the other again.

Johnson, again a free man, made what preparations he could for returning to the Gambia, and Park, fearing that he would be taken to the camp, devised plans also for escaping, though in the opposite direction. Bereft of every article that could serve him as money, his entire baggage consisting of two shirts, two pairs of trousers, two pocket-handkerchiefs, an upper- and under-waistcoat, a hat, a pair of boots, and a cloak, this intrepid man determined to continue his course to the Niger. To go on seemed like courting certain death; to remain was even worse, since it meant a lifelong captivity. He therefore chose the lesser of two evils: to return without accomplishing his errand would appear to have been the only thought that he could not for a moment entertain. The chance occurred one dark night when the Moors were all asleep. Telling Johnson to take good care of his papers, he stepped gently over the sleeping guards, and, mounting his old horse, started alone for Bambarra. Relieved of every encumbrance, as nearly a beggar as a man without more than a change of clothing can be, the dauntless explorer trotted away into the night with the lightest heart he had felt for many a day. For, having nothing to steal, he could now not be robbed, and death was the worst that could befall him. "I felt," he tells us, "like one recovered from sickness. I breathed freer. I found unusual lightness in my limbs; even the desert looked pleasant, and I dreaded nothing so much as falling in with some wandering parties of Moors, who might convey me back to the land of thieves and murderers from which I had just escaped."

This pleasing reverie was, however, rudely interrupted by three horsemen overtaking

him before he had ridden a couple of miles. They were messengers, they said, from Ali, whose orders were that he should immediately return. How far this was the truth is doubtful. At all events, finding that the traveller, schooled in adversity, submitted to their demands with the apathy of despair, they took him aside into some bushes, stripped him of his cloak, as the only article worth taking, and then let him go. Again he turned his head towards the East, directing his course over the sandy desert through which it lay by means of the compass. The heat of the sun was often intolerable, water was not to be had, and his horse, hitherto as patient under hardships as his master, began to grow restive by reason of

*Alone in the desert.* fatigue. Often did the traveller ascend the tallest tree (p. 197) to look for the smoke of village or the trace of human habitation, but nothing appeared on the level horizon except ridges of sandy waves that seemed to fluctuate like the sea in the ascending haze, dotted here and there with thick underwood. In vain did he and his horse chew the bitter leaves of the shrubs: they afforded no refreshment. Fearing that his fate was now settled, Park removed the bridle from the poor brute, and sank insensible on the white sand. When he recovered, the sickness and giddiness still continued, but the sun now sinking below the horizon he felt less exhausted, and prepared to make another effort to reach succour. By-and-by, as the darkness increased, the wind rose and a welcome shower laid for a time the drifting clouds of sand. Then, spreading out his clothes to catch the rain, he, by wringing and sucking them, quenched his thirst and continued his journey by the guidance which the flashes of lightning supplied; until about midnight, hearing what he calls "the heavenly music of frogs," he was directed to a watering-place, at which, avoiding the huts hard by, he took large draughts of a muddy liquid on the surface of which the musicians lay in a thick sheet.

Next day he arrived at a Fulah village subject to Ludamar. Here, not only did the

headman refuse to supply his necessities, but threatened to convey him back to Ali, and had it not been for the kindness of an old woman, who fed both him and his horse, it is not unlikely that he might have been compelled from absolute necessity to submit to this cruel decision. However, fortified by the food he had received, he managed to give these inhospitable villagers the slip and, with varying fortune, continued his journey.

The country, however, was now fertile, and the people hospitable, supplying him readily with food and asking nothing in return except a few hairs from his beard, under the notion that such a "saphie," or charm, might possess uncommon virtue. Warned, nevertheless, by bitter experience, the lonely traveller journeyed at night, when he would often sit for hours holding his horse by the nose, in equal danger from wild beasts in the bushes around and wild men in the open country beyond. In three days, nevertheless, he reached, without mishap, the frontier of Bambarra, and was out of the power of Ali. The people, moreover, were now negroes, and among them there was little danger from religious fanaticism, and, as he had nothing worth stealing, even less peril from cupidity. In those years beards were unknown among "Christians"—that is, among Europeans, the two words being synonymous in Mohammedan Africa. Accordingly the long beard of Park led him to be everywhere mistaken for a Moor. "He has been to Mecca," was the ironical remark, "you may see that by his clothes." Another would break jokes upon the sorry condition of his horse, and ask whether he did not wish to sell so valuable an animal. Day after day the country grew more populous and the routes of travels more thronged. The people also became less kindly, more niggard in supplying his wants, less courteous, and more inclined to indulge in rough badinage, though in no other way interfering with his progress. It was clear he was approaching some large town. On the morning of the 20th July, 1796, this expectation was fulfilled,



for on that memorable day he saw glistening in the morning sun the long-sought-for Niger, **Park reaches a great river, as broad as the Thames at Westminster, and flowing to the eastward, and on the opposite bank the populous Mohammedan city of Sego.** "I hastened to the brink," he tells us, "and

them he was procured an introduction to the king, though, in truth, as the very slaves were ashamed of being seen in the company of so ragged a vagabond, it required no small moral courage on the part of these good people to become sponsor for a person of such disreputable appearance (p. 204).

The scene that now presented itself was a busy one. Scores of canoes were crossing and recrossing with passengers, the ferry, which was carried on by the king's slaves, being a royal monopoly; while the crowded roads, the well-dressed people, and the highly cultivated country around the capital, betokened a state of civilisation which his travels up to this point had not led him to expect in the very heart of Africa. He found, however, to his mortification, that he was again in a centre of Moslem bigotry. For, to the chagrin of the kindly Kaartans, who expected no such obstacles, he was ordered to take up his residence in a village in the distance, the king having issued orders that, until he knew the errand of the white man, he was not to be permitted to cross the river. At the village, however, nobody would receive him. White men were, in those days, unfamiliar personages on the Upper Niger and not to be lightly entertained for the asking.

All day long he had to sit under the shade of a tree, and, as the wind began to rise and the rain to fall, his prospects for the night seemed anything but pleasant. Then as darkness closed in the staring crowd moved away, and left him to the society of his horse. Just then a woman, returning from the labours of the field, noticed him and inquired why he sat there weary and dejected. On hearing his tale, she took up his saddle and bridle and beckoned him to her hut, where she lighted a lamp and spread a mat for him to lie on. In a few minutes she broiled a fish for his supper, and then, as the females of the little household spun cotton far into the night, one of them sang a song, the rest joining in the chorus (p. 205). The air, Park tells us—though, no doubt, he was a very partial critic—was sweet and



YOUNG GIRLS OF BAMBARRA.

(From a Photograph by the Paris Society for Evangelical Missions.)

having drunk of the water, lifted up my fervent thanks in prayer to the Great Ruler of all things for having thus crowned my endeavours with success."

It was market-day, and throngs of laughing villagers were hurrying towards the capital, eager to buy and sell and gossip. Among them he recognised some fugitive Kaartans whose benevolence he had already experienced during his journey through Bambarra, and by

**Hospitality  
in unex-  
pected  
quarters.**



plaintive, and the words, literally translated, ran—

“The winds roared, and the rain fell;  
The poor white man faint and weary came,  
And sat beneath the tree:  
He has no mother to bring him milk,  
No wife to grind his corn.”

*Chorus :*

“Let us pity the poor white man:  
No mother has he to bring him milk,  
No wife to grind his corn.”

Then they ended a simple song (which, unknown to them, an English duchess set to music in after-days), and made a bed for the weary man on their earthen floor. After the toil he had endured, sleep ought to have been welcome; but the kindness he had received from these simple negroes was even greater than his weariness, so that he lay all night awake, thinking of the past and the future, bestowing in the morning upon his compassionate hostess, as almost the only compensation in his power, two of the four brass buttons still remaining on his well-worn waistcoat.

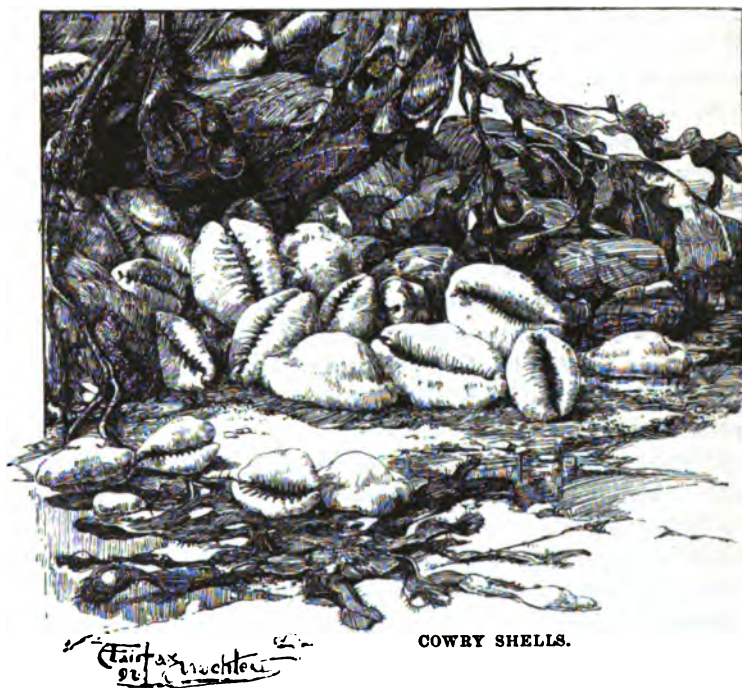
In this forlorn condition, it was almost sublimely ridicu-

**A feeble king and an unkingly welcome.**

lous for a messenger to arrive from the king with an inquiry whether he was going to send him a present. The answer was that the Moors had robbed the traveller of everything. It turned out afterwards that in Sego the Moors were, as in most parts of the kingdom of Bambarra, so influential that the nominal sovereign, Mansong by name, despaired of being able to protect the traveller. This, however, Park only learned at a later date. Meanwhile, another messenger arrived with a gift of 5,000 cowries, and a message from the king that it was his earnest wish for him to depart

immediately, the messenger being at the same time directed to accompany him as far as Sansanding, if he intended to visit Jenné.

For Jenné, therefore, the weary traveller set out, in a state of greater affluence than he had been for many days past. For, with 5,000 cowries of currency, he reckoned, at the rate of 250 for a shilling, he could support himself and his horse for twenty days. This cowry \* (p. 201) is a small shell, two species of which are found on the British coast. But the one which then formed, and, to some extent, still forms, the ordinary <sup>shell money.</sup> money of the Soudan Basin, is obtained chiefly from the Indian Ocean, and



COWRY SHELLS.

is employed as a medium of exchange not only in Africa, but in Southern India. In the latter country its value has within the last century fluctuated between 2,400 and 3,800 to the rupee. In former days it was more generally used than at present.

\* *Cypræa moneta.*

At Cuttack, a bungalow that cost £400 was entirely paid for in these shells; and to this day tons are exported from Liverpool for use on the upper parts of the Niger and other West African rivers, the supplies being obtained from the Maldive Islands, Ceylon, the Malabar Coast, Borneo, and other East Indian islands, in addition to considerable quantities imported from various parts of the East African Coast, from Ras Hafun to Mozambique. Bengal at one time imported about £30,000 worth, and even yet, in Siam, 6,400 cowries are on an average equal to a ficul, about 1s. 6d. Before the abolition of the slave trade, and the introduction of other standards of value, including coin and "bars," it was almost the only money used along the entire Guinea Coast, and far into the interior. Indeed, so rapidly did it penetrate the continent that, forty years ago, it was a quite recognised currency in Kanó, Kukawa, Gondo, and Timbuctoo; and in Muniyona the king's revenue was assessed at 30,000,000 cowries, every adult male being required to pay an annual poll-tax of 1,000 shells for himself, 1,000 for each pack-ox, and 2,000 for each slave owned by him. Nearer the coast, the shells are usually fastened in strips of forty or a hundred, a certain number of strips having, according to the locality, a recognised value, though in the interior, where they are held at a higher rate, the "Kurdi" are counted out one by one. Even those tribes who, like the Niam-Niam, do not bestow on them a monetary value, esteem the shells so highly as ornaments that the Zanzibar traders find it convenient to carry them into the interior, though it is not likely that any exploring expedition of our times will fall into the blunder which, it is said, one despatched by the British Government some years ago was requested to commit, by the Foreign Office clerks despatching a cargo of cowries as the means wherewithal to defray its expenses in the Lake Regions. These sapient officials might as lief have consigned to the travellers a shipload of warming-pans.

Provided, therefore, with a pound's worth of

this bulky currency, Park set forth again in the hope of reaching Timbuctoo, <sup>A forlorn</sup> the goal that he always kept <sup>journey.</sup> fixed in his memory as the one to which, if possible, he should attain. It is not necessary to remark that with the objects of his journey no one sympathised. When he told them that he had come so far to see the great Niger, or Joliba, the rejoinder was, "Were there no rivers in his own country, and was not one river just like another?" Undeniably, the appearance the traveller now presented was not what the black folk had been accustomed to associate with a white man, and, apart from religious fanaticism, the Moors and those under their influence were not unjustified in setting him down as a suspicious character—a rascal most likely, a spy of some sort very probably. It is therefore not surprising that he received scant courtesy in his lonely journey.

All along his route, the country people were collecting the kernels of the shea-tree\* fruit, from which is extracted the celebrated shea-butter, which is fragrant, white, firmer, and better-flavoured than that of milk, while every other tropical crop was in abundance. It was, however, little that the ever-waning funds of the explorer profited by the pervading plenty. At Sansanding, a town of 10,000 inhabitants, he was mistaken by the negroes for a Moor. The Moslems, however, soon detected the error, and, with their usual insolence, ordered him to repeat the Mohammedan prayers after the fashion of the Jews, who, notwithstanding this conformity, are in those parts of the world regarded as inferior to Christians. In vain Park pleaded that he did not understand Arabic. A Shereef from Tuat, a cluster of oases in the desert south of Morocco, swore by the beard of the Prophet that, unless he went to the mosque and testified, he should drag him thither himself; and

\* *Bassia Parkii*, the species bearing Park's name. The butter, which is allied to that of the *Bassia butyracea* of India (Ghee), consists mainly of stearin and olein, and is now imported for soap- and candle-making, and for the preparation of pomades.

not improbably would have done so had not the Duté, or magistrate, interfered on the ground that the stranger was "the king's white man," and must be protected. All that evening the little court-yard in which he was accommodated was crowded with hostile Moors, clamouring that they should see him perform his devotions "and eat eggs." With the latter of these requests poor Park expressed himself as only too happy to comply. Indeed, the more he was asked to eat in moderation, the happier he should be; though, as they had been taught to believe that Christians subsisted solely on raw eggs, they were amazed when he asked for this welcome nourishment to be cooked. Finding, after all, that the white man ate pretty much as he did himself, the Duté entertained him with a substantial meal of mutton and, when the Moors had departed, asked him to write him a "saphie," on the ground that, if a Moor's charm be good, a white man's must be better. This was easily complied with, a scrap of board with the Lord's Prayer scratched on it meeting all the necessities of the case. The country beyond was less thickly peopled, but not more hospitable. At Medibu, he was forced to leave his horse, exhausted with the hardships it had undergone, and pursue his journey on foot. His altered circumstances did not, however, arouse any increase of sympathy. At Kea, a small fishing-village on the river, the Duté, on being asked for food and protection, informed him coolly that, as it was not his habit to pay any attention to fine speeches, he had better continue his journey, for no shelter should he receive from him.

This churlishness convinced Park that, though now little more than two hundred miles from Timbuctoo, to proceed farther meant for him either death or slavery. Every hour the hostility of the Moors and their paramount influence over the negroes increased, until, by the time he arrived at Silla—sick, exhausted, half naked, without any means of paying for provisions, clothing and shelter, with a swampy country before him, and the tropical rains

beginning to inundate the rice-fields—he felt himself no longer able to face the prospect of losing all that he had accomplished by the growing fanaticism of the people.

At this point, accordingly, he wisely determined to begin his homeward journey, after accumulating from the conversation of the people all the information he could collect regarding the regions that he had been unable to visit. What was told him regarding Timbuctoo was certainly not inspiring. For one of the tales related by an old negro was, that when he visited the city, his landlord, laying a rope down on the mat beside him, addressed the stranger in these words: "If you are a Mussulman, you are my friend—sit down; but if you are a Kafir,\* you are my slave, and with this rope I will lead you to market."

His homeward route was for a time even less pleasant than his outward one. At Medibu he recovered his horse. But often unable to find any guide, he was compelled to flounder for miles through morasses, to swim creeks with his bridle in his teeth and his papers in the crown of his hat; always treated with rudeness and suspicion, even when mistaken for a Moor, and often obliged to subsist on the same raw Indian corn as his horse, unless when the superstition of the negroes induced them to buy "a white man's saphie" for a meal of rice or milk.

Passing by several considerable walled towns, he reached the village of Song. But though the country round about was infested by lions, the inhabitants shut the gates in his face, under the belief that he was one of the Moors, a race for whom they entertained, not unreasonably, the most violent antipathy. As a prowling lion approached dangerously near the spot where he had lain down, Park found it necessary to climb a tree. Then the people invited him in, convinced that they had mistaken his nationality; for, they added, with a knowledge of character that was evidently

\* That is, "unbeliever," the term first applied by the Moors to the South African tribes so widely known by that name.

Park determines to return.

based on a wide experience, "no Moor ever waited till midnight at the gate of a city without cursing the inhabitants."

One day, wading a creek up to the neck, leading his horse by the bridle, his few rags fastened in a bundle on the saddle, a passing negro shouted to him in the Mandingo language to come out, or the alligators would devour him. Emerging from the stream, the black man gazed in amazement at the naked being. He had evidently never seen a

brute intended to dispose of him in a more summary fashion than had yet been his lot, when the corpse of a slave was brought out of a hut and tumbled into the hole.

With varying fortune—never good, though sometimes a little worse than at other times—the explorer passed as far up the Niger as Bamaku, intending if possible to reach the Gold Coast through Kong. Utterly penniless—or rather, cowrieless—without anything left except the rags he chose to call his



THE PALACE, SEGO.

European, and as he retreated from the apparition was heard muttering to himself, "God preserve me! who's this?" Hearing that the white could speak the Bambarra tongue, the good fellow became more confident, and conducted him for a few miles on his way. At Suha matters did not mend. The Duté was not hospitable—that by this time was the rule rather than the exception. He would neither give nor sell him food, and as he called to his slaves to dig a pit—grumbling all the time, "Good for nothing," "a vile plague," "money lost! money lost!"—our traveller was beginning to be afraid that the

clothes, this looked a hopeless project. But when even the slender possessions mentioned were stolen from him by some Fulah robbers, who at first stripped him naked, but, finding that the garments of which they had plundered him were scarcely worth carrying, returned him the worse of his two shirts, a pair of trousers, and his hat, in the crown of which he kept his memoranda—with his only arms an old spear, he saw that it was out of the question.

He was now in the midst of a vast wilderness, without food or the means of buying any, without a horse, surrounded by savage beasts



and still more savage men, naked and alone, and five hundred miles from the nearest European settlement. For the first time his courage began to give way, and as he lay down on the arid ground he felt that his end was drawing near. "The influence of religion, however, aided and supported me," Park wrote

irresistibly caught my eye. I mention this to show from what trifling circumstances the mind will sometimes derive consolation, for though the whole plant was not larger than the top of one of my fingers, I could not contemplate the delicate conformation of its roots, leaves, and capsula without admiration.



SEGO WOMEN ENTERTAINING PARK (p. 201).

in a passage of his narrative which has, perhaps, been more frequently quoted than any other. "I reflected that no human prudence or foresight could possibly have averted my present sufferings. I was, indeed, a stranger in a strange land, yet I was still under the protecting eye of that Providence who has condescended to call Himself the stranger's friend. At this moment, fearful as my reflections were, the extraordinary beauty of a small moss in fructification

Can that Being (thought I) who planted, watered, and brought to perfection in this obscure part of the world a thing which appears of so small importance, look with unconcern upon the situation and sufferings of creatures formed after His own image? Surely not! Reflections like these would not allow me to despair. I started up, and disregarding both hunger and fatigue, travelled forwards, assured that relief was at hand, and I was not disappointed." For in a short time he

overtook two shepherds whom he had met in a former part of his journey, and with them journeyed to the kingdom of Manding, the land of those Mandingoes who, we have seen, are found all through West Africa as colonists, commercial travellers, and traders.

His route thenceforward was in even greater misery than before. Every bite he swallowed had to be begged, whether it was maize-flowers stewed in milk and water, or some coarser though more substantial nutriment. Yet even this was often denied him, for there was a famine in the land, and as women were selling their children to buy corn for themselves, little could be spared to a traveller; and, to crown his miseries, at Wonda he lay ill of fever for nine days, to the uneasiness of his negro landlord, who was overheard remarking to his wife that the white man would be much cost and trouble, since, "for the sake of their good name," they would be forced to maintain him till he should recover or die. At this place his oft-lost horse turned up, but as the roads were now unfitted for travelling on horseback, he presented the beast to his host, and the saddle and bridle to the Mansa, or chief magistrate, of Sibidulu, by whose exertions it had been recovered.

At Kamalia his worst misfortunes came to an end; for though he had still a long journey to make, any fear of actual want, or even of danger from violence, was reduced to a minimum. The reason was that here he met with a negro "slatee," one Karfa Taura, bound with a "coffe," or gang, of slaves to the Gambia as soon as the rains abated, who agreed to escort him to Pisanian and accept payment on their arriving at his destination. With this man he stayed until the party set out, and it may be remarked that when he first visited him he found the slatee reading out of an Arabic volume, and noticed in his little library a copy of the "Book of Common Prayer." Fever now seized Park, and for four weeks it seemed as if the slatee's kindness would be of no avail. Thanks, however to the disinterested tenderness of the village

schoolmaster, while the slave-merchant was collecting his human chattels he recovered, and on the 19th of April, 1797, set out. The travels of the next few weeks were not eventless. He passed through a country not quite unknown, though at that date not fully described, and saw much of the slave trade in all its horrors (p. 179). Among the most pitiful of these was his recognition, among the coffle with whom he journeyed to the coast, of several persons from whom only a few months before he had received such little kindnesses as lay in their power. Among them—such is the vicissitude of savage life—were the fugitive Kaartans who had offered to introduce him to the King of Bambarra at Sego; now they were on their way to a lifetime of slavery. Since then they had fallen captive to some robber's spear and bow.

At Pisanian, where in due time he arrived, his friends received him as one risen from the dead. All the traders on the Gambia had been informed that he had been murdered by the Moors of Ludamar, a rumour which Johnson, like Musa when placed in a similar position towards Dr. Livingstone seventy years later, had no doubt done his best, as cover for his own cowardice, to confirm. That pusillanimous negro, however, never reached Pisanian; he had either died or been enslaved, and with him disappeared the papers with which he had been entrusted. Everyone was now handsomely paid, and gifts were sent, as far as possible, to the few people who had befriended Park when friends meant life or death—a meal or a tightening of the traveller's belt.

Then the greatest of African explorers sailed from Goree on his way to England. In those days steamers were unknown, and, it is not necessary to add, telegraphs undreamt of. For more than two years no news had penetrated from Inner Africa to the London Association regarding their agent, except, indeed, that he had met the same fate as Major Houghton at the hands of the same ferocious fanatics. For a time, however, they had still to wait; for the usual course of commerce was, in those days,

A slave-merchant comes to the rescue. Park reaches the Gambia.

to load with slaves and then sail for America or the West Indies. To Antigua, therefore, the ship in which he had taken passage departed, and as the surgeon died of fever before leaving Africa, Park took his place. Yet, even on the slave-ship he was not without memories of the journey he had completed, for several of the captives he remembered having seen on various parts of his route. After all the perils he had endured it seemed that he was to perish at sea. The vessel, overladen, ill-found, and bad in itself, looked

once or twice in the course of the thirty-four days' passage to the West Indies as if it would founder. That doom was, however, spared her, and, in due time, exchanging into the ordinary packet which called at Antigua, he landed at Falmouth on the 22nd of December, 1797, after a journey remarkable in any circumstances, but, considering the trifling cost at which it was performed, the terrible hardships the traveller endured, and the result to which it led, perhaps the most extraordinary in all the story of Africa and its explorers.



BAMBARRA TYPES.

(From a Photograph by the Paris Society for Evangelical Missions.)





TIMBUCTOO: DISTANT VIEW.

## CHAPTER XI.

### THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO: A CHRONICLE OF FAILURES.

**Park's Return—A Strange Meeting—The First African "Lion" in London—Park as Author and Country Doctor—Disappointments—Second Expedition—Early Misfortunes—Hostilities with Native Thieves—Disease and Death—The Expedition Reduced to Five—Build a Boat at Sansanding—And Begin the Descent of the Niger—Their Truculent Proceedings Over a Course of One Thousand Miles—Near the River Port of Timbuktoo and yet do not Land—The Last Fight with the Natives—Death of Park and all his Companions—The Tale Told by Amadi Fatuma to Isaaco—Young Park—The Legends of the Explorer—Roentgen—The Dangers of Disguise—Caravan Tales—Adams and his Imposture—Riley—Peddie—Campbell—Gray and Dochard—A Chapter of Failures.**

EXCEPT that he had met his doom in the centre of Africa, no news had reached England regarding Park since the day he set out on his travels more than two years before. Nowadays a returning traveller with half his merits is, in spite of any other course his modesty might suggest—and the age is an advertising one—fanfaronaded every step of his homeward journey. The telegraph tells how he has arrived here, the special correspondent what he has to say there, until by the time he lands at Liverpool or Plymouth, or steams into Charing Cross, the interviewer and the illustrated journals have taken the heart out of any tale he may have to tell. But in 1797 the world moved more slowly; telegraphs were undreamt of, and posts slow and infrequent, while the enterprise of the press did not reach so far as to tap the tale of a traveller on his way from Inner Africa *vid*

the Gambia and Antigua. Accordingly when Park reached London by the Falmouth stage-coach early one morning in the Christmas week of 1797, he came perfectly unheralded by any species of puff-in-advance. Having some time to spare before he could wait upon his employers, the African Association, he spent it in the gardens of Montagu House, which had then been converted into the nucleus of the British Museum. It happened that by an accident the gates had been left open all night, so that when the curator peeped out soon after dawn he was annoyed to see someone sauntering about the grounds. By a curious coincidence this official was Mr. Dickson, Park's brother-in-law, who, since his departure for Africa, had been appointed to the post in question. Their mutual astonishment at meeting in such circumstances may well be imagined, for the

traveller was unaware of his relation being in London, while Dickson, like the rest of the world, had long mourned him as dead. In a few days, however, the fame of the home-comer

was the chief attraction of Sir Joseph Banks's Sunday evening parties, and Bryan Edwards, in whose house he lived, was compelled, in order to stay the public appetite for some



NIGER RIVER (LOKOJA) CHIEF'S CANOE.

(From a Photograph by Capt. Mockler-Ferryman.)

was not confined to so narrow a circle. The African "Lion" was until then unknown, and so valued accordingly that for several weeks the first captured specimen of a now familiar species

The first African "Lion."

account of the young Scotsman's explorations, to print a preliminary narrative for private circulation.\*

\* *Proceedings of the Association for Promoting Discovery in the Interior of Africa.* (1798.)

Meanwhile, in order to obtain greater leisure for preparing the fuller description on which he was engaged than the whirl of fashionable London afforded, Park took up his residence with his widowed mother and his brother at Fowlshields farm-house. In consequence of the many robberies he had suffered and the loss of the papers he had despatched to the coast with Johnson, he had few materials (save what his memory had retained) out of which to write the eagerly expected volume. Some greasy scraps of paper, the jetsam and flotsam that had escaped pillage and flood and tropical showers in the lining of his hat, were the most tangible notes on which he had to rely; while Major Rennell, the most accomplished geographer of his time, who undertook to construct the map of Park's travels, had to depend largely on dead reckonings and scattered memoranda in addition to the rough outline that Park drew from recollection. Bryan Edwards helped him much. Indeed, as the sketch that the accomplished historian of the West Indies had prepared was to a large extent incorporated in the narrative, the volume, though carefully revised by the ostensible author, was to some extent a joint production. Its success was great and immediate. In the closing years of last century the world had not the plethora of African travels it has since those days been asked to digest, though then, as now, it was dreaming airy dreams regarding the future of the continent that nobody believed to be either "dark" or "lost," except that its unknown wealth left everyone to form his own conclusions regarding the possibilities of its future.

But while writing his "Travels" Park had paid a great many visits to Dr. Anderson's surgery in Selkirk, and there renewed his friendship with the doctor's winsome daughter, whom he married on returning from London.

Disappointed in his great friends finding a post for him, the African explorer put a brass plate on his door, and settled down to the prosaic life of a medical practitioner, in the Byegate of

"Doctor  
Park of  
Peebles."

Peebles, a pleasant town which even yet does not claim to be an exciting place of residence. A century ago it must have been about as dull as Sego in the rainy season. "Paris for grandeur," the native is reported to have summed up his "Tale of Two Cities," "but Peebles for pleasure." Mrs. Park, who was a lady somewhat prone to gadding about, pronounced it, however, "silent as the grave," and her husband, a shy man, little addicted to society, and less to notoriety, found "a look through Mr. Oman's telescope and a glass of strong beer" quite a break in the monotony of his existence. His practice was not large nor very lucrative. Some of his patients did not and many of them could not pay, so that often, after a bleak ride for mile after mile in a dark night over the Southern hills, to attend a woman in her sorest hour of need, a piece of barley bannock and a drink of milk would be his only fee. His heart was not in his profession. He was dreaming of something less mechanical, a fact which before long was noted by the people whose grandsons reared a statue to him in the town where he led so uncongenial a life. "He was a dacent man, Dr. Park," an aged man who had been one of his unremunerative patients told the writer when a boy, "but he hadna muckle to say for himsel'."

Among the friends of those days was Sir Walter Scott, then Sheriff of the county, Park's brother Alexander serving as his deputy and general factotum. Calling on him one day, Scott found the traveller sitting by the banks of the Yarrow tossing stone after stone into a deep pool, watching with <sup>Still dream-</sup>anxious attention the time the <sup>ing of the</sup>bubbles took to rise to the surface. <sup>Niger.</sup>

Asked by his friend why he indulged in so idle an amusement, he replied that it was the way he calculated the depth of the African rivers before he risked fording them.

For a time he was in hopes of obtaining a Government appointment in the then young colony of New South Wales; but for some reason this, like other expectations, came to nothing, and poor Park returned from London

in bitter disappointment to resume work so toilsome that his friend "the Shirra,"\* after seeing something of the Peebles doctor's life, declared that there was only one being more hardly worked than a country surgeon, "and that was his horse." No wonder that he declared to Scott when the hour of deliverance came that, rather than resume such a life as that of the years now ended, he would cross Africa with pleasure. And by-and-by, eager like so many others in similar case to find a career more congenial than that which he had adopted before knowing all that the world held in store, the opportunity came. Park was now a married man with three children, and, as we gather from the few letters that have survived, feeling the daily pinch of poverty. His African earnings were spent, and the first rush of buyers for his book had abated. It is therefore more than likely that when the Peebles surgeon yielded once more to the "demon of unrest," by accepting the command of a new African expedition, he did so as much to provide for the future of himself and his family as from any idea that Timbuctoo was the goal which it was his duty to seek. Eight years had made a great difference in his condition of life.

But, now, he was no longer to travel poor and alone. He was to be a Government official, with soldiers to guard him, educated companions to help him, and ample Government funds to pay his way, a good salary, and, if he perished, a pension to his widow. In vain his friends expostulated with him on the risks he was running. Another winter or two of country practice, he declared, would quite as effectually shorten his life as a journey into Africa. He hoped, however, to return as scatheless from its dangers as before, with a reputation that would necessarily secure the occupation for which he longed.

The few months he had to spare before his departure were spent in practising astronomical observations, and in learning Arabic from Sid Ambak Bubi, of Mogador, who had

come from London to play the teacher in Peebles, and during his stay was the one sight of the place. Just before leaving Selkirk Park and Scott rode for several miles together, from Ashesteil over the wild, grassy hills that form the divide between the Tweed and the "dowie denes o' Yarrow," talking of many things, until on the top of Williamhope, a lofty ridge which overlooks the valley of the latter river, they stopped to part for the last time. It was autumn, and the mist, which to the poet's mind formed a fitting emblem of the hazy prospects that lay before his friend, floated slowly down the valley. A little ditch divided the moorland from the road which they were now to take in opposite directions. In stepping over it Park's horse stumbled. "I am afraid, Mungo," Scott remarked, "this is a bad omen." To which the ill-fated traveller, smiling, replied: "Freits (omens) follow those who look to them,"† and rode away into the mist for ever. But the "Shirra" was right, for a more ill-fated expedition never entered Africa. Nothing went right with it, Park experiencing what so many African travellers proved afterwards, that the man who succeeds as a solitary explorer too frequently fails when hampered by a host of many-humoured companions, and many additional troubles therefrom.

The ostensible object of the new venture which Park entered upon was to ascertain whether commercial intercourse of a profitable nature could be opened up with Central Africa. This, of course, involved exploration, but exploration as such was not included in his programme. His own theory, formed by many conversations with George Maxwell, a Scotsman who had been much in that part of Africa, was that the Niger terminated in the Congo. No one dreamed of the many sluggish rivers creeping into the Bights being the mouths of that vast current, and now that it had been clearly ascertained that it was not identical

Park's second expedition: Niger theories.

† "Thame luiks to freits, my master dear,  
Then freits will follow them."

*Ballad of Edom o' Gordon.*

\* Or Sheriff, the name by which Scott was known for many years in Selkirkshire.

with either the Senegal or the Gambia, this doctrine was as reasonable as those which held that it formed a branch of the Nile, or ended in the desert wastes of Wangara and Ghana. The plan which Park laid before the War Office in London\* was, after passing through Bondu, Kajaaga, and Falada, to construct a boat at Sego, in the kingdom of Bambarra, and then float in it down the Niger by way of Jenné and Kabara (the port of Timbuctoo), through Houssa, Nyffé (Nufé), Kashna, and other countries along its banks to Wangara,† where, according to the hypothesis expressed by Rennell, the river ended in what is known in Western America as a "sink." Thence, if this supposition should prove true, he would require to reach the sea by Tripoli, or Egypt, or Abyssinia, or the Bight of Benin. If not, he would follow its course, confident that it would bring him to the Atlantic by the Congo.

Five thousand pounds were put at the disposal of the expedition, and an ample outfit of stores, donkeys, arms, and other equipments was provided. A captain's commission was given Park, and to his second in command, Dr. Alexander Anderson (Mrs. Park's brother), the rank of lieutenant, in order to enable them to exact military obedience from the soldiers who were to be taken from the garrison of Goree, at that time in the possession of England. A fellow dalesman, George Scott, was added to the party as draughtsman, and several boat-builders and other workmen were taken in order to construct the craft in which the party were to—

"Trace the Niger to its source  
Far in its native wilds."

At Goree the troops, wearied with the monotony of their life, would have gladly enlisted *en*

\* Up to the year 1801 the business of the Colonies was carried on at the Home Office. After that date, up to the year 1854, it was a part of the War Office business; though in 1825 Lord Bathurst in a document before us is styled "His Majesty's Principal Secretary of State for the Colonies." Mungo Park's negotiations were with the Earl of Buckingham.

† There was a confusion on Park's part in thinking the river after passing Nufé continued to Kashna (Katsena) and the kingdom of Wangara.

*bloc*; but not a negro, whose services would have been more important to the expedition, could be persuaded to face the terrors of the Moorish country in the interior. Lieutenant Martyn, thirty-five privates, and two seamen were finally selected from what was unquestionably very poor material, considering the stuff out of which the African Corps was composed, the loose discipline that prevailed, and the enervating effects of the climate. To add to their initial misfortunes, the expedition had met with so many delays that the rainy season was at hand before it could reach the Gambia, on the 27th of April, 1805.

So large a party of Europeans was a mistake from the first. They were not numerous enough to force their way if there had been any resistance, yet they were too many not to arouse suspicion. Their considerable stores tempted marauders and cumbered their movements, while the difficulty of finding food for so large a party in health, and of attending to them when sick, soon convinced the commander that the task he had undertaken was very different from that which he had accomplished so successfully eight years before. However, partly by land and partly by water, over a country much the same as that which he traversed alone, Park advanced with his mixed cavalcade. For a time all went well. To most of them the life was novel, and as everybody was glad to start, even the depressing influence of the wet season did not damp their spirits. The Borderers sang the songs of their fatherland as they gaily rode to their graves (p. 216), and even the soldiers, freed from the daily dread of the cat-o'-nine-tails, forgot for a time the rum they had left behind them.

But in spite of this imposing array nobody seems to have been greatly impressed by it. The black kings were as greedy, their subjects as thieving, as ever. At one place they would be compelled to pay for water, and at the next spot, the villagers, fearing that they were not strong enough to take this step, would bale out the wells in advance of their arrival. At times violent altercations between village chiefs

of that man is worse than the first, for naturally suspicion is aroused regarding the motives of a traveller trying to disguise himself.

Yet, again and again—such is the innate vanity of even an intelligent man on the subject of his facility in speaking a particular language—the attempt has been made, almost invariably with the same result, and not unfrequently, as the fate of Davidson, and still more recently of Douls and the German explorer employed by the African Association, too abundantly testifies, ending in the death of the over-confident adventurer. Even Gerhard Rohlfs, though avowedly a renegade, was at once fixed upon as a shoe-wearer, by the corns on his toes; and I have been told by Hadjis that Burton and others who have made the Mecca pilgrimage were perfectly well known not to be what they pretended. But, as they had “testified” and performed all the prescribed forms, it was not consistent with a faith which is eager for proselytes to interfere with them and thereby bring a scandal upon religion.

All this leads up to the fact that Roentgen, who in the spring of 1809 left Mogador to join the Soudan caravan, was murdered soon after leaving that town, it is believed by his own guides. European merchants residing in Morocco collected many accounts of the route which Roentgen intended to take. One of them was from Hadji Mohammed, who had met Park in Sansanding and offered to conduct him to Timbuctoo, which, this trader declared, had since its recent conquest by the Fulahs become less fanatical than of old, while the profit of the trade to the Moors was so great that, in a year or two, five thousand dollars invested in European goods would return to the speculator twenty thousand or more.

By-and-by the interest in Timbuctoo was further aroused by the story of an Anglo-American sailor named Robert Adams, who professed to have actually visited the city. He had, like many before and many after him, been wrecked on the sandy shore between Morocco

and Cape Blanco, and, with the rest of the crew, enslaved (p. 102). In the course of this captivity Adams pretended that he had made the journey to Timbuctoo with his master, and as he was an uneducated man, his information was put into volume form by the Secretary of the African Association. Its publication aroused a heated controversy, and the book was translated into various languages—some critics holding that Adams was truthful, others as decidedly declaring that he was a gross impostor. After the lapse of eighty years the world has universally arrived at the latter opinion. His narrative contains much curious information about Sus and the country south of it; but it is now certain that neither he nor Scott, a kindred pretender, was ever at Timbuctoo, that distinction, as we shall see in the course of the next chapter, being due to another Christian slave of a much earlier date, anything Adams has to say about it being derived from the talk of the Arabs among whom he was held prisoner. In reality this man was Benjamin Rose, a native of Hudson, near New York, but a deserter from a British man-of-war, who during the whole of his stay among the Arabs was never far from the rest of the shipwrecked crew of the *Charles*.\*

Riley, the master of another American vessel wrecked on the same coast in 1815, who endured sufferings very similar to those of his predecessor, also collected much information regarding Timbuctoo from the conversation of persons who had been there.

Captain Tuckey, in order to test Park's belief that the Congo was the seaward end of the Niger, penetrated, in 1816, past the falls of that river, and returned convinced that the theory was erroneous, only to die with most of his companions in the swamps of the lower river.

Major Peddie, who with a hundred men

\* “The Narrative of Robert Adams, a Sailor who was wrecked on the Western Coast of Africa in 1810,” etc. (1816). In their “Bibliography of Morocco” (R. G. S., 1892), Sir Lambert Playfair and the present writer have given the evidence convicting Adams of fraud.

Tuckey,  
Peddie,  
Campbell,  
and Gray.

and the camp-followers of the expedition delayed its progress, these people being only too **Misfortunes multiply.** happy to pay off old scores by misrepresenting the state of matters when it appeared that this could be done with safety. Park also appears less to advantage on this than on his former journey. Success had not improved his temper; he bore adversity with dignity: like many who have done the same, prosperity was too much for his head. Backed by a force of armed men, he seems to have grown imperious, to have talked of burning villages, and even of shooting natives, on provocation which, remembering the provocations he had borne so meekly on his first journey, appears scarcely justifiable. Theft was unusually frequent. At Konkromo gold was being washed out of the rusty-coloured sands of the Bafing (p. 135), melted in sun-dried clay crucibles, heated by the application of bellows to a charcoal fire, and the ingots formed by pouring the melted metal into furrows, twisted by pincers into the form of rings. But it would appear that wealth had corrupted their morals, for Park, with a sweeping characterisation not usual with him, pronounced them "all thieves." At Keminum, a fortified place, the inhabitants were "thieves to a man," and, owing possibly to their strong walls, excelled in impudence also. Of all the robbers with which the place abounded, the most daring were the thirty sons of the reigning monarch. These princes, regarding themselves above all law, pursued their depredations almost openly, and with such success that in the course of two days they managed to steal four great-coats, a large bundle of beads, a musket, a pair of pistols, and a number of other articles, some of which could be of little use to them. On resuming his journey, nearly the whole town being in the rear of the expedition, ready to pounce upon anything that lay handy, one of the gang of thieves snatched at a bag, and while Park and Martyn tried to recover it, another made off with a musket. One of the king's sons held Park in conversation while his brother decamped with a fowling-piece.

Park thereupon ordered them to be fired on, but Anderson, more prudent, thought it advisable not to rouse the king's vengeance by an act so high-handed for an offence regarded by him as venial, though soon after one of the natives, darting from a hiding-place upon some article which took his fancy, was wounded in the leg by Park himself. At Bangssi the king recognised the "poor white man" in his new capacity, and was profoundly suspicious of the circumstances that had effected the change in his surroundings—a suspicion not even soothed by the sight of the gifts that were laid before him.

But, worse than thieves and unfriendly kings, the rainy season had no sooner set in than the men, their constitutions **The expedition begins to perish.** weakened by a long stay in an African climate and the debauchery of an African station, began to sicken. Day after day they dropped by the way, and were left to die or to recover. The novelty of the adventure had now worn off, and while the officers in command were sustained by the expectation of making great discoveries, the soldiers soon lost interest in anything. Scenery, the source of the Niger, Timbuctoo, gold-washing, weaving, all were alike idle sights to men dying of fever. Even a glimpse of the Niger at Bamaku (p. 204), a visit from Park's old friend Karfa Taura, the slatee (p. 206), and a pleasant meeting with the old schoolmaster who had cared for him at Kamalia, failed to arouse them. Of the thirty-eight men who had left Goree soon only seven remained. Some were dead, others had been left behind, but as none ever reached the coast, all of them had, no doubt, expired within a few days of falling ill. They were now five hundred miles in the interior, and, for the first time in the history of Africa, a party of Europeans had penetrated thus far.

The Sego king was, however, as unwilling to meet Park as ever. He accepted the white man's presents, but as Isaaco, the interpreter who had been sent with them, declared, he drew triangles and squares with his finger on



the sand all the time he was negotiating an audience, evidently with the design of making a charm against the evil designs of the newcomers—shunning every proposal that could lead to a personal interview with him.

Continuing therefore past Sego, Park came to Sansanding, where he had permission to build a boat in which to descend the Niger. This place is a large town, full of traders, whose jealousy Park aroused by opening a sale of European goods. Indeed, so virulent was the enmity when business grew brisk that heavy bribes were offered to King Mansong either to kill the whites or to send them out of the country. On the 16th of November, the *Joliba*, as he called the schooner which he had patched up out of some half-rotten native boats, was ready. Meanwhile, deaths had continued, and day by day even the stoutest of the party began to show more and more marked symptoms of weakness under the African sun. Nor was the native beer sold in the Sansanding bazaar altogether blameless for the mortality. It was a hard-drinking age, and Lieutenant Martyn was perhaps not the most favourable specimen of the kind of soldier who served on the African coast. Even at Sansanding he seems to have found materials for a carouse. In a letter written to a comrade at Goree, we get a picture of the kind of men who were selected to help a great geographical expedition. "Whitebread's beer," it was the opinion of this explorer, "is nothing to what we get at this place, as I feel by my head this morning, having been drinking all night with a Moor, and ended by giving him an excellent thrashing." It is clear that from this sort of companion little sympathetic assistance could be expected. But it was not until his brother-in-law died that Park felt himself, as he wrote, "a second time lonely and friendless amidst the wilds of Africa."

By the time the *Joliba* was launched the party had been reduced to three Europeans, besides the commander and Martyn, and of the three—all soldiers—one was in a state of mental derangement.

On the 12th of November, 1805, the party set

out on their voyage, with the object of tracing the river to its termination, and though to some of his friends Park wrote in a more desponding tone, his letters to his wife express confidence that in leaving Sansanding he was "on his way home." Here Isaaco, his interpreter, left him, carrying in safety to the Gambia his letters and journals; and then for a long time nothing more was heard of Park. Still, he had gone through so many trials, and communications in those days were so infrequent, that it was not until 1806 that the rumours reaching the coast gave his friends uneasiness. Then, as these grew more and more alarming, Isaaco was despatched to ascertain what he could regarding the tales brought from far and near by the slave-traders of the Gambia. By-and-by the messenger returned, and though something has been ascertained since then, the story brought back by Isaaco remains, be it true or only partially true, substantially all we know of the fate of Park. Leaving Sansanding with Martyn and three English soldiers—one of whom soon afterwards died—three slaves, and a man named Amadi Fatuma, who agreed to go as far as Houssa (p. 53), their vessel was, as might have been expected, often attacked during its downward voyage. In these encounters great numbers of natives were killed, which so incensed the people against them that they were afraid to land to buy provisions, this part of the work being effected by Amadi, whose personal acquaintance with the history of the voyage ended at Houssa, where he left. It does not appear, from this report, that any effort was made to accomplish what so many previous explorers had longed to do. For they passed close to Kabara, the Niger port of Timbuctoo (p. 121), without landing to visit the city, only a few miles back from the river, a fight attended with the death of many of the natives having occurred off this spot.\* According to Amadi's account, the

The descent  
of the  
Niger.

\* This is the accepted tale. But it is known that in the month of March, 1806, a letter was received at Mogador, in Morocco, by Sidi El Abes Buhellal Fasi from his liberated slave at Timbuctoo, which related how a

trouble began soon after leaving Houssa, by the anger of the Yauri King at not receiving presents from the party. To exact what he considered his dues, the king sent a force of men to a village called Bussa, which Park had to pass. Here he was attacked with lances,

men, and, jumping into the river, was drowned. Martyn followed his example, and met his death in trying to escape. The only slave who remained in the boat, seeing the natives persisted in throwing weapons at the canoe without ceasing, stood **The end.**



"THE BORDERERS SANG . . . AS THEY GAILY RODE TO THEIR GRAVES" (p. 212).

pikes, arrows, and stones, defending himself for a long time, until, seeing that there was no escape, Park took hold of one of the white

boat with two or three Christians in it arrived from the West at Kabara. "One of them was a tall man, who stood erect in the boat, which displayed a white flag. The Kabara people did not, however, understand the signal to mean peace, and no one went to the boat, although it remained at anchor before Kabara the whole day till night. In the morning it was gone."

up and said to them, "Stop throwing now; you see nothing in the canoe, and nobody but myself, therefore cease. Take me and the canoe, but don't kill me!" an advice which they accepted.

Some not unjustifiable doubt has been expressed as to the exact truth of this story. But in its main details there is no reason for holding that it is not fairly accurate. At all

events, the little subsequent information that has been obtained does not materially alter the tale collected by Isaaco. For many years Park's widow held to the belief that her husband was a prisoner somewhere in the interior of Africa. This idea she transmitted to her three sons, the second of whom landed in 1827 on the Gold Coast, with the intention of

whether the canoemen who "barred the river" were inspired by hostile intentions or simply by a very natural curiosity. In this truculent fashion they shot through the country of the Moors into that of the Touaregs, a fierce Berber race, until, in the centre of the old Songhai Empire, some seventy miles south of Gogo, the former



BAMBARRA INTERIOR.

ascertaining the fate of his father. But he, also hot-headed, and, it is feared, not the person best suited for such a task, disappeared in the Dark Continent soon after leaving the place from which he had set out on his ill-considered errand. Later accounts collected by travellers who have gone over this route confirm Amadi's story as told to Isaaco. During the thousand miles of the voyage, the evil counsels of Martyn—possibly also the effect of the climate on Park's brain—had full swing. Right and left the *Joliba* party fired, often recklessly, and always without considering

capital, the keel of the vessel, in passing through the Bussa rapids, stuck fast in a cleft rock, and they were at the mercy of the hostile crowds on the bank. There is, however, no ground for believing that robbery was the original intention of the natives. It was vengeance they wanted for the many deaths which the guns fitted at the sides of the *Joliba* had caused. It is idle to try to acquit Park of conduct that was at once reckless and inhuman. He paid for it with his life and the lives of his companions. Laing, one of his successors in the exploration of the

Upper Niger, was killed near Timbuctoo by a tribe of Berabish in revenge for the slaughter inflicted on them by "the Wild Beast," as they termed Park. Even when Barth visited the country and encountered the same people, more than fifty years later, he ran some risk of paying for the misdeeds of his predecessor. For one of the men whom Park, under evil counsels and the panic which, we are willing to believe, was due to a disordered mind, had wounded, was still alive, and could recall to his tribesmen the lives that the guns of the first white men on the Niger had cost their village. Many years afterwards, Park's book of logarithms, long preserved by the natives, was brought down to the coast, and presented by Sir John Glover to the Royal Geographical Society, by whom it is preserved as a precious relic of a man who was the first British explorer of Central Africa, and, in many respects, one of the greatest (p. 221).

Park encountered obstacles that were then new; he overcame difficulties that until then were not even dreamt of, and paved the way for others provided with greater resources and the experiences that he won at the cost of such toil, privation, and loss of life. We have therefore bestowed on his pioneer travels a greater space than can be afforded to explorations of wider extent. For he first familiarised the world with much that in a few years had become stale, if not unprofitable.

The death of Park, instead of damping the ardour for African exploration, rather stimulated it. Romantic young men were eager to share in adventures of which they knew not the end, and ambitious ones anxious to succeed where others failed. Indeed, at the very period when Park was in

Nicholls.

Africa, Nicholls had been attempting to reach Houssa, on the Niger, from New Calabar, in the Bight of Benin; but he had not proceeded far on his way before he was seized with fever and died.

The narratives sent to England by merchants and consuls in Morocco, of the regular journeys made by the Moorish caravans across

the desert from Mogador and Agadir to Timbuctoo and the Soudan generally, led the African Association to think whether a traveller well acquainted with Arabic might not be found capable of trying this route. A young gentleman of gentle birth, strong constitution, good character, and many accomplishments was recommended to them by Blumenbach, the famous anatomist. For reasons connected with the plan he proposed, his real name was withheld, though it is now known to have been Roentgen. His idea was that, by passing himself off as a Mohammedan, he might

Roentgen :  
the danger  
of disguise.

be enabled to journey without exciting remark. Like many others, he forgot that no man not born and bred in Islam, and speaking Arabic as his mother-tongue, can ever quite escape revealing himself by some slip in manner or by some tale-telling accent in speech. The writer is aware that there are many so-called instances to the contrary. But, apart from the fact that some of them are not authentic, in so far that the disguise never imposed on anyone, they were undertaken in circumstances that, as on a Mecca pilgrimage, which is necessarily shared in by Moslems speaking many tongues, enable even a European, tolerably familiar with the religious forms, to pass muster in a crowd. Again, in a mosque, where the genuflexions are rigidly prescribed, and no one talks, an Oriental-looking Christian might easily enough escape detection. But it is very different when the journey is undertaken through a particular country, where every word or movement of the stranger is noticed by the population. As M. Duveyrier, an experienced North African traveller, whose opinion on such matters is worthy of every respect, declares, no man, no ordinary European traveller, can possibly deceive them. The mispronunciation of a word, a particular accent, an awkward motion, a blunder in some ceremony, or ignorance of something that he ought to have known, at once reveals the imposture, even if no trap be laid for the sham Moslem. Then the latter fate

of that man is worse than the first, for naturally suspicion is aroused regarding the motives of a traveller trying to disguise himself.

Yet, again and again—such is the innate vanity of even an intelligent man on the subject of his facility in speaking a particular language—the attempt has been made, almost invariably with the same result, and not unfrequently, as the fate of Davidson, and still more recently of Douls and the German explorer employed by the African Association, too abundantly testifies, ending in the death of the over-confident adventurer. Even Gerhard Rohlfs, though avowedly a renegade, was at once fixed upon as a shoe-wearer, by the corns on his toes; and I have been told by Hadjis that Burton and others who have made the Mecca pilgrimage were perfectly well known not to be what they pretended. But, as they had “testified” and performed all the prescribed forms, it was not consistent with a faith which is eager for proselytes to interfere with them and thereby bring a scandal upon religion.

All this leads up to the fact that Roentgen, who in the spring of 1809 left Mogador to join the Soudan caravan, was murdered soon after leaving that town, it is believed by his own guides. European merchants residing in Morocco collected many accounts of the route which Roentgen intended to take. One of them was from Hadji Mohammed, who had met Park in Sansanding and offered to conduct him to Timbuctoo, which, this trader declared, had since its recent conquest by the Fulahs become less fanatical than of old, while the profit of the trade to the Moors was so great that, in a year or two, five thousand dollars invested in European goods would return to the speculator twenty thousand or more.

By-and-by the interest in Timbuctoo was further aroused by the story of an Anglo-American sailor named Robert Adams, who professed to have actually visited the city. He had, like many before and many after him, been wrecked on the sandy shore between Morocco

and Cape Blanco, and, with the rest of the crew, enslaved (p. 102). In the course of this captivity Adams pretended that he had made the journey to Timbuctoo with his master, and as he was an uneducated man, his information was put into volume form by the Secretary of the African Association. Its publication aroused a heated controversy, and the book was translated into various languages—some critics holding that Adams was truthful, others as decidedly declaring that he was a gross impostor. After the lapse of eighty years the world has universally arrived at the latter opinion. His narrative contains much curious information about Sus and the country south of it; but it is now certain that neither he nor Scott, a kindred pretender, was ever at Timbuctoo, that distinction, as we shall see in the course of the next chapter, being due to another Christian slave of a much earlier date, anything Adams has to say about it being derived from the talk of the Arabs among whom he was held prisoner. In reality this man was Benjamin Rose, a native of Hudson, near New York, but a deserter from a British man-of-war, who during the whole of his stay among the Arabs was never far from the rest of the shipwrecked crew of the *Charles*.\*

Riley, the master of another American vessel wrecked on the same coast in 1815, who endured sufferings very similar to those of his predecessor, also collected much information regarding Timbuctoo from the conversation of persons who had been there.

Captain Tuckey, in order to test Park's belief that the Congo was the seaward end of the Niger, penetrated, in 1816, past the falls of that river, and returned convinced that the theory was erroneous, only to die with most of his companions in the swamps of the lower river.

Major Peddie, who with a hundred men

\* “The Narrative of Robert Adams, a Sailor who was wrecked on the Western Coast of Africa in 1810,” etc. (1816). In their “Bibliography of Morocco” (R. G. S., 1892), Sir Lambert Playfair and the present writer have given the evidence convicting Adams of fraud.

Tuckey,  
Peddie,  
Campbell,  
and Gray.

and two hundred animals had started from the mouth of the Rio Nuñez, midway between the Sierra and the Gambia, intent on solving the same problem, perished of fever before he had gone far on his road; and Captain Campbell, who succeeded to the

Futa-Jallon; the few which remained were scarcely sufficient to convey their remaining baggage during the retreat to the coast. Even that little was plundered by the people who had refused him permission to proceed. The expedition was obliged to pay a heavy



SENEGAMBIAN THICKET.

(From a Photograph by the Paris Society for Evangelical Missions.)

command, though he arrived at the Fulah country, met with luck scarcely better. The beasts of burden perished under the climate, from bee-stings, and the unskilfulness of their attendants, in the course of the march and during the four months' detention by the suspicious Almami,\* or Fulah sovereign of

contribution to the Almami for permission to return by the way it had come, to recross rivers which it had passed with great difficulty, and, in short, endured such persecutions that to put an end to them, and to render his march easier, Captain Campbell caused the most of his goods to be burned, the muskets to be broken, and the gunpowder to be thrown into the river. The naturalist of the expedition died on the return journey. Campbell

\* A corruption of Al-Iman, the Arabic words for Sovereign Pontiff. It is used by many of the Moham-medan people of this part of Africa.

and several of his officers did not long survive their arrival at Kakundi, and Lieutenant Stokoe, a naval officer who assumed the command of the expedition thus cruelly decimated, perished as he was on the eve of making another attempt to retrieve its fortunes. They were all buried under an orange-tree at the factory of Mr. Bethmann, an English merchant residing there.

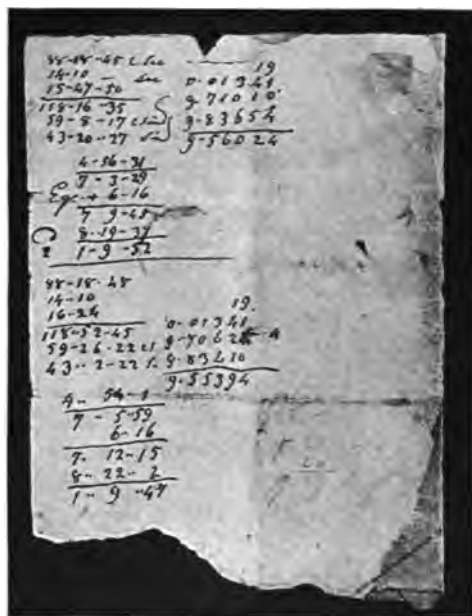
Major Gray, with Dr. Dochart, made in 1818 another effort to retrieve the fortunes of the party. Travelling by way of the Gambia, through Wuli, Bondu, and the neighbouring countries, he was forced to return without having accomplished anything in the way of exploration. To avoid Timbo, the capital of the terrible Almami, the expedition sailed up the Gambia, and traversing Wuli and Gabu arrived in Bondu. Here, however, the party fared no better than its predecessors in Timbo, for the king and people were

equally malevolent, demanding from Major Gray, on the pretext of some old debt due from the British Government, such a quantity of goods that the expedition was soon stripped, and obliged to send to Senegal for more, in the hope of being permitted, by means of these, to continue the journey thus rudely interrupted. Gray covered, indeed, to a large extent the ground which Park had made familiar, though the suspicion which was everywhere engendered regarding the objects

and intentions of the party showed that, in the course of the thirteen years since that traveller's death, the unkindly feelings of the inhabitants had not suffered any improvement. Dr. Dochart travelled as far as Sego in order to obtain the king's permission to visit that region. But, after an endless amount of dilatoriness, he was compelled to return to die on the Senegal without having received what he had been sent to obtain. Meanwhile, the expedition had been melting away by death and disease, to which the monotony of an inactive life greatly conduced.

All of these parties had been at Government expense. All of them were too large, with too many Europeans; and none of them were conducted with anything like ability. They were, in short, accentuated editions of Park's last venture, without its redeeming merits; and, if they did not meet with its tragic end,

entailed as much cost in life and treasure, and were, even as failures, much more decided than that unfortunate attempt to open up Africa. It is impossible even to accord them the compliment which Charles the Fifth passed upon the disastrous defence of Rhodes. For though the journeys with which this chapter has been occupied were, one and all, labour and life and money thrown away, their treasures were not "well lost." They were wasted to almost no purpose.



SHEET OF LOGARITHMS BY MUNGO PARK.  
(By permission of the R. G. S.)



## CHAPTER XII.

## THE SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO: A TALE OF SUCCESS.

A New Era in African Exploration—The British Government Takes It Up, and the African Association Surrenders the Self-Imposed Task—Major Laing Reaches Timbuctoo, and is Murdered on his Way Back—The Fulahs and their Conquests—The Influence of these in the Civilisation of the Upper Niger—The Rise of René Caillié—His Early Struggles—His Residence Among the Moors—Assumes the Garb and Faith of Mohammedanism—Leaves Kakundi with the Intention of Reaching Timbuctoo—His Adventures on the Way—Five Months' Illness at Timé—Reaches Jenné—Description of that City—Sails Down the Niger to Kabara—Resides in Timbuctoo—Crosses the Desert—Arnan—Taflet—Crosses the Atlas—Féz—Mequinez—Rabat—Tangier—France—Reception of Caillié's Tale in Europe—The Controversy that Ensued—Revival of the Story of Paul Imbert—The Last Days of Caillié.

THESE repeated failures disheartened in no way those who had charged themselves with the opening up of Africa. The work, it is true, gradually passed out of the hands of private individuals, and, henceforth, instead of the African Association defraying the cost of the expeditions, they became a charge upon the Imperial revenue. Hence, in the new circumstances to which we have alluded, the travellers sent into the unknown were, naturally, more frequently military and naval officers than the civilians with whom in earlier days Sir Joseph Banks and his associates had to deal.

Among the new men who now appeared was Alexander Gordon Laing, born at Edinburgh in 1794, and, like his father, for a time a teacher of classics in that city. The early years of the present century were, however, stirring ones for a youth of spirit, and it so happened that, inflamed with the prevailing military ardour of the times, young Laing, deserting his pupils, made his way to Barbadoes, where a maternal uncle, Colonel Gordon, was in command. Through his interest he procured a commission in the York Light Infantry, and with it saw some service in the outskirts of the Empire. However, it was not as a soldier that his career was to be distinguished; for, in 1823, while on the West Coast of Africa, he was sent on a mission to the country of the Sulimas, and advanced as far as the source of the Rokel or Sierra Leone River, and ascertaining that the Niger was not more than 1,600 feet above the

sea, dispelled the fast-vanishing notion that it was in any way connected with the Nile.

In 1825 he began the journey which was to immortalise him. Following the example set by two previous explorers—whose travels we shall for convenience' sake treat of in the next chapter—he abandoned the unhealthy route by the West Coast, the region behind which was now getting very well known, in favour of the healthier country in the North. The starting-point of his new expedition was accordingly the ancient city of Tripoli, then as now, after being disputed by many a rival Power, in the hands of the Turks (p. 23). Passing south-west to Ghardames and the oases of Tuat, he boldly entered the desert that lay between this comparatively fertile region and the upper water of the Niger. Over this country roam the Touaregs, a section of the widespread Berbers, the aboriginal people who seem to have overrun nearly all of North Africa previous to the arrival of the Arab invaders. No wilder race of nomads exists. Ever on the move, compelled by the necessity of finding fresh green spots for their flocks and camels, they are the robbers whom Arabs and whites alike fear. Sixteen days after leaving Tripoli, Laing fell in with a party of these marauders, and, as we learn from a letter he managed to send to the British Consul in Tripoli, barely escaped with his life. He was left for dead, bleeding from twenty-four wounds; though, thanks to a sound constitution, and the dry, healthy desert air, he recovered so far that he was able to

resume his journey, and actually to enter Timbuctoo on the 18th of August, 1826.\* In this city he was permitted to remain undisturbed for a month; but by this time the fanaticism of the ruling class had been roused, and he was ordered to withdraw. In no way unwilling, as there was nothing more to be learnt, he obeyed a mandate that he could not resist, and passed beyond its gates on the 22nd of September, relying upon the promise of certain Touaregs, or, as others will have it, the Arabised Berabish people, to guard him across the desert. The exact particulars regarding his fate are not known, the native accounts varying very much. But from what could be picked up from report, it is believed that he was betrayed by his own guide as the countryman of Park, who had a few years before inflicted such punishment on the people, who now took their vengeance by murdering him, near the town of Aruan—where he is still remembered as “El Raïs,” the Captain—two days after leaving Timbuctoo. Every effort was made to recover his papers,† but all in vain, so that the tale of the first Briton—to reach the long-sought-for city must for ever remain of the shadowiest description, the only substantial record of his labours being the narrative of his first expedition.‡

Laing's death was owing largely to the disturbed condition of the country, due to the remarkable revolutions then in progress in the region through part of which he travelled. These were the Fulah conquests. In the course of the previous pages we have every now and again been coming across this remarkable race, and, at the time when Park was travelling in the same region, we gain glimpses of it in “the wars” which were so often interfering with his plans. These people (pp. 12, 13), though dark, owing to

their long residence in Africa, and frequent intermixture with the Negroes, are, however, undeniably of a different origin from the latter, though the land they came from is always likely to remain one of the many mysteries of an old and mysterious continent. They are in all probability an Asiatic race, who, entering Africa by the narrow Isthmus of Suez, have gradually spread across their new domain until—not taking into account many border races with whom they have, more or less, intermixed—we find them dispersed over the entire Soudan, from Senegal in the west to Darfur in the east, and from Timbuctoo and Houssa on the Niger to Yoruba and Adamawa in the south, though invariably keeping to the open country, being a pastoral people, and for this reason also shunning the moist, forest-covered regions in the vicinity of the sea-coast. But from the very circumstances of their life they were always a wandering people § (p. 224).

The first glimpse we have of them—though by that time they must have been many centuries in Africa—is in an old Arabic work of the fourteenth century, which describes bands of them as leaving the Futa-Jallon country in Senegambia and spreading over much of the region to the eastward, and

The Fulahs  
and their  
conquests.

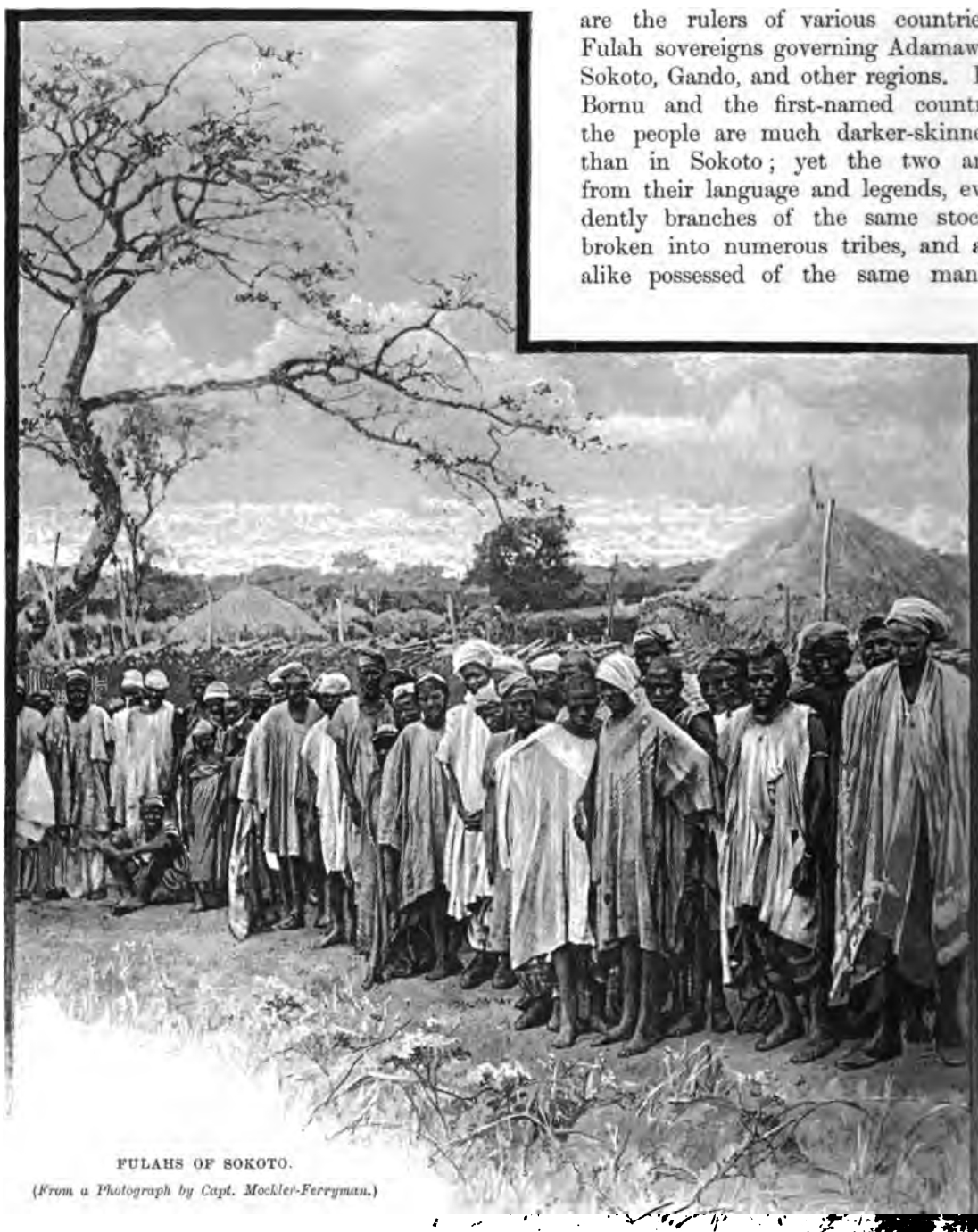
§ Their nomadic life is well exemplified in the many names which they bear throughout the region occupied by them. The root “Ful” means red, to distinguish their colour from the prevailing black of their neighbours. Fulbe is the plural of the singular Pulo. Among the Arabs they are called Fulan, Fulata (plural), Fulani, Felati, Fulania, Felatia. The Touaregs know them as Ifellan, Afullan, Ifullan, Fulan, Ifilanen, and Afilan. Among the Houssa the terms Fillani, Fullani, and Bafillantschi are current. The Musgu of Southern Bornu call them Maplata and Maplatakal, and the Kanuri of the same kingdom Felata. Fula is the word among the Mandingoes, Agai among the Dschumu of Yoruba, Tschilmigo among the Mossi, Kambumana among the Zurescha, Folani or Fulga among the Gurma, Bale among the Bafut, Fato—that is, “the white men”—among the Ham, Abati among the Dschuku, and Goi in the Nufé country; while the whites describe them variously as Fulah, Fulbe, Pouls (Peulhs), Fellata, Fulon, Futa, etc. Krause: *Das Ausland* (1883), p. 181, and “Ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis der fulischen Sprache in Afrika,” in “Mittheilungen der Riebeck'schen Niger Expedition” (1884).

\* This is known from a letter addressed from Timbuctoo to Colonel Warrington, the British Consul at Tripoli.

† *Quarterly Review*, vol. xlii. (1830); Oskar Lenz: “Timbuktu” (1884), vol. ii., pp. 91–93.

‡ “Travels in the Temanee, Kooranko, and Soolemana Countries in Western Africa.” (1825.)

are the rulers of various countries, Fulah sovereigns governing Adamawa, Sokoto, Gando, and other regions. In Bornu and the first-named country the people are much darker-skinned than in Sokoto; yet the two are, from their language and legends, evidently branches of the same stock, broken into numerous tribes, and all alike possessed of the same manly



PULAHS OF SOKOTO.

(From a Photograph by Capt. Mockler-Ferryman.)

every account we have obtained since bears out this description. It thus happens that nowhere are they a nation. Everywhere they are scattered races of conquerors, who, though in a minority,

bearing, intelligence, commercial aptitude, and—compared with the natives around them—

even trustworthiness. But what renders the Fulahs most remarkable among the races of the Soudan is that their hair is long, their features are almost European, and their complexion, as in the case of the Sokoto section, is not much darker than olive. Their intelligence is also far above the negro stamp. They are industrious traders, notorious for their participation in what was once the chief traffic of the Soudan, but now, since the buying and selling of human beings are reduced to smaller dimensions, equally energetic in more legitimate branches of commerce. They are weavers of coarse but durable fabrics, and their iron-, silver-, and leather-work is famed throughout West Africa; while their droves of cattle and their well-tilled fields suggest possibilities for the Fulah which the most hopeful of philanthropists must sometimes despair of where the coast negroes are concerned.

And above all, the Fulahs are Moslems of the strictest order. In every village there is a mosque and a school, and to the proselytising zeal of Othman-dan-Fodio, a Fulah teacher, may be traced the fact that while the Songhai Empire has now fallen in pieces, and the people have relapsed into barbarism, and Bornu and the once powerful Houssa States have either lost much of their former military status or sunk into a condition little better than paganism, the Fulahs have preserved all their former influence, and in many instances even increased it. Nor is it to their discredit that ever since their conversion to Mohammedanism they have remained steadfast to the faith which they were among the first of the Soudan races to accept.

Yet up to the end of last century the Fulahs, scattered in comparatively small bands among older and in general heathen people, had hard work to hold their own against the more homogeneous races by whom they were surrounded. To Othman is due the movement by which, under the fanaticism of religious zeal, they entered upon a course of conquest that spread their power over a wide area of Africa. At first they met with reverses everywhere. It was

only when, taught by experience, they got hammered into a semi-disciplined force, that success attended their arms. From Guber, the home of their Mahdi Othman, they poured forth, until, from Lake Tchad to the Atlantic, most of the Soudan acknowledged their supremacy and accepted their creed and the approach of civilisation which has everywhere been the result of the displacement of paganism by Islam. Order and what might be called good government prevailed until the death of Othman in 1818, when the empire he had built up was divided between his son



RENÉ CAILLIÉ.

Mohammed Bello-dan-Othman and his nephew Abd Allah-dan-Fodio, the former inheriting or seizing Sokoto and the country to the east, and the latter taking the Niger provinces, of which Gando was the capital, while Massina and a wide region west of the Niger which had been conquered shortly before the death of Othman by Ahmadu-ben-Mohammed Labbo, one of his captains, became the fief of that soldier. Civil war followed between Bello and his brother Atego, though the contest was only of brief duration.\* Labbo's

\* De Crozals : "Les Peulhs" (1883), pp. 145-166.

state lay between Sego (which is still governed by his descendants) and Timbuctoo, and the latter city in the end submitted to him, though in time the Fulah rule had to give place to that of the Touaregs. Between 1857 and 1861 El Hadj Omar still further extended the Fulah conquests by bringing the powerful states of Kaarta and Sego under his control. A seventh Fulah kingdom was for a time established by Ahmadu Checkhu, King of Sego, the son of Omar, who compelled the Damel to evacuate Kayor, hitherto regarded as Joloff territory, and but for the intervention of the French between 1883 and 1887, which ended in his country becoming a "Protectorate," he would have absorbed all the other states owned by that people. In short, at this hour the Fulahs are masters of almost all the region between Cape Verd and Lake Tchad, over thirty degrees of longitude, between the fourth and fifteenth degrees of north latitude—that is to say, about 80,000 or 90,000 square leagues of country own the Fulahs as their more or less undisputed lords; and it is by no means certain that the expansion of this remarkable people has come to a close. The old religious fervour has not yet died away, even under the damper of a Christian "Protectorate," and it may be that in time every village from the mouth of the Senegal to that of the Niger will, under their influence, possess, as does the Central Soudan, a mosque where may be "heard," to use the words of Mr. Thomson, "in the grey dawn of the tropic morning the stentorian voice of the negro Mueddin, announcing that prayer is better than sleep; bringing from out the faintly illumined houses the devout Moslems to humble their faces in the dust and acknowledge their utter faith in and dependence on Allah."

It was during this remarkable movement that Laing visited Timbuctoo, and while it was still vivid with its early zeal that the travellers whom we shall presently have to treat of made their journeys through the kingdom under the rule of Othman's descendants, of whose policy and people they have so frequently to speak.

The activity of the English in African exploration was not permitted to pass unnoticed by the French. For <sup>Some French</sup> ~~a~~ time the long Napoleonic wars <sup>explorers</sup> ~~explorers~~ prevented any systematic attention being bestowed on such peaceful pursuits as the exploration of countries from which so little "glory" could be obtained as the regions behind the uninviting shores of West Africa. Eighty-four years after the journey of Campagnon, an official of the Senegal Company named Rubault, starting out from Saint Louis with three camels, traversed the desert of Ferlo in the direction of the Gambia. Arriving on the Niani, he turned towards the east, penetrating into Ouli, crossing the Falemé near Kenieba, from which he reached Bondu, and finally descended the Senegal from Fort Saint Joseph at the Felou cataracts (p. 157). In 1818, Gaspard Mollien, cousin of one of Napoleon's Ministers and a survivor of the disastrous wreck of the *Medusa*, started out from Saint Louis to discover the sources of the Senegal and the Gambia with no more sumptuous equipment than a donkey-load of stores and trading-goods and the escort of a single marabout, who spoke the language of the countries through which they intended to pass. Marching through the great forests of Ferlo, he reached Saldé, ascended the Senegal to Bondu, and, crossing the Gambia, halted at the village of Cocagné, on the borders of Futa Jallon. From this part he visited the Tangué mountains, discovered the sources of the Gambia and those of the Rio Grande (Comba) near Bandeïa, and arrived at Timbo, where he met with some opposition, the natives regarding the country in which the Senegal arose as so sacred that they threatened with death the impious person who attempted to penetrate the secret of the river's birthplace, though he obtained sufficient information to fix the quarter from whence it sprang. Worn out with fatigue and weakened by fever, he was forced to lie for a month at Bandeïa, surrounded by an unfriendly population, and in the hands of a treacherous host, who endeavoured to kill him for the purpose of

obtaining possession of what little property remained unpillaged. He was, therefore, very glad to escape and reach the coast by way of the Portuguese settlements of Geba and Bissao, after an absence of a year. Mollien, whose work deserves a larger place than it has obtained in the history of African exploration, was afterwards Consul-General in Havana, and died at Nice so recently as the year 1872.\*

De Beaufort, a French naval officer who traversed Ferlo and the country bordering the Gambia as far as Kaarta in the years 1824 and 1825, is even less known. For before he had time to write any account of his journey he was seized with an illness which proved fatal, the only records of his travels that remain being some letters and other notes. Both of these travellers intended, if possible, to reach Timbuctoo. Mollien, indeed, expressly writes that he hoped to accomplish this object by going in the guise of the slave of his guide.

It is, nevertheless, quite certain that neither reached within many leagues of that goal. It was, however, the lot of another Frenchman to do so, and to bring to Europe the first detailed information of the city which any European had obtained, since his predecessors left no descriptions behind them. This was Auguste René Caillié or Caillé†—as his name

is variously spelt—a man of modest station, the son of a poor baker of Manzé in the Department of the Deux-Sèvres, whose education never passed beyond a moderate acquaintance with reading and writing. He was born in the year 1799, and brought up in the village charity-school, where a copy of "Robinson Crusoe" fell into his hands. After being apprenticed to a shoemaker, the story of the shipwrecked mariner so influenced Caillié's mind with such views of adventure,

\* "Travels in Africa to the Sources of the Senegal and Gambia in 1818." Translated from the French. (1823.)

† Towards the end of his life the traveller signed his name Caillé, believing that to be the proper orthography.

that, contrary to the wish of his uncle (his father having died in his infancy), he proceeded, at the age of sixteen, to Rochfort, with sixty francs in his pocket, to ship on board *La Loire*, a tender to the unfortunate *Medusa*, bound for Senegal. After remaining for a few months at Dakar, a village of Cape Verd, he set off for St. Louis, on that place being surrendered to the French. Here he heard of Major Gray's expedition (p. 221). This set him once more on the move, in order to offer his services, travelling on foot as far as Dakar and from thence in a small boat to Goree. But the misery he had suffered in his overland journey so damped his ardour that little difficulty was experienced in inducing him to abandon his project and accept a free passage to Guadeloupe, where he remained for six months in some petty position. There, however, he fell in with the "Travels" of Mungo Park, and was once more fired with such ardour for African exploration that he quitted Pointe-à-Pitre for Bordeaux, and returned in very humble circumstances to Goree in the end of 1818. Here he joined Adrien Partarrieu, who had been sent by Major Gray to purchase the merchandise required by the King of Bondu (p. 221). Of the later sufferings of this expedition Caillié had his full share, and on reaching Bakel he was so weakened by a fever that in order to recover he was compelled to return to France. Still cherishing his project of opening up the interior, he again made his way to Senegal, furnished, by the generosity of some friends, with a small quantity of trading-goods. Baron Roger, an enlightened friend of science, who was at that time governor of the colony, finding it impossible to check the ardour of his young countryman, supplied him, on behalf of the Government, with some further means to enable him to live among the Braknas, a tribe of Moors, to acquire the Arabic language and be initiated as a renegade into their religious and other ceremonies. This he duly accomplished, though, such are the abstemious habits of these people—milk being almost the only food—that he was nearly

famished before he found himself sufficiently Mohammedanised to return to St. Louis.

Feeling that in appearance, as well as in capacity to keep up his assumed character of an apostate thirsting for information and "the light," he might safely venture to set out for Timbuctoo, he asked for further help from the Senegal authorities. The Government having already spent £20,000\* on Beaufort's abortive attempt, did not care to waste any further pounds on what they regarded as little better than the idle whim of an enthusiast, and so, in disappointment, Caillié betook himself to Sierra Leone, where, by the kindness of Sir Charles Turner, the Governor, he was set to superintend some indigo-plantations on a salary which enabled him to save about eighty pounds. Sir Neil Campbell, the successor of Turner, did not, however, see fit to supplement this sum by an additional two hundred and forty, under the plea that the Government, having already gone to considerable expense with Major Laing's venture, could not just then incur any further outlay in the search for Timbuctoo. This refusal seems to have touched the vanity of the Frenchman, who throughout his narrative displays little gratitude to the Englishmen who again and again befriended him, preferring to regard them as instigated by national jealousy, when, as was only natural, considering Caillié's slender scientific equipment, they did not fall in with his somewhat liberal views as to their pecuniary duty to a foreigner of whom his own Government had not displayed any marked appreciation.

Undeterred by this refusal to loose the purse-strings of perfidious Albion on his behalf, Caillié quitted Sierra Leone in high dudgeon. Investing part of his 2,000 francs in some commodities useful for barter in the interior, and provided, by the kindness of his English friends, with a few medicines, which might possibly prove more immediately useful

than the sovereigns which he stowed away in the Moorish girdle and turban which he again assumed, he determined to win the 10,000 francs which he heard that the French Geographical Society had offered to the first man who reached Timbuctoo. He had, moreover, his story ready. During his stay in Sierra Leone he had assiduously cultivated the acquaintance of some Mandingoes and Saracelots, who form the commercial travellers or wandering merchants of the interior. To these he entrusted the apocryphal secret that his parents were Moslems resident in Alexandria; but that when the French invaded Egypt they took him with them to France and from thence to Senegal, where, escaping from his master, he was now trying to reach his home in Northern Africa. How far this tale served him is doubtful; he declares it was always believed by the country folk, though the townsmen, especially in Morocco, were not so readily convinced of its truth. But at all events, by being outwardly as consistent a Mohammedan as possible, and constantly reading the leaves of the Koran with which his travelling-pouch was filled, he contrived to keep up the character he had assumed.

After staying for some time at Kakundy on the Rio Nuñez,† receiving everywhere the greatest kindness from British and French residents alike, he started, on the 19th of April, 1827, for the interior. For the first part of his journey he travelled in the company of a small Mandingo caravan, suffering no greater inconvenience than being pestered by stinging bees. As happened when the *Sieur Brûe* traversed the same region, these insects would sometimes become masters of the situation, settling on articles of food and on the rims of drinking-vessels, resisting, after their customary fashion, any attempts to drive them away. In places they were so numerous that they took possession of the huts, and unless expelled by smoke the lawful tenants were compelled to wait at a distance till it suited their good pleasure to leave. Among the people in this region a kind of

\* Caillié declares that the British Government expended on the expeditions of Tuckey, Peddie, Campbell, and Gray—or, as he is pleased to put it, in trying to "injure French commerce"—£750,000. This may be doubted.

† Between Sierra Leone and the Gambia.



institution akin to Freemasonry is said to exist, and many years ago a British officer wrecked on the neighbouring coast declared that he had good reason to be grateful for the benefits that he derived from it.

deal. An albino child, with white, curly hair, blue eyes, and rosy skin, was about the most novel object noted by him at Kamboya. M. Caillié was, however, not a trained observer, and the character he had assumed precluded



MOSQUE SCHOOL IN NORTHERN AFRICA.

However, though journeying as an Arab in the company of native tribes, Caillié and his party did not escape the extortions with which the reader must by this time be familiar as the invariable concomitant of all African travel, especially in the region of the great river with which the previous pages entirely

him from taking observations or keeping anything in the shape of a diary. For in adopting Mohammedanism he was compelled to adopt its ignorance and prejudices also. For the same reasons, though he contrasts the merry life, the singing and the dances, the games and the jocundity of the pagan negroes

with the dignity and even dulness of the Mohammedans, he, as a good Moslem who comes from a land not far from the birth-place of the Prophet, is bound to refrain from anything that might stamp him as an infidel.

Still journeying due east, through the Futa-Jallon country, he reached the Niger at Kurusa. This is a pretty village in the district of Kankon, in what is known as the Samory's Dominions, and at that time was a place of some consequence, being surrounded with a mud wall ten or twelve feet in height, and about as many inches thick. The Niger at a part so near its headwaters was, of course, a much less remarkable current than lower down, though even here it was about eight or nine feet deep, and nearly a quarter of a mile broad. Crossing the river in one of the canoes which constitute the four ferry-boats, he reached Timé, where he was detained for four months by a severe attack of scurvy, during which he was annoyed by the impertinence of the natives. "The Arab is no good," they would cry; "he gives nothing away to anyone." It was in vain that he told them of the long journey he had yet to perform. "All Arabs and whites are rich," they insisted and, finding it impossible to extract more than a few beads from him, amused themselves by ridiculing a wound in his foot, and laughing immoderately when he hobbled about with difficulty.

By this time the caravan with which he had set out had left him or gone about its errand. His companion for the rest of the journey was a guide, who was accompanied by his brother and the wife of the latter to carry their little baggage. As the traveller proceeded northward he notes that the gaiety of the inhabitants diminished: he never saw them dancing or amusing themselves, and even the art of making an intoxicating drink from the juice of the oil-palm tree seemed to be unknown to them, or, at least, not practised. The country of the Wasulu was, however, well cultivated, and thickly inhabited, and so continued until he again reached the Niger opposite to the city of Jenné, where the river was about five hundred feet broad.

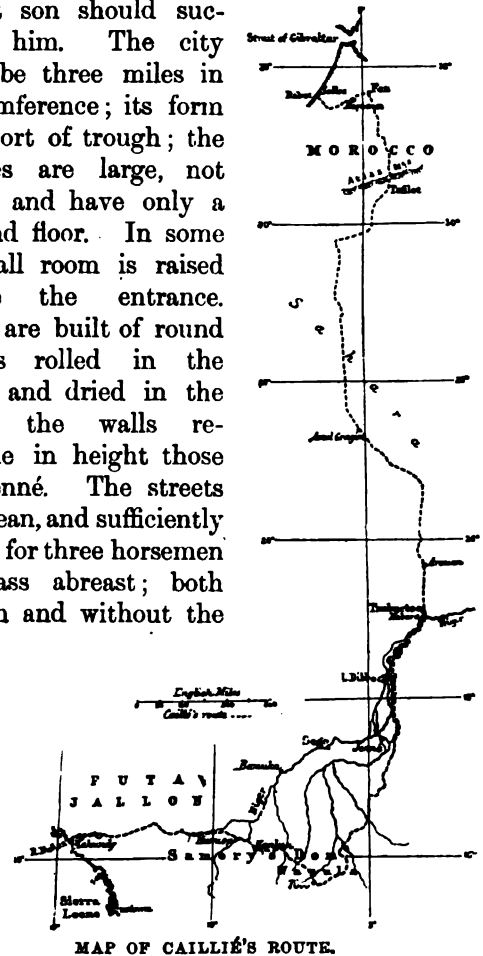
Caillié was the first European\* to enter this town, Park having seen it on his last journey from the river only. <sup>The city of</sup> In those days it would appear to <sup>Jenné.</sup> have been the principal commercial town of that part of Africa, the bazaars being furnished not only with abundance of native goods, but with all kinds of European manufactures, mostly of English origin. English gunpowder in an especial degree was highly esteemed, the native sort having little strength, and frequently going off without producing any regular detonation. Slaves entirely naked were called about the streets by the brokers and auctioneers and sold at prices varying from 25,000 to 40,000 cowries. The city itself is about two and a half miles in circumference, surrounded with a wall of earth badly built, ten feet high and fourteen inches thick, and entered by several small gates. The houses are of sun-dried bricks, one storey high, with terraced roofs, and windows looking into an inner court. But the environs of the town are marshy, unhealthy, and without any trees. One mark of civilisation Caillié noticed here for the first time since he left the white settlements behind, namely, that as the inhabitants used pocket-handkerchiefs, he was, to his great relief, able to employ that implement of civilisation without exciting ridicule or arousing suspicion of his being a different person than he had represented himself to be. Many of the citizens were then, as now, not only wealthy but refined. At the house of a Moor with whom he dined the guests were served with tea in cups of delicate porcelain, and, what for the impoverished traveller was even more important, several of the richer inhabitants not only treated him with the greatest kindness during his stay, but believing—or affecting to believe—his story, made up amongst them a little purse to defray his expenses to Timbuctoo. The intercourse between this city and Jenné is kept up by means of large decked boats made of planks

\* Leo Africanus was well acquainted with it three centuries earlier. But though born in Spain, he was by race an Arab.

tied together with ropes twisted out of palm-leaves, and manned by sixteen or eighteen sailors, their rude vessels often drifting down stream in floats of sixty or eighty. At Dibbo or Dibbie Lake, which Park had heard of, the river expands in a broad pool or sheet, dotted with islands, which the Frenchman duly named in honour of Charles X., the Duke of Bordeaux, and the Dauphin. The voyage was, however, not very cheerful, for in order not to attract as a stranger, presumably worth plundering, the wandering Touaregs who frequent the river banks and levy contributions on passing travellers, Caillié kept for the most part below, until—on the 19th of April, nearly four weeks after leaving Jenné, exactly one year after leaving Kakundy—they arrived at Kabara, or Kabra, the port of Timbuctoo, built on the banks of a weed-choked channel which leads from the Niger for about half a mile (p. 121). Next day, in company with a slave-merchant and his coffe, he proceeded on horseback to Timbuctoo, which lies about nine miles north of its riverine port.

The view which lay ahead of him (pp. 121, 208) was an impressive one. For here **The city of Timbuctoo.** was the famed city which so many had tried to reach in vain. Yet the result was disappointment. He had formed inflated notions of its magnificence, which ought to have been dissipated by a perusal of the old Moorish traveller's narrative of three centuries ago, modified by the fact that since then the place had decayed. "The spectacle before me," he tells us, "did not answer my expectations; at first sight it presents but a heap of houses badly built of earth—it is neither so large nor so well-peopled as I had been led to believe. Its commerce is less considerable than is stated by public report: a great concourse of strangers coming from every part of the Soudan is not seen here as at Jenné. I met in the streets only the camels coming from Kabra. The city is inhabited by negroes of the Kissur nation: they form the principal population. Many Moors are established here for commercial purposes. They have much influence over the

natives; nevertheless, a king or governor, with whom we had an interview, is a negro, is named Oman,\* and is much respected. His office is hereditary: his eldest son should succeed him. The city may be three miles in circumference; its form is a sort of trough; the houses are large, not lofty, and have only a ground floor. In some a small room is raised above the entrance. They are built of round bricks rolled in the hand and dried in the sun; the walls resemble in height those of Jenné. The streets are clean, and sufficiently broad for three horsemen to pass abreast; both within and without the



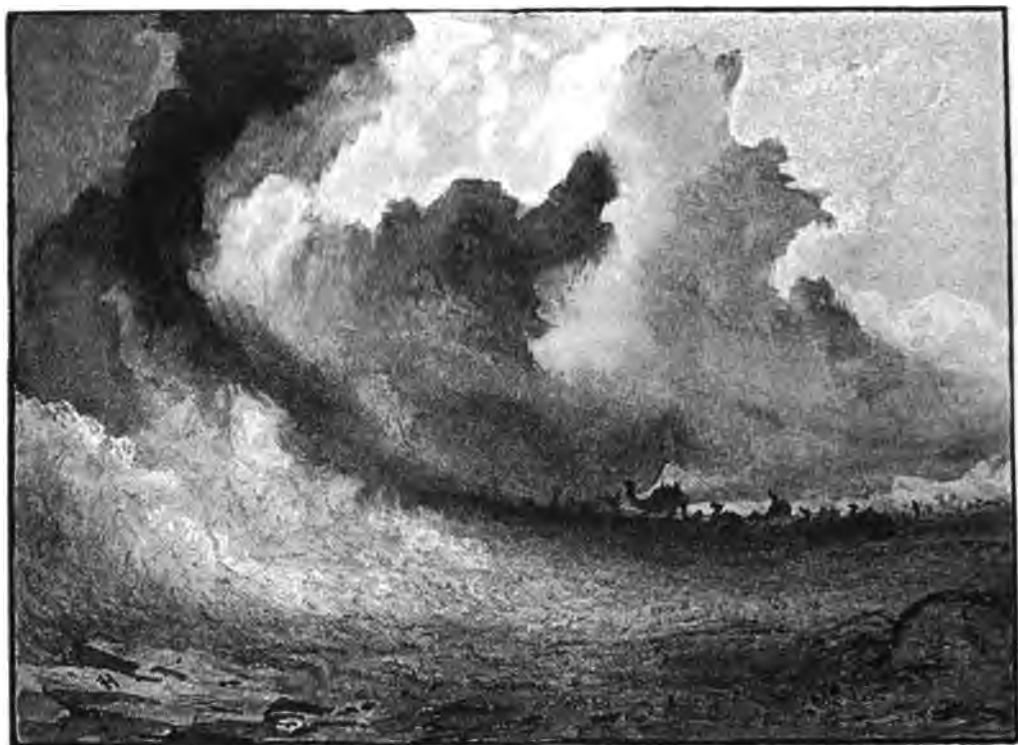
city are many straw huts almost like those of the Fulah shepherds. There are seven mosques—in another place he says eight—"of which two are large, each surmounted with a brick tower. The city is without any walls and open on all sides, and may contain 10,000 or 12,000 inhabitants, including the Moors. All the native inhabitants are zealous Mohammedans. The commerce of the place is much restrained by the neighbourhood of

\* This was no doubt Osman, the lieutenant of Ahmadu-ben-Mohammed Labbo.

the Touaregs, a warlike nation which renders tributary the inhabitants of this city."

When we remember that only a few years before the population of the city had been estimated from the reports of Moorish traders at 100,000, this state of matters was rather disappointing, though it was not out of keeping with the accounts of the only Arab traveller of credit who had described it within

of the desert offered little to invite a long stay, no one living there except the street dogs or the ravenous hyenas, gorging themselves on the offal thrown out of the town. The terrace on which it stands, at a height of some 800 feet above the sea-level, overlooks a chain of "dhyas" or marshy hollows, fringed here and there with a few stunted mimosas and palm-thickets, which relieve the sandy wastes around.



SAND STORM IN THE SAHARA (p. 235).

the preceding three centuries, or, indeed, with some of much later date. Some Moors, who had resided long in the place, trying to give M. de Lesseps—father of the canal-maker—some idea of the town, used the following illustration:—"Take a heap of cabins in your hand, cast them into the air, let them fall upon the ground, and you will see Timbuctoo." Nor was Caillié more impressed with the surroundings of this famed city. North-east and south of it the burning sands

Yet even here there were many learned men, and though Timbuctoo had fallen—and since that day it has fallen still more—from its ancient grandeur, books on devotional subjects, commentaries on the Koran, and the like, were part of the regular merchandise which the traders across the desert bore every year, as they bear still, in the caravans from Morocco.

Since Caillié's visit—as we shall learn by-and-by—much information has been obtained

regarding this famous place. Though the name has still a certain charm, it is no longer invested with any mystery, several travellers having been there. Yet, while some of the statements made by this unlettered Frenchman have been shown to be erroneous,

briefly rehearsing what was known regarding the history of a city which for centuries formed the goal of so many journeys, and in its way has cost more valuable lives and done more to stimulate exploration than any other town on the earth's surface.



NIGER RIVER FERRY-BOAT.

(From a Photograph by Captain Mockler-Ferryman.)

subsequent inquiry has confirmed the essential truth of his narrative, his blunders being due to an imperfect recollection unaided by notes, or to defective education.

This episode in the history of Timbuctoo may therefore afford an opportunity for

Timbuctoo is situated in the now Fulah State of Moassina or Massina, and though no longer on the Niger, the "dhyas," which are flooded every three or four years, converting the lowlands at the foot of the scarp on which the city stands into a

network of channels and backwaters, are all that remains of a navigable creek which reached from the great river up to the base of this terrace. Indeed, in the year 1640, the Niger forced itself during a time of flood right up the creek from Kabara to Timbuctoo, inundating the lower part of the city. It is also probable that at some early date the Niger, before it took its present easterly curve to Burum, where it bends in the direction of the coast, occupied this channel; and some observations made by Lenz would indicate that before the increasing drought of the desert dried up the now westerly Wady Messaura, from the Tuat oases, south of Morocco, this stream joined the Niger here.

From the data accumulated by the patient Barth, it would appear that Timbuctoo was originally a native village, captured in the eleventh century by the Touaregs, and by them constituted the nucleus of what eventually became an important commercial centre. As early as 1373 it is noted on the maps as a place under the Mandingo kings of Mali much frequented by traders in gold and salt (p. 122). Its greatest glory was, however, attained in the fifteenth century during the short-lived but extensive Songhai (Sonrhay) Empire, founded by Askia in 1492. In those days its splendour, though perhaps very modest according to European notions, was infinitely greater than at any former or later period, and, it shared with Gogo, Fez, and Kairouan the distinction of being one of the centres of Mohammedan culture in Africa.

However, in 1591 the Songhai dynasty was overthrown by the Sultan of Morocco (p. 123), who up to a comparatively recent date kept a garrison here, though nowadays the Moors do not regard it as a portion of their dominions. When Caillié visited it the Fulahs were masters; but these in 1865 seem to have been displaced by the Senegal Toucouleurs\* (p. 236), and these in turn by the Touaregs, until the town, after being for ages at the mercy

\* These are a mongrel race—mixture of the Fulah and the negro races around them.

of one marauder after another, has fallen into decay. What was its condition when last visited we shall learn in a future chapter.

Secure in his disguise—or, at least, Mohammedan enough not to be suspected—Caillié remained for a fortnight in the city, occupying a house opposite the one which had been tenanted by the unfortunate Major Laing, though the account he was given of the manner of Laing's death was afterwards discovered to have been either intentionally, or through the confused rumours of the wandering merchants, by no means compatible with the more carefully sifted facts obtained by the British agents at Tripoli.†

Like most people accustomed to mingle with strangers engaged in commerce, the Timbuctoese were hospitably inclined to the traveller whom they regarded as their co-religionist. They would fain have persuaded him to prolong his stay. But a caravan being on the eve of leaving for Morocco, he determined

Caillié's  
return from  
Timbuctoo.

to reach civilisation by crossing the Great Desert in preference to returning to Senegal, knowing well that in the latter case he might be accused of having simply repeated one of the half-way journeys of his predecessors. Accordingly on the 4th of May, 1828, he set out on what was in many respects the most tedious part of his travels, and in five days reached El Aruan, a town near which Major Laing was murdered. It stands in the middle of a vast area of sand-dunes stretching as far as the eye can see, and so bare of vegetation that the only fuel used—and except for cooking none is required—are the dried droppings of camels. The houses number at present about one hundred, and in 1828 we may take it the place was in no way different from what the latest European traveller describes it—each house built in the form of a square, entered by a door at one corner, but without any windows except those looking into the little court-yard within. When the inmates want to take the air they ascend to the flat roof; but for all practical purposes every dwelling

† *Quarterly Review*, No. lxxvii.

is in itself a self-contained little fortress detached from all others in the vicinity.\*

From its own resources the town had little to sell; but, owing to its being the distributing point for the salt obtained from the mines of Taudeni, in the middle of the Sahara—near which there are the ruins of an old Arab town—which is forwarded to all parts of the Upper Niger country, the citizens enjoyed a considerable transport trade. Caravans arrived about every day from Agadir, Tafilet, Mogador, Draa, Tuat, Tripoli, and other places in the Barbary States, with European merchandise, arms, powder, tobacco, dates, and similar articles of necessity or luxury.

In Aruan, for the first time since assuming the character of a "True Believer," Caillié became an object of suspicion. However, redoubling his zeal in the observance of his religious duties, this distrust wore away, and he was again permitted to set out with a caravan of 1,400 camels destined for Tafilet, a locality on the desert side of the Atlas, which is famous as the home whence came the present ruling family of Morocco, and the spot to which are sent any members of the Imperial stock whose presence in the vicinity of the throne would not be desirable. The drifting sand and the burning east winds caused intense suffering to the traveller, and water was often so scarce that Caillié, owing to the niggardliness of the Moor into whose charge he had committed himself, was often obliged to beg for a few drops in the name of Allah the All-merciful, while he told off on his beads the routine prayer which he had learnt. In this dreadful mass of moving sand whole caravans are often lost, either from the water-skins getting exhausted, from the wells at which they hope to refill them being found empty, or by the vast clouds of sand borne by the desert wind overwhelming the hapless traders (p. 232).

Such an experience, on a small scale, befell Caillié and his party. At the time when the column of sand was carried in their direction by the whirlwind they were encamped; but

in a few seconds tents and everything else within the power of the wind were spun round and tumbled together "like straws." At various oases or habitable spots in the desert there are tribes who undertake to guide travellers across it, and others who are quite as ready to undertake the plunder of a caravan not too large to render the risk unequal to the profit. Some of these guides belong to a curious race called Daggatoun, who are said to be of Jewish origin, of fairer complexion than the Arabs and Berbers around them, with whom they refuse to intermarry. Extraordinary tales are told of the skill of some of these desert pilots—of blind men who, by simply smelling a handful of the soil, can at once tell in what part of the waste the caravan happens to be.†

Great, however, as the torture from heat, sand, and thirst was, poor Caillié met little sympathy from his heartless companions. Falling ill of scurvy, they refused to sit at meat with so unclean a person, and, notwithstanding the care with which the sham Moslem had studied their manners and habits, they remarked that he could not, like them, jerk the rice into his hand, make it into a small ball, and pitch it into his mouth. A common insult was that, "he ate like a Kafir." Even the slaves of the party were encouraged to annoy him by every species of insolence, and the burthen of their opprobrium always was, "he looks like a Christian." One man, indeed, was so certain that he was the despised "Kafir" or Infidel, that he proposed to sell him. At the well of Amul Gragin the night was cooler, though here the visits of huge serpents rendered it impossible for the weary traveller to rest in peace. Yet, except from the unsympathetic character of his fellow-travellers, the constant thirst, the plague of sand-winds, and, as in the above case, of snakes, Caillié tells us that, in spite of his fatigue, he felt better in health than when

† The story is as old as the days of Leo Africanus (1500); but it is still repeated by the Morocco traders who make the journey from Mogador and Agadir to Timbuctoo—another proof of the accuracy of the old Moorish chronicler.

\* Lenz: "Timbuktu," vol. ii., pp. 96-107.



traversing the more hospitable regions behind him. Food he had in abundance. In payment for writing charms for the women he was supplied with a plenitude of messes, into which had been liberally introduced the butter used by them for greasing their hair. The object of all these amulets was to obtain husbands for them and their relatives, but, as the writer's stay was for a brief period only,



TOUCOULEURS OF SENEGAL (p. 234).

(From a Photograph by the Paris Society for Evangelical Missions.)

he felt safe in promising any boon to his eager clients.

By-and-by the worst of the desert ended, and, seventy-five days after leaving Timbuctoo, the series of scattered Kasbahs, or large fortified places which constitute Taflet—the ancient Sigelessma—was reached. Here, descendants of the Prophet were inconveniently numerous. So also were robbers, to guard against whom every Berber village was watched by a troop of ferocious dogs. On account of these brutes no strangers ever approach a village without being in the company of a person known to the four-legged

guardians. Even then they are not safe; so that the hospitality offered is seldom given in a tent, but at a distance from the *douar* and from its savage canine garrison. It was, however, but little of this that Caillié received. In vain he begged from the Moorish governor some help to enable him to reach Fez, on the other side of the Atlas, still keeping to his old story of being on his way to his native town of Alexandria. A pious Hadji or Mecca pilgrim would at times treat him with kindness in memory of his escape from the Christian thrall, and a trader sometimes bestowed on him a coarse loaf of bread "for the love of God." He had a few English shillings in his possession, one of which a Jew—of whom there were many at this meeting-place of the caravans—exchanged for its value in silver; and at the same time, perhaps suspecting his real character, entertained him with a politeness which contrasted with the boorish rudeness of a people who, like the Taflet Moors, have no links with Western civilisation and no regard for its good opinion.

Caillié had, however, brought from Timbuctoo some decent pieces of native apparel, and, by selling these—everything being very cheap—he raised funds enough to hire a donkey, on which, in the company of a little caravan, he passed the fertile valleys of the still little-known Atlas, and on the 12th of August, more than three months after leaving Timbuctoo, entered the Imperial city of Fez. Built in a valley, it looks—like most Moorish towns—more picturesque at a distance than near at hand. The gardens of oranges and olives, in which the suburbs immediately within the walls are embosomed, impart to the place a charm in the eyes even of travellers who have not been trudging day after day through the desert sands. But the "City of the Hatchet" is never a very hospitable place for a poverty-stricken traveller, and Mequinez, another of the three Moroccan capitals, is an even less agreeable place of asylum for the destitute; for here, failing the mosques—which are usually places of

shelter for the houseless and sometimes the village school also (p. 229)—he was left to sleep in doorways, or in the narrow, dirty lanes of the old-world metropolis of the Sultans. In three days, following the ordinary route, he reached the Atlantic at Rabat, on the

Hiring, therefore, a donkey with the little which remained to him of the money brought from Goree, he in due time reached Tangier. Here his troubles came to an end, and means were provided for sending him to France, where he arrived 567 days after leaving Kakundy, to



LAKE TCHAD.

Bou-ragreg River opposite Sallee, which shares its evil fame as the last of the pirate haunts of North Africa (p. 105). Here again he had the "key of the street." In Rabat the French Consular agent was a Jew, who displayed no desire to help him; and Christians in those days were fewer in that port than at present.

receive the honours which he had so justly earned.\* For he had redeemed with success a long tale of failure.

\* René Caillié : "Journal d'un Voyage à Tombouctou et à Jenné dans l'Afrique Centrale," etc. 3 vols. (1830.) There is also an English translation in two vols. The discussion which followed gave rise to a considerable

When the disjointed story told by Caillié spread over Europe, there was at first some inclination to doubt its strict accuracy. It contained some statements that were, or seemed to be, not quite in accordance with fact, while a very superficial reader could easily point out contradictions tending to justify the scepticism with which it was received in many influential quarters. In England especially was this the case. Indeed, there were not lacking critics ready to affirm that Caillié had never been in Timbuctoo, but derived his information either from native report or from the papers of Major Laing, of which Baron Rousseau, French Consul at Tripoli, had in some way villainously possessed himself, and used his illiterate countryman to gain for France the glory which was the Briton's due. Suspicions of this character were not a little aroused by the inflated eulogies which some indiscreet admirers of the traveller chose to bestow upon his book. This was in reality largely the work of M. Jomard, Secretary of the French Geographical Society, who may be held responsible for permitting his *protégé* to indulge in the many absurd reflections on the English to whom he was so much indebted, and to quote compliments to France from quarters where it is doubtful whether that country was even known.

Nor was this irritation, at a time when the old sores created by the long Napoleonic wars had scarcely healed, in any way soothed by an attempt to make out that Caillié had been the first European to reach Timbuctoo. This claim was, however, not admitted in French scientific circles, though curiously enough, the inscription on his monument in the cemetery of Pont-l'Abbé would convey that notion to the uninstructed reader.\*

literature, most of which, so far as France is concerned, will be found noticed in the appendix to Jules Duval's "Un Ouvrier Voyageur, René Caillié" (1867), to a copy of which, annotated by the famous traveller's daughter, the writer has been indebted for many facts regarding the journey sketched in this chapter.

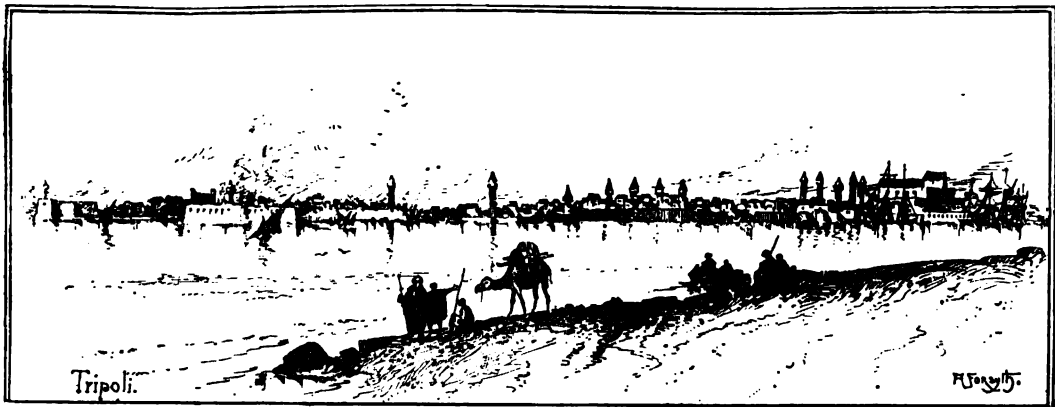
\* "René Caillié . . . le seul Européen qui ait vu et décrit Tembuctoo. Son nom sera placé par la postérité

But, strange to say, while the French were straining truth to obtain for La Belle France the glory of furnishing the first traveller that had entered the then almost fabulous city of Central Africa, they might, had they taken the trouble to read their own records, have found that, after all, a Frenchman, from no wish of his own, had earned that credit.

This was Paul Imbert, who in 1630 was wrecked on the sandy shore between Morocco and Senegambia, and, like so many hapless seamen since then, was enslaved by the natives and, in company with his Arab master, made a trading journey to that city. But he died a slave in Morocco, and the world has been none the wiser for his involuntary exploration. Later travellers have long ago rehabilitated the credit of René Caillié, proving that if he erred now and then through ignorance, or an insufficient memory indifferently aided by a few half-effaced pencil notes, his account was substantially correct. This meritorious man did not, unfortunately, live to rejoice in an unimpaired credit. During his lifetime nevertheless he received all honour, the reward of the French Geographical Society which had tempted him to make his famous journey, the Legion of Honour, and a pension in the form of the office of French Consul at Bamaku on the Niger, without the obligation of residing or even visiting his post. Marrying, he retired to a small property at Beurley (Charente-Inférieure), which—after filling for a time the office of mayor—he exchanged for La Badère, where he died on the 17th of May, 1838, of a malady contracted during his African journey. A monument, erected in 1866 at Déboké, a short distance from Kakundy on the Rio Nuñez, where he set out on his inland adventure, marks the respect borne by the Senegal colonists for the memory of this deserving if ill-instructed explorer.

The tale of Paul Imbert, the French slave.

non loin de ceux de Brown, Hornemann, Mungo-Park, Denham et Clapperton." It will be noticed that Laing is not even mentioned. In M. Duval's biography a similar attempt to ignore facts is exhibited.



THE TOWN OF TRIPOLI, IN BARBARY.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### THE NIGER KINGDOMS: A HALF-TOLD TALE.

The Effects of Caillié's Story in Europe—Fictitious Travels—Timbuctoo no longer a Stimulus to African Exploration—A New Departure—The Niger Course and Termination : the Discovery aimed at—Attempts made at this after Park's Journey—Lyon's Expedition to Murzuk and Tégéri by way of Tripoli—The Ghurian Mountains—Fezzan—Oudney, Clapperton, and Denham's Expedition—Murzuk—A Jay in Peacock's Feathers—Dilatoriness—An Arbitrary Gentleman—The Ghat Country—Troglodytes—Natron Lakes—A Larva Fishery—Leaves Murzuk—Miseries of the Desert—A Pathway marked out by Skeletons—The Soudan Reached—Bornu—Its History—Lake Tchad—A Slave Raid—Imprudence of Denham—And a Disaster—A March to Birni—Gamaru is Visited—A Narrow Escape—Sickness—A Journey towards Kano—Death of Oudney—Sokoto—Sultan Bello is Unfriendly, and refuses Assistance to Navigate the Niger—Zyrmi—Arrival of Mr. Toole with Stores from Tripoli—Death of Toole—Return of the Expedition to Tripoli.

THE tale told by Caillié rendered Timbuctoo no longer a stimulus for the exploration of Inner Africa. It was a point to be reached, no doubt, but now that it had ceased to possess the charm of being a city virgin to the white man's foot, it began to be regarded rather as a stage in a journey than the end of an exploration. Men's thoughts began once more to be directed to the river near the banks of which it stood, the course it took to the sea, whether by the Nile to the Mediterranean, to some inland waste, or, what was now more generally held, to the Atlantic. Fictitious works of travel were not infrequently palmed off upon the public, of which that of the apocryphal Christian Damberger, who pretended to have journeyed from the Cape to Morocco, which was translated into several languages, was the most notorious, and the "Voyage au Congo et dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique" of Douville the most astonishing. For though it was based on a small substratum

of fact, most of it was evidently compiled from reports heard by the author, who, nevertheless, imposed not only on the French Geographical Society so far as to receive their highest honours, but upon a number of foreign savants not so likely to have their judgment warped by national predilections.

The British Government seems also to have been stimulated to fresh exertions by the success of Caillié to continue the Ritchie and Lyon work it had begun, though it was the Niger and not Timbuctoo which was the object of the journeys after 1828. Several years, however, before Caillié had returned, British explorers had been penetrating from the north—not, however, with any immediate intention of reaching either the Niger or Timbuctoo, but mainly with the intention of opening up Inner Africa to commerce, though neither the course of the great river nor the famous towns in its vicinity were out of their minds. As these journeys led by

a series of unbroken links to the discovery of the Niger mouth and to the re-discovery of some important Central African kingdoms not far from its upper course, we have reserved their description, though in reality they were antecedent to those of Laing, Caillié, and others already narrated.

Taking advantage of the excellent relations between the Bashaw of Tripoli (p. 239) and the British Government, it was resolved to tap the country from Northern Africa instead of, as formerly, from the West Coast. It was, in the first place, healthier, though more dangerous, in spite of the fact that the Bashaw's power, actual or nominal, direct or indirect, extended not only throughout his own dominions far into the oases-dotted desert, but among the kingdoms near the Upper Niger, caravans from that part of Africa continually arriving with ostrich-feathers, ivory, and slaves for the Tripoli market. Lucas had already made an attempt in that direction, and in the year 1818, Mr. Ritchie, under a commission from the British Government, started from this point on a journey southward. He was to have been accompanied by Captain Marryat, afterwards famous in another department of travel tales; but the future sea-novelist failing him, Captain George Lyon, also of the Royal Navy, and better known for the share he took in Parry's Arctic Expedition immediately after his return from his African travels, was selected as his companion.

Their route has often been traversed since their time, but in 1818 it was unknown to the world at large, leading as it did through the sand-hills that approach almost to the gates of Tripoli, into the Ghurian Hills, famous for their semi-Judaised Berber inhabitants, who live in underground dwellings, the entrance to which is often difficult for a stranger to find. Here corn grows and shrubs again appear, and on the summit of the hills are found the crocus-fields that yield the saffron of commerce, and many groves of olives from which in good seasons large quantities of oil are produced. Beyond is a

stony desert over which are scattered fossil shells, indicating that at one time it lay under the sea, though it is a mistake to suppose that the Sahara at large is of that nature; it is in reality above the sea, and the drifting sand is due to the wearing away, under the combined action of sun and wind, of the loose sandstone that forms its foundation. Olives, however, still flourish in places, and the wells, some of which are of great depth, yield such an abundance of excellent water that the country is comparatively thickly populated by the Arab tribe to whom it belongs. At Bonjeem they passed the northern border of the kingdom of Fezzan, and even here are found fine remains of a fortress, which, according to the inscription still visible over the gates, was built by order of Septimus Severus (p. 243). All this country, indeed, is dotted with Roman ruins. Until Sokna was reached few inhabitants save wandering Arabs were met with. At Sokna, however, about 1,500 people lived in a walled town—most of them, judging from the fact of their speaking the Touareg language, understood only at this point, of Berber extraction. Dates of fine quality—finer even than those from the groves around the town of Tripoli—are gathered from trees growing on the gravelly plain in the midst of which the town is built.

Crossing the low Soudah or Black Mountains, through a very sombre country, with villages or tent camps here and there—the black population beginning at Sebha—the party reached Murzuk, the capital of the Sultanate. In those days the place was the seat of an independent sovereign, and the meeting-place of caravans from all parts of the country around, so that here the travellers met with more civilised treatment than might have been expected so far in the wilds. Unfortunately, however, both fell ill here, and Mr. Ritchie died. Captain Lyon, nevertheless, determined to push on, and reached as far as Tegerri, the southernmost town in Fezzan, though here Arabic is little understood, the Bornu tongue being that of most



of the inhabitants, who, however, in those days did not number more than two hundred and fifty. From this point Lyon began his return journey, which he completed in the year 1820.

This exploration was interesting from its thoroughness, though, as most of the country was already more or less known, it lacked something in novelty. It was, however, conducted with great skill, and furnished the first circumstantial account of the region through which the travellers passed at a very important period in its history.\* Generally speaking, the country traversed consists of huge depressions fenced in by low ranges of hills, some over 3,000 feet in height. Barren, stony, bleak plateaus, between which lie long, shallow valleys containing fertile oases, complete the picture of a region which since Lyon's day has seen many changes. Originally a Roman province, Fezzan has seen many masters, until, in 1842, it became a Turkish province, and has ever since remained nominally a part of Tripoli, though most frequently its governor acts quite independently of the Pasha of that region. Dates constitute its chief product; but most of these are consumed at home, soda obtained from the salt lake to the west being its principal, if not sole, export. At one time the slave trade was the staple trade of the country, the Fezzanees—who are mostly of Berber origin—not only raiding for prisoners on their own account, but acting as intermediaries between the merchants of Egypt and Tripoli on one side and Bornu and Timbuctoo on the other. This, however, is now, if not ended, largely curtailed, owing to the difficulty of finding a market for the captives or purchases, though Murzuk is still a town of some 6,000 or 7,000 inhabitants noted for their good-nature, honesty, idleness, frivolity, immorality, and love of pleasure, taking everything as it comes with the resignation of a race who during the heat of summer are almost roasted alive, and in winter—incredible as it may seem to those

\* Lyon: "A Narrative of Travels in Northern Africa in the years 1818, 1819, and 1820." (1821.)

not acquainted with the sudden variations of temperature in the desert—subjected at times to a cold so severe that the waterskins freeze at night, and it has happened that the flat roofs of the houses were white with snow. In short, the thermometer ranges from nine degrees below freezing to as much as ninety above it, so that the country, though healthy, except for the malarial fever which prevails in the low-lying grounds, cannot be quite commended as a retreat for invalids. It was through this country that Major Laing reached Timbuctoo (p. 222), though he fared worse from Touaregs and Arabs, hunger and thirst and heat, scorpions and sand storms, than did his predecessors, albeit they had enough of these familiar perils of the desert.

Of these predecessors those immediately following Captain Lyon were Captain Clapperton, Major Denham, and Dr. Oudney. In suitability for the task they had entered upon, not one of them was perhaps so well fitted as Lyon, who, though quite unfamiliar with Africa, acquired a vernacular knowledge of Arabic in the course of a few months, and in other ways so completely adopted the native customs that his successors found their way smoothed by the good impression that he and his companions had made. The members of the new expedition that was to follow up Captain Lyon's were hampered by such complete ignorance of Arabic† and of the country that, with the exception of Dr. Oudney, who was a Naval surgeon and had been designated as Consul to Bornu‡ with the object of opening up a

Capt. Hugh Clapperton, Major Dixon Denham, and Dr. Oudney.

† Major Denham learned a little after a somewhat primitive fashion.

‡ This expedition is usually associated with the names of Captain Clapperton and Major Denham, its historian, while Oudney's name is mentioned merely as that of a secondary person. In reality, he was the head of the expedition, his death depriving him of much reputation connected with it, while Denham became the historian mainly owing to Clapperton's engagement elsewhere. Oudney left little written material and Clapperton almost none, and as he died before he had time to write his narrative or to extend Denham's, the tale of this adventure will always remain only half told.

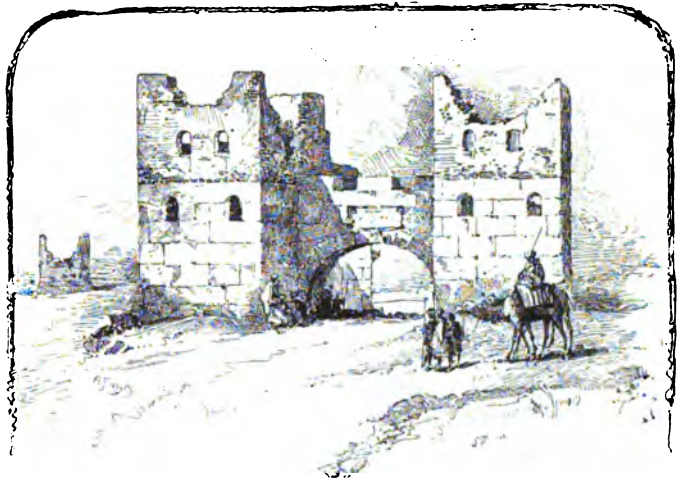


trade with the interior, not one of them had read any book about Africa, except that of their immediate predecessor in exploration. Like Park, Hugh Clapperton was a Scottish Borderer, the son of a surgeon at Annan in Dumfriesshire, where he was born in the year 1788. While still a boy he was apprenticed on board a vessel sailing between Liverpool and North America. Out of this service he was pressed for the Navy; but possessing some little influence and a great deal of intelligence, he was soon promoted to the rank of midshipman, and in that capacity so distinguished himself in Mauritius and on the Canadian lakes that when in 1817 he retired on half-pay he had attained the rank of lieutenant. During his enforced idleness in Edinburgh he contracted an intimacy with Dr. Walter Oudney, who was soon afterwards appointed to proceed to Bornu as British agent, the result of which was that Lieutenant Clapperton was appointed to accompany him, and at a later date Lieutenant—afterwards Major—Dixon Denham was permitted to form the third member of the party, the only other European being William Hillman, a shipwright from the Malta Dockyard (p. 249).

Starting from Tripoli in the spring of 1822, they were not long in reaching Murzuk, in Fezzan (p. 244). Lyon had made their path smooth thus far; and, indeed, by the constant traffic between Tripoli and this frontier town of the desert, the jealousy, the fanaticism, and the lack of summary justice which made the rest of the journey by no means easy, in those days, far less than in ours, impeded the path of travellers under the protection of the Bashaw. For whatever may be said regarding the humanity of that official's rule—and Tripoli in the early years of this century was not a model Government—no fault could be found with its firmness. And

so complete was the hold which Consul Warrington had then on the esteem of the all but independent Bashaw that, as in the case of his predecessor, little was done without consulting the English representative.

The time was, therefore, auspicious for British explorers. For on a voyage of exploration the four Britons were unquestionably bound, the region for which they were making being none the less mysterious because three hundred years before Leo the African had described it in his journey from

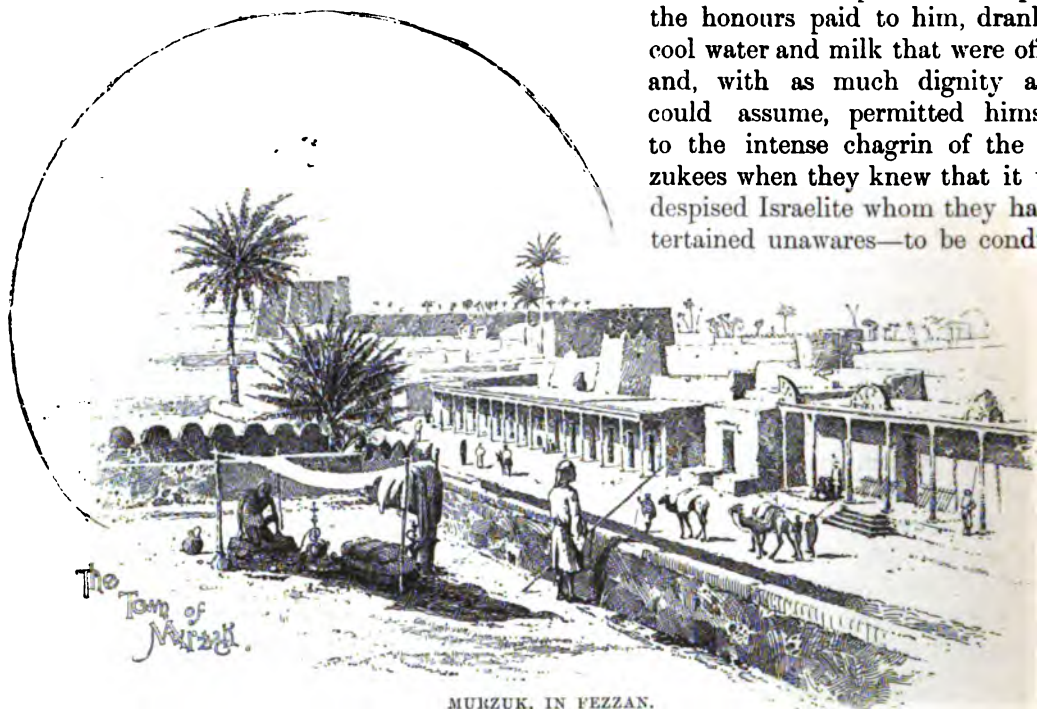


RUINS AT BONJEE (p. 240).

Timbuctoo to Tripoli. What changes had happened since that period, what was the character of the road, and even whether the old Moor was not romancing, were still questions that no man could answer with certainty when Clapperton and his companions set forth with their horses, their camels, and their armed escort to rendezvous in the desert town of Murzuk. At this point, considering the official character of the mission, the travellers expected to be received with some of the pomp which to this hour attends the entry of foreign envoys into the more primitive cities of Barbary. Determined, therefore, to appear to the best advantage, Dr. Oudney and his companions waited at some wells outside of the town till

their camels could come up and swell the dimensions of the procession which they expected to see every minute forming in their honour. They might, however, have saved themselves the trouble; with the exception of some naked boys and a mob of Tibbus, Touaregs, and Fezzanees, who gaped at the party with extremely unpleasant looks, no

canteens being studded with small brass nails, the simple folk came to the conclusion that he must be an official of high rank, and, as no other except the Bornu Consul had been announced, that the Hebrew was this representative from Great Britain. Noway disinclined to be received with a respect not commonly accorded to his race in Northern Africa, Jacob accepted without protest the honours paid to him, drank the cool water and milk that were offered, and, with as much dignity as he could assume, permitted himself—to the intense chagrin of the Murzukees when they knew that it was a despised Israelite whom they had entertained unawares—to be conducted



one came to meet them (p. 241). Nettled at such scurvy treatment, they sent in a native attendant to announce their arrival, and in about half an hour the Sheik el bilād, or governor of the place, came out and requested them in the Sultan's name to accompany him to the house prepared for them, adding, to their great surprise, "The English Consul is there already." The fact was, a very evil-countenanced Jewish servant of Major Denham, mounted on a white mule, with a pair of small canteens under him, had preceded the camels and entered the town by himself. Struck with the fact of his

to the house in the castle set apart for his master, who now took possession of it.

By this time the Saharan summer had set in with its usual virulence, and the thermometer, which is seldom very low in Murzuk, began to mount within an hour or two of sunrise to ninety-seven in the shade. In these circumstances even the civility of Sultan Mustafa El Akhmar did not tempt the travellers to tarry long within the walls of this stuffy town. However, no hope was given them that they could leave before next spring, the caravans having already set out, the road not being safe, and a score of other excuses in which the Oriental is so fertile being adduced

**Murzuk:** a jay in peacock's feathers.

in support of this preposterous delay. When Lord Bathurst had communicated with the Bashaw of Tripoli regarding the object of the expedition, he was assured that the road to Bornu was "as open as that from London to Edinburgh;" and making allowance for Eastern hyperbole, this statement, as later events proved, was not far from the mark. No time was, therefore, to be lost.

fiery Englishman. Tully\* he had heard of, and Warrington he knew, but the peremptoriness of Denham looked like a rupture with his friends the Unbelievers. Even in a day of swift steamers, special trains, and telegraphic communications, a journey from Murzuk to London would be regarded as a tolerably marked piece of energy, but so long since as

**Oriental  
dilatatoriness  
and an  
arbitrary  
explorer.**



THE NATRON LAKES IN THE GHAT COUNTRY (p. 246).

Accordingly, finding the Murzuk Sultan not open to argument, Denham returned to Tripoli to lay his complaint before the Bashaw, and, finding that dignitary more lavish in promises than in acts, left for England by way of Marseilles with the first ship ready to start in order to represent the faithlessness of our ally to the British Government.

But by this time the Bashaw had grown alarmed by the unaccustomed energy of the

1822, when all modes of transit were much slower, it so impressed the sleepy Bashaw that ship after ship was sent to bring back the major. At last, he was overtaken at Marseilles and persuaded to return. Under his indomitable will all the "insurmountable" obstacles had vanished, for he had scarcely landed on the Marina of Tripoli before he was

\* Richard Tully was British Consul in Tripoli. The "Letters" of his sister form a most vivid picture of the country during the despotic days of the old Bashaws.

told that an escort had already been provided for his party, and was by this time most likely waiting them at Sokna on the borders of the Tripolitan desert (p. 240). Murzuk was soon regained. But during Denham's absence fever had seized his companions, and generally the town was in so insanitary a condition that few even of the natives looked healthy. The enforced halt had, however, been utilised by a visit to the Touareg country of Ghat, under the guidance and protection of a powerful chief to whom in memory of his kindness Captain Lyon had sent a sword. This region

**The Ghat country: the valley, salt-fields and low hills, and natron lakes, and the fly-larva fishery.**

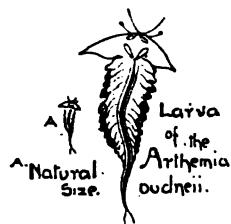
is a mixture of desert and fertile valley, salt-fields and low hills, and contains the town of Idri on a hill three hundred feet high in the Wâdi Shâti, the neighbourhood being studded over with basaltic columns and having salt plains at a short distance and fields of corn among palm groves in the immediate vicinity. Water flows in the shape of springs near the surface, and hence the fields look fresh and fertile. But though the inhabitants proved friendly, their begging propensities were troublesome. Yet many of the women exhibited that strange union of rags, dirt, and valuable ornaments so often found among the races of Northern Africa. Charms were in much request for all manner of real or imaginary troubles, and one buxom widow gave the travellers no peace until they manipulated for her a paper amulet that would ensure the possession of a second husband. Captain Clapperton was in especial demand as a necromancer. For his beard being red, it was imagined that he was an old and correspondingly wise man who had concealed the bleaching effects of time by colouring it with henna.\* As is the case with many of the races of this region, it appeared that the former inhabitants of Idri, before the present ones displaced them, were Troglodytes, or cave-dwellers. Their holes in the rock are still to be seen, and the cluster of huts piled one upon another on the sides of

the conical hill, though then called the New Town, were in truth to a large extent in ruins. Much of the country seen from the summit of this hill is desert; but a great deal of it, though apparently favourable for settlement, is entirely without inhabitants. In some of the valleys are lakes containing natron, which forms an article of trade in that region. When the water is sufficiently shallow the mineral crystallises in cakes, rough on the upper side but studded on the surface next the water with beautiful vertical crystals of "muriate of soda."† In many places the surface of these shallow lakes is covered with large, thin sheets of salt, giving the whole the appearance of a pond partially frozen over, and at places what the explorers describe as something like "mineral tar" was to be seen oozing out of the banks, which, coupled with the discovery of ancient beds in the valley of Rhât and of Devonian beds older than those of the oil-bearing strata, lend hope to the chance of petroleum being yet "struck" in this otherwise resourceless land. The natron (elatroûn or oksem of the natives) is, however, so abundant that the lakes yielding it—the Bahar-et-Troumia, to the north-west of Murzuk—are depleted to the extent of some sixteen to twenty hundredweight every year, and the sands are daily encroaching on the water-surface. Supplies are still obtained from the same source for the use of the Touaregs, who mix it with their tobacco and employ it as a mordant in dyeing, while, like every other substance with which they are acquainted, it is supposed to possess certain medicinal qualities. The lakes (p. 245) are surrounded by a fringe of stunted trees that give a cheerful appearance to the little tarns in the eyes of travellers emerging from the dreary region of sand-dunes and stony wastes around, though at the time of the visit described the only inhabitant of the valley was an old Fezzansee who superintended the collection of the natron and another very

\* Derived from *Lawsonia inermis*, a plant widely grown in North Africa and elsewhere for dyeing purposes.

† The natron is in reality an impure sesquicarbonate of soda, which always contains sulphate of soda and chloride (muriate) of sodium.

peculiar product of the region. This is the "worm" found in the lakes, which is in great favour as an article of food among the Fezzanees. It swarms in enormous quantity, each being about the size of a grain of rice, and enclosed in a great quantity of glutinous matter, mixed with a minute species of alga—the "danga" of the Arabs—which is also preserved as a condiment. Of the "worms" there are two varieties—the reddish brown (the "duda" proper) and the "tâkerukta" (a brownish-yellow form that is less esteemed).



Both are, however, the larva of a species of fly, the *Arthemis oudneyi* of M. Bocourt, who gave it this name many years later in honour of Dr. Oudney. The lakes, at the period of the wheat

and date harvests, are swept with hand-nets for the larva. They are then either dried in the sun by themselves, or more frequently pounded with salt in a mortar, until they form a black paste, which is made into balls of about double the size of the fist and then dried. This paste is called "duweidah," or wormlet. It tastes like bad caviare, and to the nose of a European has a very offensive smell. The balls are generally stored in silos, or "matamoras," and sold all through Fezzan, where they are either eaten alone or in the shape of soup, but more frequently are used for preparing a sauce to flavour the somewhat insipid vegetable diet of the greater part of the population.\* Wide, gravelly valleys full of gum acacias and enclosed by parallel ranges of sandstone and clayey hills led the travellers to Bukra, with its "Father of the Fort," a conical mound that was hopped over by the whole caravan to see who was least tired. In the Wâdy Sardalis there are ruins of an ancient Moorish building, the "hiding-place of treasure and the haunt of ghosts," as, in the opinion of the African, all old ruins are, while the sandy cliffs, worn into the appearance of battlements,

pinnacles, towers, spires, and minarets are, according to the legends of the muffled Touareg, who passes them in haste on his swift camel, the home of demons, the loftiest being known as the especial "Kasr junûn," or the "Devil's Castle."

The Touaregs are proverbially a grave race, and the Ghatees, whose town they duly reached in charge of their guide, who was a native of it, are so eminently sober a people that the travellers were anxiously warned not to sing or giggle, or in any way play the merry man. Ghat is, moreover, a clean, well-watered town of a thousand people; and what is most remarkable, the handsome women of the place—for the Touaregs are not negroes, or even Arabs, but members of the still fairer Berber stock—enjoy an amount of freedom unknown in most other parts of Moslem Africa.

On their return journey the travellers passed through Tesauwah and Jermah, the two most celebrated towns in Fezzan—for the latter was the ancient capital of the Roman Phazania, though the travellers seemed to have no idea that Fezzan was known to the ancients, in spite of the fact that the remains of a Roman sepulchre were seen near the last-named town, and both of them are mentioned by Edrisi, who wrote in the twelfth century.

The condition of Clapperton and Oudney when Denham returned to Murzuk made it imperative that no time be lost in setting out for a healthier region. With an energy unusual with these dilatory folk, the escort and the caravan was got into marching order, and to the number of 300, Europeans, Arab irregular cavalry, and merchants, set forth on the journey, though in reality both Oudney and Hillman were too ill to bear the hardships of travel. Scarcely were the walls of Murzuk and the date-groves around it out of sight than the merciless desert, with its burning heat and drifting sands, lay before them. Here and there they came upon a little green oasis, where a spring imparted verdure to the hollow into which its waters ran, or

The expedition sets out from Murzuk: the miseries of the desert.

\* Duveyrier : "Les Touareg du Nord" (1864), p. 244.



where the rain showers did not sink so rapidly into the thirsty soil. But billowy sands or stony "hammada" were the prevailing features of the country traversed, and the whitened skeletons of man and beast that marked the pathway indicated, with grave suggestiveness, the miseries that had overtaken their predecessors and might overtake them also. In one day they counted one hundred and seven poor outlines of humanity,



MAIL-CLAD WARRIOR FROM BORNU (p. 250).

and at one well a hundred were found—the remains of slaves too exhausted to keep up with the "coffle," or of caravans that had been overwhelmed by sand-clouds just when they reached the dried-up spring.

As they passed southwards the wells grew scarcer, the date-trees and oases fewer, until the wandering Tibbus and Touaregs, who prefer to pick up a precarious livelihood by plunder or more peaceful pursuits, became fewer and fewer; and even the wild beasts, who share with them the little the land produces, vanished before the vast expanse

of yellow sand beneath the rainless sky. For days at a stretch scarcely a scrap of vegetation could be seen, and the hot winds that blew across the waterless waste scorched where the pitiless sun had failed to reach. The travellers were too miserable to speak. Their tongues clave to the roofs of their mouths. Even the camels ceased their monotonous moan, that patient but ill-conditioned beast feeling, like his master, the idleness of complaining over what could not be remedied. To push on was the only alternative, in a silence broken only by the crunching of a hoof over the bleached skeletons in the path, or the flop-flop of the beasts of burden on the soft sand or the still more painful stone-strewn "hammada." A time came when even the camels gave in, twenty or more sinking exhausted in the course of a few hours, while the welcome night, with its starlit sky and its cool breezes, was not always free from terror. Often, as the travellers sank on the soft sand ready for sleep and rest, the cry of marauders would arouse the drowsy guards; for in this arid region even the passing caravan preys like wolf upon wolf: their very fellow-travellers are regarded as fitting subjects to provide part of the poor livelihood which the robbers manage to wring from a region unfitted for the abode of honest men.

Passing Bilma, across another sandy desert, the year 1823 opened with brighter prospects. For the Sahara—the belt we have seen (p. 35) between the fertile north and the luxuriant region on each side of the equator—had been passed, and the greener Soudan reached. Trees now appeared, then green patches, and by-and-by they passed into a land of flocks and herds, tended by Tibbu herdsmen, until, as they advanced, the land far and near assumed an appearance unknown even to the semi-civilised country in the vicinity of Tripoli. It was like a park in Europe. Birds twittered in the shady trees, gazelles ambled in front of the caravan, and the hospitable blacks, who brought fresh meat, and milk, and juicy dates to the weary travellers, seemed in keeping with the smiling land

The Soudan is reached.

which they inhabited, just as the wild Touaregs and the savage Arabs were fitting nomads for the forbidding desert over which the travellers had passed. As misfortunes never come save in battalions, so Fortune is equally lavish in her favours, for, amid this plenty, the explorers were gladdened by the sight of what at first they must have mistaken for one of those inviting mirages with which the desert pilgrim is too

familiar. A sheet of water, studded **Lake Tchad.** with islands, its low shores surrounded by reedy marshes and clumps of white water-lilies, among which the hippopotami wallowed, and its surface brightened by the white sails of fishermen, lay before them. This was the famous Lake Tchad,\* often heard of by previous travellers, and even described by Leo Africanus and the Arabic geographers, but now for the first time seen of christened men. In many respects, this is

is a "self-contained hydrographical system," eight hundred feet above the Atlantic, situated in the very heart of the continent, in a trough



MAJOR DIXON DENHAM. (From a Print.)



CAPTAIN CLAPPERTON. (From a Print.)

the most remarkable of all the African lakes, for, though its size is smaller than the great inland sea farther east, the basin in which it lies

\* Chad, Tsade, Tsâde.

between the water-sheds of the Nile, the Congo, and the Niger, with none of which it has any relations, the latest discoveries proving that the Kebbi, the most distant tributary of the Benué, the largest feeder of the latter river, has not, as was at one time believed, any connection with the Tuburi Marsh, or with the feeders of the sheet of water now under consideration. Lake Tchad itself is, indeed, at times little more than a vast marsh—bigger than the island of Sicily—for, while its tributaries, the Shari, the Komadugu Yoobe, and other smaller streams, fill it during the tropical rains, when the dry season comes its contents sink twenty or thirty feet, and its outlet, the Bahr el Ghazâl, which at the time of greatest fulness discharges the surplus water north-easterly for three hundred miles into the Bodeli depression, is entirely dry. This enables the contents of Lake Tchad to keep fresh, for, though the Shari is not much shorter than the Rhine, and is the largest river in Africa which does not reach the sea, its flood is, for more than half



the year, simply evaporated without flowing through the basin.\*

Not far from the western side of this remarkable lake—which is to play a considerable part in the future of Africa,

**The kingdom of Bornu.**

it being already the point round which some international jealousies are beginning to work—is Kuka, the capital of the Mohammedan negro kingdom of Bornu, though for the moment the sight of this realm, also described by the old Arab traveller (p. 243) excited less interest than the lake; for, at the time when Clapperton and his companions sought it, they believed it to be the source of the Niger, and therefore in a way, the solution of the long-canvassed problem. But Kuka, nevertheless, is an interesting town, and Bornu, from many points of view, one of the most curious of the African monarchies. Their welcome there was pleasant, cavalry and infantry being drawn up to do them honour, with the usual wild horsemanship which is the favourite display of the Arabs and of the tribes who have picked up the rudiments of civilisation from them. But the most remarkable feature of this reception was the fact that many of the Sheik's (p. 248) body-guard of negroes were clad in coats of mail from the throat to the knees, and that some of them had, in addition, iron helmets and chin-pieces, while the horses' heads were also defended by plates of iron, brass, and silver, leaving just room enough for the eyes of the animal. This armour, so utterly unsuitable for the climate, was doubtless a recollection of what they had seen on the Arab warriors when first they made their acquaintance many centuries ago, since it is scarcely likely that it could be an independent invention of their own. After many quibbles over etiquette, and the mode of salutation which the travellers were to accord to him, they were admitted to the presence of the Sheik, and were lodged in huts near the palace.

The Sheik, with the ignorant self-importance of a local celebrity, attributed the visit to a desire on the part of the British sovereign to see a man who had won so many victories over the Baghirmis of the neighbouring territory, and as his guests did not think it prudent to ruffle this characteristic piece of vanity, each of his courtiers eagerly inquired, "Did he ever hear of me?" Major Denham—who was not regarded by his contemporaries as burdened by many scruples—imagined that his diplomatic reply greatly helped the popularity of the expedition, forgetting that the complacency of the Sheik, at hearing that he had to divide his fame—which was, of course, imaginary—with his captains would be so wounded as to neutralise the good effects of the earlier piece of invention. However, the Sheik in no way abated any of his politeness, though eager enough to receive the travellers' gifts and greedy of the tales they had to tell of how fights were won in the white man's land, and absolutely forgot royal dignity in his astonishment when he heard of "twenty- and thirty-pounders!" Bornu has always been the Central African sovereignty which has been fondest of pomp and circumstance in its sultans,† and what the travellers saw among its motley people—Arabs, Berbers, Fulahs, and negroes of many tribes—surpassed anything for which they were prepared. In the very heart of Africa—a continent the borders of which are garrisoned by dense arrays of savages—were found people who deserved the name of civilised, living in a fine country shut in by the desert which they had crossed, with large walled cities, holding weekly markets, at which sometimes a hundred thousand people came to sell their produce for the cotton goods of Manchester, the red cloth of Saxony, double-barrelled guns, raw silk, Sheffield razors, China tea and West Indian sugar, Nuremberg toys, and

\* Nachtigal: "Saharâ und Südân Ergebnisse sechs-jähriger Reisen in Afrika" (1881), vol. ii., pp. 347-379. Barth: "Travels in Central Africa" (1857), vol. ii., pp. 148-350, for the history of Bornu.

† Though the people are mostly negroes of the Kanuri stock, the ruling race is of Arab descent. The shores and islands of Lake Tchad are inhabited by negro pirates called Yedina or Budduma, to use their Kanuri name.

writing-paper bearing the watermarks of Marseilles or of London. The mail-clad warriors, in spite of their black faces, recalled a state of society long vanished from Europe, and were in curious contrast with a culture—limited, it is true, to a few “tolbas,” or scholars—which went so far as to study Aristotle and Plato in Arabic translations. These books came for the most part from the Barbary States of the north, and were no doubt copies of versions made centuries ago for the book-loving Moorish kings of Spain. From the same region then as now—for though Bornu is hemmed in by “Spheres of Influence,” it is still independent\*—cloths, yellow slippers, and Korans beautifully written were exported just as they were in Leo the African’s day, and, we may be certain, for centuries before he was born. And such was the influence of Tripoli from a religious point of view, that then—as is still the case—knotty points of the law (and the law in those lands is the letter of the Koran), were often decided on appeal by the Tripolitan Ulemas or doctors learned in the sacred book, the endless traditions, and the thousand commentaries that have been written on them.

Life in Kuka and the Bornuan towns would therefore have been fairly agreeable but for the restlessness of the ragged escort that had been sent with them from Tripoli. These idle blades were not even nominally under the command of the travellers, and practically were scarcely controlled by their own captain, who in vain joined his remonstrances to those of the Europeans against a proposal now mooted among them. They were unwilling to return empty-handed to their homes, and, having no other capital than their long-barrelled muskets, determined to seek fortune in a slave raid or “ghazziah” in the mountains of Mandara to the south of Bornu. Seeing that there was no preventing them and that he might see some new country, Denham, with characteristic courage and a not too delicate

sense of the duty he owed to his country, which was then striving by every means to discourage the horrors of the slave trade, resolved to accompany them, and thus by his presence actually countenance the abomination these ruffians were perpetrating. In Mandara the land looked so beautiful that anyone bent on so fiendish an errand as the Arabs were might have relented in the presence of the picturesque dells, clothed with gigantic trees from which a wealth of creepers swung in flowing festoons, and cliffs on which little villages were perched like eagle-nests. But the raiders had miscalculated their strength and that of the Bornu contingent, even when aided by the Sultan of Mandara, to whom the mountaineers were objectionable. For at the very first onset they were outnumbered and repulsed, and managed to reach Kuka in a woeful plight, short of many with whom they set out, and altogether in a condition of demoralisation sorely depressing to the Bornuese, who at the time of Clapperton’s visit were in a state of great jubilation over their recovery from the humiliation of the Fulah yoke under the leadership of the Sheik Mohammed el-Amin el-Kānemi, who was now the traveller’s host.† The Mandara mountaineers‡ belong to the Musgu stock. Several of their villages were burnt. But in return

\* It is, by latest accounts, rapidly decaying. Kuka, however, has a population of about 60,000, and Ngornu to the south-east is still more populous and a very important trading centre.

† After Bornu had been for two years under the Fulahs the Sultan Ahmed was enabled to regain power by the help of this Faki, fanatic or sheik. Dumama, who succeeded him, was unable to maintain his power, and had again to be reinstated by the aid of the powerful sheik, who as reward received half the revenues of the kingdom. The nominal sultan, however, got jealous of his powerful ally, who was in consequence compelled to dethrone him in favour of his uncle Mohammed. But this *roi fainéant* proving no more docile than his predecessor, Dumama was reinstated. On the death of the latter in battle with the Baghirimis, Ibrahim his brother became titular sultan. This was the sultan at the time of Clapperton’s visit, though the real one was the sheik who, deserting Bornu the old capital on the Yoobe, had built Kuka—now called Kukawa—the first town having been destroyed, for the seat of his sovereignty. On the death of the sheik in 1835, Omar, one of his forty-two sons, became sultan in reality, by his rooting out all of the old royal stock or Shuwas. His descendants now govern Bornu.

‡ “Kerdies,” or Pagans, is their generic name.

many of the Arabs and Bornuese were slain or captured, and both leaders were severely wounded. Denham himself barely escaped. In the rout his horse fell, and the enemy were upon him almost before he recovered himself, but, having kept his

in which he was likely to meet with friends. Having already received several spear-thrusts, his pursuers were speedily gaining upon him, and, with the loss of blood from the wounds and the torture caused by the prickly under-wood not only obstructing his way but tearing his flesh miserably, would in all likelihood have been overtaken had not a mountain stream, gliding along at the bottom of a ravine, saved him. "My strength," he



RUINS OF BIRNI, OR GHASR-EGGOMO, THE ANCIENT CAPITAL  
OF THE BORNUE EMPIRE.

hoid of the bridle, he was enabled, by firing on his adversaries, to again mount. A second fall of the wounded animal, however, enabled them to surround him. His fate then seemed hopeless, for he was stripped to the skin, and, preparatory to his end being discussed, his captors disputed over his arms and clothes. Taking advantage of their attention being thus distracted, the hapless prisoner crept under the belly of the nearest horse and fled as fast as his legs could carry him in the direction

tells us, "had almost left me, and I seized the young branch issuing from the stump of a large tree which overhung the ravine, for the purpose of letting myself into the water, as the sides were precipitous, when under my hand, as the branch yielded to the weight of my body, a large 'liffa,' the worst kind of serpent this country produces, rose from its coil as if in the very act of striking. I was horror-struck, and deprived for a moment of all recollection; the branch slipped from my hand and I tumbled headlong into the water beneath. This shock, however, revived me, and with three strokes of my arms I reached the opposite bank, which, with difficulty, I crawled up, and then for the first time felt myself safe from my pursuers." The hotly hunted horsemen of his troop were soon seen. Yet even then he might have





simply fallen into the hands of another Fulah party had not a negro, who had already twice saved his life, mounted him on the crupper of his own horse and galloped off with him. On regaining the main body of the Arabs and Bornuese, Denham had his nakedness covered with a bournous or hooded cloak. Again, however, he fell from his horse and swooned, and, but for the kindness of the negro who had saved him from the Fulahs, would have been left to die (Plate 8).

After this discreditable episode in the history of British exploration—which created a coldness between Major Denham and his companions, who, it is known from private information, entirely disapproved of his share in it—the expedition did little for some months. Indeed, it is open to discussion whether from that date the good fortune that had hitherto attended it did not falter. By taking part in a slaving “ghazziah” the white men had not only lowered themselves in the opinion of the natives, who had been taught to regard the English as the enemies of such enterprises, and incurred the displeasure of the Sheik, whose advice they had disregarded, but roused the jealousy of the Fulah Sultan Bello (p. 225) by making war against his subjects.

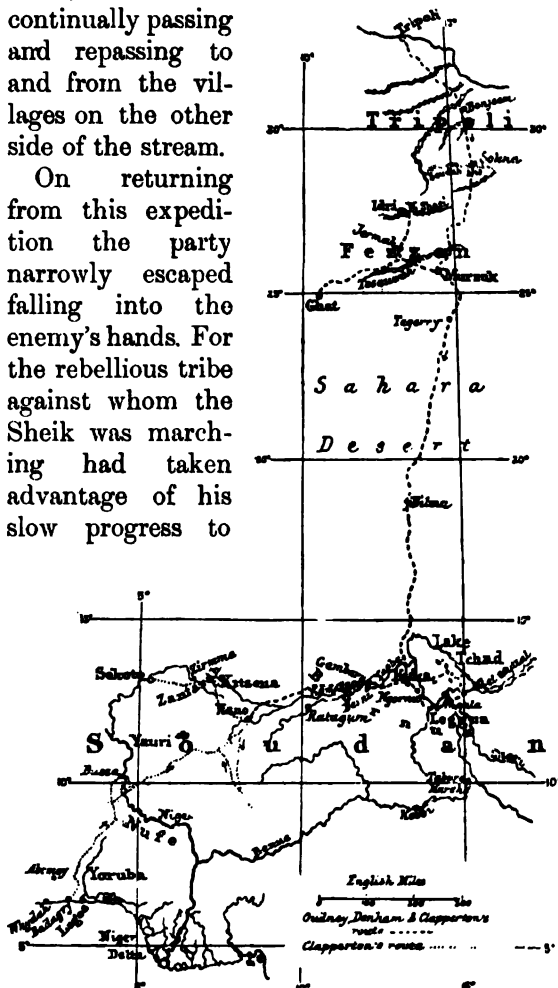
The Sheik having left Kuka on a punitive expedition against a rebellious tribe in the West, Denham and Oudney visited Birni, the former capital, now in ruins, intending to proceed to Kabshari on the Gambaru\* River, there to await his return. Travelling through a flat country, thinly strewn with acacias, they came to the river named, flowing between steep banks covered with luxuriant vegetation and abounding in game, especially guinea-fowl. Birni,† even in the few years which had elapsed since it had been deserted, was fast falling into decay.

\* Also called the Yeu.

† Also called Ghasr-eggomo. It was founded by Ali Ghajideni about the year 1480. When Barth visited it in 1852 the place was so utterly deserted that forest grew up to the ruined walls, and of the once teeming inhabitants not one remained. A pair of ostriches that lived among the long grass covering the site of the city were the only living things seen (p. 252).

It covered a space of five or six miles and is said to have at one time contained 200,000 inhabitants within its walls of hard red brick. The date at which they were told to expect the Sheik's arrival being still some time distant, the explorers visited in the meantime the town of Gambaru, which takes its name from the river on which it is situated. This was a favourite residence of the Sheik, and in its almost imposing buildings of brick formed a remarkable architectural contrast to the collections of humble huts that constitute the usual towns of Bornu. Around the walls were pleasant meadows, well cultivated, and on the river a service of boats, which were continually passing and repassing to and from the villages on the other side of the stream.

On returning from this expedition the party narrowly escaped falling into the enemy's hands. For the rebellious tribe against whom the Sheik was marching had taken advantage of his slow progress to



MAP OF OUDNEY, DENHAM, AND CLAPPERTON'S ROUTES.

advance and capture Kabshari, and were at one time quite close to them. It was therefore necessary to make the best of their way back again, and, as the public road was insecure, they were compelled to effect their retreat through thickets tangled with thorny climbers, and dangerous from the numerous pitfalls dug for the purpose of entrapping predatory Touaregs, until, at the Sheik's camp, they met with a kind reception, and for the first time since leaving Tripoli heard news from England, by means of a courier from the coast.

The rainy season setting in, the explorers were reduced very low. Clapperton and Hill-

**A journey to Kano.** man the carpenter were brought near to death from repeated attacks

of fever, and Dr. Oudney grew daily worse and worse. All their attendants except one were ill, and Denham for a time was the only member of the expedition who could render any assistance to the others. Dry weather again setting in, Clapperton and Oudney were able, on the 14th of December, 1823, to set off on a journey to Kano and the Houssa States in the company of a trading caravan going in that direction, leaving Major Denham to receive the fresh supplies for the expedition that were daily expected and sorely needed.

The journey on which they had now entered was in many respects one of the most important of those that they had yet undertaken. For, by the observations made upon it, they hoped to put at rest many conflicting discussions and reconcile a host of warring theories. Unfortunately, Dr. Oudney was not destined to see the end of it. Conscious that the end was approaching, he told the Sheik that, as he could not live long, it was better that he should be travelling about, as he was never well when under a roof. Any sudden change of temperature brought back all the old fever from which he had suffered during the rainy season. Three days after Christmas the thermometer sank as low as 45° at sunrise, and the cold at night was so acute that it was necessary to light a fire in his tent. By the 10th of January, 1824, he was unable to ride, and a frame of wood had to be laid on

the back of a camel in order to allow him to be carried in a prostrate condition. Two days later, he died in his tent, near Murmur, while drinking a cup of coffee.

Proceeding alone, Clapperton reached Kano, a famous trading centre of thirty or forty thousand inhabitants—an estimate **The city of Kano.** confirmed by Barth, who visited the

place more than thirty years later, and has given the fullest account of it that we possess. It is the great emporium of the Houssas, and is frequented by caravans from a long distance. The bazaar was found well filled with European goods, and among other objects of interest Captain Clapperton became the owner of a green cotton umbrella for three Spanish dollars—or about twelve shillings—this and similar articles travelling across the desert by way of Ghadames. Here also—let us hope it is so still—British credit was so sound that several merchants pressed him to take goods to any amount, paying them simply by a bill on the British consul at Tripoli. After receiving all manner of hospitality from the governor and citizens of Kano, Captain Clapperton proceeded to Sokoto, the capital of the new Fulah empire, being assured by **The city of Sokoto.** Bello, the Sultan, at whose in-

itation he came, of the kindest treatment. So far, this magnate redeemed his promise, but when he began to make preparations for a journey to Yauri and Nufé with the intention of trying to solve the world-old mystery of the Niger, the Sultan grew colder and finally refused to permit him to proceed, except at his own peril, and this also finally he forbade, the danger to his guest being too great.

Bello had heard of Denham's escapade. He had even books found in his baggage captured during the slave raid, and put some awkward questions regarding the business the white man had in the company of the raiders into the Kerdy country. These books, some of them Major Denham's manuscript journals, were, however, returned, and Bello, who is described as a man of great intelligence and some knowledge, was good enough to declare



that, though the gifts Clapperton gave him were wonderful, the bearer was the greatest curiosity of them all. And of all the things he told him the most amazing were that servants in England were hired for a limited period, and that even the king's soldiers were clothed, fed, and paid. "Allahu Akbar! God is great!" cried the Sultan, "You are a beautiful people!"

Finding it impossible to move the suspicious Sultan from his resolution, after waiting several weeks, hoping against hope, Clapperton took his departure and returned to Bornu, visiting, on the way back, Zyrini, the capital of Zanfarah, and Katsena, or Kashna, a city even more celebrated. The former is mentioned by Edrisi, the Arab geographer of the twelfth century. But when Clapperton visited it—and its fortunes have not improved since his day—it was a small though still important place, noted as an asylum for thieves and vagabonds, while fields and thickets occupied a considerable portion of the area within the walls of Katsena. The Fulah conquest ruined its trade, the caravans going to Kano instead, while its local manufactures, chiefly of leather, were even then growing less and less. But the Touaregs and the merchants from Tuat and Ghadames still congregated there to buy figs, melons, pomegranates and limes, and to let and hire camels for the journey across the Sahara.

Meanwhile, during this absence a welcome supply of stores had arrived at Kuka, in charge of Mr. Toole, a young man who almost alone had traversed the long route from Tripoli to Bornu, proving to a certain extent the Bashaw's boast that the road was as open as from London to Edinburgh (p. 245). In his company Denham made an excursion to the southern and eastern shores of Lake Tchad, and to Logón on the Shari River, which discharges its waters by many mouths into the lake. Logón is a populous country, inhabited by an industrious and partially civilised race, possessing a metallic currency, in the shape of thin plates of iron

not unlike the tips with which racehorses are shod. It is not considered etiquette to speak out; hence there is always a difficulty in catching the sound of a well-bred gentleman's voice. But besides the metallic currency—about three hundred pieces of which are equal in value to a dollar—Logón has another of the luxuries of civilisation in the shape of Stock Exchange gamblers. Every Wednesday the value of the "circulating medium" is settled by proclamation, and speculations are made by Bulls and Bears in anticipation of its rise and fall. It may be remarked that when the Sultan is a buyer the currency is usually announced to be high, but when his taxes are due it seems suddenly to fall below par.

An invasion of the Baghirmis forced the explorers to hasten back to Kuka. But before being able to reach that city, Mr. Toole, worn out with his exertions and the want of proper medical aid, sank and died on the 26th of February, 1824, at Angala, near the southern extremity of the lake. This was the last of the explorations made by this important expedition; for in a few days Clapperton returned, and then, on the 16th of August, the survivors took up their return march to Tripoli, which they entered on the 26th of January, 1825, after completing what was in some respects the most important journey since Mungo Park's day, if, indeed, it did not surpass, both in extent and in the amount of fresh information it brought back, that famous adventurer's raid into the unknown.

Many travellers have since that day started from and returned to this old crumbling Barbary town that we have so frequently mentioned. It is, nevertheless, perhaps more difficult at the present time to complete the journeys which they made than it was in 1824, religious fanaticism and political jealousies—not to mention the injudicious acts of European travellers—having made the Sahara and the lands beyond it less friendly to "Christians" than they were in more placid times.

Return  
journey to  
Bornu.

Return to  
Tripoli.

Logón and  
Lake Tchad.



GRASS-ROOFED SLEEPING SHEDS IN MAMU FOREST, YORUBA, WEST AFRICA.

(From a Photograph by Rev. J. T. F. Hallihey.)

## CHAPTER XIV.

### THE NIGER MOUTH: THE END OF A LONG STORY.

Clapperton's Second Expedition—Start from Badagry—Death of Dr. Dickson—Return of Mr. James and Death at Whydah—Return and Death of Dr. Morrison—Death of Captain Pearce—The Yoruba Country—The Blandishments of the Widow Zuma—Bussa and Park's Death—Sokoto and the Sultan Bello—Death of Clapperton—Richard Lander, his Servant, makes his way to the Coast with the Stores and Records of the Expedition—The Amenities of Badagry and the Portuguese Slave Dealers—Lander is Tried by Ordeal—Returns to England—Second Expedition of Richard and John Lander—Richard Lander's History—The Niger Theories—Reichard's and McQueen's Views—Reach Bussa—Descent of the River—A Rude Reception—Black Brigands and a White Ruffian—The End of an Old Story and the Beginning of a New one—The Death of Richard Lander and the Dawning of Niger Commerce.

MAJOR DENHAM\* and William Hillman the carpenter figure no more in African exploration. Captain Clapperton, however, was destined to meet a more tragic end. Nettled that he should have been within five days' journey of the Niger and yet have failed to see it, he had scarcely rested from his toil in England than he determined to return and complete that part of his journey out of which the stubbornness of Bello had cheated him. He found the British Government in no way disinclined to listen to his proposals. Bello had sent the most flattering compliments to

the King, with an expression of his eagerness to open up a commercial intercourse with the British traders on the West Coast, which, were it accomplished, seemed certain to end by solving the Niger problem.

Clapperton, now raised to the rank of Commander—he had been no higher than Lieutenant previously—was accordingly selected for the head of another expedition. Captain Pearce, of the Royal Navy, was appointed second in command, and conjoined with him were Dr. Morrison, a Naval surgeon, and Dr. Dickson, a Scotsman, who had for many years practised medicine in the West Indies, while Richard Lander, a young Cornishman—who in a few years was to surpass all of

\* Denham received the customary reward of the office-seeking explorer. He was appointed Superintendent of Fernando Po, then held by the British, and there he died in 1830.

them in reputation, and to die even more tragically—accompanied Captain Clapperton as his personal servant.

Sailing in August, 1825—two months after the former expedition had reached England, and while the debilitating effects of the African climate had not worn off—the Bight of Benin was chosen as the most suitable spot in which to break new ground, under the belief, now growing into a certainty, that the Niger flowed into the Atlantic somewhere in the vicinity of the Gulf of Guinea. Badagry, a

**start for Badagry.** few miles to the west of what is now the British colonial town of Lagos, was the point from which they took their departure, intending to reach Sokoto; and then, after paying their respects to Bello, to return to the Niger and descend that river to its termination. Dr. Dickson had previously been landed at Whydah, on the Dahomey coast, with the intention of penetrating north to Jenné. Reaching Abomey, the capital, he was furnished by the negro king with an escort of one hundred men as far as Shar, where the Dahomeyan monarch's authority ended. Fever had, however, already attacked him, and, it is feared, the irritating effects of the heat were not favourable to the temper of a man who had been accustomed to regard negroes simply as slaves, and not, as were those now with him, free warriors, masters of their own country. At all events, after going two days' journey from Shar, a serious misunderstanding, which has never been explained, led to his life being threatened by the chief of the escort. This so violently exasperated Dickson that he attempted to throttle the man, who, calling his followers to his assistance, fell

**Death and disease.** upon the unfortunate white and killed him. Mr. James, an English trader from Whydah, who had accompanied him part of the way, lived to return to that place, where, after a few days, he died of dysentery, though there were long suspicions that he had been quietly put out of the way by old Antonio Da Souza, then at the height of his prosperity as a slave-merchant (p. 75),

and naturally ill-disposed to British expeditions the avowed object of which was to stop the lucrative branch of commerce in which he was engaged.

Clapperton's party were scarcely more successful: for scarcely had they left the coast before the deadly climate of that portion of Africa began to claim its victims. After sleeping for a night in the open air, they were all attacked by malarious fever, which so weakened them that Morrison had to return, only to die on his way to the coast; and



RICHARD LANDER. (From a Print.)

though Pearce struggled on, he too soon dropped by the way. Clapperton was now alone, except for the company of his intelligent servant, whose light-heartedness and devotion to his master relieved many of the sad hours that were to follow. In the populous and fertile Yoruba country they were beyond the sickly belt that encircles so much of Africa. Here their main troubles were the anxiety of the king to keep the white men in his capital and the somewhat obtrusive attentions of a wealthy widow—fat, close on forty, but not fair—who, after in vain trying

to induce the master to share her riches, endeavoured, with no better success, to win the love of the man. Zuma, the lady in question, was the widow of an Arab in "the city of Wow Wow," and had been left so well off by her late lord that a thousand slaves owned her as their mistress, and she had treasures besides that enabled her to live in regal splendour. She had, even before the white men's arrival, aspired to the throne by heading an armed rebellion of her vassals, though, possibly owing to her charms—excessive corpulence being amongst the Arabs the criterion of beauty—the lady was pardoned after a couple of days' imprisonment. Yoruba is still very isolated, its traffic being not so much with the coast as with the caravans through the desert, the "tarbooshes" or red-caps of Vienna, transported no less than two thousand miles across the Sahara, finding still—as they did when Rohlfs visited Ilorin in 1867—a regular market in places not over 150 miles from the Bight of Benin. Climate alone—as Mr. Millson remarks—and the "African code of ethics, 'so to deal with others as thou wouldst thyself hope to avoid being dealt by,'" do not alone suffice to prevent the entrance of European commerce from the Atlantic; though since the British have been at Lagos, and the Niger has, through a long stretch of its lower waters, become an English river, this state of matters is likely to become every year less and less marked. The Dahomey war raids on the outlying towns of Yoruba, and the ceaseless "jihad" of the Mohammedan tribes on the north, paralyse the natural commercial instinct of the inhabitants and close the trade routes every now and again. But now, as in Clapperton's day, the Yorubas are a race of farmers, in a finely cultivated country, where game is scarce and meat and milk are comparative luxuries: and as the oil-palm does not flourish at more than 100 or 150 miles from the coast, the business that supplanted the slave trade is not lucrative in the inland kingdom. The scarcity of milk is exemplified in a curious custom. Children not being easily reared on

the produce of their father's farm, the mother retires for two or three years to her parents' home, occupies the room in which she dwelt as a maiden, and devotes herself entirely to her child, and in many cases ceases to be maintained by her husband, who meanwhile goes on marrying and attending to the cultivation of the soil. The result of the system is, however, a demand for more women than the country can supply, and consequently a succession of inter-tribal raids, undertaken for the purpose of obtaining wives to replace those who are scattered over the kingdom engaged in nursing their families of one. In those days Yoruba was pretty much what it is still. Then, as now, in that part of West Africa, the sloping terraces and rocky ranges that buttress up the great plateau of Central Africa for some eighty or a hundred miles inland from the Guinea Coast were, for the most part, the homes of fetish-worshipping negro pagans, who, by the aid of muskets bought from the Europeans and the rugged nature of their country, keep at bay the Mohammedan cavalry of the Soudan. Yet even they are yielding to the pressure from the North, and of late to the insidious efforts of the followers of the Senoussia, that fanatical sect of the desert who have settled in their midst in the guise of peaceful merchants or travelling charin-sellers. The coast tribes—those settled in the broken country within a hundred miles of the shores of the Gulf of Guinea, from the Scarcies River to the mouth of the Niger—number about 12,000,000, divided by racial and inter-tribal slave wars into almost innumerable septs; those at a distance from the ports are kept from trading to the sea by their brethren who have the advantage of position, and they are at the same time subjected to a steady pressure of conquest from the North. The fertility of their land and their rapidity of increase alone save them from destruction.\* The ancient kingdom of Yoruba, through which Clapperton and his humble friend

\* Millson, *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, 1891, pp. 578, 579; Moloney, *Ibid.*, 1890, pp. 596-614.

passed towards the Niger, was one of those great tribal divisions (pp. 256, 260, 261).

Rumours of war compelled them to deviate from their intended route to Nupé, and so, by some strange chance, they made the Nile at the Bussa Rapids (p. 265), close to the place where Park and

**Bussa and  
Park's  
Death.**

his companions were killed. Instead, however, of being received with unfriendliness, or even suspicion, the people and their chiefs vied with each other in showing them kindness. The Sultan of Yauri, hearing of their advance, sent seven canoes laden with provisions for their acceptance, and a request that they would visit his capital. On the subject of Park's death they were, however, very reticent, seeming to be ashamed of the part they or their companions had taken in it, trying, of course, to shift the blame from themselves to some other tribe or people, so that it is very doubtful whether the story they told is to be accepted as even approximately true. They declared that Park and his companions were mistaken for Fulahs, whose conquering raids were just then arousing fear all over that region. If the account given to Barth (p. 218) was correct, this is not improbable, though in all essential particulars they substantiated the account given by Amadi Fatuma (p. 217): yet the fact that two of the slaves who survived the massacre were then at Bussa, but were carefully kept from communicating with the travellers, scarcely confirmed the favourable impression this story was intended to convey. One sequel the people added to what was already known of the tragedy which is sufficiently striking. After Park's vessel had been pillaged and the floating property recovered by the Bussa people, there was for days and nights nothing but feasting and rejoicing. But suddenly, in the midst of these revels, a strange infectious disease broke out in the city, and spread with such virulence that the Sultan and many of his subjects perished, and it was noticed that those who had been most active in the destruction of the strangers were cut off to a man—all of

them expiring in great agony. Naturally it was concluded that this was the vengeance of the white man's god. As such it was considered by all the neighbouring tribes, and the Bussa people, from that day until the period of which we speak, were everywhere stigmatised as an accursed race who had been guilty of a crime heinous in the eyes of Heaven. "Do not hurt white men," had become a maxim among the Niger folk; "for if you do, you will perish like the people of Bussa!"

From Bussa, the travellers' route lay across Nupé and the Houssa States to Kano and Sokoto, where they naturally expected to meet with a kindly reception from Clapperton's old friend Sultan Bello. At Sokoto, however, they had arrived just when the Bornuese and the Fulahs had gone to war, and it seemed as if the empire founded by Bello's father were on the eve of disruption. These troubles in no way inclined the suspicious Sultan to his new visitors, or relieved his mind of groundless beliefs as to their motives in entering the country. Irritated over the daily rebuffs he met, and disappointed at finding it impossible to obtain permission to do anything, Clapperton, who for long had been far from robust, now broke down entirely, and on the 13th of April, 1827, weakened by repeated fevers, died in the arms of his faithful servant. Knowing how readily poison is employed in those regions to remove inconvenient persons—arsenic among the Moors is quite an instrument of diplomacy—it was believed in England that Bello had compassed Clapperton's death. But there is no longer any reason for holding this opinion.

**Sokoto:  
Death of  
Clapperton.**

Lander was now the last white man of the expedition left. His duty done, he had to make the best of his way home with the papers and other property of the expedition. But, anxious to try to carry out the object of his master's mission, he determined, instead of taking the route across the desert, as Bello advised him, and indeed as Clapperton when dying thought would be safest for him, to try

to trace the Niger from Fundah to the sea. In this, however, he failed. The rainy season had set in and travel was difficult. Bello, moreover, displayed no anxiety to help him. Indeed, he found it hard to get away from Sokoto without being stripped of all the property of the expedition. However, in due time he reached Kano (p. 264), whence he started southwards to reach the Niger, which he believed flowed in that direction.

Being, however, disappointed in this search,

sometimes indeed "howling so dreadfully" at seeing him that the horse on which he rode trembled with fear. But this was only their way of congratulating the traveller on his safe return.

*The amenities of Badagry.*

At Wow Wow he expected to renew his friendship with the widow Zuma. But to keep both of them out of harm's way to him, Sultan Mohammed had imprisoned the lady whose ambition in life was to marry a white man. Every day, however, she sent a slave



MOHAMMEDAN SCHOOL, YORUBA.

(From a Photograph by the Rev. J. T. F. Halligey.)

he returned to Kano, and thence made his way back to Badagry by much the same route that he and Clapperton had followed the year before, arriving there on the 21st of November, 1827. "The Little Christian," as Lander from his diminutive stature was called, abounded in tact and good-nature, and made friends at all points. Throughout the route to the coast he was received with kindness, the people everywhere welcoming him back with vociferous expressions of pleasure,

with gifts for Lander, and every evening the messenger sang songs in her honour. The traveller was naturally gratified at these testimonies of esteem from so wealthy a dame. But his self-complacence was a little hurt by being overtaken on his road by the slave, who, in the name of her mistress, begged that, since it was not possible to wed the white man who had just left, he would send some other one—anyone—willing to become her spouse and to dethrone the villainous

old Sultan who had treated her so despitely.

At Badagry the native king vacated his two-storey bamboo hut in order to accommodate him. But here ended the civilities to which Lander was becoming accustomed; for the Portuguese in the place, jealous of the

Calling one day on a slave-merchant—and the incident may be related as a type of the treatment he received—he found the dealer in human flesh at breakfast. Wheaten rolls, tea, and sugar were before him, all luxuries that for many months had been strangers to his visitor, who, forgetting good manners



VIEW OF ESE ADO, YORUBA : TAKEN FROM A ROCK 350 FEET ABOVE THE TOWN.

(From a Photograph by the Rev. J. T. F. Halligey.)

British, who were now making the slave trade, by which everybody in Badagry lived, more and more difficult, treated the explorer with the scantest of courtesy. They tried indeed to persuade the king and his people that it would be necessary to kill Lander, asserting that he was a spy sent by the British Government and, if suffered to leave the town, would return with numbers of his countrymen and enslave its inhabitants.

in the sharpness of his appetite, proceeded to help himself without being formally invited. The retort he received, however, effectually cured him of any further longing after the good things before him. "Senhor Englishman," was the stern reproof, "stay your hand for a moment, if you please. You have three fine slaves in your possession, for each of whom I will immediately pay you one hundred dollars, and also send you as many



wheat cakes as will serve you for a twelve-month. But, unless you consent to this proposal, you will have neither rolls nor tea of mine, I assure you!" Unable to stay his hunger at the expense of the poor blacks who had been the faithful companions of his pilgrimage, the indignant Briton bestowed on the Portuguese the most contemptuous epithets in his vocabulary, and, repairing to his own hut, broke his fast in the contentment engendered by duty done on a little boiled maize meal mixed with palm-oil. Still determined to see whether Lander could not be induced to part with the negroes, the Portuguese trader, affecting to regard the previous rencontre as a piece of "English phlegm," sent him a loaf of bread, a cheese, and a bottle of English porter, articles which he had dreamt of in the interior, but never expected to partake of in Africa. Finding, nevertheless, that the Briton was not to be persuaded to violate at once the laws of his country and the dictates of his conscience, the rabble of Portuguese in this vile spot, now a town of some 13,000 people on the Lagos Lagoon, and part of the British Colony of that name, tried to incite the fears of the native sovereign—for in those days the place was independent, the Portuguese being there solely on sufferance—with a view to compassing his destruction. He was accused of plotting against the king, and compelled to clear himself by the ordeal of drinking "bitter water," his innocence or guilt being indicated by the fact of whether he recovered from the effect of the draught or, as usually happens, died under the poison. By good luck, either through the strength of his constitution, the connivance of the fetish-men, or some more occult reason, the traveller left the fetish-house nothing the worse, with the result that, in the revulsion of feeling in his favour, he, who a few hours before was accused of high crimes and misdemeanours, was now regarded as something not much less than a god, to whom gifts of every sort were to be offered, and favours of every description were due.

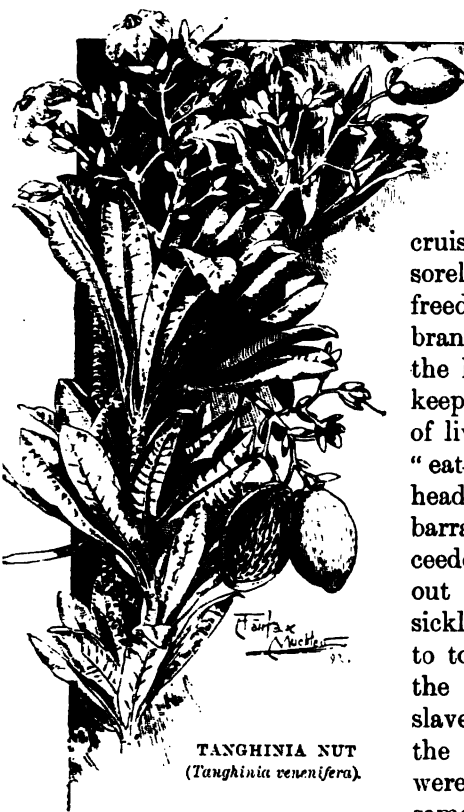
Of the many forms of "trial by ordeal"—which is one of the oldest and most widespread of judicial superstitions—perhaps the most characteristic is that just <sup>Trial by ordeal.</sup> indicated. It is peculiar to West Africa, and prevails to the most marked extent on the Guinea Coast. The so-called "red water" is a decoction of the inner bark of one of the mimosas, which, when taken in sufficient quantity, is emetic. If, on the contrary, the person condemned to drink it gets dizzy, he is concluded to be guilty, pelted with stones, and even dragged over the rocks until he is dead. The Calabar bean (p. 275), the mbundu root, and the tanghinia nut (p. 263) are still more virulent, and, as the fetish-man who prepares them has it in his power to make the ordeal-drink strong or weak, emetic or deadly, this individual is believed to make the most of his quasi-official position. Perhaps, when Socrates was ordered to drink the hemlock juice he was merely submitting to one of the requirements of the ancient trial by ordeal?

But this "proof" of Lander's innocence, though it acquitted him in the eyes of the natives, did not secure him favour from the Portuguese. They still reviled him and even tried to murder him, a villainy not difficult to perpetrate in a town where there was no law save that of the savage king, whose ideas of the sanctity of life may be gathered from this fact which the traveller witnessed during his enforced stay in this typical Guinea village. One morning he was woke up by unearthly shrieks close to the royal "palace" in which he lived. Looking out, he found that the cries proceeded from eight women, wives of the king, who were being dragged off to execution for the crime of having spoken their minds too freely to their lord, only an hour before. A few moments later their throats were cut—a mark of distinction accorded only to the king's favourites—and next morning their bodies were seen hanging to the fetish-tree outside the village. Murder in this place was scarcely considered a crime—the killing of a slave not even a misdemeanour.



LANDER UNDER "TRIAL BY ORDEAL" (p. 262).





TANGHINIA NUT  
(*Tanghinia venenifera*).

Whenever the market for slaves was slack—and the British cruisers interfered sorely with the freedom of this branch of trade—the king, tired of keeping a species of live stock that “eat off their heads” in the barracoons, proceeded to thin out the old and sickly, and then to toss them into the river. The slaves rejected by the merchants were decreed the same fate, when

they were not reserved to endure more poignant torture at the sacrifices by which, as in Dahomey, hundreds of human beings were in those days destroyed every year.

The fetish-hut was decorated with the skulls of these victims, and around the fetish-tree where these butcheries went on the air was continually fetid with the decaying corpses strewn around, on which flocks of obscene vultures were gorging ravenously. Skeletons in every stage of fragmentariness swayed in the branches of the tree, and the ground was thick with skulls and bones, silent witnesses to the abominations of what is still not the most enlightened of British colonial towns, but less than seventy years ago was like a hundred other spots along the West African shore, a dark place full of “the abodes of horrid cruelty.”

At last Lander got off, after having a narrow escape of taking passage on board a Spanish vessel which he afterwards learned was a noted pirate commanded by

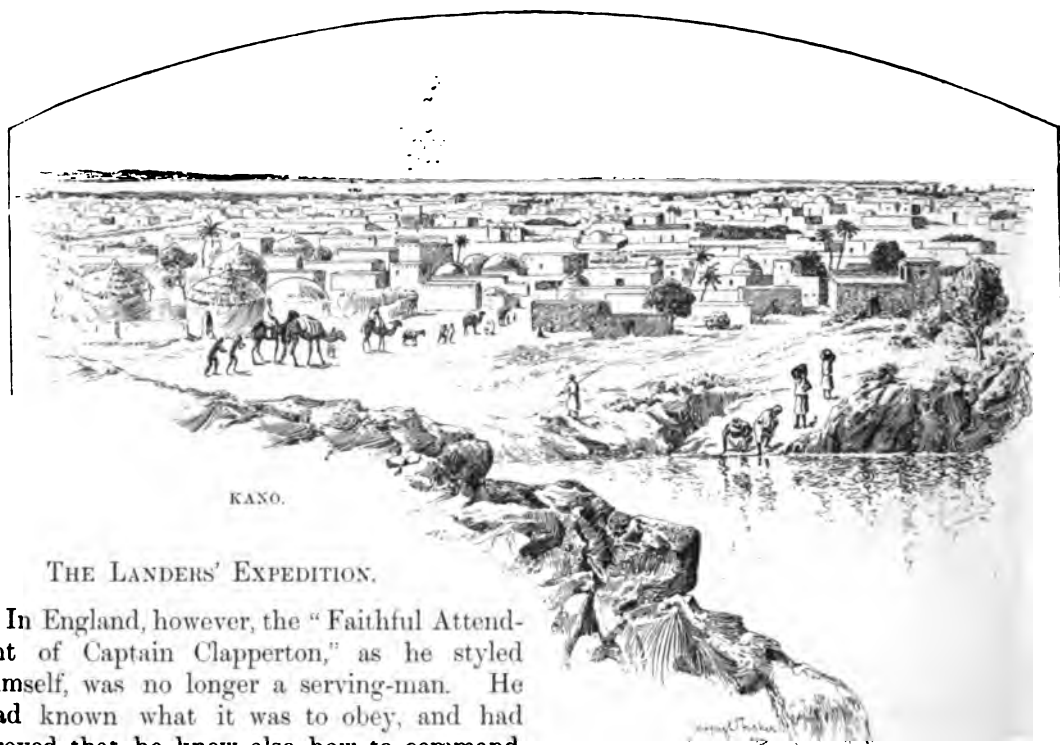
an amiable person whose intention, after securing the property the Englishman was supposed to possess, was to make him “walk the plank.” Even on board the British man-of-war by which he eventually reached his native land the lot of the man who had endured so much and deserved so well was not the most agreeable. The captain, forgetting that the day Lander received the heritage of his master’s task had “gentled his condition,” would fain have set him to perform a menial task. But, as he puts it with playful irony, “Could I, who had so recently shaken hands with majesty, and lodged in the palace of kings; who had been waited on by the Queen of Bussa, and walked delighted with proud princesses of Nupé: could I, who might have become the master of a thousand slaves, and lord of the high-minded and lovely Zuma; who had been solicited to wed the daughter of a mighty monarch, as well as become premier of his councils and commander-in-chief of his armies: could I so suddenly fall from the towering elevation to which my consequence had raised me, forget all my dignity and all my laurels, and descend to the menial, grovelling occupation of washing the filthy eyes of turtles? \* Surely, no. But for the first time I *felt* that I was among my good-for-nothing countrymen; that the astonishing ‘Nassarah Curramee’ † of Africa, the god, the prophet, the enchanter, had degenerated into the simple Richard Lander of former years; that all my glory and all my consequence had vanished into thin air.”

Even on arriving in London he was taken for what he was not, for a Jew, seeing his long beard—then an unwonted spectacle—insisted on thinking that he was a co-religionist from Jerusalem. ‡

\* This was the duty assigned him by the unappreciative Captain Purchase, of the *Esk* sloop of war.

† “Little Christian.”

‡ “Records of Captain Clapperton’s last Expedition to Africa, by Richard Lander, His Faithful Attendant, and the only Surviving Member of the Expedition: with the subsequent Adventures of the Author.” 2 vols. (1830.)



KANO.

## THE LANDERS' EXPEDITION.

In England, however, the "Faithful Attendant of Captain Clapperton," as he styled himself, was no longer a serving-man. He had known what it was to obey, and had proved that he knew also how to command. The brief career of this remarkable youth, who in the course of a few years played so notable a part in African discovery, is for its romantic incidents only equalled by that of Caillié. Born in 1804, at Truro in Cornwall, Richard Lemon Lander was one of the six children of a small tradesman, unable to give his boys more than the slender education then considered suitable for persons in their condition. Even this the lad did not take full advantage of, being too fond of roaming about from place to place, sharing in the adventures of the village youth, and listening to the wonderful tales of foreign parts that seamen had to tell. However, by the time he was eleven Richard Lander was out in the world earning his bread, having at that age "accompanied a mercantile gentleman to the West Indies" in the capacity of page. Returning in three years, he served as footman or valet to various Englishmen in France and other Continental countries, in South Africa and in England, until he was engaged in a similar capacity by Captain Clapperton. Thus,

though not book-learned, he was not without education of a kind that schools cannot supply.

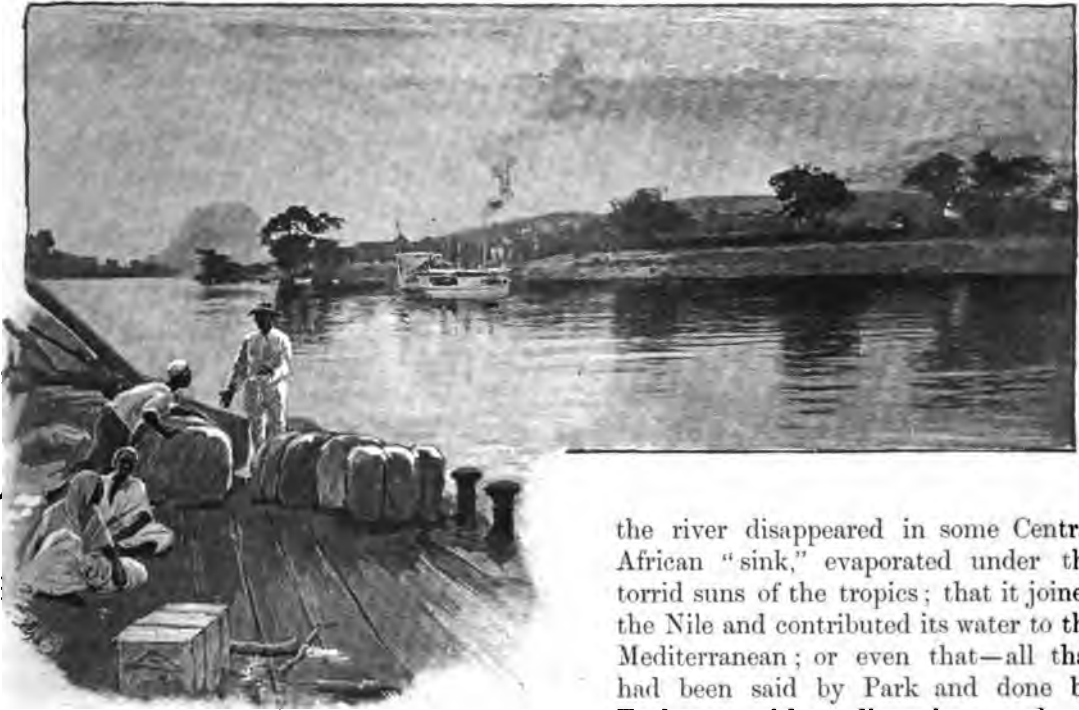
His African story, except for its pathetic aspect, did not, however, arouse great interest. The repeated failures, and the sacrifice of many lives in making these journeys from which so little substantial benefit was reaped, were bringing the country from the hot enthusiasm of a few years earlier to the cold stage at which it remained for many years afterwards. Even the nation at large were more interested in the adventures of Arctic than of African explorers, half of whom seemed to die and leave the remaining moiety to bring home their journals, which, after all, told how they were always going to but never did manage to solve the problem of the Niger mouth. Geographers, however, began to see light more clearly than before. By a process of exhaustion, the course and mouth of the river that had been so often reached and

Reichard and  
MoQueen:  
armchair  
discoveries.



never traced were confined within comparatively narrow limits. Then they began to recall the theory of Herr Reichard of Weimar, an armchair geographer, who as far back as 1808 had broached the view that the Niger reached the Atlantic in the Gulf of Guinea, through a delta of which the Rio del Rey and the Rio Formosa were respectively the eastern and western branches. At the time this view—which in less than twenty-four years was proved to be substantially correct—was scouted with unwarranted unanimity by those who had adopted different opinions: Mannert, an eminent commentator, to whose fame time has been unkindly, declaring that it was contrary to all Nature. Another geographer, who, though he had never seen the Niger, had the advantage of reading the facts about it

without being under bonds to accept any of the current conclusions, arrived at much the same inferences from more extended data than his German compeer. This was James McQueen, a Scotsman, who in the course of his life as a West India planter had conversed with slaves from the banks of the Niger—one of them, a Mandingo, having actually rowed Park across the mysterious river. Reviewing on his return home all that had been gathered since Park's day, he also showed, by a train of sound reasoning, that in the Bights of Biafra and Benin was the outlet of the Niger, and that this river was in the days to come to be one of the great highways of British commerce. The idea was then most unreasonably regarded as the dream of a dreamer, for "the authorities" were still wrangling over Rennell's idea that



THE RIVER NIGER AT THE FOOT OF THE BUSSA RAPIDS, NEAR RABBA: "DR. BAIKIE'S SEAT" IN THE DISTANCE.

(From a Photograph taken by the Earl of Scarborough during his last visit to the Niger Territories, and kindly lent by Sir George Goldie.)

the river disappeared in some Central African "sink," evaporated under the torrid suns of the tropics; that it joined the Nile and contributed its water to the Mediterranean; or even that—all that had been said by Park and done by Tuckey notwithstanding—its actual termination was in the Congo. But as McQueen, after a chequered career, lived for half a century later, not only to see the Niger traced to its mouth, but to

welcome Livingstone, and Speke, and Grant, and Burton, and Baker, and to hear of Stanley and Cameron—most of whom were not born when he first broached his theory in 1820—the last of the old school of African geographers deserves a higher place in the world's memory than his generation accorded him.

But when Richard Lander came home in 1828 and offered to Government to return and complete what was still left undone, Reichard and McQueen were names very frequently in men's mouths. Government were, however, apathetic, and the terms they were finally induced to offer Richard and his brother John—a better-educated man than himself, whom he had smitten with a love of Africa—were poor compared with those which had been promised to some of their predecessors. However, the Landers were not self-seekers, and when they landed at Badagry on the 22nd March, 1830, to retrace that course to the Niger which one of them had already twice followed, they were inspired by any feelings but those of pecuniary reward. They were smitten by what another Niger explorer calls the "mesmeric influence" which affects alike those who have once visited Africa or the Arctic regions. At Eyeo, after following much the same route as Clapperton had done and Richard Lander had taken on his return journey, the brothers were compelled to strike more to the north, reaching the Niger at Bussa three months after leaving the coast. At Bussa—a point now familiar as the limits of steam navigation from the sea—they found some books and guns that had belonged to Park; but the traveller's papers had disappeared, and, it may be added, have never been recovered. Why Clapperton when at Bussa three years before did not descend the river has never been fully explained, and why he went to Sokoto in an opposite direction is equally mysterious, for the native declaration that anyone descending the Niger would be killed was not likely to scare a man of his type. Evidently he wished to deliver the King of England's message to the Sultan Bello, and secure his

powerful aid before venturing on that voyage, and, failing to obtain it, died of fever and vexation before he had time to make the effort without that whimsical despot's permission.

The Landers were, however, determined not to fall into the same mistake. The "King" of Yauri, having consulted the "Dark Water," as he called the Niger,\* and found the oracle favourable, the eventful voyage was begun with no more imposing flotilla than two canoes. But the river, so the fetish-men had declared, promised to take care of the white men, Yauri experience of that class of personages being by this time that they would be apt to take uncommonly good care of themselves, though there was no harm in giving the river all the credit it was capable of carrying. For a time the course lay through a cultivated country, where the voyagers experienced nothing except hospitality, their wants being bountifully supplied, and their parting sped with best wishes for a happy ending among their countrymen at the salt water. Sunken reefs were, however, an ever-present danger which they had to exercise vigilance to avoid; and at places the swift current often ran them perilously near those jagged rocks that reared their crests just above the surface of the river, now lower than during the rainy season. For two months the white men and their native followers paddled through calm reaches, or were swept along in the swifter narrow where the river contracted its channel as it forced its way through some mountain range, like that now bearing the name of Rennell. All was new then. It is familiar enough nowadays to the student of African geography (pp. 106-7), and is likely

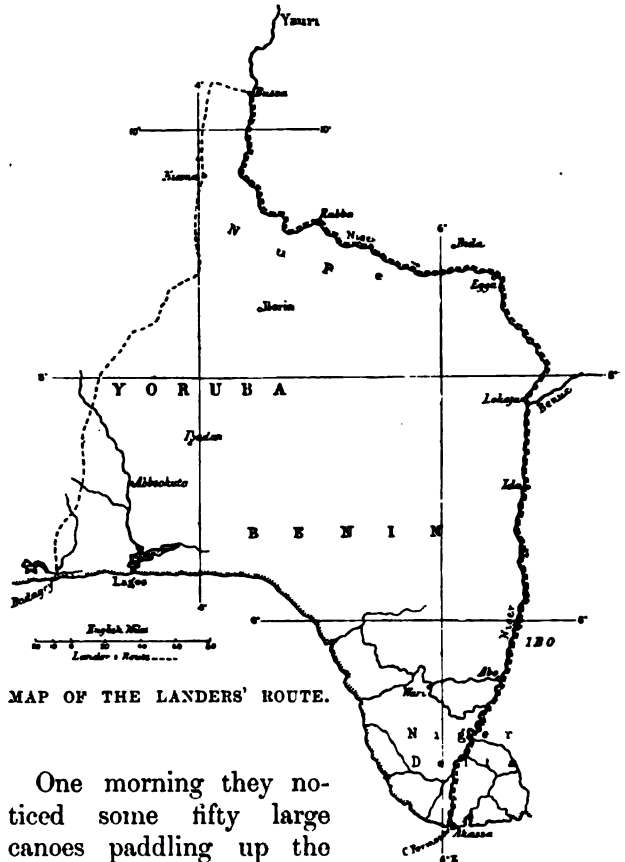
\* So Lander puts it; but, as we have already noted, the word "Niger" has nothing to do with the Latin for black. It is most probably a word of Berber origin, though at Bussa the river is called the Joliba. Among the many names for it (p. 106) may be mentioned Mayo, Isâ, Kaki'uruwa, and N-egher-rëu, from the last of which Barth derives the word Niger. But all of them, like Joliba (Dhiûliba) and Kworra (Quorra), mean nothing more than "the river."



before another century ends to be as well charted as the Mississippi or the Nile. For steamers now churn a large extent of the stream, above and below Bussa, over which its pioneer navigators skimmed little more than sixty years ago (1831) in such peril and suspense, never knowing what the next hour or the next bend might bring forth. By-and-by it seemed as if the long voyage was drawing to a close. Every day the country got less bare, and the river expanded into broad reaches, flowing almost imperceptibly between banks no longer steep, or mountains reflected in the placid water. Vegetation became ranker and the forests larger and denser and more luxuriant. Vast stretches of rich soil were covered with huge trees grateful to shelter under, but from which a sickly miasma arose as the evening closed in. Crocodiles and hippopotami and water-fowl also grew more and more numerous, and by-and-by villages of naked black people peeped from under the palm-trees. Instead of the stately, though sometimes insincere, courtesy of the Moslems of the upper river, the voyagers had now to deal with rude pagans who knew no hospitality, and—except where here and there women and slaves cultivated patches of yams and sugar-canes—scarcely any industry.

Canoes increased in number as they sailed onward, and, as it was clear that the new peoples among whom they had arrived were savages of the rudest description, and possibly cannibals in addition, every moment was now crowded with anxiety. Their paddle-men began to exhibit a fear hitherto unknown, and, but for the firmness of the whites, would fain have returned. That their fear was not without foundation events soon proved too fully. They were now in a region more swamp than dry land (p. 107), the river dividing into the many branches that crawl lazily through the great delta formed by the mud it has for ages poured into the sea. Evidently they were approaching the Atlantic. One day the sign was a cocoa-nut, a tree never found far from salt water; another morning

a sea-gull flew overhead, and before many hours people were observed on the banks wearing pieces of European fabrics. At last a negro in a soldier's coat—and nothing else—called out, "Hollo, you Englishman, you come here!" The "Little Christian" was evidently no longer a natural curiosity.



MAP OF THE LANDERS' ROUTE.

One morning they noticed some fifty large canoes paddling up the river just in front of them

(p. 269), and on several of them flew the Union Jack, in addition to white flags on which were painted figures of a man's leg, chairs, tables, decanters, glasses, and other devices equally suggestive of a long familiarity with the staple of a Guinea Coast factory. The people on board were dressed in European clothing—trousers excepted, these being reserved as one of the insignia of kings, common people having to be content with pocket-handkerchiefs as a substitute. As the canoes

**The Niger mouths are reached: Black brigands and a white ruffian.**

came closer it was seen that the black crews were armed to the teeth, and that mounted on little platforms was a battery of six-pounders. It was a war-party, and in a few minutes the Landers and their men were, with their baggage, in the hands of those whom a short time earlier they were so rejoiced at seeing.

The people were Eboes, and had it not been for the remonstrance of some Mohammedan marabouts who, in the midst of these rude pagans, sided with the Christians as worshippers of Allah, it might have gone badly with them. In the end, however, the prisoners were taken to the Eboe king and were ransomed from him, for the value of twenty slaves, by King Boy of Brass, who happened to be staying with his brother potentate, an advance which Lander agreed to repay by means of a "book" or bill, and, in addition, to present King Boy with goods to the value of fifteen slaves, as some acknowledgment of his trouble. As an English trading vessel was just then lying in the Brass River, and the natives, not having been quite so frequently cheated as they were at a later date, had full confidence in British honour, they never for a moment doubted that the bill would be duly honoured. But in this the black men were mistaken. The master of the vessel turned out to be an advanced specimen of the personage who in after years was widely known in the Niger Delta as a "P.O.R."—Palm Oil Ruffian. For just as the weary explorers heard the glad thunder of the Atlantic outside the bar and knew that they had won an immortality of fame, they set foot on the deck of an English ship to learn that they and their mission were alike unknown. Four sailors had just died of fever, four more were sick in their hammocks, and the captain, judging from his temper, was in a very bad way indeed. It was in vain that Lander represented that, as the expedition was a Government one, no risk whatever was run in handing over to King Boy the goods promised. A tornado of oaths was the only reply. "He was no fool," was this ruffian's opinion of himself, "and, so far as *he* was concerned, the white

men might go to" a locality even hotter than the Brass River, "for he was not quite so green as to advance one bar of iron on the security of the paper in question." And then the volcano opened once more and from the crater belched oaths and abuse. Seeing that it was idle to expect anything from this ruffian, Lander asked King Boy to take him to Bonny and get money there. But the king had been too disappointed over the transaction to risk anything further. "No, no, dis captain no pay. 'Bonny captain no pay; I no take you no funder.'" The anger of the black savage was dreadful to contemplate. He gnashed his teeth like a wild beast, and actually quivered with rage as he hissed out, "You are a thief man: English captain no will! You told me, when I took you from the Eboe country, that he would be glad to see me and give me plenty beef and rum. I got neither one nor the other. Eh! English captain no will. I gave you plenty of goods to free you. I took you into my own canoe. You were hungry, and I gave you yam and fish: you were almost naked, and I was sorry to see you so, because you were white men and strangers, and I gave each of you a red cap and a silk handkerchief. But you are no good—you are thief man. Eh! English captain no will; he no will. You told me your countrymen would do this (taking off his cap and flourishing it in circles over his head) and cry 'Hurrah! Hurrah!' when I came on board this vessel. You promised my wife a necklace, and my father four bars. But, eh! English captain no will; I tell you, he no will. Yes, I will satisfy your hunger with plenty more of my fish and yams, and your thirst I will quench with rum and palm-wine. Eh! you thief man, you are no good; English captain no will!" Then his sable Majesty showed his white teeth in an uncommonly nasty fashion, as he stamped on the ground and gnashed at the explorers like an enraged dog, and cursed them again and again in the vilest English he could command. Scraping together what little property they had left, the poor travellers

presented it to King Boy. Instead of allaying his anger, it renewed it, and after pointing out to one of his people the beggarly reward he had received compared with what he had been promised, he refused again to speak or

with raking masts of the kind that had not then quite deserted the African coast was seen making after the trader, firing shots as the stern chase continued, until the brig lay to. As the *Thomas* was never more heard of, it is



"THEY NOTICED SOME FIFTY LARGE CANOES" (p. 267).

even look at those who, he considered, had so basely deceived him. However, they managed to reach Fernando Po, but, determined to have nothing more to do with this amiable mariner, declined his offer of a passage home. And it was as well that they did; for soon after leaving the island a large vessel

believed that the stranger was a pirate, who, after rifling the trader, disposed of her crew and captain on the principle expressed by the adage that "dead men tell no tales."\*

\* Lander, R. and J.: "Journal of an Expedition to Explore the Course and Termination of the Niger, with a Narrative of a Voyage down that River to its Termination." 3 vols. (1833.)

Sixty years ago the doings of travellers aroused less popular interest than they do at present. Yet the return of the Landers in 1831 with the news that at last the Niger problem had been solved was, as might have been expected, regarded as an epoch-making event in the Story of Africa. Nevertheless, the discovery of the mouth of the mysterious river had been almost anticipated by the

researches of the previous twenty or thirty years. By an exhaustive process, every other likely termination of that vast stream had been dismissed, until the broad delta along the shore of the Bights of Biafra and Benin, into which it flows by more than twenty mouths bearing names applied to them when they were supposed to be separate rivers, remained the sole spot left untouched by destructive criticism. Yet Clapperton himself had commenced his second expedition for the discovery of the river's mouth at the very edge of this delta, and Nicholls had actually entered at New Calabar, one of its mouths, and but for his untimely death might have passed through the deadly region into the undivided river beyond. Even Belzoni, after figuring as an acrobat and professional "strong man," was at one time on the eve of gaining, by the solution of the Niger problem, a greater fame than he won by his excavations among the ruins of ancient Egypt. For we learn from a paper in the Public Record \* Office that, resolving on a journey to Timbuctoo, he tarried in strict seclusion at Gibraltar for the purpose of letting his beard grow. This important preliminary to an African journey accomplished, he crossed the Strait to Morocco, and actually reached Fez. But the Sultan refusing to allow him to proceed farther, the would-be explorer returned to Tangier and sailed for the West Coast of Africa; and there, at Gato, a village in the Bight of Benin, he met his doom on the 3rd of December, 1823, in the shape of dysentery, so that Giovanni Belzoni was not destined to

**The effect  
of the  
Landers'  
discoveries.**

do more than enter upon a task that had been the death of Houghton, and Park, and Nicholls, and Peddie, which had led Burchardt to make long journeys as a preliminary training to entering upon a Nile journey, and had at one time tempted Karsten Niebuhr, the Arabian explorer, and Leyden, the Indian philologist, though, happily for both of them, their longings never took a material form.

But among those who most eagerly foresaw in the Landers' discovery the potentialities of gain to British commerce were the Liverpool merchants, who, with those of Glasgow, had for long had a practical monopoly in the trade of West Africa. Now for the first time they had before them a great river, larger than the Senegal or the Gambia, and, unlike the Congo, not broken close to the coast by cataracts impassable by steamers. Up this waterway vessels could sail and carry on a trade in ivory and gold with the wealthy kingdoms of the interior, instead of having the merchandise sent down the river to be taxed by the Delta tribes who, as the Landers' experience showed, had long been familiar with slavers and palm-oil traders.

Among those pioneers of the opening up of Inner Africa to civilised trade was Macgregor Laird, a name still familiar on the Mersey banks. Thanks to his influence, and largely also to his capital, two well-equipped steamers—the *Quorra* and the *Alburkah*†—were built for the purpose of testing the glowing accounts which the explorers had brought home, and, as Richard Lander agreed to accompany the expedition, it left Liverpool in 1832, full of high hopes, though there were wisacres who declared that a vessel built as was the *Quorra*, with the exception of the decks, entirely of wrought iron, would meet with early and condign disaster. "The working in a sea-way would shake the rivets out of the iron," the "heat of a tropical sun bake her unhappy crew as in an oven," and the first tornado she encountered would "hurl its lightnings upon a conductor evidently

**The  
Macgregor  
Laird Niger  
expedition.**

\* Foreign Office Documents (Morocco), vol. xxiii. (1823): Despatches of Consul Douglas of Tangier, etc.

† That is, in Houssa language, "Blessing."

despatched to brave its power." But though none of these calamities happened, the venture, which Laird himself accompanied, was commercially a complete failure, and, had it gone to the bottom as the croakers prophesied, it could scarcely have fared much worse than it did. For out of forty-eight Europeans who left the Mersey, only eight returned to tell their tale of misery. From the Government no assistance of any sort had been received, except that Lieut. Allen, R.N.—who was to become in future years another victim to the African climate—accompanied the expedition with the object of making a survey of the river. The endless branches into which it splits in the Delta were then unexamined, and indeed they are even yet only partially known. The Nun "river," or mouth—now the ordinary channel taken by vessels—was chosen as the one that looked most promising (Maps, pp. 36, 112). King Boy, his anger over the perfidy of white men solaced by the payment of Lander's debt with interest—though he had already sold the explorer's journal to a palm-oil trader, from whom it had to be ransomed—soon made his appearance, full of professions of friendship and endless tricks, with the object of extorting "dashes" from the new visitors in the "devil's ship," as he termed the steamer. It soon, however, became apparent that he meditated treachery, and had bribed the black pilot to run the vessel aground in a convenient place for its being plundered. But what the savages of the Delta failed to do, the vile autumn climate of their marshes soon accomplished. The palm-oil traders loading in "the rivers" looked "more like spectres than men;" and as the dank, clammy, fetid exhalation from the swamps took effect upon the languid seamen, unable to sleep at night owing to the unceasing torment of mosquitoes and sand-flies, they crawled about the deck so feeble and changed that

"A mother had not known her son,  
Amid the skeletons of that gaunt crew."

By the 5th of December, entries like the

following appear in the log-book: "Recovering slowly, but I hope surely. I have living, Alexander Hector, purser; John, the second steward; Harvey, Kirby, <sup>Decimation.</sup> Belfrage, and Davies, seamen—all as weak as myself, and crawling about the decks. Dr. Briggs has been closer run than myself, and for two nights I expected every moment would be his last. He is now, thank God, doing well. Last night about ten, Johnson, a mulatto seaman, died; and in the morning Captain Robert Miller was found dead in his bed." Even this awful mortality was to be exceeded until, beginning with the captain of the *Quorra*, the expedition was reduced to so few that for a time it was doubted if a single individual would escape.

They tarried too long in "the rivers" instead of trying to enter the main stream. But in those days the Niger navigator had to feel his way, and so six weeks were wasted at a dreadful cost among the bewildering maze of creeks and backwaters, and mangrove-fringed branches, "uninviting when descried, repulsive when approached, dangerous when examined, and horrible and loathsome when their qualities and their inhabitants were known." The latter—or rather, their chiefs—seem to have been divided between greed to make as much as possible out of the present voyagers, and a dread that, if they once reached the upper river and dealt directly with the tribes in that quarter, the business of the middlemen in the Delta would be gone. King Obie, who had behaved most extortionately to the Landers, seemed an exception to the rule. He received the new-comers with much amiability, clad in his royal panoply of scarlet cloth, his person decked with coral charms, bracelets, and other ornaments, worth something like a hundred pounds. The travellers were indeed surprised at his "pleasant and gentlemanly conduct," and still more at the generosity with which he presented them with a fine bullock, five goats, and three yams. Perhaps he was conscious that his previous conduct deserved reprisals, or was anxious to get free of the necessity of selling

his produce through the intervention of the tribes lower down. The amount of this which was obtained was demonstrated by the fleet of canoes that started out every morning to collect yams, palm-oil, and other "country

*Quorra* grounded more than once on sandbanks, so that the attempt to reach Rabba had to be abandoned that season, though Laird ascended the Benué or Tchad, a chief tributary of the Niger, for some distance.

Next year—the expedition meanwhile rendezvousing at Fernando Po, then in British hands—Lander and Oldfield, the surviving surgeon of the expedition, and the second in command, succeeded in reaching Rabba, the capital of Nupé (p. 273), at that time containing a population of about 40,000 people. They also ascended the Benué for 104 miles, and, had not their provisions given out, might have steamed still farther. But even at Rabba—and they found it impossible to proceed to the Bussa Rapids as they had anticipated—they did not

Rabba.

find that ready trade which they had been led to expect. The Arabs, who here, as elsewhere, were the principal merchants, were jealous of the new-comers, while the Fulahs, to whom the country belonged, subsisted by plundering the weak towns and levying contributions on them by aid of an army of 5,000 cavalry and 20,000 infantry, armed with poisoned arrows, spears, knives and swords, brought from Tripoli by the Arabs. At that time they looked with dread upon firearms, and the only weapon of the kind seen among them was a double-barrelled pistol, which

Lander recognised as having be-

longed to Captain Pearce. This army, however, like the country generally, was tributary to the Sultan Bello of Sokoto, and was in those days composed of liberated slaves, granted their freedom on condition that, while they might work at any occupation during the



RIVER-SIDE SCENE AT ASABA, LOWER NIGER.

(From a Photograph by Capt. Mockler-Ferryman.)

chop," and then in the evening dropped down the river with their cargoes. Unfortunately, however, when the expedition did reach the open river, with its cooler breezes and drier forest-covered banks, the season was too late; for the water had begun to fall, and the

wet season, they should, as soon as the dry weather set in, engage in slave raids for the profit of the king, who sold his captives to the Arabs, through whose agency they reached the Spanish slavers, then almost openly pursuing their business on the coast. Among other articles seen at Rabba were a number

and a costly one also, but, like all of its predecessors, it was a decided commercial failure. For on the way back Richard Lander perished. Good-natured and easy, looking upon the natives, in spite of all his uncomfortable experiences, as little better than children, he grew too

Death of  
Lander.



RABBA.

(From a Photograph by the Earl of Scarborough, kindly lent by Sir George Goldie.)

of pieces of clothing with which Lander had been compelled to part during his voyage down the river, and several which seem to have belonged to Park. Merchants from all parts were seen (p. 273). Several of them had come from Tripoli, having taken nine months to make the journey, to sell leather, horses, asses, raw silk, red caps, armlets, anklets, and natron in return for ivory, indigo, ostrich feathers, camels, skins, beeswax, and other Nigerland commodities. But slaves here, as elsewhere, were still greatly in demand, and when the Englishmen asked for ivory, and gold, and gum, they were often told that it would be better to "take men." After returning once more to the coast to recruit, so far as the breezes of Fernando Po and a cruise along the shores of the Delta farther south were capable of imparting health, the dwindling expedition made a third attempt to open up the Niger to trade. It was a gallant essay



IN THE MARKET-PLACE, RABBA.

(From a Photograph by Capt. Mockler-Ferryman.)

confident of their good intentions, and fully believed that, if fairly treated, they might be implicitly trusted. Like many before and after him, he forgot that a savage, even when of a higher grade than the miserable race who have their homes amid the Niger swamps, has



all the untutored impulses without the innate generosity of a child. Coming up the river in an open boat with a cargo of cowries and dry goods, he was, while aground off their village, attacked from all quarters by the natives of Hyaminah, near the fourth island from Sunday Island, eighty-four miles from the Nun. Several of the party were taken prisoners, and were afterwards ransomed, and a number of others were killed and wounded. Among the latter was Lander himself, who, in addition, lost all his papers and other property. His wounds, which at first were not considered mortal—and in a cooler climate, and with a constitution less enfeebled by a long stay in the unhealthiest part of the river, might not have been—unfortunately ended a short but remarkable career; for he lived only to reach Fernando Po, where he died on the 6th of February, 1834.\*

This year was the last of the Laird Expedition in Africa. It had examined the Niger as far as Rabba, and proved that, with the advantage of high water in their favour, the Bussa Rapids could be reached, as indeed they are now regularly, by steamers fitted for river navigation, while, in the costly school of experience, the projector had learnt much about the condition of trade, the climate, and the people. But from the merchants' point of view the venture had been a splendid failure. Money had been expended without any immediate return in money's worth, and life had from the first been lost so pitifully that the very day the *Quorra* arrived at Liverpool one of the men died from the effects of his stay in the Bight of Benin. Of all the officers, Laird and Oldfield were the only two who survived, and on them fell the task of telling the tale of their sufferings and disappointments† during a three years' expedition, in which everything

\* John Lander, who shared with him the credit of discovering the lower course and mouth of the Niger, but took no part in the Laird Expedition, died on November 16th, 1839.

† "Narrative of an Expedition into the Interior of Africa by the River Niger in the steam-vessels *Quorra* and *Alburkah* in 1832, 1833, 1834." 2 vols. (1837.)

was lost except, perhaps, experience, honour, and hope. And hope Laird never abandoned, for, though he did not again visit Africa, he may be regarded as laying the foundation of the Upper Niger trade; and as long as he lived he helped others to be more fortunate than himself. Everything was fresh in those times, recent enough to be remembered by men still living, though so far The Niger  
of 1834. as the Delta—the Oil River Protectorate of to-day—was concerned the natives were then pretty much what they have been ever since, a degraded race of little sept, eaten up with mutual hatreds and jealousies, filthy, covered with hideous skin-diseases, and pagans of the most pronounced description, ever in terror of their "ju-jus" or fetishes. One day clad in gorgeous cast-off finery, they would appear a little later in their pristine grease and nakedness. Here and there a chief's son, who had been brought to England, was able to read books that were of no use to him, while his father confined his education to a sparse vocabulary of bad English, composed of oaths or of requests for "palaver," the end of which was invariably a "dash"—for the extortion of which a most ingenious system of excuses had been devised, in the eager competition of the traders, who had not then, so much as in later years, taken to the system of doing business in stationary hulks. "Slaving" had not then been quite abolished, Spanish and Portuguese vessels pursuing it very boldly, and the craft of other nationalities with more secrecy. Nor was piracy altogether extinct, as Lander had found, nearly at the cost of his life, a few years before. At that time, indeed, slavers and pirates were getting nearly synonymous. Thus we hear of a very suspicious sail at Princess Island, the crew of which had been spending money so freely that, as usually happened in such cases, they were suspected of not having come honestly by it, and then to have been going over to the mainland "to load slaves"—being a pirate on the outer passage, and a "runner" of black bondsmen on the way to Cuba or

Brazil, or perhaps to South Carolina. Every chief along the Guinea Coast dealt in "black ivory" if he had the chance, and all of them were so violent against the English for stopping the lucrative trade in men and women that when Nicholls landed at New Calabar, the "King" of the River asked him whether he came from "Mista Willyfoss,"\* for if he did he would kill him. And extremely truculent personages were these palm-oil potentates. A slaver-pirate pursued by a British war-ship up the river Nazareth was blown up and her crew and captain sheltered by the "King," who refused to surrender them. Intertribal wars were as numerous as they are in our day, which has seen the interminable feuds between Oko Jumbo and Ja Ja, and for

\* Mr. Wilberforce (p. 74), whose exertions for the suppression of the slave trade have made his name familiar along the West Coast. To this day "a Willyfoss Nigga" is, in Sierra Leone, a term of abuse for a "recaptive" "'cruit," or slave freed by a British cruiser and landed there, though the chief object in establishing that colony was to furnish a home for such people.

causes almost as trifling. Thus all trade was stopped for a long time owing to a dispute between the Ibbodo people and the inhabitants of a town near Cuttum-Caraffee, which originated as follows: A boy had bought some spice balls† from a woman of the town in question, and refused to pay for them; on which the husband of the injured lady determined to be revenged. For this purpose he assembled some of his friends, and, on the Ibbodo canoes coming down the river, attacked them and killed two of the people. Thus a vendetta began, all in consequence of a dispute about four cowries' worth of negro sweetmeats.

Such was the condition of affairs when the Niger mouth was discovered, and the old life of the river having come to an end with the veil torn from its secret places, a new era dawned for it, and for Africa, the future of which we can as yet only imagine.

† These are made of pounded douar corn and cayenne pepper, baked on a stone over the fire.



CALABAR BEAN (*Physostigma venenosum*)

## CHAPTER XV.

## THE UTILISATION OF THE NIGER: AN UNFINISHED CHAPTER.

Effect of the Laird Expedition on Public Opinion—Beecroft's Voyage—The Government sends a Philanthropic Expedition, which Proves, like its Predecessor, a Complete Failure—Lull in the Exploration of the Niger—Retrospect of Fifty Years—A Few Scattered Travellers still with Longings after Timbuctoo, though the Mystery of it and of the Niger is Gone—Era of the Scientific Explorer Coincident with that of the Commercial Exploiter—Fate of the Niger—Three New Journeys to Timbuctoo—Barth—His Early Life and Travels—His Journey with Richardson and Overweg to Bornu and Lake Tchad—Death of Richardson—Overweg and Barth left alone—Barth's Journey to Timbuctoo—A Hunter's Paradise along the Shores of Lake Tchad—Koyam and Manga, a Contrast—A Land of Walled Towns—Zinder and its Commerce—Katsena—A New Land—Gando—Wars and Rumours of War—A Forest March—The Niger Tributaries—The Niger reached—Say—Along the Niger Banks—A Fanatical Folk—The "Nearer the Church, the Farther from Grace"—Embarkation for Kabara—A River Voyage—Arrival at Kabara.

THE Landers' Expedition had plucked the heart out of the Niger secret, for, though there were, and are still, hosts of minor discoveries to be made and many little problems



SNAKE CHARMER OF THE LOWER CONGO.  
(From a Photograph by the Rev. J. T. F. Halligey.)

to be solved, Timbuctoo and the up-river cities were no longer mysteries. The Macgregor Laird experiment had, it was the

opinion of many, disabused the world of the notion that there was much wealth to be won on the West African river that had for ages been rumoured to be an El Dorado. Accordingly, for some years we hear little more of the Niger, or of explorers of the Niger country. Mr. Beecroft, the Governor or Superintendent of Fernando Po, was the first to take up the broken tale by ascending, in 1840, to within thirty miles of Bussa, though not without a loss of life worth far more than the trifling additions he made to our previous knowledge of the Niger. His voyage had, however, the effect of again calling the attention of philanthropists to the teeming multitudes on the river banks; and so, in 1841, another expedition, this time with no immediate commercial or geographical aims, was despatched to this region of many hopes and many disappointments. It consisted of three steamers and a sailing-vessel, under the command of Captains Trotter, Bird, Allen, and William Allen, R.N.—who had as surveyor taken part in the Laird Expedition—while a good many people joined it who, so far as physique and capability of sharing in a venture that demanded something more than good intentions and a love of all mankind went, might much better have stayed at home. The moving spirit of the new enterprise was Sir (then Mr.) Thomas Fowell Buxton (p. 68), whose exertions in the suppression of slavery

A treaty-making expedition.



RECEPTION BY THE KING OF IDDAH (p. 279).

and the slave trade had earned for him a prescriptive right to speak with an approach to authority wherever black Africa was concerned. Government and the Friends of Africa—who had extended no help, moral or material, to the courageous venture of Macgregor Laird—were now ready at his instigation to spend money lavishly on the new expedition, the avowed objects of which were to penetrate the river as far as Rabba, “establishing new commercial relations with those African chiefs or powers within whose dominions the internal slave trade of Africa is carried on and the external slave trade supplied with its victims; the bases of which conventions are to be: first, the abandonment and absolute prohibition of the slave trade, and secondly, the admission for consumption in this country, on favourable terms, of goods the produce and manufacture of the territories subject to them.” A model farm was, moreover, to be established at the place where the Benué joins the Niger, and there, under skilled teachers, the natives were to be taught the merits of agriculture, the blessings of Christianity, and the curse of killing and selling each other. The archaic provision about free trade, it must be remembered, was made in the days of a high tariff, but otherwise the project smacks of a far-away day when the morals of African chiefs were not so well understood as at present, and the notion prevailed that these potentates were to be won over to the views of European philanthropists by means less material than force or a self-interest greater than that now touched in its most vital point. But the Parliament of 1840 was still echoing with the appeals that had resulted in the abolition of slave-holding throughout the British Dominions, and kindly folk, imbued with a belief in moral pocket-handkerchiefs, had not ceased to dream the dreams that they would like to have been realities.

No expense was spared in fitting out the vessels; and if the climate of the lower Niger could only have been subservient to science the expedition might have been

successful. But, like its predecessor, it was an unredeemed failure. Only one of the steamers reached as high as Egga; and, of 145 white men, forty perished of malarious fever during the few months the vessels were in the river. The flotilla left England in May, 1841, and was recalled in June, 1842. It entered the Niger, therefore, at the very season that was most unhealthy, and, as Laird and others had pointed out, the white crews were much too large for such a voyage. But as the flower of the Navy volunteered for work in which promotion seemed certain, and seamen competed with each other, as they have always done in Arctic expeditions, for employment in a service where pay and danger were both double, the remonstrances of these experienced men were disregarded as the spitefulness of interested persons. Within three weeks of the vessels rolling over the Nun “River” bar, sickness of a most malignant character broke out almost simultaneously among the vessels, and did not abate until the whole expedition was paralysed. When the confluence of the Niger and the Benué was reached, the materials A model farm. for the model farm—to be started by thirty-three negroes selected for the purpose—were landed: farm-house furniture, carts, ploughs, harrows, and all sorts of agricultural implements, most of them entirely unfitted for work in such a region, or by people who had never seen them until they were taken out of the holds of the *Albert*, *Wilberforce*, and *Soudan*. Nor was the spot selected for what Mr. Buxton called “a city built under the protecting wings of Great Britain, to become ere long the capital of Africa,” well fitted for a metropolis of any sort. It had two years before been the site of a large town destroyed by the Fulahs. But tall, rank grass now covered the streets, and from among the ruins of huts and the waste of what had once been gardens noxious reptiles glided at every step. After remaining for a couple of days on this charming spot—near which there are now busy trading-posts (p. 280)—and burying a man in that brief period, it was seen

that the spot was unsuitable for an agricultural settlement, far less for an African metropolis of the kind built in imagination by London philanthropists with a map before them. They were therefore compelled, to their great mortification, to re-embark their stores. After steaming a mile higher they again landed the farming paraphernalia, including "the famous Eglinton Tournament tent as a temporary residence for the farmer and his servants." But here death speedily put an end to the plans. In a week, seven men perished and eighteen sickened, and such was the mortality that the vessel conveying the invalids down the river had only two white men on board not dead or dying.

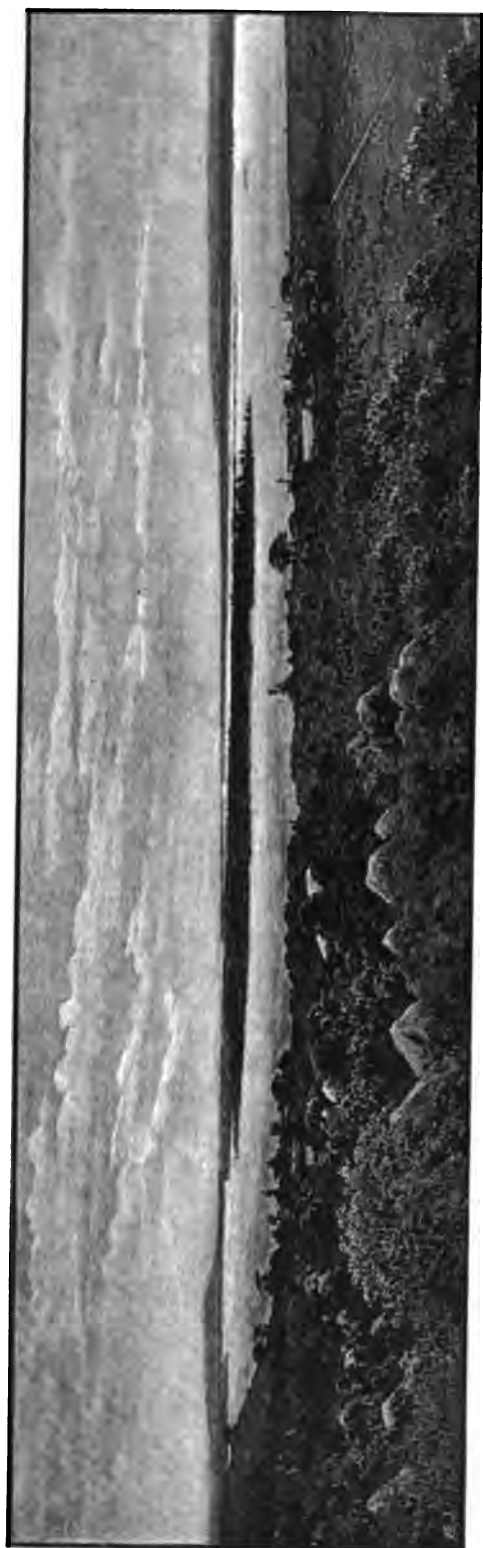
But, meanwhile, treaty-making went on briskly, though how far the "High Consenting Parties" had any intention of keeping their compacts may be inferred from the fact that thirty-nine "kings" of the Gambia region had, not long before, agreed to abolish the slave trade for a yearly subsidy of £300, or £7 13s. 10d. apiece—that is, less than half the price of a single captive. Indeed, before the expedition started, Lord Palmerston had warned the country that if European Powers like Spain and Portugal only kept their agreements to abolish a similar traffic

until it paid them better to wink at their infraction, the barbarians of the Niger, who never heard of the Rights of Man, and had few aspirations beyond wives and rum, could hardly be expected to be more virtuous. One of these potentates was the "King of Iddah," for whose reception great preparations were made. All the officers of the expedition attended to give dignity to the occasion, Mr. Duncan,\* master-at-arms on board the *Albert*, in the full uniform of a private of the Life Guards, to which regiment he had formerly belonged, marshalling, with a Union Jack in his hand, the diplomatists into the "imperial tent" through a

hole three and a half feet high, which the ex-Guardsman remarks, in a short narrative of the expedition that he wrote, was very awkward for a man of six feet three inches, with cuirass and helmet, and a boarding-pike with a flag attached to it. Inside this not very palatial shelter, they found his Majesty squatting on a bench, looking very stern, and surrounded by his court, dressed "much like the Guy Fawkes' effigies in London on the 5th of November." He, however, readily accepted the gifts offered him—no African chief ever refuses them—and promised through his counsellors everything asked, on the sole condition that the white men would aid him in a difference he had on hand with the neighbouring Sultan. This was a little awkward, considering that a leading object in the negotiations in progress was to stop these native wars, which originated mainly in the desire to make prisoners to sell. He was also ready to cede a portion—any portion—of his territory to his good sister the Queen of England, and to marry her, if this would facilitate the supply of gunpowder and big guns against the potentates whom he desired to have the best of.† But, above all, he was anxious to exchange Mr. Duncan's helmet for a damaged elephant's tusk. He, nevertheless, was equally pleased to become the possessor of some red nightcaps, spectacles, and needles; and darkness coming on before the completion of this international treaty—which is not found in Herslett—it was signed and sealed by the light of a bit of calabash saturated with palm-oil, blazing in a British frying-pan, which the monarch of Iddah was in the habit of using as a candelabrum. Meanwhile, the central personage in all these negotiations never spoke a word. He only nodded his woolly head from time to time; and, after this long lapse of

\* Mr. Duncan is better known for his journey to Adafoodia in 1845-6. He perished in attempting to reach Timbuctoo through the same region.

† We read, however, in the *Proceedings of the African Colonisation Society*, that "the treaty with the Attah of Iddah has been ratified by Government, except that Her Majesty declines the sovereignty of any territory in Central Africa, or the proprietary interest in any land agreed to by the Attah to be ceded to Her Majesty," which shows that in 1842 those comforting words, "Sphere of Influence," had not been invented.



CONFLUENCE OF THE NIGER AND BENUÉ RIVERS: ON THE LEFT IS THE QUORRA OR MIDDLE NIGER; IN THE CENTRE AND DISTANCE, THE BENUÉ; AND ON THE RIGHT THE LOWER NIGER.

(From Photographs by Capt. Noctler-Ferrymau.)

years, it may be questioned, without the risk of an indictment for minor treason, whether the dazed monarch had the most remote notion of what all the "palaver" meant. And so the farce went on all the way to Egga, as it has gone on ever since in other parts of Africa, with results about equally valuable and quite as substantial. All through three dismal months death was busy in their ranks, while the thermometer in the coolest part of the ship stood at 92°. Yet these earnest men never for an hour abated the performance of the errands on which they had been sent, though perhaps, had they been endowed with a keener sense of the ridiculous, they could scarcely have performed farces like the following without laughing in each other's faces. For, a few days after the solemn treaty with the Iddah king had been signed and sealed, a son of that ally of Her Majesty came alongside "with three slaves for sale." This was the same prince who, during the Laird Expedition, had, on the occasion of his brother's death, ensured to the defunct the sincere grief of as many relatives as possible by administering to his sixty widows a dose of poison, from the effect of which thirty-one died outright, and the twenty-nine who survived were "grievously griped." He had, moreover, admitted having poisoned several of Laird's people. Accordingly, if the countrymen of these murdered men—some of whom were British subjects, and all of them in British pay—had promptly slung this young savage up to the yard-arm, British influence would have gained something by the Buxton Expedition. But Captain Trotter, in pursuance of philanthropic instructions—which applied, however, only to the black man—gravely stood in the midst of his dying comrades, and read out to this murderous scoundrel—in English, it is presumed, for the reader knew no other language—"the laws relating to slave-dealing, and also his father's treaty abolishing slaves for ever in his dominions" (pp. 277, 281).

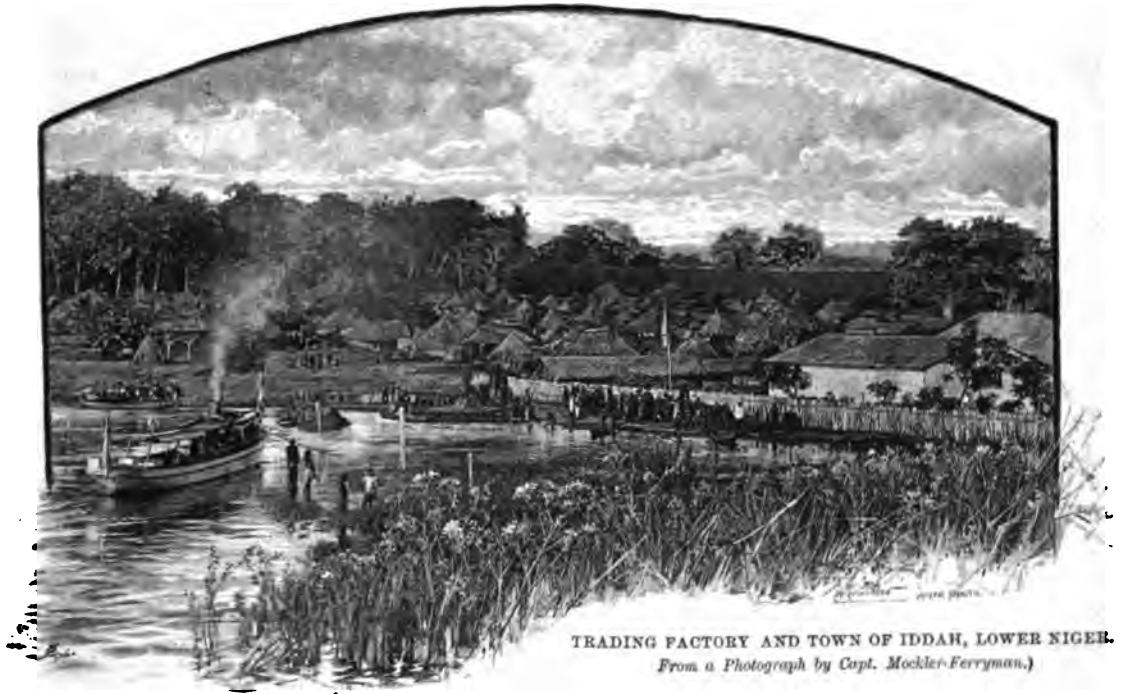
The river falling, the danger of grounding compelled the vessels to make all speed for the coast, though even then, had it not



been for the help of one of the traders whose counsel had been so lightly treated before the expedition left England, it is doubtful whether any member of it would have ever left the Niger. As for the model farm and the Eglinton Tournament tent, it was deserted by all save a negro sailor; the only produce of the steaming soil that the vessels brought

prevented any further attempts to develop, on a large scale, the resources of this pestilential river, or to use its banks as the starting-point for a philanthropical departure. But neither were forgotten, and, in the fulness of time, both came in a way not widely different from what McQueen and Laird, and even Buxton, had

A retrospect  
of fifty  
years: 1842-  
1892.



TRADING FACTORY AND TOWN OF IDDAH, LOWER NIGER.  
(From a Photograph by Capt. Mockler-Ferryman.)

off being a boatload of wan, half-dead people, including superintendent, farmer, schoolmaster, surgeon, and gardener. When the news of the misfortunes and, it must be admitted, mismanagement also, of this philanthropic adventure reached England, the whole business was ordered to be abandoned, the diplomatic and agricultural experiments included, and the survivors removed from the river.

The disappointment, almost bordering on indignation, which the enormous loss of life caused by these two expeditions\* aroused

\* McWilliam: "Medical History of the Expedition to the Niger" (1843); Simpson: "A Private Journal kept during the Niger Expedition" (1843); Duncan, in *Bentley's Magazine*, 1843, etc.

hoped for in their day. Little by little traders crept through the delta into the undivided river, and established trading-posts, not as high as Bussa certainly, but up to Egga, far beyond the junction of the Benué with the main stream; and in the track of the traders came missionaries, until, in the hierarchy of the Church of England, a black man who had begun life as an Egba slave ended it as Bishop of Nigerland. Then private traders gave way to an association of larger dealers, until to-day the Royal Niger Company is one of the great leagues of merchants who, like the East India and the Hudson's Bay Companies, carry on at once the government and the commerce of vast territories as the suzerains of the Crown.

In the case of the company under notice, their territory comprises 270,000 square miles, an empire larger than the Fulahs ever ruled. But the rise and proceedings of this league will be considered in a later volume. From the coast, however, in the course of the next fifty years many travellers crept inland, until streams unheard of in Park's and Clapperton's and Lander's days were laid down on the map. But most of these explorers were intent on enlarging the bounds of Colonial trade, opening up routes to the Gambia, the Sierra Leone, the Lagos, or the Senegal settlements, and will be discussed more fittingly when we come to deal with the Colonisation of the Continent, in the interests of which their expeditions were undertaken. Other explorers also penetrated the desert from the North, until, from Tripoli and Egypt, and Morocco and Algeria, routes to the Niger were traced. These travels were, however, not for the exploration of the Niger. That once romantic flood was now becoming about as unpicturesque from a literary point of view as the Amazon or the Orinoco. They were for purely scientific purposes, to study the geology and ethnology of the country, the plants and the animals and the languages of the Sahara and the Soudan, and will be considered as a whole later.

Even Timbuctoo seemed to have lost its romantic charm. For, though that city has been seldom visited—more seldom perhaps than any other in Africa—in the whirligig of events, by the French cutting in and obtaining the control of the Upper Niger, it has come under their Sphere of Influence, while Sego is, as we shall see by-and-by, now the seat of a French Resident, who nominally at least asserts the rule of his country over all the vast protectorate of the Upper Niger beyond that under the influence of the English Company.

Not that Timbuctoo had lost all its attraction; for in 1836 John Davidson, a learned Englishman, was murdered at Tenduf on an expedition thither soon after he had left the Sus province in Southern Morocco; and

in 1869 Alexandrine Tinné, a young and wealthy Anglo-Dutch lady who had previously travelled much in Northern Africa, met the same fate at the hands of her Touareg escort (who believed that her water-canteens contained loads of money) on the route from Murzuk to Rhat, while on a journey the goal of which it is believed was to have been Timbuctoo, though when she left Tripoli it was understood that she intended visiting Lake Tchad, and thence, by way of Wadui, Darfur, and Kordofan, to try to reach the Upper Nile.

Paul Solleilet's journeys into the Sahara from Algeria looked to Timbuctoo as their turning-point. Flatters, who fell a victim to his zeal, was actually engaged in surveying the route for a railway from Algeria to the same city, a scheme that is not yet abandoned; and Camille Douls, an enterprising youth who started in 1889 in disguise with a view to reach the same region—though by a route already known—ended, it is believed, his love of adventure by being murdered. At all events, from that day to this he has never been heard of. But among the mass of minor explorers—some of whom we may have occasion to meet again in another section of our studies—three stood out with greater prominence than the rest. These are Heinrich Barth, the Rabbi Mordokhai Abi-Serour, and Oskar Lenz; for all three reached Timbuctoo, and thus completed the number of Europeans known to have seen that city, and witnessed the many changes which it has undergone in recent years. Mordokhai was a Morocco Jew without any scientific knowledge, and, except as a commercial adventure, his expedition is not of great moment. Barth and Lenz were, on the other hand, men of great accomplishments, and though the routes which they took were not through an entirely novel country, the minuteness and exactitude of the information that they brought back demands for them a place among explorers in the strictest sense of the term.

Dr. Barth was born in Hamburg, in the year 1821, and after graduating in Berlin in 1844,

set out on those travels which he continued with little intermission until his death at the age of forty-four. In his student life **Heinrich Barth.** he had contracted keen archaeological tastes during a visit to Italy and Sicily. Hence the first long journey that he undertook was less geographical than antiquarian, for it consisted of a circuit of the Mediterranean shores of North Africa from Morocco to Cyrenai<sup>a</sup>, and down the Nile Valley, examining the sites of ancient cities, and the condition of the races who now hold the colonies of the ancient conquerors of the world. This tour, taken entirely by land, was of the utmost value to science, though the knowledge of Arabic that Barth had acquired did not save him from molestation by robbers, in an encounter with some of whom he was wounded. After wandering through Egypt and Palestine, Asia Minor, the Greek Islands, Greece, and Turkey, he returned to Berlin to prepare an account of his researches, and begin the sober realities of a scholar's life as a *privat-docent*, or "coach," in his Alma Mater. But in 1849 the British Government determined to make one more effort to open up commercial relations with the Upper Niger and Central African countries that Denham and Clapperton had visited, and for their agent in this scheme—which it must be understood was not geographical or scientific—selected Mr. James Richardson, who had already gained some experience of the duties incumbent upon him during various journeys he had taken in the Sahara and coast-lying regions of Northern Africa. By the influence of Bunsen and Ritter, Barth and Overweg, a Prussian astronomer, were attached to the expedition, though before long the death of Richardson and of his companion left Barth to finish a task which has therefore, not unfairly, been almost solely associated with his reputation.

The party left Tripoli in the spring of 1850, and without any very remarkable incident passed to the frontier of Bornu over ground already familiar. Here the members of the party separated, in order to cover a greater area than they could

have done together; but they never met again, for at Ngurutuwa—once a celebrated but now a somewhat decayed town—Richardson died, and was buried under one of the umbrageous fig-trees with which the place is shaded. The two Germans—between whom and their English chief there had been frequent bickerings and jealousies which, but for his untimely end, might have done serious damage to the work they had in hand—were now left to carry out the plans of the English expedition. Barth and Overweg in their turn divided the exploration of the country around Kukawa, the Bornu capital, between them. In returning from one of these detached trips, Barth found Overweg ill and exhausted, and within a week he followed Richardson, and lies by the shores of Lake Tchad, to which he had been carried in the hope that the cooler air of that neighbourhood would revive him (1852). As Overweg was the first to navigate that sheet of water, in a portable boat conveyed thither,\* it was but fitting that he should be buried on its margin—the fourth of the European martyrs to their zeal for the exploration of the country of which it forms the centre. During the next four years Barth, single-handed, often in sore straits for means, frequently ill, and sometimes in peril of his life, devoted himself to carrying into effect the instructions that he had inherited as the official heir of Mr. Richardson.

It is impossible in the course of a brief narrative to describe all of the journeys that he performed. Nor is it necessary, for though he for the first time described with minute accuracy the topography, history and resources of the country between Murzuk and Lake Tchad, and westward of that sheet of water through the Sokoto Empire to the Niger, Gando, and the Songhai-land to Timbuctoo, much of it was already imperfectly known by the less exhaustive descriptions of earlier travellers; and it was Barth's good fortune to leave little for his successors to glean in his steps. Abandoning his intention of

\* The sailor taken to navigate it, having proved an unfortunate choice, was sent back from Murzuk.

To Bornu  
and Lake  
Tchad.

journeying in the direction of Kanem and the north-east shore of the lake, which he had already partially examined before the death of Overweg, Dr. Barth now resolved to turn westward and devote himself to an exploration of the country between Bornu and the middle course of the Niger, fixing upon Say on that river (p. 108) as his goal, though in the private mental memoranda (which he kept to himself) Timbuctoo was to be the real turning-point of his expedition. For more than twenty months he had made Kukawa his head-quarters. Here, therefore, he was so well known that he found little difficulty in persuading some men of consequence to become his companions. Of these the chief was a Shereef, or descendant of Mohammed, who had come on a trading trip from Fez, and was bound on his own business as far as Zinder. Under this man's protection Barth was comparatively safe, though even then he found it necessary, or at least prudent, to affect—under the name of Abd-el-Kerim—conversion to the faith of his fellow-travellers. The rest of the troop were hired servants, camel-drivers and the like, who, their interest being to serve the master who paid them, were, as circumstances showed, of perhaps more value to the traveller than the holy personage who for ends of his own had attached himself to a party the leader of which he knew to be provided with influential letters to the princes on his way.

It was the cool season when they set out. In Central Africa this is at best only a comparative term, yet at times the nights were positively cold, the thermometer on one occasion rising only nine degrees above freezing, while the appetites of the party were often keener than was convenient. Between Kukawa and Kano the scenery is uninteresting, consisting for the most part of bleak, dreary hollows of black, clayey soil, but now they were waving with rich crops of corn—*masakwa*,\* still uncut, and fields of millet † in stubble. Passing by a deep well, on the gentle

slope of the rising ground towards the north great flocks of cattle, goats, sheep, and donkeys were being watered in rapid succession, though the travellers' delight at so animated a scene in the pleasant open country after being moored for weeks in the dull lanes of an African town was damped by the rapacity of the herdsmen, who thought right to sell the water to the new-comers—a specimen of greed that we have met with more than once in that part of the continent. In Koyam, a land of straggling villages, with cultivated fields and extensive forests of stunted mimosa, which afford food to the numerous herds of camels constituting the people's wealth, the route lay through a country of wandering tribesmen. Unfortunately, it was a land of robbers also, and at night constant watch had to be kept lest their little caravan should be taken unawares, while the leader of it had in his turn to exercise continual vigilance over his drowsy men by rising at night and making the rounds to see that the guards were not asleep. However, the continual novelty of the route, and the prospect of what the next day had in store for them, beguiled the way and enabled them to forget the plague of ants that in places covered the ground, until, approaching the valley through which the drainage of that part of Bornu collects, they became entangled in a network of channels and thick forests that are difficult to pass after heavy rains. Yet this Komádugu, in spite of the sore legs that are apt to follow frequent fordings and the sloughs into which the wariest rider sinks when he least expects, is in the cool season a kind of African Elysium. Majestic groups of tamarind-trees began to appear and flocks of Guinea-fowl enlivened the landscape, while the camels luxuriated on the rich vegetation produced in so favoured a locality. Yet even this oasis was not without its drawbacks, for, like all similar localities, it harbours immense swarms of mosquitoes that pester the wayfarer during the day and leave him little chance of a rest at night.

The route lay for part of the way along the shores of Lake Tchad, into which the

\* *Pennisetum typhloideum*. † *Holcus cernuus*.

Komádugu flows. In the rainy season this basin presents a very different aspect from what it does when the shores are dry, or reed-covered swamps and long black banks of mud appear where a few weeks before there were pleasant bays indenting the shore in the most picturesque manner. Trees of various species and other rich vegetation fringe it,

of various species of water-fowl may be had without much seeking.

The old capital of Bornu (p. 252) did not detain them long, and after fording the river at Zengiri to avoid the wide area over which it spreads during the wet season, they entered the province of Manga. Yet, notwithstanding their long circuit, every now and again the



MOHAMMEDANS OF THE MIDDLE NIGER.

(From a Photograph by Capt. Mockler-Ferryman.)

while in the drier places the doom palm\* rears its branched head.

Guinea-fowl† were here so numerous that one could hardly move a step without disturbing a group of these lazy birds, which constitute one of the greatest delicacies of the traveller in that part of the world. Nor is larger game lacking. Elephants, several species of antelopes, including even the *oryx*, or tetel, and the large addax, the wild hog, partridges, monkeys, and an unlimited supply

\* *Hyphæne crinita*.

† *Numida meleagris*.

march was impeded by many backwaters stretching into the deeper part of the valley amid belts of the rankest vegetation, before they reached the real channel, which wound along in a meandering course, confined between sandy banks of about twenty-five feet in elevation, and clothed with trees and shrubs that imparted a very interesting aspect to this secluded part of Africa. At every step the tetel antelope, startled by the unwonted noise, ambled from among the long grass and bush, and in places the larger

one, or kargum, fled in terror before the caravan.

Accordingly, though the inhabitants do not cultivate much corn, and, like all the Kanuri, or predominant race in Bornu, are **A hunter's paradise.** not such keen hunters as the Houssas, they cannot suffer from want if they draw on the woods alone for their daily food. However, in addition to the land game, the river abounds with excellent fish, so that the English sportsman, who has now almost exhausted the hunting-grounds of the world—killed off the buffaloes in America, thinned the tigers in India, almost exterminated the lion, the giraffe, and the quagga in South Africa, and will before long be prohibited from slaughtering the ever-diminishing number of elephants in the East African Company's territory—might do worse than try his luck in Bornu and the country between Lake Tchad and the Niger through which we are now journeying with Dr. Barth and the Shereef from Fez. For it is this beautiful region, by the luxuriant shores of the Komádugu, from which the native in his inborn laziness, too idle to restrain the overflow by embankments or to utilise it during the dry season, has despairingly retired and allowed it to be converted into the almost impenetrable jungle where the elephant has now his principal home in Central Africa.

For the first time in Nigerland a real jungle began to appear, and wherever the tall trees or bush was thinner, there long, coarse grass, ten feet high, fed by the water which after the rainy season covers the whole of the low ground, afforded ample pasture for the game with which it abounded.

The river—which was at one time believed to flow out of the Tchad into the Benué—during the rainy season sweeps along in a fine current, about one hundred and twenty yards broad, into the lake. All was quiet and full of repose when Barth's caravan passed. There was no traffic with the exception of a couple of homely travellers, a man and a woman, who in simple native style were crossing it riding on a pair of yoked calabashes

(p. 293) and immersed in the water up to their middle, while they stowed away their little clothing inside the vessels that supported them above the surface. Yet, notwithstanding their energetic labours, they were carried down by the force of the current to a considerable distance. Besides these primitive voyagers a solitary spoonbill proudly swimming up and down was the only other being in sight. But the inhabitants were sufficiently extortionate in their demands, asking for cloves in payment, and when these were not to be had, raising the price to what for that part of Africa is an exorbitant figure. Finally, they accepted a Maria Theresa dollar, and for this the travellers, their horses, camels and luggage, were ferried across, each camel being drawn by a man, mounted on a pair of calabashes, while a second man bestrode the animal close to the tail. The other prices prevailing here may be imagined from the fact that a sheep was bought for eight "gábaga," or strips of cotton cloth, which, in common with cowries, have now quite displaced the old standard pound of copper, though the term "rotl" is still used to express an equivalent value. For smaller payments cowries alone are used.

The province of Manga, which they had now entered, differed widely from that of Koyam, which they had left, the country consisting of undulating downs of red sand famous for the cultivation of ground-nuts and beans, both of which form a large proportion of the people's food, so that millet and beans are generally sown in the same field, the latter ripening later, and constituting the richest pasture for camels and cattle. Their dwellings are also different from those on the other side of the river, the cornstack-looking huts that impart so decided a character of peace and repose to the villages of Houssaland, but which we look for in vain throughout Bornu proper, here again making their appearance under the name of "sébe" or "gusi." Though not remarkable for cleanliness, they have at a distance a rather neat

**Koyam and Manga: a contrast.**

appearance, being covered with creepers of various species of gourd. Finally, as if pointing to a time when the river divided two branches of the Bornu people having little connection with each other, the Manga people are no longer horsemen like the Kanuri, or camel-breeders like the Koyam, but footmen with leather aprons, armed with bow and arrow and battle-axe, while, to use Barth's words, "the more slender Manga girl, scarcely peeping from under her black veil, with which she bashfully hid her face, had succeeded to the Bornu female, with her square figure, her broad features, and her open and ill-covered breast." It may be added that though the Mangas now form a considerable element in the Bornu nation, their name does not occur in the early annals of the empire which certain of the chroniclers have preserved, and we may therefore presume that they owe their origin to a mixture of tribes. But if the Manga girls are modest, the men have their fair share of assurance; for, heedless of the holy origin of the Morocco merchant, they stole his woollen blanket from beneath him at night, dragging the Shereef, reluctant to quit his property, until he was forced to let go.

Past the walled town of Gremari, with herds of cattle around the walls, they entered a drier and hotter country, where they were joined by troops of country pedlars bearing their wares on their heads. Yet in spite of the increased warmth, this region of Muniyo, with its wooded hills, salt- and fresh-water lakes, towns, villages, cultivated lands and pastures, its endless herds of cattle and camels, and flocks of sheep and goats and droves of horses, was in keeping with the pleasant names "Queen of the Region of the Doom Palm," "Sweetness of the World," and so forth, by which the places on the way were known. All the wells were deep, so the crowds of boys and girls were kept busy drawing water for the animals constantly arriving, while numbers of people were met with carrying their harvest into the towns in sacks made of the leaves of the doom palm, borne on the backs of

oxen. In this region natron lakes similar to those already visited (p. 245) are found, though, unlike those in the desert country farther north, the borders of the lakes are covered with cotton-patches, kitchen-gardens where *deraba*\* is grown, doom bush and rank grass.

In this way the travellers journeyed along, seldom molested, and indeed almost invariably treated with hospitality, and sometimes with unexpected kindness. Walled towns and villages, negro huts and clay palaces, dotted the country so thickly that it was seldom that men or the signs of human habitation were out of sight. But, as always happens in a country where communications are slow or difficult, food was plentiful in one district and scarce in another, while the calculations of the traveller as to expenses were complicated by the different value that money or its equivalents had in different regions. Even Barth, who had the thrifty German's art of travelling at a cost the secret of which all his successors have failed to acquire, and who when necessity compelled opened shop in order to dispose to the best advantage of the goods with which he was provided to pay his way, was sometimes puzzled to decide whether he was being cheated or simply paying the market price.

Some of the towns, like Guré, built on the lower slope of a rocky eminence, and surrounded with a wall, beyond which lay kitchen-gardens and cotton-plantations, were picturesque—at a distance—and the governors men of consequence, though, like corresponding dignitaries in more civilised regions, often sorely pressed by the lack of cash. The ruler of the district of which Guré was the capital (p. 288) could, for example, put 1,500 horsemen and from 8,000 to 10,000 archers into the field, while his revenues amounted to 30,000,000 cowries—or, according to the standard of the place, about 10,000 Spanish dollars—besides a large tribute of corn, which in all provinces north-west of the

A land of  
walled  
towns.

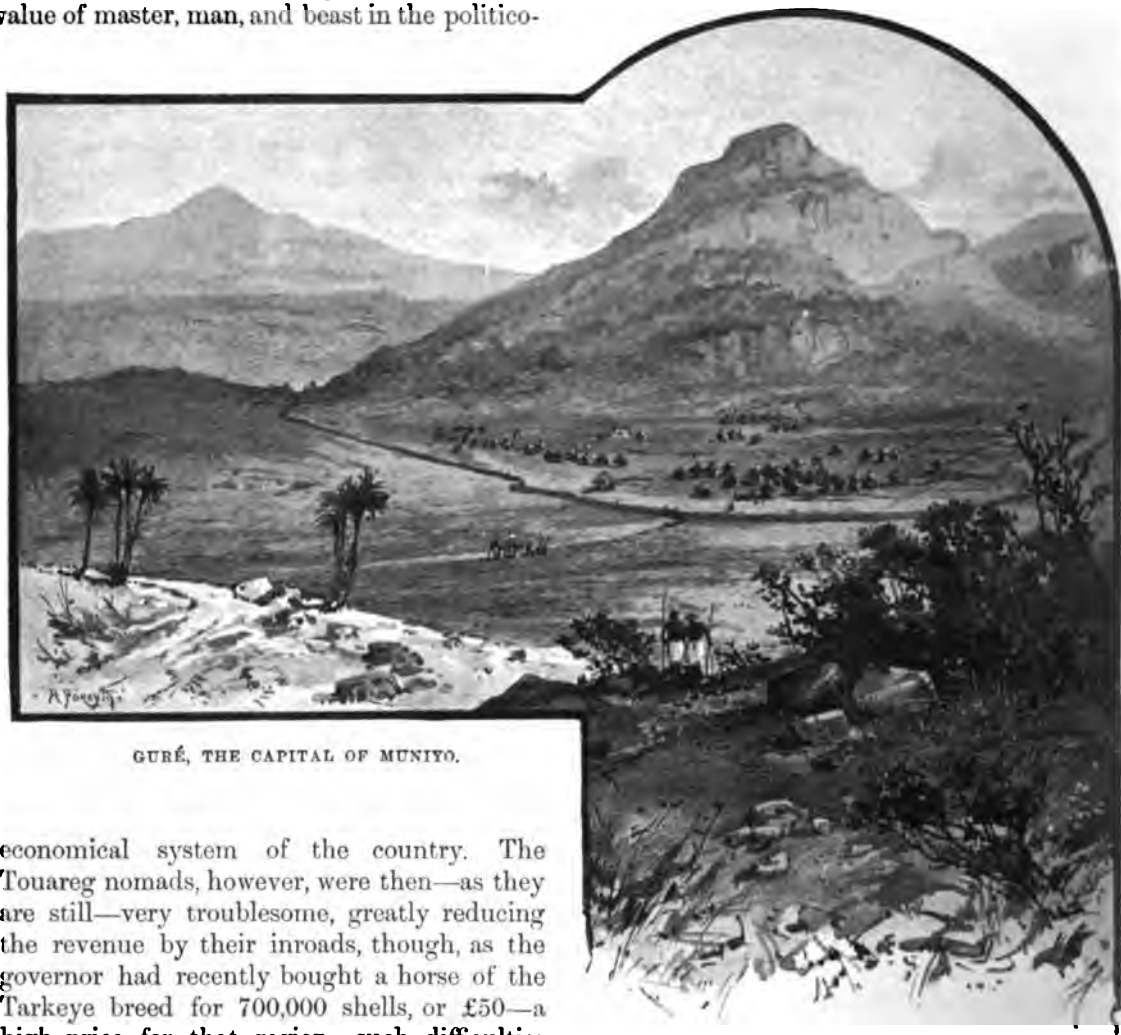
\* *Corchorus olitorius*, or Jew's Mallow, a plant allied to the Chinese hemp or jute, now used for so many purposes. It is cultivated as a pot-herb.



Komádugu, owing to these territories having preserved their independence against the Fulahs, belongs to the governors personally, and not to their sovereign lord the Sheik in Kukawa. Every adult male in the province has to pay in taxes 1,000 shells for himself, and, if he possess cattle, for every pack-ox 1,000 more, and for every slave 2,000, which ratio may be taken to express the relative value of master, man, and beast in the politico-

just then on the eve of setting out on a foray against one of the towns that had displayed some friendliness to the Touaregs, in order to "obtain slaves to pay his debts."

Wushek is another peculiarly interesting place—"a mixture of fertility and aridity, of cultivation and desolation, of industry and



GURÉ, THE CAPITAL OF MUNITO.

economical system of the country. The Touareg nomads, however, were then—as they are still—very troublesome, greatly reducing the revenue by their inroads, though, as the governor had recently bought a horse of the Tarkeye breed for 700,000 shells, or £50—a high price for that region—such difficulties did not interfere with his personal expenditure—especially when the merchant had to wait for his money. Slave-hunting at that time was so regular an occupation that the governor—a man of exceptionally good character—begged Barth to prolong his stay, as he was

neglect"—being situated at some distance from the foot of a mountain-range, and separated from it by a barren tract, whilst on the site of the town itself the springs burst out in several small dells or hollows, which

thus yield a good crop of wheat and several small groves of date palms, and on the drier ground tamarind trees entwined with creepers and clothed with herbage. As might be expected, water is abundant, ponds forming in favourable places, and wells, generally full, being dug at a foot or two beneath the surface. Wushek is also the chief wheat-growing district in Bornu. Ruined holds and towers are not uncommon, the country, peaceful though it looks, having been again and again ravaged by civil war and foreign foes. Thus Gabata, the old residence of the governors, is now nothing but a heap of unsightly walls and arches, though in a recess at the foot of the mountains is standing a stone dwelling in which it was of old the custom for every ruler of the country upon his accession to the throne to retire for seven days. The natives say that there are caves leading from the stone house into the rocks, but the governor urgently begged the white men not to visit it, for the place was—as all such eerie spots are in Moslem mythology—haunted by spirits or jinns, who would resent any such profanity from mortal men. It was on Christmas Day, 1852, that Barth arrived at the town of Zinder, a famous place for trade, and notorious also for the numerous fires that at intervals destroyed the wattle huts of which a large portion of it was composed, so that a trader might between sunrise and sunset be ruined by his merchandise being reduced to ashes. As for the ordinary citizen, he had little to lose; a few hours' toil replaced his mansion.

Here Barth had to wait for supplies that were to be sent him by an Arab caravan from Tripoli. This rather risky consignment duly arrived, the money portion of it being packed in two boxes of sugar, so that, happily, few people were aware that the Christian had received treasure so readily plundered. With the coin and other articles a supply of red bernouses, or cloaks, turbans, looking-glasses, clothes, razors, chaplets, and other articles was purchased at a moderate rate, all European goods, after the arrival of a caravan,

falling in price. Unfortunately, another box containing English hardware and 400 dollars, which reached the town soon after he left, remained in the hands of the Shereef El Fasi, the Grand Vizier of Bornu's agent, until, in the revolution two years later, this man was murdered and his house plundered of all it contained.

At Katsena, farther on, another halt was made, and more goods were purchased in the shape of cotton and silk articles made at Nupé and Kano—the **Katsena**. "Manchester of Africa," as Barth calls it—and leather water-skins, for which the place is famous. Black shawls for covering the face were taken as gifts to the Touaregs, who adopt this method of protecting themselves from the grit and glare of the desert sand. Another article for which Katsena bears a good reputation is tobacco, and of this and *turkedis*, or women's cloths, a good supply was laid in; so that, provided with goods in so much favour with the negro, he felt safe to pass without much trouble the countries lying beyond.

After a perilous journey, owing to the fact of civil war having broken out, and a hostile army being on the road, and also due not a little to the circumstance that the governor of Katsena had begun to look with a covetous eye on the wealth that Barth possessed, the caravan arrived at Sokoto, a spot **Sokoto**. that we have visited more than once with earlier travellers. At that date it possessed some five thousand inhabitants, but had ceased to be the capital of the decaying Fulah Empire (p. 223), and at the time of Barth's visit was governed by a "ghaladima," or deputy. Everything bespoke decay. The Arabs, who at one time frequented the place, no longer came, and the whole trade in foreign merchandise had passed into the hands of the people of Ghat and Aghades, many of whom were wealthy. Blind beggars swarmed; and a visit to the market—always a safe test of the wealth of any town—suggested the poverty which war and turmoil had brought about. The house in which Clapperton died (p. 259) was still in a fair state of preservation, but

**Zinder  
and its  
commerce.**

the mosque that was a-building during his stay in the town was, like many other structures, in ruins. The market, held on a rocky slope, had, however, a good many buyers and sellers of horses, cattle, oxen, and the leather goods that are extensively manufactured in Sokoto. The bridles of Negroland, and the stirrups made of the excellent iron rudely smelted in this part of Africa, were in great demand. Some slaves were for sale at a rather high price—a “lad of indifferent appearance” bringing 33,000 cowries, while a good pony was sold for very little less. The salt caravans had just arrived with the article which, from the earliest period, has been a favourite article of commerce over Central Africa (p. 108); and among the minor merchandise that they brought with them were the desert dates, a fruit no longer a staple as it is in the drier countries farther north. Rice is another of the Sokoto crops, one valley near the town being covered with fields of it, though during the rainy season they are under water, and have to be passed in canoes, several of which were lying in halves ready to be sewn together when their services were necessary. Returning to Wurno, which had been his headquarters before the excursion to Sokoto was made, Barth met the Sultan Aliyu, who had just arrived from a warlike expedition against some hamlets that had placed themselves under the protection of his enemy, though, from the accounts received of the cowardice displayed by the Fulahs, it seemed that forty years ago the vigour of this once martial race was beginning, like the towns of the empire they had conquered, to decay.

Glad to escape from the importunate beggars of Wurno—a town that shares with Sokoto the reputation of possessing a more inveterately persistent breed of the people whom the Spaniards describe as “*besoñosos*” (“those who want something”) than any other part of Central Africa—Barth, or Abd-el-Kerim, as he found it still prudent to call himself, was glad to obtain Aliyu’s acquiescence in his journey to Timbuctoo, and

recommenations to its ruler, though every day the country was becoming more and more dangerous to travel in; for one African prince is usually so jealous of another that he will often thwart the visit to his rival of so important a personage as a white man.

Beyond Sokoto the country was entirely new to European foot, but, in spite of the disturbed state of the country, A new land: Gando. Gando was safely reached, and the chief, Khalilú, duly waited upon. This man, a Fulah, was as powerful as the Sultan of Sokoto, and noted for his hatred of Christians. But the judicious gift of three bernouses, “one of yellow, one of red cloth, and the third of the kind called helali; a haik or jérid of the finest quality, a Stambuli carpet, two entire pieces of muslin, a red cap, four loaves of sugar, three phials of rose-oil, a pair of razors, five looking-glasses, a pound of cloves, and another of benzoin,” as kingly a present—a pair of silver-mounted pistols excepted—as the sovereign of Sokoto had received, reconciled Khalilú to the dubious orthodoxy of his visitor. Possibly also the desire to stand well with his uncle, the Prince of Gando, who had sent a commendatory letter to him, had something to do with Barth’s favourable reception.

By-and-by, however, an Arab named El Bakáy, who, after trying his fortune in many places, had settled down here, managed, with a view to advancing his own interest, to create trouble between Barth and the Sultan, who, leading a sort of monkish life, was easily influenced by this man and by his own brothers, to all of whom, accordingly, presents had to be made. From El Bakáy—a name Barth learned to hate, though it afterwards became dear to him as that of his protector in Timbuctoo—Khalilú learned that Aliyu of Sokoto had received silver-mounted pistols worth more than all the gifts bestowed on him, though he in reality ruled a wider territory than the prince so favoured. Accordingly, Abd-el-Kerim was given to understand that, unless this omission was promptly rectified, he should be permitted neither to proceed on his way nor to retrace his steps.

As this was impossible to think of—though the country from this spot to the Niger was so troubled as to render it doubtful whether it would be wise to go on—a second pair of pistols had to be sacrificed, and, after endless bribes to the Arab who saw his chance to act as the intermediary, a letter of safe conduct was procured from the Sultan, and once more, in the first week in June, this leisurely journey was resumed.

With the great river within approachable distance, the dread that by any chance he should never be able to see it oppressed the traveller's spirits, while at the same time every step, being across a region that previous explorers had avoided, was full of interest. Yet it almost seemed as if he were doomed never to drink of the Niger waters. Not a day passed without signs of the ravages of war coming before the eyes of the travellers. Passing by a sheet of water that receded behind the walled town of Badda-badda, traces of the elephant, which had disappeared for a long time, now grew thick near the rice-fields and rich pastures that led down to the Fad-dama. A little farther on the little town of Yara was reached, and the caravan was urgently warned by the people met with to be on the outlook for an approaching raiding party. Yara was a tragic monument of the misery wrought by the war now desolating the country. Not long before it had been a busy place. But all the inhabitants were now carried into slavery, and the entire aspect of the deserted town was doleful and melancholy in the extreme. Yet immediately outside the village lay a luxuriant rice-field, where the crops were already almost three feet high, and girt by a lovely border of shade-trees, overtopped by a number of tall daleb palms, the golden fruit of which, half ripe, was starting forth from under the feathery foliage. Close by, a solitary individual, seemingly careless of the unsafe state of the country, sat quietly at the foot of one of the palm-trees stolidly enjoying its fruit. Suspecting him, not unjustly, to be a spy

posted here by the enemy in order to give information of any travellers worthy of plundering, it was difficult to prevent some of the caravan from shooting the innocent-looking negro.

Still marching through a very rich country, the travellers, to their delight, met with the first evidence they had for a long time seen of Western civilisation. This was a Joloff (p. 156) from the shores of the Atlantic, carrying his little luggage on his head, and making for the walled town of Kardi, though, from the double-barrelled gun that he carried on his shoulder, and the short sword hanging at his side, while his shirt was tossed gallantly up and tied over his shoulder behind his neck, the far-travelled pedestrian seemed inclined to rely for safety more on his own right hand than on any man's hold. "In my joy at the sight of this enterprising native traveller," Dr. Barth tells us, "I could not forbear making him a small present in order to assist him in his arduous undertaking." At Kola, another walled "city," defended by seventy musketeers, who can, if necessary, block the great valley of Kibbi, a halt was made to conciliate the powerful governor, who, like his sister, was extremely hospitable, the lady evincing her goodwill by the gift of a goose, a bird less common than barn-door fowls in this region, and of later introduction from the European settlements on the West Coast. Well-fortified towns, additionally protected by a fence of prickly thorns, were passed every few miles, and everywhere the inhabitants doubted whether, in the turbulent condition of the country, it would be possible to reach the Niger. Many of these places were quite deserted, and remains of others only recently destroyed were frequent. Even the tribute which Nupé had to pay to Gando had, owing to the wars of the two factions that then tore the state in two, to be sent by a roundabout way. Yet close to Kola, under the protection of a couple of well-stockaded hamlets, herds of horses were grazing on the fine pastures. But the herbage was full of small venomous snakes,

A traveller from the Atlantic.

Wars and rumours of war.

which so repeatedly, and in such unusually large numbers, crossed the paths that, to a footman, a journey in the pleasant meadows must be dangerous, since the wild boar is not found here, and the domestic pig, which keeps down serpents wherever it is set free, is naturally not one of the live stock round a Mohammedan village.

By-and-by, however, leaving behind Juggara, with its groves of monkey-bread trees, Diggi, where he was welcomed to the province by the governor's sons, and Togirna, the seat



HENRY BARTH.

of government, with from 7,000 to 8,000 inhabitants, but just then suffering from a

**A forest march.**

scarcity of provisions, the travellers entered a forest-covered wilderness, pleasant to look upon, as the trees, all in blossom, diffused a delightful fragrance around, but perilous, owing to the absence of villages in which the wayfarers might take refuge after dark. Overtaking a party of Touaregs, who, with camels, bullocks, and asses, were on their way to Fogha, an unwonted treat was experienced in the shape of a night in the open country, instead of in the dirty huts that had hitherto formed the travellers' lodgings. Two extensive ponds

supplied delicious water, though, curiously enough, when returning by the same route little more than a year later, the same ponds had acquired—either from being meddled with or the decay of vegetation—such a pernicious character that almost the whole troop drinking of them were poisoned. But to the natives the delight of the woodland was nothing. So much terror, indeed, did its real or supposed dangers inspire, that the mere fact of Barth having spent a night in the unsafe wilderness was sufficient to secure him a reputation for courage that lasted long enough to be fresh when he passed that way in the following year.

The valley of the Fogha, which falls into the Niger one day and a half from Gaya, is one of the shallow dales that give **The Niger tributaries.** so remarkable a feature to this portion of the country. The water flowing through them exhibits no current, showing that the country has little inclination towards the great river, and it is also an evidence that it drains only so limited an extent of ground that it is doubtful whether, even after the plentiful rains that fall in the mountainous country of Air or Asben (of which Aghades is the best-known spot), the water-courses of that region have the slightest connection with these shallow vales that join the Niger. Salt lakes, fields of yams and tobacco, and herds of elephants—where the country was wooded—abounded, in spite of the wretchedness that the civil war then in progress between the adjoining provinces had caused, and continued until, at Garbo, the last Houssa village was reached and hurried past, since, notwithstanding the many corn-stacks standing around it, no grain was to be obtained.

Beyond this part all the country was Songhai, and at Songho-sare, a pleasant farming hamlet largely inhabited by slaves belonging to the people of Tamkala, they found plenty of corn. The architecture—such as it was—of the houses was now markedly altered, instead of evil-smelling, unventilated clay huts, the Songhai villages consisting

merely of reeds, so that, while the dwellings are less solid than those of Kebbi, they are better ventilated. The people of this place also seem to be more hospitable than those of the country generally, if a "jovial farmer" is to be accepted as a type of his people. For, in addition to a hearty welcome, this

rendered the labours of the husbandman uncertain. Even the people were, if possible, more inhospitable than the Songhai, who, in their present degraded condition since the break-up of the old Songhai Empire, bear the reputation of being a sullen race; for at another village, called Tigore, inhabited by free farmers,



NATIVE MODE OF CROSSING A RIVER BY MEANS OF CALABASHES.

agriculturist presented the travellers with milk, corn, and a sheep. Hot weather and drought compelling short marches, the next few days were not so agreeable as their predecessors. The land was parched and untilled, except here and there, or covered with underwood which bespoke either poor soil, little security, or periodical spells of rainless seasons that

difficulty was found in obtaining quarters, and at Tanna, a much larger one of the same character, "the Mayor" was so surly a functionary that he refused to leave his cool shed in the heat of the day, so that a hut to shelter the party could only be procured after the argument of force had been applied.

The party was now approaching the Niger,

and, elated with the feeling that one of the great objects of the long journey was now over, Barth set forward with buoyant spirits until, after a couple of hours through a rocky wilderness covered with dense bushes, the noble river lay before them with the town of Say on the other side (p. 108). Here the stream, being hemmed in by a rocky bank, was only about 700 yards in breadth, but the opposite shore was flatter, and there the low ramparts and huts of a large town, overtopped by slender doom palms, spread out in a most picturesque manner.

The ford was a busy one—camels, asses, pack-oxen, corn, sheep, and their owners, with large pack-trains of merchandise, crossing and recrossing in large boats made of two trees hollowed out and sewn together in the middle. Barth's arrival was not unexpected, and the "King of the Waters"—the harbour-master, as we in our less flowery language would term him—had sent to Sinder, higher up, for the largest corn-boats, in order that the stranger should be ferried across in good style. It was with strange feelings that Barth now floated on the river of so many hopes. Doubtful from the very first whether he would ever have been able to reach the Atlantic—though it now appears that this might have been done without greater labour than the return journey to Tripoli cost—he had determined on an even more interesting task—to survey the course of the Niger between the part where it had become tolerably well known by the labours of Park and Caillié, and the lower portion explored by the Landers.

In Say he received a polite but by no means effusive welcome, and quarters that were scarcely to his mind. But the town itself, picturesque though it looks from the opposite bank of the river, is a poor affair when examined from the inside. It is large, but thinly inhabited, and, with the exception of the Governor's "palace," all the houses are built of reeds and matting, scattered in groups like so many independent hamlets. It is, moreover, very unhealthy, the valley in which it is situated being at the end of the rainy season

filled with water, stopping all business and, when the floods are higher than usual, compelling the citizens to seek safety beyond the borders of the valley, their town being then in reality, as it is geographically at all times, on an island. The market was poor compared with most of those Barth had seen in the great towns through which he had passed, and at the time of his visit, Say and Houssa being on unfriendly terms, provisions were scarce and dear. Yet, in spite of the superabundance of water, no rice was grown anywhere near the town. But the situation of Say as a commercial centre is undoubtedly great, it being the beginning of a long stretch of open water above Bussa and Yauri, a geographical fact which the French have already grasped, to the loss of the nation in whose interests Barth pointed it out in 1852.

It was now midsummer, and fever rampant. Nothing was to be gained by staying longer here; Timbuctoo was before him, *Along the Niger banks.* and thither accordingly, amid a storm of thunder, beginning with a terrific sand-wind and ending in torrents of rain, the travellers set out. But to the farmers of the hilly country through which their route lay the rainfall was welcome in so far that it had rendered the soil fit for tillage and the reception of the seed-grain. Accordingly, wherever the ground was fitting for ploughing in the primitive scratching manner practised all over aboriginal Africa, it was being prepared for the harvest, which in those favoured lands ripens in a month or two. Hill and dale, in general treeless and uninhabited, and at times a wilderness with only a few inhabited spots, was the general character of the country through which they passed, until at Champagore, a town encircled by hills, a halt was made. This place is remarkable for its corn magazines, two of which are seen in every court-yard. These are towers or quadrangular buildings, raised a few feet above the ground, in order to protect the contents from the white ants, which are everywhere the pest of this region. Shaped not unlike the dove-cots of Egypt, they are from ten to fifteen feet in







height, without any opening at the bottom, a window-like aperture near the top serving at once for the admission of light and the putting in and taking out of the corn. Altogether, like the steeples of some village churches in England, they quite dwarf in appearance the less imposing structures built near the base.

Continuing his journey through the hilly country of Gurma, provided with an armed escort from the chief of Champagore, the party passed on the way several iron-smelting furnaces, about six feet high and a foot and a half in diameter at the base. The ironstone, of which quantities are dug out of the hills, is placed under a large amount of wood-ashes until the metal begins to melt, and is then,

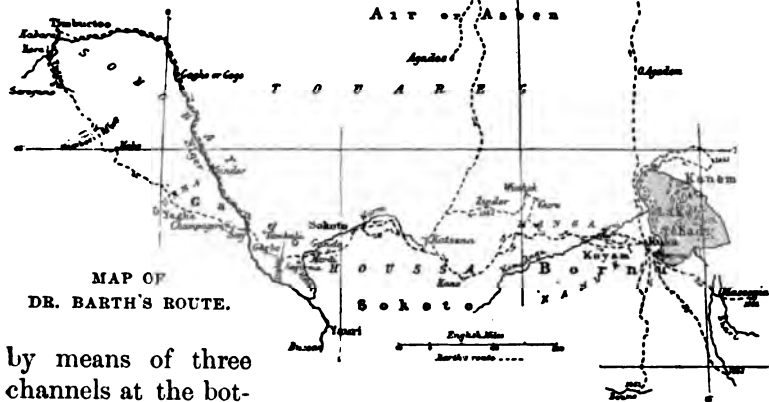
porters themselves swam beside them (p. 293). Footprints of elephants were seen, and once a large herd of buffalo were observed cropping the rich pastures by the river. In the

provinces of Yagha, the weavers, the basket-makers, and the makers of leather-work were busy at the door of every hut, though, many of their dwellings being infested by ants, it was perilous to the baggage and torture to its owner to pass a night under their roofs.

As Timbuctoo grew nearer, the fanaticism of the people became more virulent, and at one

A fanatical folk: troubles.

place, had not the traveller represented himself as an officer carrying books to the sheik—and therefore endowed with a special sanctity—even Barth's profession of orthodoxy would not have saved him from the fury of these savage Moslems against anyone even suspected of non-conformity. The plea mentioned, however, succeeded only too well, for the spears dropped from the hands of the irate mob, and each in turn begged the blessing of the Syrian pilgrim—as he called himself—a process that in-



by means of three channels at the bottom of the furnace, received in a basin. At times bends of the river had to be crossed on bundles of reeds,\* or by means of calabashes in which were stowed the smaller articles of luggage, while the

\* The writer has crossed rivers in Morocco in an identical fashion. Until very recently—if not still—these bundles were the only approach to a ferry-boat across the Sebu river on the caravan route from the city of Fez to El Kasrs El Kebir, half-way to Tangier.

involved laying hands on a great many very dirty heads. Poverty seemed the rule of the villages. The mayor of one was an old man in a ragged shirt, though his two fat wives were resplendent in copper armlets and bracelets, with a thin plate of tin on the under lip, like that worn by the Margi,† though they do

† This may be compared with the still more curious "ornaments" worn by the Hydah women in North-West

not sport the nose-ring so general among the Songhai women.

At Namantugu Barth fell in with an Arab from the West, one Weled Ammer Walati, in whose company he was fated to enter Timbuctoo. Hither had Walati emigrated after leading a roving life among the Touaregs and Fulahs, and, among his other accomplishments, he spoke with the greatest fluency almost all of the languages between the Atlas and the Niger. In spite, however, of his grave appearance—his long dark gown and the black shawl about his head giving him some resemblance to a servant of the Inquisition—El Walati was much too clever for Barth and, before the traveller had done with him, played him many a scurvy trick.

The greed of the people seemed to increase as the great town was neared—even the governors, after being presented with gifts, begging the clothes the traveller wore. English darning-needles were, however, held in much esteem, though the ordinary sewing ones were not received with much gratitude. In the Touareg country the situation became more dangerous, for those nomads are a fanatical race, and as Barth had been represented to them as a great "Shereef,"—or descendant of the Prophet—his Arab companion, "one of the cleverest men" he had ever met with, suggested that Barth should keep up his character by largess on a more than usually lavish scale, and as his counsellor acted as the interpreter and go-between, he managed to sell to the tribesmen the traveller's presents as his own goods!

As they approached Timbuctoo, the eagerness of the people to buy, or to be given, tea—"the water of Simsim" (the holy well of Mecca), as they called it—grew more and more keen, and by-and-by even the women plagued the traveller for tobacco, which seemed not to be grown in that part of the country. Impeded by heavy rains and end-

less flooded rivers and swamps, progress along the banks was slow and tedious.

On the 27th of August, after passing through a country full of Fulah cattle-breeders and rocks worn into fantastic shapes by the rain, they reached the town of Sarayamo, not without El Walati trying once or twice

Barth embarks on the Niger for Kabara.

quietly to dispose of Barth in order to inherit his property; and here the land journey ended and the Niger voyage began. By this time, not improbably owing to the knavery of this man, suspicions as to the religion of the Syrian pilgrim again took such shape that he was glad to repeat the opening prayer of the Koran, which concludes with "God may give water." And as it so happened that next day rain fell, the stranger's petitions were in great favour. The governor—who asked for a blessing and an emetic—was, however, less pleased. For, though the latter acted like a charm, he was shocked in after-days to learn that the former had been bestowed by an Infidel. At Kora Island, where the Fatta joins the main branch of the Niger, and forms a network of backwaters and channels that spread over a large area of country, the party embarked in a large boat hired for their exclusive use. Crocodiles, hippopotami, and fishes were abundant, and huge lizards basked on the dry spots amid this archipelago of low islets until the open river was reached, under the name of the Isa or Mayo Balleo. During the palmy days of the Songhai Empire, fleets of boats continually passed and repassed up and down the river to Gagho and Jenné. But in the course of their voyage they met with scarcely one, and now, close to the great commercial city, the vast flood was as solitary as if it did not exist. Then, on the 7th of September, 1853, six days after setting out, the boat crossed the river and entered a creek, which grew shallower until it anchored off a town on the slope of a sandy eminence. Then the traveller knew that for the present his journey was nearing its end, for the town of dome-shaped houses was Kabara, the port of Timbuctoo (p. 121).

America, and by the Botocudos of South America, for which see "The Peoples of the World," vol. i., pp. 48, 90, and "The Countries of the World," vol. iii., p. 160.



TOP OF THE MAIN STREET OF TANGIER, MOROCCO.  
(From a Photograph by Mr. Consul H. E. White of Tangier.)

## CHAPTER XVI.

### THE LAST SEEKERS AFTER TIMBUCTOO: BARTH ; MORDOKHAÏ ABI-SEROUR ; LENZ.

Barth in Timbuctoo—Timbuctoo in 1854—Barth's Homeward Journey—His Arrival in England and Later Career—His Merits as an Explorer—The Rabbi Mordokhaï Abi-Serour—His Early Life—Ventures to try his Fortune in Timbuctoo—His First Journey across the Desert—His Stay in Aruan—Reaches Timbuctoo—Troubles there, and Eventual Success—His First Caravan of Goods gets through safely, and he Returns with another and four of his Friends—Plunder of his Caravans by Desert Robbers—His Commercial Wreck—His Work as a Geographical Explorer—Desert Ruins and Sculptures—The Daggatouns—The Jewish Colony in Timbuctoo—Oskar Lenz—Travels in Morocco—Crosses the Sahara by the same Route that Mordokhaï did—His Stay and Courteous Treatment in Timbuctoo—Returns to Senegal—A Last Word on Timbuctoo—Its Present Condition and Future.

THERE was a time in the history of the Soudan when Kabara was an even more important place than Timbuctoo. But at the date of Barth's visit its glory as a river port had sunk so low that its inhabitants did not number more than two thousand, in no way distinguished by wealth or intelligence. Having, in his character as a Syrian pilgrim under the special protection of the Sultan of Turkey, secured quarters in the town, he was soon visited by a truculent Tarki chief, who demanded a gift, which being refused, he left, and Barth's quarters were immediately filled by armed men. He was, however, glad to learn that these were merely herds-

men who had come to protect their cattle from the very man who had just gone, he and his followers, in addition to some Touaregs, having arrived on a raiding expedition. This incident was the key to the situation, Timbuctoo and its neighbourhood being alternately under the domination of one tribe or another, and the whole country for miles around at the mercy of robber chiefs, without any power strong enough to keep them from pillaging the residents or the strangers who came here to do business. Meanwhile El Walati saw that he was master of the situation, and at once began to impoverish Barth by asking him for goods



not only for himself, but for a great many individuals whom he represented to be his friends and brothers, before he set out for Timbuctoo to seek protection for Barth from the Sheik El Bakhay, chief of the Arabs, on whom Barth had all along been relying. Next day he returned, not with El Bakhay, who was from home, but with his brother, Sidi Alwati, and some of his followers, all of whom were very anxious to know what was the kind or protection the Turkish Sultan had given, since it leaked out that El Walati had told them that the traveller was really a Christian in disguise. As Barth had parted with his firman from the Bashaw of Tripoli, and did not possess any paper bearing upon his present situation, it became urgent to reach Timbuctoo at once and obtain the favour of El Bakhay, since in his present situation he was practically an outlaw, to kill whom, as an Infidel, would not entail any punishment on the murderer.

Next day accordingly he left Kabara amid a crowd of people attracted by the news that a stranger of distinction had arrived. Between the port and the city lies a desert tract covered with thorny acacias and stunted trees. Yet these five miles are so dangerous, owing to the Touareg robbers that haunt them, that in the language of the country they are known as "Ur-immandes"—"He (God) does not hear"—from the fact that people are constantly killed in this little desert without their cries reaching the ear of anyone able to succour them (p. 208).

Near the town Barth was met by a crowd of people who had come out to welcome him.

**Entrance  
into Tim-  
buctoo.**

Among these polite Timbuctoese he was so unfortunate as to meet with a man who addressed him in Turkish, a language in which the pseudo-Syrian traveller had some difficulty in framing an intelligent reply, in spite of his being supposed to be a subject of the Caliph, who in this part of Africa is held in higher esteem than elsewhere (p. 301). Glad to leave so compromising a company, he traversed several narrow streets of dirty reed-huts

which form the suburbs, into a quarter where many of the houses were two storeys in height, until the dwelling apportioned to him was reached. Here for a time he could rest in safety. But the safety was only temporary; for El Walati, who had counselled Barth to pass as a Mohammedan, had as usual played the traitor, and, by telling that he was a Christian, roused the fanaticism of a city which is in many respects—or, at least, was in those days—as bigoted as Mecca. In the absence of El Bakhay, he considered it prudent to keep in-doors, only ascending now and then for fresh air to the flat roof of his house, from which he could survey the mixture of clay huts, big and little, the narrow lanes, in which it was difficult for two horsemen to ride abreast, and the market, glimpses of which he could obtain owing to its situation on the slope of the sand-hills that in course of time have accumulated round the principal mosque. To obtain the means of support, goods were every now and again sent into the market for sale; but, in the face of orders not to admit anyone, his retirement was continually interrupted by visitors attracted either by curiosity or by a desire to obtain information from the learned stranger.

At last, on the 26th of September, nearly three weeks after his entrance into Timbuctoo, El Bakhay arrived, and from that time the traveller's position was improved, since, apart from Barth having been recommended to this powerful man's protection, the Sheik himself was notoriously large-minded, and even liberal, beyond any of his countrymen in the city. Even in the matter of gifts, a question in which an Arab seldom shows any conscience, El Bakhay, after receiving articles worth about thirty pounds, desired to be given nothing more, only intimating that when the traveller returned home he hoped the British Government would send him some Arabic books and good firearms. From that time, during the nine months Barth passed in Timbuctoo, El Bakhay seldom intermitted his kindness, and but for his influence it is doubtful whether the traveller would ever have been permitted to leave the

city alive. The feelings of the people to him were naturally not warm, and the Morocco traders, who dreaded any action that might cut off their lucrative caravan business, were to a man unfriendly; while the ungenerous conduct of Alwati, the Sheik's brother, caused him some annoyance. Add to this the fact that there were still in or about Timbuctoo men who remembered, and had been wounded by, Mungo Park, and were ready to revenge themselves and their kindred on the countryman and co-religionist of that traveller, and the constant peril that Barth underwent may be imagined. Though the government of the town was virtually in the hands of the Sheik El Bakhay, a member of a powerful Shereefian family revered throughout the Soudan, the nominal ruler was a deputy of Ahmedu ben Ahmedu, the Fulah sovereign (p. 224), whose countrymen had conquered it in 1826. From this potentate there arrived one day an order, backed up by a troop of armed men, to drive Barth out of the city. El Bakhay was a kind but not a strong man, and in his nephew, Hammadi, had long had a rival for power. Accordingly, this youth, feeling himself strengthened by the arrival of such a force, at once issued an order that the inhabitants must attend to the orders of the Emir and, in the event of the Christian offering any resistance, not even spare his life.

It had evidently been the intention of El Bakhay to send Barth out of the place at the first opportunity that offered itself. However, the new position of affairs stiffened his back immediately. He loved not the Emir, to whose authority he was opposed, and he foresaw that if he permitted the expulsion of his *protégé* the position of his nephew would be materially strengthened. Barth's departure was therefore indefinitely postponed, though this fact did not improve matters so far as he was concerned; for El Walati now renewed his intrigues, and the agent whom Barth had employed, seeing the difficulties of the situation he was placed in between rival powers, refused any longer to transact business

for him. The influence of El Walati was also felt in many other ways. Continual demands were made by the Sheik's brother, and even the Sheik himself, who was a person of an entirely different character, suggested that Barth should send a letter to Tripoli for certain articles desired by him and remain a hostage in Timbuctoo until they were received. Being told most distinctly that not the value of a needle could be received until the traveller himself returned, he resumed his old relations, and even checked the knavery of El Walati, to whose true character he gradually became alive. Determined also to show the townsfolk that he was not afraid either of them or the Fulah Emir, El Bakhay pitched his camp outside the city, and kept Barth with him during the few days he remained. Time, however, only increased the number of the Christian's enemies. In the streets he was in constant danger of attack, and scarcely a day passed without attempts being made to seize or to kill him. One party actually attacked the Sheik's camp for that purpose. The whole place seemed to have been upset on his account, until one day, close on Christmas, the leader of a large body of Berabish, who had arrived avowedly with the object of killing Barth, fell ill and died before he had time to accomplish his design. The sudden death of this chief made a profound impression not only upon his followers but upon the townspeople and the Sheik himself. For it was known that he was the son of the man who had murdered Major Laing—El Raïs, "the Captain," as he was still called—the first European traveller who had visited Timbuctoo (p. 223), and for some reason generally regarded as the father of Barth, who no doubt was considered by many of them to have come to Timbuctoo with the object of obtaining the punishment of the assassins. Others, however, were suspicious that conquest was his object; though El Bakhay questioned this much, since in his opinion it could scarcely be possible that there were any poor people among the Christians. This view, however, Barth did not confirm;

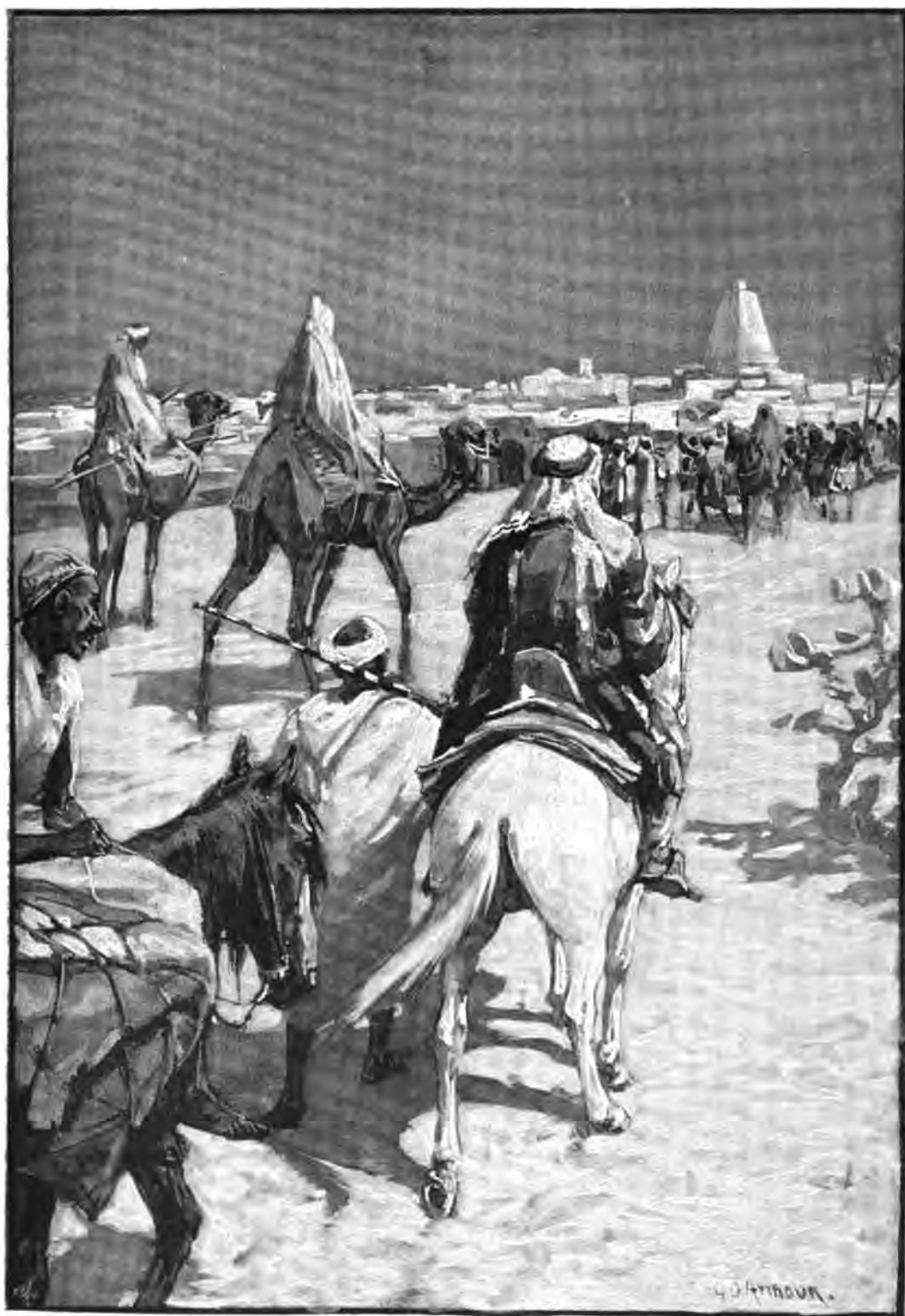


but he added that when his sovereign heard that in Central Africa there were people who could extract a living from sand, he had despatched him to fathom the secret of this art. At all events, after the death of the Berabish chief, the Sheik seemed anxious for Barth to leave, intimating that nothing would please him better than to learn that he had reached home in safety. But this he was not fated to do until the 18th of May, 1854, for illness and other reasons kept him lingering in the city long after he had outlived the very moderate welcome he had ever received, and many months over the date when he had satisfied any curiosity which a few visits to the lanes of the dirty town had aroused.

✓ Timbuctoo was indeed a disappointment. It was by no means so large as rumour had described, though the ruins found **Timbuctoo in 1854.** beyond the present limits of the town would indicate that, before civil war and conquest had ruined it, the metropolis of Central Africa had been really an extensive city. Its circumference at present is little more than two and a half miles, though without walls, its former rampart having been destroyed by the Fulahs in 1826, and never rebuilt. Yet all the houses occupied were at that period in tolerable repair, some nine hundred and eighty being of clay, and a couple of hundred conical huts of matting, the latter, with a few exceptions, on the outskirts of the place. The three large mosques are the only remarkable public buildings in the town, the royal palace in which the Kings of Songhai used to reside having disappeared. The whole number of settled inhabitants was estimated by Barth at 13,000, while the floating population during the months of the greatest traffic and intercourse—especially from November to January—would amount on an average to 5,000, and in very favourable circumstances to as many as 10,000.

The position of the place, at the point where the Niger in its serpentine winding approaches most closely to the Tuat oases, will always make it the link between the commercial life of the fertile North and the even

more productive and populous South and the desert that lies to the west of it. But except as an *entrepôt* for merchandise the city has few resources. The vicinity yields little, the trees even—which were plentiful before the Moroccan conquest, having at that date been cut down to rebuild the fleet with which the harbour master fled from Kabara—being now almost absent; so that the town is reduced to absolute want if any trouble with the up-river country prevents the corn-boats from coming down. As soon as the river rises—and the stream attains its maximum about the end of January, though about every third year the southern part of the town is flooded—these grain-boats arrive in large fleets, and the cost of provisions, which before was high, immediately falls to a moderate figure. The manufactures of the place are trifling, iron-work and saddlery being the principal; some of the leather pouches and luggage-bags made by the Touareg women being very neat. Even the Timbuctoese clothes are imported from other places, though in the surrounding districts good carpets are made, and occasionally silk embroidery of a tasteful character may be seen. Yet, generally speaking, the goods sold in the town come across the desert, either from the French and other European settlements on the West Coast, or from Algeria, Morocco, Tunis and Tripoli in the North, on the backs of long trains of camels. Of these goods, in Barth's day—and the course of commerce has not much altered since—the greater part were of English manufacture. All the cutlery and calico that he saw were British, and the tea sold to the Arabs, though still too dear for the natives, was derived from British merchants in Tripoli. Tobacco, red cloth, sashes, and looking-glasses were also in active demand. In payment for these goods, ostrich-feathers, ivory, gold-dust, gum, and wax were collected, and occasionally a few slaves were exported, though the number sent to Morocco from this part of the Soudan, and indeed from any part of Africa, was then, as it is still, much exaggerated. The great difficulty in the way



BARTH MET BY A CROWD NEAR TIMBUCTOO (p. 236).

of European trade is its distance from the coast and the centres of civilisation in the North, while the position of the town on the borders of the desert, and in the vicinity of various warring and predatory tribes, renders good government and the security that merchants require very hard to obtain. In 1854 Barth looked to England as the country destined to open up dealings with this commercial centre. Since that day, as we shall see, British connection with Timbuctoo has become less and less, until to-day it is the French who are striving to obtain possession of this market; and, in spite of the English settlements on the Niger, they run every chance of obtaining it, either by a railway from the Senegal or, still more boldly, by one through the Sahara from Algeria.

After several false starts, the courageous German was glad to turn his back on this once mysterious city of many hopes. His later adventures and observations, though full of interest, pale in importance alongside of those of which a brief outline has been given. For Timbuctoo, in spite of the exaggerated accounts that had up to that date been the staple information about it, dwarfs all other African towns into insignificance. At Gogo, once the most splendid city of Negroland, now the desolate abode of a small and miserable population, the ruined tower of the chief mosque being almost the last remnant of its former greatness, Barth was conducted to a long clay building, into which he was, however, refused admittance, though it is by no means clear that it had anything to do with Mungo Park, far less is his burial-place, as has been suggested.

At Gogo, the Sheik El Bakhay, who had accompanied him thus far, parted with his uninvited guest, and at Sokoto, after a long journey, during which hunger, robbery, threatened death, fever, extortion, danger from flooded rivers and treacherous swamps, were all present in their turn, and sometimes all at once, he again arrived in Sokoto. Here, however, a pleasant surprise waited him. For

at this point he learnt that Dr. Vogel, a German astronomical observer and naturalist, and two non-commissioned officers of the Royal Engineers, who had been sent to his succour, were at Kukawa, where in due time he met them. Unfortunately, however, a rebellion having broken out, the new arrivals had been treated very badly by the Bornu usurper, Abd er Rahman, and what goods they had brought with them were spent. Add to this the fact that the English soldiers and their German leader did not get along very well, and the condition of affairs may be imagined not to have been of the pleasantest. At Kukawa Barth was detained for four months, no longer, as of old, on the best of terms with the authorities, though on Christmas Day he feasted the citizens at the cost of fourteen roasted oxen. Dr. Vogel seems to have been pre-eminently unfitted for the duties assigned him. He had absolutely no experience of travel, no knowledge of men, was pedantic and opinionated after the German student fashion, and of so feeble a digestion that the mere sight of flesh made him sick, a peculiarity that was also observed in Corporal Macguire, one of his military companions. However, he set out in the spring of 1855 to complete Barth's discoveries and researches, first in a south-westerly direction towards the Benué, which Barth had struck 415 miles east of its confluence with the Niger, and then eastwards in the direction of the Nile. On part of this journey he was accompanied by Macguire. But how far they succeeded is never likely to be known, for he was not seen again, having most probably been murdered.\* Macguire, it seems, deserted this ill-fated traveller, whom only the passion for everything Teutonic, which at this period afflicted English science, could have induced Government to send on such a mission, and it is believed met the same fate at the well of Bedwaram in trying to make his way back.

Corporal Church returned with Dr. Barth,

\* Gerhard Rohlfs made a special journey towards Waday with the object of rescuing Vogel's papers, but failed to obtain admittance to that territory.

who, amid endless delays, caused by the disturbed condition of the country, consequent on the half-suppressed revolt against the Sheik's authority, and the absence of means, managed to get beyond the Bornu bounds. Rumours having reached Europe that he was dead, the funds that arrived from Tripoli were addressed to Dr. Vogel, a circumstance that led the ever-suspicious people to imagine that Barth had fallen into disgrace and was replaced by another man. However, after many weary days' marches with a Tebu caravan, he and Church arrived at Murzuk. Here Frederick Warrington (the consul's son), whose brother had accompanied Vogel to Kukawa, but had died of dysentery on his way back, met them. From this outpost of comparative civilisation the journey to Tripoli is easy, and there in due time the long journey of five years ended.

Barth's later career was sufficiently placid. After publishing the voluminous narrative of his travels,\* which, for fulness of detail has never been equalled by that of any other African traveller, he returned to Berlin, where he became Professor of Geography in the University and President of the Geographical Society. But, with the exception of some journeys in Asia Minor and Turkey, he did not roam far from home, dying in 1865 from a weakness due to the hardships of his African journeys acting on a constitution never very strong. A residence in the South might have saved him. But though the Queen created him a C.B., her Majesty's Government, much to Barth's disappointment, who considered that his services merited some such position, did not see their way to appoint the German scholar to a consular post. Barth's researches were, nevertheless, of the utmost value, and perhaps the most extraordinary fact about

them was that the entire cost of these five and a half years' fruitful explorations was only £1,600, of which the Government were called upon to pay no more than £1,400, the remainder being contributed by the explorer's friends. One result of Barth's journeys was the despatch some years later of what may be described as the last expedition at the national expense for opening up the Niger. This was under the command of Dr. Baikie, R.N., who explored the Benué for 340 miles. But though it closed the efforts of the British Government in the exploration of Africa in that direction, it actually opened a new era in the exploration of the Niger by private individuals and great companies, the history of which will be recorded in a later section.

When we speak of the visitors to Timbuctoo consisting of so-and-so, we do not, of course, take into account the Arabs who **Mordokhai Abi-Serour** have traded there for hundreds of years,† and to this hour pass and repass the desert with their caravans; so that the wonder is how the world remained so long in ignorance of the true nature of this mysterious semi-mythical city. The Arabs, however, take — at least in modern times — little interest in geographical science, so that mankind has benefited nothing by their journeys. And, as likely as not, geographers would never have heard of those we are about to describe had not M. Beaumier, the French Consul at Mogador, met with the traveller and obtained from him a narrative of the expeditions which he made.

The hero of this adventure (p. 304) was the son of a poor Jew living at Akka, the first oasis beyond Agadir, in the Sus Province of Morocco. Endowed with the intelligence of his race, and eager, like so many of them — even in an empire where they are regarded with such contempt as in that of Mulai El Hassan — to learn, young Mordokhai Abi-Serour‡ from an early age was consumed with an

\* "Reise und Entdeckungen in Nord- und Centralafrika." 5 vols. (1855-58.) There are also English and French editions of this work. But the German is, on the whole, the preferable version, Barth being occasionally a little obscure in a language which was not his mother tongue. Richardson's journals were published in 1853 under the title of "Narrative of a Mission to Central Africa, performed in the years 1850-51." (2 vols.)

† Ebn Batuta visited it in 1352-53, and sailed on the Niger from Kabara to Gogo.

‡ Ben, or es Serour, as the Arabs call him. He is Mardochée in French, but I accept his own orthography.

anxious desire to see strange lands. After receiving what education could be obtained in the secluded spot where he was born and brought up, he managed, without resources and without help from anyone, to make his way from Tangier (p. 297) to Spain. Thence he travelled in various humble capacities through France, Turkey, Greece, and Asia Minor, until he reached Jerusalem, where, aided by his co-religionists, he applied himself with such ardour to study that in five years he attained the rank of Rabbi. Another year was passed in Aleppo, three more were spent in Syria and Egypt, other three in Tunis and Algeria, and four in the city of Algiers as a teacher of Hebrew. He then returned home



MORDOKHAI ABI-SEROUR.  
(From *Bulletin de la Soc. Géog., Paris.*)

with a French passport, only to find his family in Akka poorer than ever.

But by this time Mordokhai, gifted with the amazing instincts of his race for business, had managed to accumulate some money.

This he determined to venture in the Timbuctoo trade, the large profits of which he had often heard the Arabs speak of, though hitherto that city had been as rigorously closed to Jews as to Christians. This was in the year 1858. Mounted on camels, he and his brother Isaac started, taking water enough to last them for six days, at the end of which period they had arrived at the oasis of Tenduf, after having traversed a great many mounds and plains of sand, in addition to "Hamada," or arid upland deserts without vegetation. During the entire journey they did not meet with water, and were in continual danger from the robbers who infest this region with the object of falling on the caravans to and from Timbuctoo. After other ten days' journey they arrived at Yguidy (Igidi), a zone of red sand-dunes, but containing many date-trees and some good though shallow wells. Here, in 1852, Bel Hamedj, a marabout, or saint,\* desiring to end his days in peace, took up his abode. His fame, however, speedily attracted to him disciples, and now a considerable town of holy men and merchants has grown up in the desert. From Yguidy—near which Davidson (p. 282) was killed in 1837—to Sefya (seventeen days) there is little except rolling sands. The latter spot is a high plateau covered with stones and scanty vegetation, but with no certainty of water. Three days more over plains, sand-dunes, and gravel brought them to Telyg (Areg), where is good water in many wells. From here to Taudeni is a very short distance, but the water is brackish, and what little business is done among the few people who live among the ruins of an old Arab town, surrounded by an ancient wall, is in salt.

Another twelve days' march brought the Jewish travellers to Aruan, where Major Laing was murdered. At this town, in the midst of a sea of sand, their progress was arrested by the Berabish Arab Sheik declaring that no Jew or Christian would be permitted to live among the

\* "Lettré et lépreux"—lettered and leprous—is M. Beaumier's epigrammatic description of this personage.

His first  
journey to  
Aruan.



THE KOMÁDUGU AT ZENGIRI.

Faithful. "He would kill them as he had killed in times past a Christian." Thanks however, to his *finesse*, Mordokhaï and his brother were saved. For, as he pleaded before the Tolbas, or Doctors of the Law, the Cherâa, or religious law, enjoined the Mussulmans to take tribute from Jews, not to slay them. The result was, that they received permission to trade here on giving to the Sheik a portion of their merchandise, and promising him an annual tribute of "five mizen of gold an ear," that is to say, ten mizen, or five pounds, a head. It was, however, not until the year 1859 that, by paying him a bribe of fifty pounds, they obtained permission to go to Timbuctoo. Even then it was only by tempting offers that Mordokhaï could persuade a camel-driver to accept the risk of taking a Jew to a town so fanatical, from which the Arab merchants had hitherto managed jealously to debar any Israelites, of whose commercial abilities they were well aware.

Hoping that a Morocco trader whom he knew would protect him, Mordokhaï proceeded, in Arab disguise, to his house. However, the Moor, so far from helping him, instigated the Fulahs either to kill or compel him to turn Mussulman. But here his knowledge of the Koran stood him in good stead. For when it seemed as if he had

no alternative but to turn renegade or die, he repeated the words of the Prophet, that they who kill a tributary without just cause shall not taste of the joys of Paradise.

The result was, that a messenger was sent to the Emir Ahmed ben Ahmedu to learn his will; when, to the Jew's delight, the order came that he was to be permitted to reside on payment of the usual licence exacted from foreign merchants, whom the Prophet enjoins the Faithful to protect. Accordingly, in spite of various efforts to "squeeze" them, Mordokhaï and his brother abode in Timbuctoo "with great tranquillity" and much profit, all through 1860, 1861, and 1862. Having accumulated a considerable fortune, they returned to Akka, making a second expedition with a large amount of merchandise in the course of the next year. On this occasion he was

His first  
visit to Tim-  
buctoo.

accompanied by four other Jews, all except one near relations, accomplishing the return journey in twenty-three days. By the end of 1863, the traffic had been so successful that the younger brother set out for Morocco with ostrich-feathers, ivory, and other products to the value of £2,000, but was robbed on the way of his entire venture, and nearly killed by the bandits.

In 1864, Mordokhai was more lucky, having reached Mogador with a large caravan, which he disposed of, and bought extensively in Genoa and Venice glass-ware and other articles valued by the negroes. Again, however, he was plundered by the Rguibet, Ait-el-Hassen, and Ygout tribes. But he was not penniless, for at Timbuctoo he had put out at interest twelve serrats of gold—equal to 1,200 mizen, that is about £600—which he employed in buying ostrich-feathers. Once more, however, the Rguibet and Ouled Bou-Sebah tribes relieved him of the last of his wares. Finding, however, in Timbuctoo three of the latter tribe, he had them arrested by the Sheik El Bakhay—who befriended the Jew as he had befriended the Christian a few years before—and held as security for the debts of their compatriots. But during the night they broke their fetters and escaped. Then the Sheik remonstrated with the tribe, but the only reply he got was that they

His commercial ruin. were "Sheurfa,"—that is Shereefs, or descendants of the Prophet—and therefore not answerable for such trifling peccadilloes as lifting the property of Unbelievers. At last the good Sheik wrote to Sidi Mohammed, Sultan of Morocco, whose subjects the robbers were supposed to be, with a request that he would punish them and compensate their victim, signing the letter with the signet that Barth, on his return to England, had sent to his friend "Ahmed-el-Bakhay, ben Mohamed ben Moktar ben Ahmed." Considering, however, that though it was quite possible the Sultan might try to punish the culprits for these and other manifold offences, it was extremely unlikely that their victim would be compensated, Mordokhai

thought it prudent not to deliver a letter that might in the end do him more harm than good. Previous to this last misfortune he had formed a partnership with another Jew. But neither of them now cared to continue business with Timbuctoo. Accordingly, after settling up his affairs, he quitted the Soudan in the year 1869, about as poor as when he had sought fortune in it ten years before, resolved to devote his experience and abilities to work in a country where life and property were safer than in that which he had left.

The love of travel was, nevertheless, too strong for him, and by 1875 he was in Paris getting some training in the use of scientific instruments, in order to undertake an exploring expedition under the auspices of the Geographical Society of France. A journey through the remoter parts of the Province of Sus, during which he discovered many ancient ruins, and sculptures, with an itinerary written in Hebrew, was the result of this new departure. He described a region then quite unknown, and the remains of a long-vanished civilisation of which history had not preserved any record.\* The sculptures represent the elephant (not at present inhabiting the country north of the Sahara, though even in Pliny's day plentiful north of the Atlas), the rhinoceros, giraffe, and other animals, many of them not now known in that part of Africa. They are supposed to have been the work of the Djoûli race, who are mentioned by the Romans under the name of Daratites. In the Daggatouns, a semi-Berber people who guide travellers across the Sahara, Mordokhai believed that he had come across a degenerate settlement of Jews. But though these people

His geographical achievements.

\* Beaumier: "Premier Établissement des Israélites à Timbouktou" (*Bulletin de la Soc. de Géographie*, April-May, 1870); Duveyrier: "De Mogador au Djebel Tabayoudt par le Rabbin Mardochée Abi Serour" (*Ibid.*, Oct., 1875, p. 561); Duveyrier: "Sculptures Antiques de la Province de Sous, découvertes du Rabbin Mardochée" (*Ibid.*, 1876, p. 129); "Mordokkhai Abi Serour de Akka: Les Daggatoun, tribu d'origine Juive demeurant dans le Sahara" (*Bull. Alliance Israélite*, 1882); Coisson: "Compendium Floræ Atlanticae," vol. i., pp. 66-68, etc.



have some Jewish traits—and Jews are among the oldest colonists in Morocco—it is doubtful whether his conclusions were correct. Among other services to science, Mordokhai made large collections of South Morocco plants, though his claims to reputation rest on his journeys to and from Timbuctoo, and the courage with which he managed to obtain a footing for his race there, a footing they have never lost, as there is still a little colony of Jews in the city, among whom the pioneer's family are the most prominent members. But they do not now trust their ventures to isolated caravans, having managed to obtain permission to travel with the great cavalcades that can defy the desert robbers.

More than a quarter of a century passed away, and little was heard of Timbuctoo.

Oskar Lenz. Commercially, the city's importance had been greatly exaggerated; in truth, not only in Central Africa, but in Morocco, there were towns in which no European lived twice as big as the one on the Niger. Still the place did not lose all of the old romance it possessed when Tennyson and Hallam were competitors\* for the Cambridge Chancellor's prize poem, of which the theme was the African metropolis; and Thackeray made it the subject of one of his lightsome ditties. Still, though geographers were well aware, after the journeys of Barth and Mordokhai, that Timbuctoo was in many respects what in America is known as "a fraud," there were plenty of people whose memories were retentive of the old ideas regarding it and oblivious of everything which concerned the revelations that had proved them erroneous. Even men of science had not, in 1880, quite disillusioned themselves of the glamour that surrounded the white houses of the ever-dwindling city of the Southern Sahara. Among them was Dr. Oskar Lenz (p. 309), an Austrian naturalist who had been engaged, under the auspices of the German African Society, in a geological examination of the Lower Ogowe, in West Africa. Again

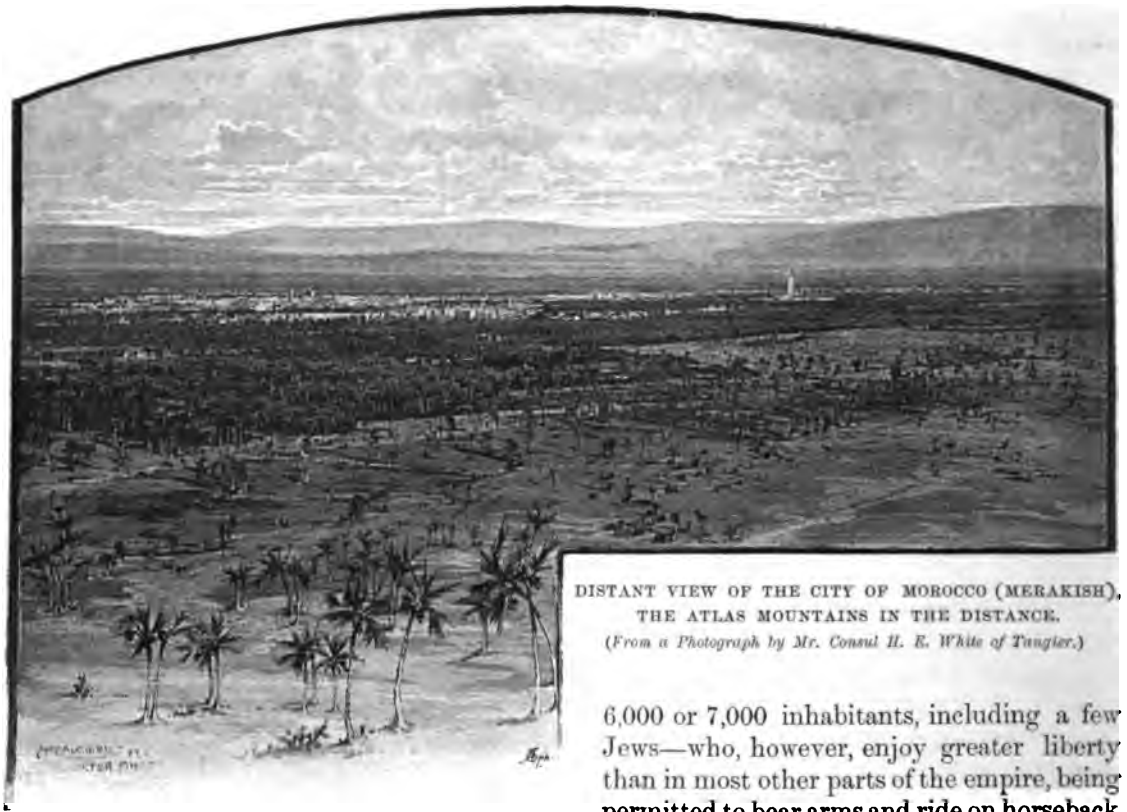
\* In 1829 Tennyson won it; the poem is printed in the *Profusiones Academicæ*.

commissioned by the same body, he left for Morocco in the year 1879, with the intention of penetrating the valleys of the Atlas, which were then, as they are to a large extent still, among the least-known portions of Africa, often though they have been touched here and there, and even crossed, by certain caravan routes. In pursuance of that design, he travelled over various parts of the Empire, though for the most part by routes already known, which he described with a minute accuracy to which that region had hitherto been a stranger. Some of these journeys were made in the company of Hadj Ali, a nephew of the celebrated Abd-el-Kader, who had made many trading trips to Timbuctoo and was on the eve of undertaking another. Meeting the Rabbi Mordokhai, Lenz's wavering resolution in favour of substituting the route to Timbuctoo for the Atlas was strengthened by the conversation of that remarkable man.

The route  
through  
Morocco.

Accordingly he joined Hadj Ali, in the disguise of a Turkish doctor, in order to make a journey which, however interesting scientifically, could not result in any great accession to geographical information, since it was necessarily over the caravan route which, we have seen, had been frequently traversed only a very few years before by the Jew merchant whose adventures have been already noted. As far as Terudant there was no real danger, for a Moorish guard accompanied him. But at this spot the Sultan's orders were that they should return, his letter of safe conduct (p. 309)† intimating that farther on he could

\* The autograph Firman, Passport, or Safe Conduct figured was, in 1884 (1302 of the Hegira), granted, as a special mark of favour, by the present Sultan of Morocco, to the late Captain F. P. Warren, R.N., Mr. T. Graham, R.S.A., and Dr. R. Brown, while resident in Fez. It authorises them to travel in any part of his dominions, and commands his officers to grant the "three Nazarene gentlemen" all assistance and protection, so long as they do not run themselves into danger by going into parts where the Sultan's authority is imperfectly established. It was invariably found more hampering than otherwise, the local authorities being so terrified lest they transgressed the letter of "Our Lord's" commands that they managed to import into it hidden meanings never intended by the Imperial writer!



DISTANT VIEW OF THE CITY OF MOROCCO (MERAKISH),  
THE ATLAS MOUNTAINS IN THE DISTANCE.  
(From a Photograph by Mr. Consul H. E. White of Tangier.)

not be responsible for the safety of anyone, far less a European of whose orthodoxy there were well-founded suspicions. Terudant was at one time a semi-royal town, and in the Middle Ages merchants from the coast traded regularly with it. Previous to the fourteenth century, the River Sus, which waters its crumbling walls, was navigable thus far—a distance of forty miles from the sea—and there are said to be seen even yet large, massive rings to which the cables of vessels were formerly attached. Nowadays it is a crumbling, fanatical place, in which Europeans are never found, and, indeed, would be in mortal peril were they recognised. Since Agadir ceased to be an open port the place has lost what trade it ever possessed, and the Berbers, who are its principal inhabitants, swagger about the narrow, dirty lanes, armed to the teeth, glaring at any stranger with a ferocious air. Murders are frequent in the full glare of publicity, and the

6,000 or 7,000 inhabitants, including a few Jews—who, however, enjoy greater liberty than in most other parts of the empire, being permitted to bear arms and ride on horseback—live in great poverty on the produce of the olive, date, and orange gardens that embosom the place; or on the “semsars,” or native agents of the English and other merchants in Mogador who come here, and to other places on the Timbuctoo route, to intercept the caravans in the interest of their employers.

At Terudant, Lenz accordingly found his troubles beginning. For the Kaid, or governor, fearing that he might be held responsible for any mishap that might befall the Sultan’s *protégé*, and perhaps not unwilling to have an excuse for hampering his journey, declined to permit him to pass through the territory of the Howara Berbers or Shluhs.

Several attempts that he made to join a large caravan of Terudant traders about to start for Hamed ben Musa, in the territory of Sidi Hussein—one of the semi-independent religious chiefs, of whom there are several in Morocco—failed owing to the fanatical opposition of the people. At

last, in return for handsome gifts, some of the robber chiefs of the Howaras conducted him



OSKAR LENZ.

(From a Photograph by Adolph Halwas, Berlin.)

the treacherous pursuit of Sidi Hussein ben Heschem, who had enjoined the various sheiks to murder the traveller as soon as he entered the territory of any one of them. From this place he obtained a guide to Aruan, where he arrived after the usual perils from sand-dunes, robbers, and thirst. The salt-mines of Taudeni, from which formerly thousands of camel-loads of salt were yearly sent to Timbuctoo, he found entirely deserted.

The Sahara, which had hitherto been considered the bed of an ancient sea, beneath the level of the Atlantic, and therefore possible to be flooded, Lenz discovered to be in most places much above the sea-level, and in all likelihood never, within recent geological times, covered by salt water. It is a waste of sand and stone, of a flat or rolling character generally, but not without hills from

Nature of the Sahara.

through their country into Ilerh, in the principality of Sidi Hussein ben Heschem, where for the time being he was in comparative safety. Here the country, though dry, was populous and well cultivated. After a halt of four days at Ilerh, the journey was continued over a stony Hamada, or plateau (p. 304), and through a river valley, until he reached the foot of a range of mountains from 4,000 to 5,000 feet high, a spur of the Atlas, the descent of which was abrupt and tedious, as no water was to be had, and the region was unsafe from robber tribes. Lower down, the country was a large plain covered with date forests, among which the little town of Temenet lies concealed. Farther on the first glimpse of the Sahara is afforded, after the town of Ijit, sheltered behind a mountain, is passed. A little farther is Akka, the old home of the Rabbi whose name must by this time be familiar to the reader. At Fum el Hossan, the residence of the Sheik Ali, of the Berber tribe of Maribda, the traveller was hospitably received by the sheik, who for many years had carried on a considerable trade with Timbuctoo, where he had a brother. At Tenduf he arrived in safety, in spite of



LETTER OF SAFE CONDUCT GRANTED BY THE SULTAN OF MOROCCO. (Reduced about one-half.)

On the road to Timbuctoo.

five hundred to a thousand feet high, with great masses of rock, and quarries out of which porphyry might be mined, while wells are frequent. The aridity Dr. Lenz considered to be comparatively recent, being largely due to the felling of the forests on the mountains. This improvidence here, as elsewhere, has had the effect of drying up the springs of the rivers that had their origin in these heights, and flowed through plains where their old courses are now only dried-up "wadis," in which after rains a little muddy water flows. The drifting sands are the result of the crumbling down of the sandstone that forms the foundation of the Sahara, under atmospheric influences—hot sun during the day, sudden cold at night, and heavy sub-tropical rains at intervals—without the rock obtaining any protection from vegetation. In these shifting dunes, which are often vast mounds, travel is extremely tedious; even the experienced leader of the caravan was not always able to find his way, and the difficulty was increased in the southern part of the desert, where the hot sand storms and a temperature of 113 degrees during the day made marching almost impossible, the hours of night being therefore utilised for this purpose.

At Aruan there was something of the old fanaticism still remaining, though the visits of previous travellers, and the death of the ferocious Berabish chiefs who had murdered Laing and threatened Barth, rendered the place less dangerous than of old. But at the date of Lenz's visit there was living in Aruan one of the instigators of the murder of Alexandrine Tinné (p. 282), and it is said that all the effects belonging to Major Laing, who was assassinated fifty-five years before, were up to that period preserved there, though Lenz in vain attempted to see them.

Hitherto, the Austrian traveller's route was virtually the same as Mordokhai's. At Aruan, however, that of Caillié branched off farther to the north; but from Aruan to Timbuctoo the road travelled for five days was that of all previous explorers. It is the caravan path, over which some 40,000 camels pass every

year, laden with produce, from Central to Northern Africa.

Dr. Lenz arrived in Timbuctoo on the 1st of July, 1880, and during a stay of twenty days was received with the utmost kindness by the citizens and their ruler. Timbuctoo  
in 1880. The old fear or the old fanaticism seems to have passed away; though, if the French attempt to build a railway through the desert to this point, it is certain that the jealousy of the tribes who live by the caravan trade will be roused to a dangerous pitch, as the Flatters' party engaged in the exploration for this wild scheme learned to their cost. From Timbuctoo Lenz travelled westward by way of Baskunnu, Sokoto, Bachuinit, Niore, and Kuniahari, and the country of the desert Moors, to the French post of Medina (p. 183) on the Senegal, whence he easily reached the coast, having been the first European to traverse the entire country between Senegambia and the great city of the Niger.

His visit is the last to Timbuctoo of which we possess any knowledge, though it is needless adding that native merchants still traffic there. Yet, even in Lenz's day, its trade was on the decrease, and at that time consisted chiefly of ostrich feathers and ivory. This was due to the incessant hostilities of the Touareg and Fulah tribes, who had made security impossible, both for the resident traders and for the caravans. However, he concluded either that Barth had under-calculated the population, or that it had increased of late years, for, instead of 13,000—his predecessor's estimate (p. 300)—he put the entire citizenship of Timbuctoo at 20,000,\* to which must be added several thousand traders during the caravan season.

He agreed, however, that its importance had been grossly exaggerated. At no time was it the capital of an empire, and even yet its market, and the fact that the various Arab tribes, the Fulahs and the Touaregs, recognise in it a strategical position in which to establish their supremacy are the principal reasons for

\* There are over fifty thousand in Fez in Morocco.

the never-ending anarchy of which it is the centre. These struggles we have already sketched (p. 234). Being thus at the mercy of the first tribe strong enough to master the others, the citizens live apathetically within the dismantled walls, paying tribute to whomsoever is master, or sometimes, for the sake of peace, to two tyrants simultaneously, taking compensation in the profits of trade whenever the river is clear of pirates or the land free from robbers. Salt exchanged for gold-dust, kola nuts, Manchester goods, tea, arms, and other articles, forms the principal commerce, and already cowries are gradually giving place to European coin, and Winchester rifles to the old long-barrelled flint-locks of Morocco. The local administration is in the hands of a "Khaia," selected from one of the "Reema,"\* or "shooting" families, so called because they form the mongrel descendants of the Moorish army who took the town with the aid of firearms (p. 231), and remained as its masters after the Sultans of Morocco had left it alone. But, as in Barth's time, the Khaia was a mere creature in the hands of a neighbouring Touareg chief, and of a sheik of the powerful family of El Bakhay, the representative of which was in Lenz's time Abidin, a nephew of Barth's friend (who died in 1865), but not the individual who played such mischief to that traveller. The town possesses several libraries containing valuable Arabic manuscripts, and, besides being a centre of Moslem learning, will continue to be the converging point of all the tribes of that part of the Sahara—Arabs or Arabised Berbers, Sonhrais, Ireghenaten, or "mixed" Touaregs, Fulahs, Mandingoes, Bambaras, and Imósharh Touaregs, who belong to the Awellimiden confederation, to the country north and east of the city.

But Timbuctoo is really—with intervals of *interregnum*—in the hands of a commercial aristocracy like the Italian Republics of the Middle Ages. The chief members of this "Djema" form a municipal council and the

"Chamber of Commerce" of the place. The Sheik is a kind of Doge, who possesses great though undefined authority in the city, and is always at enmity with the Khaia, the tendency all over Mohammedan Central Africa being to concentrate power in the hands of religious chiefs. The present Khaia, or Emir, as he now affects to call himself, is Muhammed Er-Reemi, whose negroid features are the result of long alliances with the surrounding Sonhrai population. He commands little influence, and is practically a mere puppet in the hands of whichever of the rival Arab—Touareg or Fulah—factions happens for the time being to have the upper hand. The Imósharhs (Touaregs) command the whole district between Timbuctoo and Aruan, and their Sheik or Sultan, Eg-Tandagumu, seems to draw his chief supplies from the plundered caravans passing through his territory. The Arabs, as in the time of Barth, are still ruled by the head of the illustrious El Bakhay family, a branch of the Kuntza tribe. But the policy of the present Sheik Abidin has long been to side with the Fulahs, whose power here, as elsewhere in the Western Soudan, is constantly on the increase, and who threaten to become absolute masters of Timbuctoo unless the place falls into the hands of some European Power advancing from the west, or penetrating up the Niger valley from the south.

This Power is likely to be the French, within whose "sphere of influence" the city now is, though French traders have not <sup>Timbuctoo</sup> yet attempted to settle in, or even <sup>in 1892.</sup> to visit the place, the route from the Senegal being even more dangerous than that from the north. Yet in 1887 the French built two little steamers in Bamaku, in the Sultanate of Sego, on the Niger (p. 214); and that year Lieutenant Caron went down the Niger with the small gunboat *Niger* till he reached Koriumé, near Kabara, though he did not venture to visit the city. Still more recently Lieutenant Jaimé made a second visit with two gunboats, the *Niger* and the *Magé*, starting from Kuliman, close to Bamaku, and

\* Also called "Arma" or "Deraba."

reached near Kabara without any difficulty.\* At that time the town was again in anarchy.

Envoys from Timbuctoo have even visited Paris. In 1885, after Captain Gallieni had made his treaty-signing expedition to the Upper Nile, an envoy, purporting to be the representative of the Sheik of Timbuctoo, arrived on the Senegal, and was duly despatched to France without too rigid inquiries being made whether he and his master were what they affirmed themselves to be. This ambassador was addressed as "His Excellency," presented to President Grévy—whose grey beard sensibly impressed him—and had a grand reception from the Paris Geographical Society. This so-called Envoy, Si El-Hadj Abd-el-Kader, was about thirty years of age, tall, thin, spare, with strongly marked features and eager eyes—a good type of a Soudanese. He belonged to one of the best families of Timbuctoo, and was well educated according to the prevailing notions of his native city. He had heard, so it was said, of French progress towards the Niger, of the French establishment at Bamaku on that river, and of the power of the French arms, and he wanted to see it all for himself. Yet, on his journey towards St. Louis and Senegal, he carefully avoided the intermediate French posts, and on his arrival at St. Louis at once sent to the Governor a letter written by the "Sheikh El-Khaer-Hadj-Ibrahim." This document stated that "we have heard of your wish to come to us," and that the bearer of the letter is Alladhi, son of Bakar Ghuieri, a Moor, who has travelled much by land and water, and who is still alive, "praise God." The bearer was instructed to give all information about

the country. If the French, the letter went on to say, wish to trade with the merchants of Timbuctoo, they will be welcome; but if they wish to make treaties, then they ought to know that the country belongs to many tribes—Touaregs, Geulados, Berbers, Landsahrs, Bambarras, Fulahs—and that the merchants can do nothing without treaties. "Come only," the letter concludes, "to make trade."†

Abd-el-Kader returned with Lieutenant Caron. But he was of little use to the French. For, as his letter might have indicated, he was not the envoy of the actual ruler, but of one of the claimants to that dignity, and had been despatched in order to obtain French help against the galling yoke of the Touaregs, then masters of the city. Caron was not even permitted to visit the place, and the "Ambassador" did not venture to do so. It is still difficult to obtain any accurate information regarding the present condition of affairs, except that it is anarchy, tempered by the temporary mastership of one of the several factions always struggling for power, and that the population is steadily decreasing.

So ends one of the stages in the history of African exploration—the seeking after Timbuctoo. But long before the mysterious city on the Niger had ceased to possess attractions for the adventurous, explorers were beginning to look to another and an even earlier field of distinction in Northern Africa. So pronounced was this change in the tendency of men's thoughts that, in 1872, Winwood Reade wrote, with the regret of a man who had passed all his travel-life in that region:—"The days of discovery in this part of Africa are over; the Niger has gone out of fashion, and the present generation has been interested only in the story of the Nile." To the River of Egypt, therefore, we shall next turn.

† *The Times*, January 23rd, 1885.

\* Caron, "De Saint-Louis au port de Timbouktou voyage d'une canonnière française suivi d'un vocabulaire Sonrai" (1891); Lenz, "Timbuktu," 2 vols. (1884), and numerous papers in the *Proceedings* of the Berlin, Vienna, Paris, and other Geographical Societies. Deporter, "Extrême-Sud de l'Algérie" (1890), etc.

# A Classified Catalogue OF CASSELL & COMPANY'S PUBLICATIONS.

- 1d.** **Cassell's Penny Illustrated Stories.** Consisting of a Series of New and Original Stories by Popular Authors. Fully Illustrated. Monthly. (*List sent free on application.*)
- Historical Cartoons, Descriptive Account of.**
- Cassell's New Poetry Readers.** Illustrated. 12 Books. Each. (*See also 1d. 6d.*)
- Cassell's School Certificates.** (*Also at 3d.*)
- The Secret of Success and How to Attain it.** By John W. Kirton, L.L.D.

- 2d.** **Cassell's New Standard Drawing Copies.** 6 Books. Each. (*Also at 3d. and 4d.*)
- Cassell's School Board Arithmetics.**
- Cassell's Modern School Copy Books.** 12 Books. Each.
- Cassell's Graduated Copy Books.** 18 Books. Each.
- The Polytechnic Building Construction Plates.** A Series of 40 Drawings. 11d. each.
- How should Railway Fares be Charged?** By R. McEwen.

- 3d.** **CASSELL'S NATIONAL LIBRARY.** Paper covers, 3d. each; cloth, 6d. (*A full List of the volumes now ready sent post free on application.*)
- Cassell's Readable Readers.** Illustrated and strongly bound. Two Infant Readers at 2½d. and 3d., and Six Books for the Standards, at 6d. to 1s. 1d. Also a superior edition at 7d. to 1s. 3d. (*List on application.*)
- Cassell's Standard Drawing Copies.** 6 Books. Each. (*See also 2d. and 4d.*)
- Cobden Club Pamphlets.** (*List on application.*)
- The True Unity.** By the Ven. W. M. Sinclair, D.D.

- 4d.** **Cassell's Standard Drawing Copies.** 2 Books. Each. (*See also 2d. and 3d.*)
- The Modern School Readers.** Four Infant Readers at 3d. to 5d., and Six Books for the Standards at 7d. to 1s. 6d. (*A List on application.*)
- The Modern Reading Sheets.** In Three Series, each containing Twelve Sheets, 2s. each. (*See also 5s.*)
- Readers for Infant Schools, Coloured.** 3 Books. Each containing 48 pages, including 8 pages in Colours. Each.
- Shakespeare's Plays.** 36 Parts. Each.
- Sheridan and Goldsmith's Plays.** Separate. Each.

## EDUCATIONAL.

- The Modern Geographical Readers.**
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Introductory Lessons. For Standard I. . . . . 6d.  | Scotland, Ireland, British North America, Australasia. For Standard IV. . . . . 1s. 6d. |
| Introductory Lessons. For Standard II. . . . . 8d. | Europe. For Standard V. . . . . 1s. 6d.   |
| England and Wales. For Standard III. . . . . 10d.  | The World. For Standards VI. and VII. . . . . 1s. 8d.                                   |
- Shakespeare's Plays for School Use.** Cloth. Each.
- Richard III. Henry V. Hamlet. Julius Caesar. Coriolanus. Richard II. King John. Merchant of Venice. Henry VIII.
- Euclid, Cassell's First Four Books of.** Paper, 6d. (*Cloth, 9d.*)
- Drawing Books for Young Artists.** Each.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| How to Draw Elementary Forms, Models, &c. | How to Draw Landscapes, Trees, Ships, &c. |
| How to Draw Floral and Ornamental Forms.  | How to Draw Animals, Birds, and Dogs.     |
- Arithmetics, The Modern School.** By George Ricks, B.Sc. In 7 Books. Standards I. to IV., paper covers, 3d. each; cloth, 3d. each. Books for Standards V. to VII., paper covers, 3d. each; cloth, 4d. each; Answers, 6d. Complete in One Vol., with Answers, 2s.
- Cookery for Schools.** By Lizzie Heritage.
- Cassell's National Library.** Vols. in cloth. (*List of Vols. post free on application.*)

## MISCELLANEOUS.

- How Intemperance has been Successfully Combated.** By the Duchess of Rutland.
- Uniform Imperial Postage.** By Robert J. Beadon, M.A.
- Shall we Know One Another in Heaven?** By the Rt. Rev. J. C. Ryle, M.A., Bishop of Liverpool.
- Reunion among Christians.** By the Rev. Reginald Smith.
- Cobden Club Pamphlets.** (*List on application.*)
- Local and Centralised Government in Ireland.** By W. F. Bailey.
- Imperial Federation.** Report of the Conference.
- Appreciation of Gold.** By William Fowler, L.L.B.

## CASSELL'S PICTURE STORY BOOKS.

- Each containing Sixty Pages of Pictures, Stories, &c.
- |               |                      |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Little Talks. | Little Chimes.       | Auntie's Stories.    |
| Bright Stars. | Delany's Story Book. | Birdie's Story Book. |
| Nursery Joys. | Dot's Story Book.    | A Sheaf of Tales.    |
| Pet's Posy.   | A Nest of Stories.   | Dewdrop Stories.     |
| Tiny Tales.   | Good-Night Stories.  |                      |
- Chats for Small Chatterers.

## SIXPENNY STORY BOOKS.

- The Smuggler's Cave.**—Little Lizzie.—Little Bird.—Luke Barnicott.—Little Pickles.—The Rochester College Boys.—The Debt Jug.—My First Cruise.—The Little Peacemaker.—The Boat Club.

- Cassell's "High School" Readers.** Illustrated and strongly bound. Six books at 7d. to 1s. 3d.

- Things New and Old; or, Stories from English History.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P. Fully Illustrated. Strongly bound in Cloth. Standards I. and II., 9d. each. Standard III., 1s. Standard IV., 1s. 3d. Standards V., VI. and VII., 1s. 6d. each.

- Cassell's Historical Readers.** Stories for Children from English History. Standards 3 and 4, 20d.
- The History of England for Elementary Schools.** Standards 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11. (*See also 1s. and 2s.*)
- Part I. From the Earliest Times to Elizabeth. 1s.
- Part II. From Elizabeth to Modern Times. 1s.

## THE WORLD'S WORKERS.

- New and Original Volumes by Popular Authors. With Portraits. (*See also 3s.*)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| John Cassell.  | General Gordon.                                    |
| Charles Haddon Spurgeon.   | Dr. Guthrie, Father Mathew.                        |
| Dr. Arnold of Rugby.   | Eliah Burritt, Joseph Livesey.                     |
| The Earl of Shaftesbury.   | Abraham Lincoln.                                   |
| Sarah Robinson, Agnes Weston, & Mrs. Meredith.                             | Sir Henry Havelock and Colin Campbell, Lord Clyde. |
| Mary Carpenter and Mrs. Somerville.  | David Livingstone.                                 |
| Thomas A. Edison & Samuel F. B. Morse. By Dr. Denslow and J. Marsh Parker. | George Müller and Andrew Reed.                     |
| Charles Dickens. [Moore.   | Richard Cobden.                                    |
| Sir Titus Salt and George Florence Highgate.                               | Handel.  |
| Catherine Marsh, Frances Ridley Havergal, Mrs. Ranyard ("L.N.R.").         | Turner the Artist. [son.                           |
|  | George and Robert Stephen Benjamin Franklin.       |

- SHILLING STORY BOOKS.** All Illustrated, cloth gilt.
- Bunty and the Boys. Diamonds in the Sand.
- The Mistr of Mimdale. Burly Bob.
- The Mystery at Shonoliff School. Shag and Doll, and other Stories.
- Claimed at Last, and Roy's Reward. Aunt Lucia's Looker.
- Thorns and Tangles. Among the Redskins.
- The Cuckoo in the Robin's Nest. The Ferryman of Brill.
- John's Mistake. Harry Maxwell.
- The History of Five Little Pioneers who had very Large Hairs. The Magic Mirror.
- The Cost of Revenge. Oliver Frank.
- A Banished Monarch. Seventeen Cats.

## "LITTLE FOLKS" PAINTING BOOKS.

- Each containing Outline Illustrations for Painting on nearly every page. "Little Folks" New Paint Book. "Little Folks" Illuminating Book.

## ILLUSTRATED BOOKS FOR THE LITTLE ONES.

- Containing interesting stories, with Full-page Illustrations. In handsome Picture Boards. (*Also cloth gilt, 1s. 6d.*)
- Tales Told for Sunday. Dumb Friends.
- Sunday Stories for Small People. Up and Down the Garden.
- Stories and Pictures for Some Farm Friends. Some Farm Friends.
- Bible Pictures for Boys and Girls. Those Golden Socks.
- Firelight Stories. Our Sunday Stories.
- Sunlight and Shade. Indoors and Out.
- Bubble Tales. Little Mothers and their Children.
- Fine Feathers and Fluffy Fur. Our Schoolyard Hours.
- Scrambles and Scrapes. Creatures Tame.
- Little Tattle Tale. Our Pretty Pets.
- Wandering Ways. Creatures Wild.

## EDUCATIONAL.

- Cassell's Map-Building Series.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P. Per Set of 12.
- Hand-and-Eye Training Cards for Class Use.** By George Ricks. In 5 Sets. Each.
- Latin Primer, The First.** By Prof. Postgate, M.A.
- Science Applied to Work.** By J. A. Bower. Illustrated.
- Science of Everyday Life.** By J. A. Bower. Illustrated.
- Reckoning, Anglo-American Art of.** By C. Frushier Howard. (*See also 2s. and 3s.*)
- Cassell's "Modern School" Test Cards.** Seven Sets of 40 Cards in Case. Each.
- Cassell's "Combination" Test Cards.** Six Sets of 36 Cards with Answers, in Packet. Each.
- Flowers, Studies in.** In Thirteen Packets, each containing Six Flowers. Each Packet.
- History, The Simple Outlines of.** Illustrated.
- Complete Test Book for all Public Examinations.** Spelling, Moore's Complete Manual of.
- Euclid, Cassell's.** First Six Books, with the 11th and 12th of Euclid.
- Drawing Copies, Cassell's Modern School.** First Grade—Frehand. (*Also Second Grade, Frehand, 2s.*)



1/-  
cont'd.

**German Reading, First Lessons in.** By A. Jagt.  
**Cassell's Historical Course for Schools.**  
 1. *Stories from English History.* 1s. 3d.  
 2. *The Simple Outline of English History.* 1s. 3d.  
**The Class History of England.** 2s. 6d.  
**Carpentry Workshop Practice, Forty Lessons in.**  
**Polytechnic Technical Scales.** Set of 10 in cloth case. (See also 10s. 6d.)  
**Cassell's Miniature Library of the Poets.** In Two Vols. Half cloth. Each. (See also 2s. 6d.)

### MISCELLANEOUS.

**The Lollardian Age and its Literature.** By Louis Lollardian.  
**The Letters of "Vetus" on the Administration of the War Office.**  
**A Shilling's-Worth of All Sorts.**  
**Chips by an Old Chum; or, Australia in the Fifties.**  
**Souvenir of Ravenswood.** At the Lyceum Theatre. Illustrated.  
**An Address in School Hygiene.** By Clement Dukes, M.D.  
**A Handbook to London in English and French.**  
**Souvenir of the Dead Heart.** By Wats Phillips. Presented at the Lyceum Theatre, by Henry Irving. Illustrated.  
**Bits and Boring-Rins, and Horses and Harness.** By E. F. Flower.  
**Circulation or Stagnation.** By Sir E. Chadwick, K.C.B.  
**The Old Fairy Tales.** With Illustrations. (Also in 1s. 6d.)  
**Potato Culture and Disease Prevention.** Illustrated.  
**Lawful We Lock; or, How Shall I Make Sure of a Legal Marriage?** By Two Barristers.  
**Advice to Women on the Care of their Health, before, during, and after Confinement.** By Florence Stacpool.  
**Our Sick and How to Take Care of Them; or, Plain Teaching in Sick Nursing at Home.** By Florence Stacpool.  
**Born a King.** By Frances and Mary Arnold-Forster. Illustrated.  
**London Charities (Unanswered).** By Robert Chignell.  
**Life in our Villages.** Letters of the Special Commissioner of the Daily News. (Also in cloth, 2s.)  
**All About the Royal Navy.** By W. Laird Clowes. Illustrated.  
**Our Home Army.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P.  
**Four Years in Parliament with Hard Labour.** By C. W. Radcliffe Cooke, M.P. Third Edition.  
**A Minimum Wage.** By Alfred Morris. A new Novel dealing with Present-Day Social Questions.  
**Local Option in Norway.** By Thomas M. Wilson, C.E.  
**International Fishery Disputes.** By T. H. Haynes.  
**The Dwellings of the Poor.** Report of the Mansion House Council 1892. Illustrated.  
**The Housing of the Poor.** By F. H. Millington.  
**Town Holdings.** 1890. Digest. Vol. III.  
**British Difficulties under Solution.** By F. R. Hungerford.  
**In a Conning Tower.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P. Illustrated.  
**A Manual of Political Questions of the Day.** By Sydney Buxton, M.P. Paper covers. (Also in cloth, 1s. 6d.)  
**Tide Tide; Cassell's Christmas Annual.**  
**The Sugar Convention.** By the Rt. Hon. Lord Farrer.  
**Free Trade in Sugar.** A Reply to the Right Hon. Lord Farrer, by George Martineau.  
**Pre-Raphaelites, The Italian, in the National Gallery.** By Cosmo Monkhouse. Illustrated.  
**Local Government in England and Germany.** By the Rt. Hon. Sir Robert Morier, G.C.B., &c.  
**Irish Parliament, The, from 1792 to 1890.**  
**Irish Union, The; Before and After.** By A. K. Connell, M.A. (Also in cloth, 2s. 6d.)  
**How to Select Spectacles.** By Dr. C. Bell Taylor.  
**Practical Kennel Guide.** By Dr. Gordon Stables.  
**Cookery, Cassell's Shilling.**  
**Choice Dishes at Small Cost.** By A. G. Payne.  
**Poor Relief in Foreign Countries.**  
**Cremation and Ura Burial.** By W. Robinson. Illustrated.  
**Colonies and India, Our.** By Prof. Ransome, M.A. Oxon.  
**Etiquette of Good Society.** New Edition. Edited and Revised by Lady Colin Campbell. (Also in cloth, 1s. 6d.)  
**Co-operating, Working Men! What they have Done, and What they are Doing.**  
**Photography for Amateurs.** By T. C. Hepworth. Illustrated. (Also in cloth, 1s. 6d.)  
**"My Diary."** With Coloured Plates and 356 Woodcuts.

**CASSELL'S SUNSHINE SERIES.** Monthly Volumes.  
**The Temptation of Dulio Carruthers.** By C. E. C. Weigall.  
**Lady Lovelace's Romance and True Story of a Glamour.** By Edith E. Cuthell.  
**Womanlike.** By Florence M. King.  
**On Stronger Wings.** By Edith Lister.  
**"You'll Love Me Yet."** By Frances Haswell; and "That Little Woman." By Ida Lemon.  
**A Man of the Name of John.** By Florence M. King.  
**Stephen Wray's Wife; or, Not all in Vain.** By Lambert Shields.  
**For Erica's Sake.** By M. E. Shepherd.  
**"Comrades of Ounce" and "A Tremendous Calm."** By the Rev. T. Keyworth.  
**The Select Works of George Combe.** Issued by Authority of the Combe Trustees. Popular Edition. Each. (Net.)  
**The Constitution of Man.** Science and Relig. on.  
**Moral Philosophy.** Discussions on Education.

### ILLUSTRATED OFFICIAL RAILWAY GUIDES.

In Paper. (Also in cloth, 2s.)  
**South Eastern—London, Brighton and South Coast—London and South Western—Great Northern—Midland—London and North Western (Revised Edition)—Great Western (New and Revised Edition)—Great Eastern.**

### RELIGIOUS.

**"HEART CHORDS."** Bound in cloth, red edges. Each.  
**My Work for God.** My Aids to the Divine Life.  
**My Object in Life.** My Sources of Strength.  
**My Aspirations.** My Father.  
**My Emotional Life.** My Bible.  
**My Body.** My Soul.  
**My Growth in Divine Life.**  
**HELPS TO BELIEF.** Edited by the Rev. Canon Shore, M.A.  
**Creation.** By the late Lord Bishop of Carlisle.  
**Prayer.** By the Rev. Canon Shore, M.A.  
**The Divinity of Our Lord.** By the Lord Bishop of Derry.  
**Miracles.** By the Rev. Brownlow Maitland, M.A.  
**The Atonement.** By William Connor Magee, D.D., late Archbishop of York.  
**The Morality of the Old Testament.** By the Rev. N. Smyth, D.D.  
**Mid Treasures.** By Richard Harris Hill.  
**Shortened Church Services and Hymns.** Compiled by the Rev. T. Teignmouth Shore, M.A., Canon of Worcester.  
**My Comfort in Sorrow.** By Hugh Macmillan, D.D.

### CASSELL'S "JAPANESE" LIBRARY.

Consisting of 12 Popular Works bound in Japanese style. Each. (Net.)  
**Handy Andy—Oliver Twist—Ivanhoe—Ingoldsby Legends.**  
**The Last of the Mohicans—The Last Days of Pompeii—The Yellow Peril—The Last Days of Pompeii—Jack Hinton, the Guardian—Selections from Hood's Works—American Humour—Tower of London.**

**British Museum, The Bible Student in the.** By the Rev. J. G. Kitchin, M.A. New and Rev. ed. Edition.  
**School Registers, Cassell's.** 1. Attendance Register, 1s. 4d.  
 2. Admission Register, 10s. 3. Summary Register, 10s.

**Won at the Last Hole.** A Golfing Romance. By M. A. Solart. Illustrated.

**Lessons in Our Laws; or, Talks at Broadacre Farm.** By H. F. Lester, B.A. Illustrated. In two Parts. Each.

**Object Lessons from Nature, for the Use of Schools.** By Prof. L. C. Miall. Illustrated. New and enlarged Edition. Two Vols. Each.

**University Extension: Past, Present, and Future.** By Prof. Mackinder, and M. E. Sadler, M.A. With Maps and Plans.

**Vegetarian Cookery.** By A. G. Payne.

**Cassell's New Poetry Readers.** Illustrated. 12 Books in One Vol. cloth. (See also 1d.)

**Guide to Employment for Boys on leaving School.** By W. S. Beard, F.R.G.S.

**Engineering Workshop Practice, Forty Lessons in.**

**Elementary Chemistry for Science Schools and Classes.**

**Twilight of Life, The. Words of Counsel and Comfort for the Aged.** By John Elberton, M.A.

**Leaves of Every-Day Life.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P. Cloth.

**Citizen Reader.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P. Cloth. (Revised Edition, 3s. 6d.) (Also a Scottish Edition, cloth, 1s. 6d.)

**Round the Empire.** By G. R. Parkin. With a Preface by the Earl of Rosebery, K.G. Fully Illustrated.

**The Making of the Nation.** By Mrs. S. A. Barnett.

**Temperance Reader, The.** By Rev. J. Dennis Hird.

**Little Folks' History of England.** By Isa Craig Knox. With 30 Illustrations. Cloth.

**French, Key to Cassell's Lessons in.** Cloth.

**Shive, Burnaby's Ride to.** Cloth.

**Experimental Geometry, First Elements of.** By Paul Bert. Illustrated.

**Principles of Perspective as Applied to Medal Drawing and Sketching from Nature, The.** By George Troubridge. (Cloth, 2s. 6d.)

**Energy and Motion: A Text Book of Elementary Mechanics.** By W. Paice, M.A.

**Nursing for the Home and for the Hospital, A Handbook of.** By C. J. Wood. (Also in cloth, 2s.)

### GIFT BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.

By Popular Authors. With Illustrations in each. Cloth gilt.

**The Boy Hunters of Kentucky.** By Edward S. Ellis.

**Red Feather; or, A Tale of the American Frontier.** By Edward S. Ellis. (Syrington.)

**Seeking a City.** By Maggie Rhoda's Reward; or, "If Wishes were Horses."

**Frank's Life-Battle; or, The Three Friends.**

**Jack Marston's Anchor.**

**Fraters; or, 'I've a Long Lane that has no Turning.'**

**Major Monk's Motto; or, "Look before you Leap."**

**Ursula's Stumbling Block; or, "Fride comes before a Fall."**

**Ruth's Life Work; or, "No Pains, no Gains."**

**Rags and Rainbows; a Story of Thanksgiving.**

**Uncle William's Charge; or, The Broken Trust.**

**Pretty Pink's Purpose; or, The Little Street Merchant.**

**Trixy; or, "Those who Live in Glass Houses shouldn't Throw Stones."**

**Two Two Hardcastle; or, "A Friend in Need is a Friend Indeed."**

**Tim Thomson's Trial; or, "All is not Gold that Glitters."**

### EIGHTEENPENNY STORY BOOKS.

All Illustrated throughout, and bound in cloth gilt.

**Wee Willie Winkie.**

**Ups and Downs of a Donkey's Life.**

**Three Wee Ulster Lassies.**

**Up the Ladder.**

**Faith's Father.**

**By Land and Sea.**

**The Young Berringtons.**

**Tom Morris's Error.**

**Worth More than Gold.**

**Jeff and Luff.** [Fire.]

**Through Flood—Through**

### THE LIBRARY OF WONDERS.

Illustrated Gift Books for Boys. Crown 8vo, cloth.

**Wonderful Adventures.**—Wonders of Bodily Strength and Skill.—Wonderful Escapes.—Wonders of Animal Instinct.

—Wonderful Balloon Ascents.

**Physiology for Schools.** By Alfred T. Schofield, M.D., M.R.C.S., &c. Illustrated. Cloth. (Also in Three Parts, paper covers, 3d. each; or cloth limp, 6d. each.)

### EDUCATIONAL.

**Historical Cartoons, Cassell's Coloured.** (Size 45 in. x 35 in.) Six. Each. (See also 1d. and 5s.)

**Higher Class Readers, Cassell's.** Illustrated. Cloth. Each.

(Also cloth gilt, 1s. 6d.)

**Practical Solid Geometry, A Manual of.** By William Gordon Ross, Major R.E.

**Applied Mechanics.** By Sir R. Stawell Ball, L.L.D.

**Linear Drawing.** By E. A. Davidson.

**Orthographic and Isometric Projection.**

**Building Construction, The Elements of.**

**Systematic Drawing and Shading.** By Charles Ryan.

**Jones's Book-keeping.** By Theodore Jones. For Schools, &c.; for the Million, 2s. (Also in cloth, 3s.) Ruled Books, 2s.

**History of England for Elementary Schools.** Illustrated and Coloured. 12 Parts. Each. (Also in cloth, 1s. 6d.)

**Reading Sheets, Modern.** 3 Series. Each. (Also on linen, with rollers, 5s. each.)

1/3

1/4

1/6

1/9

2/-

2/-  
cont'd.

**THE "BILLE SAUVAGE" LIBRARY.** Cloth. Each.  
Shirley.  
Coningsby.  
Mary Barton.  
The Antiquary.  
Nicholas Nickleby. (s Vols.)  
Jane Eyre.  
Wuthering Heights.  
The Prairie.  
Dombey and Son. (s Vols.)  
Night and Morning.  
Kenilworth.  
Ingoldsby Legends.  
Tower of London.  
The Pioneers.  
Charles O'Malley.  
Barnaby Rudge.  
Oakes and Ails.  
The King's Own.  
People I have Met.  
The Pathfinder.  
Evelina.  
Scott's Poems.  
Last of the Barons.  
Adventures of Mr. Ledbury.  
Ivanhoe.  
Oliver Twist.  
Selections from Thomas Hood's Works.  
Longfellow's Prose Works.  
Sense and Sensibility.  
Lord Lytton's Plays.  
Bret Harte—Tales, Poems, &c.  
Martin Chuzzlewit. (s Vols.)  
The Prince of the House of David.

**CASSELL'S RAILWAY LIBRARY.** Crown 8vo, paper.  
Metzerott, Shoemaker. By Katharine Woods.  
David To-day. By David Macdure.  
Commodore Junk. By G. Manville Fenn.  
St. Cuthbert's Tower. By Florence Warden.  
The Man with a Thumb. By W. C. Hudson (Barclay North).  
By Right Not Law. By R. Sheard.  
Within Sound of the Weir. By Thomas St. E. Hale.  
The Combsborrow Mystery. By James Colwall.  
Under a Strange Mask. By Frank Barrett.  
A Queer Race. By W. Westall.  
Captain Trafalgar. By Westall and Laurie.  
The Phantom City. By W. Westall.

**G. MANVILLE FENN'S NOVELS.**

*Cheap Edition.* In paper boards.  
The Parson o' Dunsford. In paper of a Navy Surgeon; also cloth  
The Vicar's People. only boards 2s. 6d.  
Poverty Corner. Also cloth boards, 2s. 6d.

**MISCELLANEOUS.**

Hiram Gold's Religion; or, The Shoemaker by the Grace of God.  
The Breachloader, and How to Use It. By W. W. Greener. Illustrated.  
Cassell's Popular Cookery. With Coloured Plates.  
A Guide to Health. For the Use of Soldiers. By Surgeon-Major R. C. Eaton, Medical Staff.  
The Voter's Handbook. By W. V. R. Fane (of the Inner Temple) and A. H. Graham (of the Middle Temple). Cloth limp.  
How Dante Climbed the Mountain. By R. E. Selfe. Illustrated.  
Morning and Evening Prayers for Workhouses and other Institutions. Selected by Louisa Twining.  
Cassell's Book of Indoor Amusements, Card Games, and Fireside Fun. Illustrated.  
John Orlebar, Clerk. By the Author of "Culshire Folk."  
The World's Lumber Room. By Selina Gaye.  
"Little Folks" Proverb Painting Book.

**THE "GOLDEN MOTTOES" SERIES.**  
Each Book containing 28 pages, with four full-page Original Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth gilt.

"Nil Desperandum." By the Rev. F. Langbridge, M.A.  
"Bear and Forbear." By Sarah Pitt.  
"He Conquers who Endures." By the Author of "May Cunningham's Trial," &c.  
"Honour is my Guide." By Jeanie Hering (Mrs. Adams Acton).  
"Aim at the Sure End." By Emily Searchfield.  
"Foremost if I Can." By Helen Attridge.

**TWO-SHILLING STORY BOOKS.**

All Illustrated throughout, and containing Stories for Young People. Crown 8vo, handsomely bound in cloth gilt.

The Top of the Ladder: How to Reach it.  
Stories of the Power.  
Mr. Burke's Niece.  
May Cunningham's Trial.  
Peggy, and other Tales.  
"Little Folks" Sunday Book.  
The Children of the Court.  
Four Cats of the Tippetons.  
Maid Marjory.  
Marion's Two Homes.  
Little Flotsam.  
Kedge and her Friends.  
Through Peril to Fortune.  
Aunt Tabitha's Waifs.  
In Mischievous Again.  
Two Fourpenny Bits.  
Poor Nelly.  
Tom Heriot.

**CASSELL'S MINIATURE LIBRARY OF THE POETS.**

In Two Volumes, cloth, gilt edges, in Paper Box, per set. (See also 1s.)  
Milton - 2 Vols.  
Wordsworth - 2 Vols.  
Longfellow - 2 Vols.  
Scott - 2 Vols.  
Hood - 2 Vols.  
Shakespeare's Plays. The Seven Plays produced at the Lyceum, in paper box.

**"WANTED—A KING" SERIES.**

*Cheap Edition.* Illustrated.  
Fairy Tales in Other Lands. By Julia Goddard.  
Robin's Ride. By Eleanor Davenport Adams.  
Great-Grandmamma. By Georgina M. Syngé.  
Wanted—a King; or, How Merle set the Nursery Rhymes to Kights. By Maggie Browne.

**BIBLE BIOGRAPHIES.** Illustrated.

The Story of Joseph. By the Rev. George Bainton.  
The Story of Moses and Joshua. By the Rev. J. Telford.  
The Story of Judges. By the Rev. J. Wycliffe Gedde.  
The Story of Samuel and Saul. By the Rev. D. C. Tovey.  
The Story of David. By the Rev. J. Wild.  
The Story of Jesus. In Verse. By J. R. Macduff, D.D.

**THE "CROSS AND CROWN" SERIES.**

With Four Illustrations in each Book, printed on a Tint.

In Letters of Flame.  
Through Trial to Triumph.  
Heroes of the Indian Empire.  
Strong to Suffer.  
By Fire and Sword: A Story of the Huguenots.  
Adam Hepburn's Vow.  
No. XIII., or, the Story of the Lost Vestal.

**BOOKS BY EDWARD S. ELLIS.** Illustrated.

The Hunters of the Oak.  
The Camp in the Mountains.  
The Last War Trail.  
Ned in the Woods.  
Ned on the River.  
Ned in the Block House: A Story of Pioneer Life in Kentucky.  
The Lost Trail.  
Camp-Fire and Wigwag.  
Foot-prints in the Forest.  
Down the Mississippi.  
Lost in the Wilds.  
Up the Rapids; or, Adventures in Brazil.

**THE WORLD IN PICTURES.**

Handsomely Illustrated, and elegantly bound.

A Ramble Round France.  
All the Russias.  
Chats about Germany.  
The Easterland.  
Keeps into China.  
Glimpses of South America.  
Round Africa.  
The Land of Temples.  
The Isles of the Pacific.

**HALF-CROWN GIFT BOOKS.**

Illustrated. Crown 8vo, cloth gilt.

Pen's Perplexities.  
Margaret's Enemy.  
Notable Shipwrecks.  
Soldier and Patriot.  
The Young Man in the Battle of Life.

**POPULAR VOLUMES FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.**

Maggie Steele's Diary. By E. A. Dillwyn.  
The Peep of Day. An Old Friend in a New Dress. Illustrated.  
Schoolroom and Home Theatricals. By Arthur Waugh.  
With Illustrations by H. J. A. Miles.  
Wild Adventures in Wild Places. By Dr. Gordon Stables.  
Pictures of School Life and Boyhood. Selected from the best Authors. Edited by Percy Fitzgerald, M.A.  
Perils Afloat and Brigands Ashore. By Alfred Elwes.  
Freedom's Sword: A Story of the Days of Wallace and Bruce. By Annie S. Swan.  
Modern Explorers. By T. Frost. Illustrated.  
Decisive Events in History. By Thomas Archer. Illustrated.  
The True Robinson Crusoes. Cloth gilt.  
Early Explorers. By Thomas Frost. Illustrated.  
Home Chat with our Young Folks. Illustrated throughout.  
Jungle, Desert, and Plain. Illustrated throughout.  
Peeps Abroad for Folks at Home. Illustrated.  
Heroes of Every-day Life. By Laura Lane. Illustrated.  
Short Studies from Nature. Illustrated.  
Rambles Round London. By C. L. Matéaux.  
Ancestry and Ancestral Old England. By C. L. Matéaux.  
For Queen and King. By Henry Frith. Illustrated.  
Esther West. By Isa Craig-Knox. Illustrated.  
Three Homes. By F. L. T. Hope. Illustrated.  
Working to Win. By Maggie Symington. Illustrated.  
Paws and Claws. By one of the Authors of "Poems Written for

On Quest of Gold; or, Under the Whanga Falls.  
On Board the "Emeralda"; or, Martin Leigh's Log.  
The Romance of Invention: Vignettes from the Annals of Industry and Science.

**EDUCATIONAL.**

Agriculture Text-Books. Cassell's. (The "Downton" Series.) Edited by John Wrightson, M.K.A.C., F.C.S., Professor of Agriculture. Fully Illustrated. Each.  
Farm Crops. By Professor Wrightson.  
Soils and Manures. By J. M. H. Munro, D.Sc. (Lond.), F.R.S.E., F.C.S.  
Live Stock. By Professor Wrightson.  
Cassell's Popular Atlas. Containing 24 Coloured Maps.  
Cassell's Classical Texts for Schools, from 2s. 6d. to 4s. (A list sent free on application.)  
Scripture, A Primer of. By E. R. Mullins.  
Numerical Examples in Practical Mechanics and Machine Design. By R. G. Blaine, M.E. New Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With 79 Illustrations.  
Latin Primer (The New). By Prof. J. P. Postgate.  
Latin Primer for Lower Forms. By M. A. Bayfield, M.A.  
Chemistry, The Public School. By J. H. Anderson, M.A.  
Oil Painting, A Manual of. By the Hon. John Collier. Cloth.  
French Reader, Cassell's Public School. By Guillaume S. Conrad.  
French Grammar, Marlborough. Arranged and Compiled by Rev. J. F. Bright, M.A. (See "Exercises," 7s. 6d.)  
Algebra, Manual of. By Galbraith and Haughton. Part I. Cloth. (Complete, 7s. 6d.)  
Optics. By Galbraith and Haughton.  
Euclid. Books I., II., III. By Galbraith and Haughton.  
Books IV., V., VI. By Galbraith and Haughton.  
Plane Trigonometry. By Galbraith and Haughton. Cloth.  
French, Cassell's Lessons in. Parts I. and II. Cloth. Each. (Complete, 4s. 6d.)  
"Model Joint" Wall Sheets, for Instruction in Manual Training. By J. Barton. Eight Sheets. Each.  
Natural History Wall Sheets (Cassell's). Ten Subjects. Separate Sheets, 2s. 6d. each. Unmounted, 2s. each. (See also 2s. and 25s.)

2/6  
cont'd.

2/6



2/6  
cont'd.

## MISCELLANEOUS.

**Cottage Gardening, Poultry, Bees, Allotments, Food, House, Window and Town Gardens.** Edited by W. ROBINSON, F.L.S., Author of "The English Flower Garden." Fully Illustrated. In Half-yearly Volumes, Each.

**Liquor Legislation in the United States and Canada.** By E. L. Fanshawe, of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

**Field Naturalist's Handbook, The.** By the Revs. J. G. Wood and Theodore Wood. *Cheap Edition.*

**The Manual of the Guild and School of Handicraft.** Edited by C. R. Ashbee, M.A.

**The Art of Making and Using Sketches.** From the French of G. FRAISON. By Clara Bell. With Fifty Illustrations.

**Geometrical Drawing for Army Candidates.** By H. T. Lilley, M.A. *New and Enlarged Edition.*

**Elizabeth Gilbert and her Work for the Blind.** By Frances Martin.

**Father Mathew: His Life and Times.** By F. J. Mathew.

**Free Public Libraries.** By Thomas Greenwood, F.R.C.S. *New and Enlarged Edition.* Illustrated.

**Colonist's Medical Handbook, The.** By E. A. Barton, M.R.C.S.

**Nursing of Sick Children, A Handbook for the.** By Catherine J. Wood.

**Browning, An Introduction to the Study of.** By Arthur Symonds.

**The Enriand of Shakespeare.** By E. Goadby. Illustrated.

**At the South Pole.** By W. H. G. Kingston. Illustrated.

**Ships, Sailors, and the Sea.** By R. J. Cornwall-Jones. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.*

**Unicode.** The Universal Telegraphic Phrase Book. Desk and Pocket Editions. Each.

**Bo-Peep. A Treasury for the Little Ones.** Yearly Volume. Boards. (See 3s. 6d.)

**Sent Back by the Angels, and other Ballads.** By the Rev. F. Langbridge, M.A. Cloth.

**New Testament, An Introduction to the.** *Miniature Cyclopedia, Cassell's.* Containing 30,000 Subjects. Cloth. (Also in half roan, 4s.)

3/-

## TECHNICAL MANUALS (Illustrated).

**The Elements of Practical Perspective.** Drawing for Cabinetmakers.

**Model Drawing.** Drawing for Bricklayers.

**Drawing for Stonemasons.** Drawing for Metal-Plate Workers.

**Gothic Stonework.**

**Cassell's New Coloured Natural History Wall Sheets.** Consisting of 25 Subjects, Size—9 by 31 in. Mounted on rollers and varnished. Each.

**How to Shade from Models, Common Objects, and Casts of Ornament.** A Practical Manual. By W. E. Sparkes.

**Practical Plane and Solid Geometry, including Graphic Arithmetic.** Vol. I, Elementary Stage.

**Elementary Flower Painting.** With Eight Coloured Plates and Wood Engravings.

**Sepia Painting, A Course of.** Two Vols. Each. (In one Vol., 5s.)

**Marlborough Arithmetic Examples.**

**Tides and Tidal Currents.** By Galbraith and Haughton.

**SCHOOL COMMENTARIES.** Edited by Bishop Ellicott.

**Genesis.** (ss. 6d.)

**Exodus.** (ss.)

**Leviticus.** (ss.)

**Numbers.** (ss. 6d.)

**Deuteronomy.** (ss. 6d.)

**St. Matthew.** (ss. 6d.)

**St. Mark.** (ss.)

**St. Luke.** (ss. 6d.)

**St. John.** (ss. 6d.)

**The Acts of the Apostles.** (ss. 6d.)

**Romans.** (ss. 6d.)

**Corinthians I. and II.** (ss.)

**Galatians, Ephesians, and Philippians.** (ss.)

**Colossians, Thessalonians, and Timothy.** (ss.)

**Titus, Philemon, Hebrews, and James.** (ss.)

**Peter, Jude, and John.** (ss.)

**The Revelation.** (ss.)

**An Introduction to the New Testament.** (ss. 6d.)

## THE WORLD'S WORKERS.

**New and Original Volumes by Popular Authors.** With Portraits. In Seven Vols. Each containing 4 words. Cloth, gilt edges. Each Vol. 9s. Each work can also be had separately. (See 1s.)

**Biblewomen and Nurses.** Yearly Volume.

## EDUCATIONAL.

**Cassell's English Dictionary.** Giving Definitions of more than 100,000 Words and Phrases. *Cheap Edition.*

**Drawing for Carpenters and Joiners.** By E. A. Davidson. With 253 Engravings.

**Natural Philosophy.** By Prof. Haughton.

**Practical Mechanics.** By Prof. Perry, M.E.

**Cutting Tools Worked by Hand and Machine.** By Prof. Smith.

**Handrails and Staircasing.** By Frank O. Cresswell.

**Hydrostatics.** By Galbraith and Haughton. Cloth.

**Steam Engine.** By Galbraith and Haughton. Cloth.

**Mathematical Tables.** By Galbraith and Haughton.

**Mechanics.** By Galbraith and Haughton. Cloth.

**Linear Drawing and Projection.** Two Vols. in One.

**German Dictionary, Cassell's NEW.** In Two Parts. German-English and English-German. Cloth. (Also in half roan, 4s. 6d.)

**This World of Ours.** By H. O. Arnold-Forster, M.P. Being Introductory Lessons to the Study of Geography.

**Commercial Botany of the Nineteenth Century.** By J. K. Jackson, A.L.S.

**Colour.** By Prof. A. H. Church. *New and Enlarged Edition.*

**English Literature, The Story of.** By Anna Buckland.

**Guide to Employment in the Civil Service.** Cloth.

**Italian Lessons, with Exercises.**

**German Grammar, The Marlborough.** Compiled and Arranged by the Rev. J. F. Bright, M.A. Cloth.

**French Exercises, Marlborough.** By the Rev. G. W. De Lisle, M.A., French Master in Marlborough College.

**French-English and English-French Dictionary.** Revised Edition, with 3,000 new words. Cloth. (Also in superior binding, with leather backs, 6s.)

**Cassell's New Latin Dictionary.** (Latin-English and English-Latin.) Revised by J. R. V. Marchant, M.A., and J. F. Charles, B.A.

**Phrase and Fable, Dictionary of.** By Rev. E. C. Brewer, LL.D. Twentieth Edition, Enlarged. (See also 4s. 6d.)

**Alphabet, Cassell's Pictorial, and Object Lesson Sheet for Infant Schools.**

3/6

## THE FIGURER SERIES.

*Cheap Editions. Illustrated throughout.*

**The Insect World.** The Ocean World.

**Reptiles and Birds.** The World before the Deluge.

**The Human Race.** Mammals.

**The Vegetable World.**

**The Little Squire.** A Story of Threes. By Mrs. Henry De La Pastoure.

**The Man in Black.** By Stanley Weyman. With 21 full-page illustrations.

**Father Stafford.** A Novel. By Anthony Hope.

**Mount Decolation.** An Australian Romance. By W. Carlton Dawe.

**Magic at Home.** By Prof. Hoffman. Fully Illustrated.

**Some Legendary Landmarks of Africa.** By Mrs. Frank Evans.

**New England Boyhood, A.** By Edward E. Hale.

**Scarabaeus; the story of an African Beetle.** By the Marquis de Lanza and James Clarence Harvey. *Cheap Edition.*

**Fairway Island.** By Horace Hutchinson. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.*

**Old and New Testaments, Plain Introductions to the Books of the.** Reprinted from Bishop Ellicott's Bible Commentary. With Two Volumes. Each.

**Joy and Health.** Poems by Marcellus. Illustrated. (Also as *Edition de Luxe*, 7s. 6d.)

**Story Poems for Young and Old.** Edited by E. Davenport. *Cheap Edition.*

**Shaffesbury, R.G., The Seventh Earl of, The Life and Work of.** By Edith Hodder. Illustrated. *Cheap Edition.*

**The Lady's Dressing-Room.** Translated from the French by Lady Colin Campbell.

**Beetles, Butterflies, Moths, and other Insects.** By A. W. Kappel, F.L.S., F.E.S., and W. Egmont Kirby. With Twelve Coloured plates.

**Nature's Wonder Workers.** By Kate R. Lovell. Illustrated.

**The Perfect Gentleman.** By the Rev. A. Smythe-Palmer, D.D.

**The Successful Life.** A Book for Young Men commencing Business, containing Counsel, Instruction, Comfort. By an Elder Brother.

**The Carnation Manual.** Edited and Issued by the National Carnation and Picotee Society (Southern Section).

**Artistic Anatomy.** By Prof. M. Duval. *Cheap Edition.*

**The English School of Painting.** *Cheap Edition.*

**Buckinghamshire Sketches.** By E. S. Koscoe. With Illustrations by H. R. Bloomer. Cloth.

**Vernon Grove and Gay.** By Ellen Thorneycroft Fowler.

**Italy from the Fall of Napoleon I. in 1815 to 1830.** By J. W. Probyn. *New and Cheaper Edition.*

**Heroes of Britain in Peace and War.** *Cheap Edition.* Two Vols. With 200 Illustrations. Each. (See also 7s. 6d.)

**Disraeli, Benjamin, The Rt. Hon. Earl of Beaconsfield, F.R.S., Personal Reminiscences of.** By Henry Lake. With Two Portraits, &c.

**Life of Nelson.** By Robert Southey. Illustrated.

**The Law of Musical and Dramatic Copyright.** *New Edition.*

**Aubrey de Vere's Poems.** A Selection. Edited by John Dennis.

**Gas, The Art of Cooking by.** By Marie Jenny Sugg. Illustrated.

**London.** Three large Maps, viz.: London as it is, and as it was in 1750, and in the reign of Elizabeth. In case.

**Marriage Ring, The.** A Gift Book for the Newly Married and for those Contemplating Marriage. By William Landels, D.D.

**Lectures on Christianity and Socialism.** By the Right Rev. Alfred Barry, D.D.

**Shakespeare, The Leopold.** With about 400 Illustrations. Cloth. (Also in 5s. and 7s. 6d.)

**Culmshire Folk.** By the Author of "John Orlebar." &c.

**Steam Engine, The Theory and Action of the.** FOR PRACTICAL USE. By W. H. Northcott, C.E.

**A Year's Cookery.** By Phyllis Browne. *New and Enlarged Edition.*

**Sports and Pastimes, Cassell's Complete Book of.** *Cheap Edition.* With over 300 Illustrations. Cloth.

**Poultry-Keeper, The Practical.** By Lewis Wright. With Numerous Woodcuts.

**Pigeon Keeper, The Practical.** By Lewis Wright.

**Rabbit Keeper, The Practical.** By Cuniculus.

**Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress, Cassell's.** Illustrated. Cloth. (Also cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s.)

## THE "TREASURE ISLAND" SERIES.

*CHEAP ILLUSTRATED EDITIONS.*

**Treasure Island.** By R. L. Stevenson.

**The Master of Ballantrae.** By R. L. Stevenson.

**"Kidnapped."** By R. L. Stevenson.

**The Black Arrow.** By R. L. Stevenson.

**King Solomon's Mines.** By H. Rider Haggard.

## YOUNG PEOPLE'S STORY BOOKS.

*Cheap Edition. With Original Illustrations. Cloth gilt.*

**Under Bayard's Banner.** By Henry Frith.

**The Champion of Odin, or, Viking Life in the Days of Old.** By J. Frederick Hodggett.

**Bound by a Spell; or, The Hunted Witch of the Forest.** By the Hon. Mrs. Green.

## BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.

**A Sunday Story-Book.** By Maggie Browne, Sam Browne, and Aunt Ethel. Illustrated.

**A Bundle of Tales.** By Maggie Browne, Sam Browne, and Aunt Ethel.

**The Sunday Scrap-Book.** Containing several hundred Scripture Stories in Pictures. Boards. (Also in cloth, 5s.)

**Little Mother Bunch.** By Mrs. Molesworth. Illustrated.

**Moop's Fables.** *Cheap Edition.* Cloth. (Also in cloth, brovelled boards, gilt edges, 2s.)

**Rhymes for the Young Folk.** By William Allingham. Boards.

**The Chit-Chat Album.** Illustrated throughout.

**Picture Album of All Sorts.** With Full-page Illustrations.

**My Own Album of Animals.**

**Album for Home, School, and Play.** Containing numerous Stories by popular Authors.

**Cassell's Pictorial Scrap Book.** In Six Sectional Volumes, paper boards, cloth back. Each Vol.

**Bo-Peep. A Treasury for the Little Ones.** Illustrated throughout. Cloth gilt. Yearly Volume. (See also 2s. 6d.)

3/6  
cont'd.

3/6  
cont'd.

**Robinson Crusoe, Cassell's.** Profusely Illustrated. Cloth (Also in cloth, bevelled boards, gilt edges, 5s.)  
**Swiss Family Robinson, Cassell's.** Illustrated. Cloth. (Also in cloth, bevelled boards, gilt edges, 5s.)  
**Vicar of Wakefield, The, and other Works by Goldsmith.** Illustrated. (Also in cloth, gilt edges, 5s.)  
**Gulliver's Travels.** Cheap Edition. With Eighty-eight Engravings by Morten. Crown 4to, cloth. (Also in cloth, gilt edges, 5s.)  
**Little Folks (ENLARGED SERIES).** Half-Yearly Vols. With Pictures on nearly every page, together with two Full-page Plates printed in Colours, and Four Tinted Plates. Coloured boards. (See also 5s.)

**POPULAR BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.**

Crown 8vo, with Eight Full-page Illustrations. Cloth gilt.  
**† Bashful Fifteen.** By L. T. Meade. Illustrated.  
**† A Sweet Girl Graduate.** By L. T. Meade. Illustrated.  
**† The White House at Inch Gow.** By Sarah Pitt. Illustrated.  
**† The King's Command: A Story for Girls.** By Maggie Symington. Illustrated. Cheap Edition.  
**Lost in Samos.** A Tale of Adventure in the Navigator Islands. By E. S. Ellis. With Eight Original Illustrations.  
**Tad! or "Getting Even" with Him.** By E. S. Ellis. With Eight Original Illustrations.  
**† Polly: A New-fashioned Girl.** By L. T. Meade. Illustrated.  
**† A World of Girls: A Story of a School.** By L. T. Meade.  
**† The Palace Beautiful.** A Story for Girls. By L. T. Meade.  
**† The Cost of a Mistake.** By Sarah Pitt. Illustrated.  
**Lost among White Africans: A Boy's Adventures on the Upper Congo.** By David Ker.  
**For Fortune and Glory.** A Story of the Soudan War. By Lewis Hough.  
**"Follow my Leader"; or, The Boys of Templeton.** By Talbot Bred.  
*Books marked thus † can also be had in superior bindings, extra cloth gilt, gilt edges, 5s. each.*

4/-

**National Railways.** An Argument for State Purchase. By James Hole. Net.  
**Work.** The Illustrated Journal for Mechanics. *New and Enlarged Series.* Vol. V.  
**Zero, the Slave.** A Romance of Equatorial Africa. By Lawrence Fletcher.  
**Into the Unknown: A Romance of South Africa.** By Lawrence Fletcher.  
**A Daughter of the South, and Shorter Stories.** By Mrs. Burton Harrison.  
**"Ell Perkins."** Thirty Years of Wit. By Melville D. Landon ("Ell Perkins").  
**Cassell's Classical Texts for Schools,** from ss. 6d. to 4s. (A list post free on application.)

4/6

**Mechanics for Young Beginners, A First Book of.** With numerous Easy Examples and Answers. By the Rev. J. G. Easton, M.A.  
**Watch and Clock Making.** By D. Glasgow, Vice-President of the British Horological Institute.  
**Design in Textile Fabrics.** By T. R. Ashenburt. With Coloured and numerous other Illustrations.  
**Spinning Woolen and Worsted.** By W. S. B. McLaren, M.P.  
**Phrase and Fable, Dictionary of.** *New and Enlarged Edition.* By the Rev. Dr. Brewer. Superior binding. (See also 3s. 6d.)  
**French, Cassell's Lessons in.** *New and Revised Edition.* Complete in One Volume. (See also 3s. 6d.)  
**Drawing for Mechanists and Engineers.** By Ellis A. Davidson. With over 300 Illustrations.

5/-

**ILLUSTRATED BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.**  
**Pleasant Work for Busy Fingers; or, Kindergarten at Home.** By Maggie Browne. Illustrated.  
**London Street Arabs.** By Mrs. H. M. Stanley (Dorothy Tennant).  
**Flora's Feast.** A Masque of Flowers. By Walter Crane. With 40 pages in Colours.  
**"Come, ye Children."** By Rev. Benjamin Waugh. Illustrated.  
**Little Folks.** Half-Yearly Vols. *New and Enlarged Series.* With Pictures on nearly every page, together with Two Full-page Plates printed in Colours, and Four Tinted Plates. Cloth gilt, gilt edges. (See also 3s. 6d.)

**EDUCATIONAL.**

**Storehouse of General Information, Cassell's.** Fully Illustrated. In Vols. Each.  
**Popular Educator, Cassell's NEW.** With Revised Text New Maps, New Coloured Plates, New Type, &c. Complete in Eight Vols. Each. (See also 50s.)  
**Technical Educator, Cassell's NEW.** An entirely New Cyclopaedia of Technical Education, with Coloured Plates and Engravings. In Volumes.  
**Gaudemus.** Songs for Colleges and Schools. Edited by John Farmer. (The words only, in paper covers, 6d.; cloth, 9d.) Can also be obtained in sheets containing two Songs (words and music) in quantities of one dozen and upwards, at 1d. per sheet.  
**Dulce Domum.** Rhymes and Songs for Children. Edited by John Farmer. Old Notation and Words. *N.B.—The Words of the Songs in "Dulce Domum" (with the Airs both in Tonic Sol Fa and Old Notation) can be had in two parts, 6d. each.*  
**Historical Cartoons, Cassell's Coloured.** Six. Mounted on canvas and varnished, with rollers. Each. (See also 1s. and 2s.)  
**Howard's Anglo-American Art of Bookbinding.** By C. Frusher Howard. *New Edition, Enlarged.* (See also 1s. and 2s.)  
**Dyeing of Textile Fabrics, The.** By Prof. Hummel.  
**Steel and Iron.** By Prof. W. H. Greenwood, F.C.S., &c.  
**Marine Painting.** By Walter W. May, R.I. With Sixteen Coloured Plates.  
**Animal Painting in Water-Colours.** With Eighteen Coloured Plates by Frederick Taylor.  
**Tree Painting in Water-Colours.** By W. H. J. Boot. With Eighteen Coloured Plates.  
**Water-Colour Painting Book.** By R. P. Leitch. With Coloured Plates.  
**Neutral Tint, A Course of Painting in.** With Twenty-four Plates by R. P. Leitch.  
**China Painting.** By Florence Lewis. With Sixteen Original Coloured Plates.  
**Flowers, and How to Paint them.** By Maud Nafel. With Ten Coloured Plates.

**RELIGIOUS.**

**Sigma Christi.** Evidences of Christianity set forth in the Person and Work of Christ. By the Rev. James Aitchison.  
**St. George for England!** and other Sermons preached to Children. By the Rev. Canon Teignmouth Shore, M.A.  
**Life of the World to Come, The, and other Subjects.** By the Rev. Canon Teignmouth Shore, M.A.  
**Family Prayer-Book, The.** Edited by Rev. Canon Garbett, M.A., and Rev. S. Martin. (Also in Morocco, 18s.)  
**Bible, The Few.** Cloth, red edges. (Also in French Morocco, 6s. French Morocco, gilt edges, 7s.; Persian calf, 7s. 6d.; Persian "Yapp," 8s.; Morocco, 8s. 6d.)

**Q's Works, Uniform Edition of.**

**Destiny's Book.** The Blue Pavilions.  
**The Splendid Spur.** "I Saw Three Ships," and other Winter's Tales.  
**The Astonishing History of Troy Town.** Noughts and Crosses.

**Lost on Du Corrige.** By Standish O'Grady. With 8 full-page illustrations.

**Otto the Knight; and other Stories.** By Octave Thanet.

**Eleven Possible Cases.** By various Authors.  
**A Singer's Wife.** By Fanny N. D. Murfree.  
**The Poet's Audience, and Delilah.** By Clara Savile Clarke.

**O'Driscoll's Weird, and other Stories.** By A. Werner.

**The Book of Pitt and of Death.** By Pierre Loti. Translated by T. P. O'Connor, M.P.

**The Reputation of George Saxon.** By Morley Roberts.

**Playthings and Parodies.** Short stories, Sketches, &c., by Barry Pain.

**Anthea.** By Cécile Cassavetti (A Russian). A story of the time of the Greek War of Independence. *cheap Edition.*

**Awkward Squads, The; and other Ulster Stories.** By Shan F. Bullock.

**Beyond the Blue Mountains.** Illustrated. By L. T. Meade.

**Capture of the "Estrella," The.** A Tale of the Slave Trade. By Commander Claud Harding, R.N.

**Iron Pirate, The.** A Plain Tale of Strange Happenings on the Sea. By Max Pemberton. Illustrated.

**Quickening of Caliban, The.** A Modern Story of Evolution. By J. Compton Rickert.

**Tenting on the Plains; or, General Custer in Kansas and Texas.** By Elizabeth B. Custer. With Numerous illustrations.

**John Drummond Fraser.** By Philaethes. A Story of Jesuit intrigue in the Church of England.

**The Shadow of a Song.** A Novel. By Cecil Harley.

**The Rovings of a Restless Boy.** By Katharine B. Foot. Illustrated.

**Bob Lovell's Career.** A Story of American Railway Life. By Edward S. Ellis.

**Industrial Freedom: A Study in Politics.** By B. R. Wise.

**A Blot of Ink.** Translated by Q and Paul Francis.

**The Doings of Raffles Haw.** By A. Conan Doyle, Author of "Sherlock Holmes," &c. *New Edition.*

**"Hors de Combat"; or, Three Weeks in a Hospital.** Founded on Facts. By Gertrude and Ethel Southam. Illustrated.

**Locomotive Engine, The Biography of.** By Henry Frith. Illustrated.

**The Life of the Rev. J. G. Wood.** By his son, the Rev. Theodore Wood. With Portrait. *cheap Edition.*

**Readings.** By Sir Donald Mackenzie Wallace, M.A. *Popular Edition.*

**Loans Manual.** A Compilation of Tables and Rules for the Use of Local Authorities. By Charles P. Cotton, M.Inst.C.E., M.K.I.A.

**Strange Doings in Strange Places.** Complete Sensational Stories.

**Birds' Nests, Eggs, and Egg-Collecting.** By R. Kearton. With 10 Coloured Plates of Eggs.

**Modern Shot Guns.** By W. W. Greener. Illustrated.

**English Writers.** By Prof. H. Morley. Vols. 1. to X. Each.

**Free Trade versus Fair Trade.** By the Rt. Hon. Lord Farrer.

**Vaccination Indicated.** By John C. McVail, M.D.

**Medical and Clinical Manuals.** for Practitioners and Students of Medicine. A List post free on application. (Also at 7s. 6d., 8s. 6d., and 9s.)

**Household, Cassell's Book of the.** In Four Vols. Each. (See also 12s. 5s.)

**Gardening, Cassell's Popular.** Illustrated. Complete in Four Vols. Each.

**Brahma Fowl, The.** By Lewis Wright. With Chromo Plates.

**NOVELS BY LEADING AUTHORS.**

Extra crown 8vo, cloth. Each.

**The Admirable Lady Biddy Fane.** By Frank Barrett. *New Edition.* With 15 full-page illustrations.

**Tiny Luttrell.** By E. W. Hornung. Cloth. *Popular Edition.*

**List, ye Landsmen! A Romance of Incident.** By W. Clark Russell.

**A King's Hussar.** By H. Compton.

**A Prison Princess.** By Major Arthur Griffiths.

**The Medicine Lady.** By L. T. Meade.

**Out of the Jaws of Death.** By Frank Barrett.

**Modern Dick Whittington.** By James Payn.

**The Snare of the Fowler.** By Mrs. Alexander.

**The Squire.** By Mrs. Parr.

**The Little Minister.** By J. M. Barrie. *Illustrated Edition.*

**The Wrecker.** By Robert Louis Stevenson and Lloyd Stevenson. Illustrated.

**Catriona.** A Sequel to "Kidnapped." By Robert Louis Stevenson.

**Island Nights' Entertainments.** By R. L. Stevenson. Illustrated.

**Leona.** By Mrs. Molesworth.

**The New Ohio.** A Story of East and West. By Edward Everett Hale.

**Sybil Knox, or Home Again: a Story of To-Day.** By Edward E. Hale. Author of "East and West," &c.

**The Story of Francis Cluade.** By Stanley J. Weyman.

**Author of "The House of the Wolf," &c.**

**The Faith Doctor.** By Dr. Edward Eggleston.

**Dr. Dumany's Wife.** By Maurus Jókai, Author of "Timar's Two Worlds." Translated from the Hungarian by F. Steinitz.

**Delectable Duchy, The.** Stories, Studies, and Sketches. By Q.

**"La Bella," and others.** Being Certain Stories Recollected by Egerton Castle, Author of "Consequences."

**A Foot-note to History: Eight Years of Trouble in Samos.** By R. L. Stevenson.

6/-  
cont'd.

- Henry Allen, D.D.** A Biographical Sketch. By the Rev. W. Hardy Harwood.
- Europe, Cassell's Pocket Guide to.** Edition for 1893. Leather.
- The Nature and Elements of Poetry.** By E. C. Stedman.
- Star-Land.** By Sir Robert Stawell Ball, LL.D. Illustrated.
- Queen Summer; or, The Tournery of the Lily and the Rose.** Containing 40 pages of Designs by Walter Crane, printed in colours.
- Fourteen to One; and other Stories.** By Elizabeth Stuart Phelps.
- Teaching in Three Continents.** Personal Notes on the Educational Systems of the World. By W. C. Gray.
- Gleanings after Harvest.** By the Rev. John R. Vernon, M.A.
- St. Paul, The Life and Work of.** By the Ven. Archdeacon Farrar, D.D., F.R.S. *Popular Edition.* Cloth. (See also 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 15s., 21s., 24s., and 42s.)
- Early Days of Christianity, The.** By the Ven. Archdeacon Farrar, D.D., F.R.S. *Popular Edition.* Cloth. (See also 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 15s., 21s., and 42s.)
- Irish Legends, The Work of the.** The Speech of the Right Hon. Sir Henry James, Q.C., M.P., Replying in the Parnell Commission Inquiry.
- Hand-and-Eye Training.** By G. Ricks B.Sc. Two Vols., with Sixteen Pages of Coloured Plates in each Vol. Crown 4to. Each.
- Bible Educator, The.** Edited by the Very Rev. Dean Plumtree, D.D. Illustrated. Complete in Four Vols. Cloth, each. (Also in Two Vols., 21s. or 24s.)
- Co-operation in Land Tillage.** By M. A.
- Ladies' Physician, The.** By a London Physician.

6/6

**Work.** An Illustrated Journal of Practice and Theory for all Workmen, Professional and Amateur. Volume IV.

7/6

## EDUCATIONAL.

- Modern Europe, A History of.** By C. A. Fyfe, M.A., late Fellow of University College, Oxford. *Popular Illustrated Edition.* Complete in Three Vols. Each.
- Practical Electricity.** By Prof. W. E. Ayton. Illustrated.
- Figure Painting in Water Colours.** With Sixteen Coloured Plates. With Instructions by the Artists.
- English Literature, A First Sketch of.** By Prof. Henry Morley. *Revised and Enlarged Edition.*
- Algebra, Manual of.** By Galbraith and Haughton.
- English Literature, Library of.** By Professor Henry Morley. With Illustrations taken from Original MSS. *Popular Edition.* Vol. I.: SHORTER ENGLISH POEMS. Vol. 2.: ILLUSTRATIONS OF ENGLISH RELIGION. Vol. III.: ENGLISH PLAYS. Vol. IV.: SHORTER WORKS IN ENGLISH PROSE. Vol. V.: SKETCHES OF LONGER WORKS IN ENGLISH VERSE AND PROSE. Each. (See also 45s.)
- Dore's Dante's Purgatory and Paradise.** Illustrated by Gustave Doré. *Cheap Edition.*
- Dore's Dante's Inferno.** Illustrated by Gustave Doré, with Introduction by A. J. Baker. *Popular Edition.* Cloth gilt, or in buckram.
- Physiology for Students, Elementary.** By Alfred T. Schottell, M.D., M.R.C.S. With two Coloured Plates and numerous Illustrations.
- Chums.** The Illustrated Paper for Boys. First Yearly Volume.
- The Home Life of the Ancient Greeks.** Translated from the German by Alice Zimmern. With Numerous Illustrations.
- The Story of Africa and its Explorers.** By Dr. Robert Brown, F.L.S. Illustrated. Vols. I. and II. Each.
- Football, The Rugby Union Game.** Edited by Rev. F. Marshall. Illustrated.
- Smuggling Days and Smuggling Ways; or, The Story of a Lost Art.** By Commandant the Hon. Henry N. Shore, R.N. With numerous Plans and Drawings by the Author.
- Life and Letters of the Rt. Hon. Sir Joseph Napier, Bart., LL.D., &c.,** Ex-Lord Chancellor of Ireland. By Alex. Charles Ewald, F.S.A. *New and Revised Edition.*
- Robinson Crusoe, Cassell's New Fine-Art Edition of.** With upwards of 100 Original Illustrations by Walter Paget. Cloth gilt, gilt edges, or in buckram.
- Heroes of Britain in Peace and War.** With 300 Illustrations. Two Vols. in One. (See also 3s. 6d.)
- Disraeli in Outline.** By F. Carroll Brewster, LL.D.
- The Journal of Marie Bashkirtseff.** Translated by Mathilde Blind. With Two Portraits and an Autograph Letter. *Popular Edition in One Vol.*
- Letters of Marie Bashkirtseff.** Translated by Mary J. Serrano, with Portrait, Autograph Letters, Sketches, &c.
- The History Scrap Book.** With nearly 1,000 Engravings. Cloth gilt, gilt edges.
- Hygiene and Public Health.** By B. Arthur Whitelegge, M.D. Illustrated. *New and Revised Edition.*
- The Chess Problem.** Text-Book with Illustrations. Containing 400 Positions selected from the Works of C. Planck and others.
- Medical Handbook of Life Assurance.** By J. E. Pollock, M.D., and J. Chisholm.
- Domestic Dictionary, Cassell's.** Illustrated. 1,280 pages. Royal 8vo, cloth. (Also in roanbound, 10s. 6d.)
- Subjects of Social Welfare.** By the Rt. Hon. Lord Playfair, K.C.B.
- Saturday Journal, Cassell's.** Yearly Volume. Illustrated.
- Cities of the World.** Illustrated throughout with fine Illustrations and Portraits. Complete in Four Vols. Each.
- Peoples of the World, The.** By Dr. Robert Brown. Illustrated. Six Vols. Each.
- Countries of the World, The.** By Robert Brown, M.A., Ph.D., F.L.S., F.R.G.S. Complete in Six Vols., with 750 Illustrations. Each. (*Library Binding*, 75s. 6d.)
- Cassell's Concise Cyclopædia.** With 600 Illustrations. A Cyclopædia in One Volume. *New and Cheap Edition.*
- Cassell's New Biographical Dictionary,** containing Memoirs of the most Eminent Men and Women of all Ages and Countries.

- Year-Book of Treatment, The.** A Critical Review for Practitioners of Medicine. Tenth year of publication.
- Our Own Country.** Complete in Six Vols. With 200 Original Illustrations in each Vol. Each. (See also 37s. 6d.)
- English Literature, Dictionary of.** By W. Davenport Adams. Cloth. *Also in roanbound*, 10s. 6d.
- Sea, The; its Stirring Story of Adventure, Peril, and Heroism.** By F. Whymper. Four Vols., with 400 Original Illustrations. Each.
- Work.** Yearly Vols. II and III.
- World of Wonders, The.** Two Vols. Illustrated. Each.
- World of Wit and Humour, The.** With about 400 Illustrations.
- Natural History, Cassell's Concise.** By Prof. E. Percival Wright, M.A. Illustrated. Cloth. (Also kept half bound.)
- RELIGIOUS.**
- "Quiver" Volume, The.** New and Enlarged Series. With several hundred Contributions. About 600 Original Illustrations. Cloth.
- Farrar's Life of Christ.** *Cheap Illustrated Edition.* Large 4to. (See also 10s. 6d., 15s., 21s., and 42s.)
- Farrar's Early Days of Christianity.** *Popular Edition.* Cloth, gilt edges. (See also 6s., 10s. 6d., 15s., 21s., and 42s.)
- Farrar's Life and Work of St. Paul.** *Popular Edition.* Cloth, gilt edges. (See also 6s., 10s. 6d., 15s., 21s., and 42s.)
- "Sunday": its Origin, History, and Present Obligation** (Bampton Lectures, 1800). By the Ven. Archdeacon Hessey, D.C.L. *Fifth Edition.*
- Child's Life of Christ, The.** With about 200 Original Illustrations. Cloth. (Also at 10s. 6d., and *Demy 4to Edition*, 21s.)
- Child's Bible.** *Cheap Edition.* Illustrated. Cloth. *Also a superior edition at 10s. 6d.*

7/6  
cont'd.

**Moses and Geology; or, The Harmony of the Bible with Science.** By the Rev. Samuel Kimb, Ph.D., F.R.A.S. With 110 Illustrations. (*New Edition on larger and superior paper.*)

8/6

- Old and New Paris.** A Narrative of its History, its People, and its Sufferings. By Arthur Edwards. Profusely Illustrated. Vol. I. (Also in full edge, 10s. 6d.)
- The World of Romance.** Illustrated. Cloth.
- Conquests of the Cross.** Edited by Edwin Hodder. Illustrated. Complete in Three Vols. Each.
- Adventure, The World of.** Complete in Three Vols. Fully Illustrated. Each.
- Queen Victoria, The Life and Times of.** Complete in Two Vols. Illustrated. Each.
- Our Earth and its Story.** By Dr. Robert Brown, F.L.S. Complete in 3 Vols. With Coloured Plates and numerous Wood Engravings. Each.
- Gleanings from Popular Authors.** Complete in Two Vols. With Original Illustrations by the best artists. Each. (Also in One Vol., 15s.)
- Natural History, Cassell's New.** Edited by Prof. P. Martin Duncan, M.D., F.R.S. Complete in Six Vols. Illustrated throughout. Extra crown 4to. Each.
- Universal History, Cassell's Illustrated.** Vol. I., Early and Greek History. Vol. II., The Roman Period. Vol. III., The Middle Ages. Vol. IV., Modern History. With Illustrations. Each.
- England, Cassell's Illustrated History of.** With about 200 Illustrations. Complete in Ten Vols. Each. *New and Revised Edition.* Vols. I. to VI. Each. (See also 45s.)
- Protestantism, The History of.** By the Rev. J. A. Wylie, LL.D. Three Vols. With 600 Illustrations. Each. (See also 30s.)
- United States, History of the (Cassell's).** Complete in Three Vols. About 600 Illustrations. Each. (*Library Edition*, 30s.)
- "Family Magazine" Volume, Cassell's.** With about 400 Original Illustrations.
- British Battles on Land and Sea.** Three Vols. With about 600 Engravings. Each. (See also 30s.)
- Battles of Ancient Britain.** Illustrated. (Also in imitation roanbound, 10s.)
- Russo-Turkish War, Cassell's History of.** With about 200 Illustrations. Two Vols. Each. (See also 15s.)
- India, Cassell's History of.** By James Grant. Illustrated. Two Vols. Each. *Also Library Edition*, 75s. 6d. in One, 15s.)
- London, Old and New.** Complete in Six Vols. Containing about 1,200 Illustrations. Each. (See also 45s.)
- Edinburgh, Cassell's Old and New.** Complete in Three Vols. With 600 Original Illustrations. Each. (See also 27s. and 30s.)
- London, Greater.** Complete in Two Vols. By Edward Walford. With about 400 Original Illustrations. Each. (See also 20s.)
- Science for All.** *Revised Edition.* Complete in Five Vols. Each containing about 350 Illustrations and Diagrams. Each.

8/6

9/-

**School Registers.** (For description, see 15s. 4d.)

10/-

- Our Commons and Forests.** By the Rt. Hon. G. Shaw-Lefevre, M.P.
- Agrarian Features.** By the Rt. Hon. G. Shaw-Lefevre, M.P.
- Old Dorset, Chapters in the History of the County.** By H. J. Moule, M.A.
- The Dore Don Quixote.** With about 400 Illustrations by Gustave Doré. *Cheap Edition.*
- With Thackeray in America.** By Eyre Crowe, A.R.A. With upwards of One Hundred Illustrations.
- The Signway of Letters, and Its Echoes of Famous Footsteps.** By Thomas Archer. Illustrated.
- Historic Houses of the United Kingdom.** Illustrated. Cloth gilt.
- The Career of Columbus.** By Charles Eikon, F.S.A.
- Modern Odyssey, The; or, Ulysses up to Date.** By Windham. Illustrated.
- Richard Rodney, O.E. R.A.** Memoir. Compiled from his Diary. With Portrait and Three Illustrations. By F. M. Rodgrave, R.D. *Cheap Edition.* Cloth.
- Farrar's Life of Christ.** (*Cheap Illustrated Edition.*) (See also 7s. 6d.) *Popular Edition.* Persian Morocco. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 15s., 21s., and 42s.)

10/6

10/6  
cont'd.

**Electricity in the Service of Man.** A Popular and Practical Treatise. With upwards of 990 Illustrations. *New and Revised Edition.*

**Farrar's Life and Work of St. Paul.** *Popular Edition.* Persian morocco. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 15s., 21s., 24s., and 42s.)

**Farrar's Early Days of Christianity.** *Popular Edition.* Persian morocco. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 15s., 24s., and 42s.)

**Building Construction Plates.** A series of 40 drawings. Cloth. (Or Copies of any plate may be obtained in quantities of not less than one dozen, price 1s. 6d. per dozen.)

**The Polytechnic Technical Scales.** On collodion (in case). Per set. (See also 1s.)

**Architectural Drawing.** By R. Phené Spiers. Illustrated.

**Encyclopedic Dictionary.** The. A New and Original Work of Reference to the Words in the English Language. Complete in Fourteen Divisional Vols. Each. (See also 21s. and 25s.)

**English History, The Dictionary of.** *Cheap Edition.* Cloth. (Also in *oxburgh*, 15s.)

**Arabian Nights' Entertainments, The.** With Illustrations by Gustave Doré, and other well-known Artists. *New Edition.*

**Poultry, The Book of.** By Lewis Wright. *Popular Edition.* With Illustrations. Wood. (See also 31s. 6d. and 42s.)

**Gun and its Development, The.** With Notes on Shooting. By W. W. Greener. With Illustrations.

**Henriette Renner.** The Painter of Cat-Life and Cat-Character. By M. H. Spielmann. Containing a Series of Beautiful Illustrations. *Popular Edition.* (See also 90s.)

**Cassell's Miniature Shakespeare.** Complete in 12 Vols. In Box. (See also 1s., 21s., and 52s. 6d.)

12/-

12/6

**British Railways.** Their Passenger Services, Rolling Stock, Locomotives, Gradients, and Express Speeds. By J. Pearson Parison. With Numerous Plates.

**American Life.** By Paul de Rousiers. Translated from the French by A. J. Herbertson.

**"Graven in the Rock": or, the Historical Accuracy of the Bible.** References to the Assyrian and Egyptian Sculptures in the British Museum and elsewhere. By Rev. Dr. Samuel Kinn, F.R.A.S., &c. &c. With Numerous Illustrations.

**Family Trees.** Complete in Two Series. Forty Coloured Plates in each. Cloth gilt, or morocco. Each.

**Garden Flowers, Familiar.** Complete in Five Series. Forty Coloured Plates in each. Cloth gilt, or morocco. Each.

**Wild Birds, Familiar.** Complete in Four Series. By W. Swaysland. With Forty Full-page exquisite Coloured Illustrations. Cloth gilt, in cardboard box, or morocco, cloth sides. Each.

**Wild Flowers, Familiar.** Complete in Five Series. By F. E. Hulme, F.L.S., F.S.A. With Forty Full-page Coloured Plates in each, and Descriptive Text. Cloth gilt, or morocco. Each.

**Heavens, The Story of the.** By Sir R. Stawell Ball, L.L.D., F.R.S., F.R.A.S., Royal Astronomer of Ireland; Louncheon Professor of Astronomy and Geometry in the University of Cambridge. *Popular Edition.* Illustrated by Chromo Plates and Wood Engravings. Also in half-morocco. (Price on application.)

15/-

**The Cabinet Portrait Gallery.** First, Second, Third, and Fourth Series. Each containing 36 Cabinet Photographs of Eminent Men and Women. With Biographical Sketches. Each.

**Herse, The Book of the.** By Samuel Sidney. Thoroughly Revised and brought up to date by James Sinclair and W. C. A. Rieu. With 17 Full-page Colotype Plates of Celebrated Horses of the Day, and numerous other Illustrations. Cloth.

**Social England.** A Record of the Progress of the People in Religion, Laws, Learning, Arts, Science, Literature, and Manners, from the Earliest Times to the Present Day. By various writers. Edited by H. D. Traill, D.C.L. Vols. I. and II. Each.

**The Dore Bible.** With 200 Full-page Illustrations by Gustave Doré. (Also in leather binding, price on application.)

**Farrar's Life of Christ, The.** *Popular Edition.* Tree-calf. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 21s., and 42s.)

**Farrar's Work of St. Paul.** *Popular Edition.* Tree-calf. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 21s., 24s., and 42s.)

**Farrar's Early Days of Christianity.** *Popular Edition.* Tree-calf. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 21s., and 42s.)

**Shakespeare, The Royal.** Complete in Three Vols. With Steel Plates and Wood Engravings. Each.

**British Malakia.** With Several Hundred Original Illustrations. Complete in Two Vols. Cloth.

**Russo-Turkish War, Cassell's History of the.** Illustrated. Library Binding in One Vol. (See also 9s.)

16/-

**Longfellow's Poetical Works.** Illustrated throughout. *Popular Edition.* Extra crown 4to, cloth gilt.

**Rivers of Great Britain.** Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial. *The Royal River. The Thames from Source to Sea.* With Several Hundred Original Illustrations. *Popular Edition.* (See also 42s.)

**Rivers of the East Coast.** With numerous highly finished Engravings. *Popular Edition.* (See also 42s.)

**Magazine of Art, The.** Yearly Vol. With 12 Etchings, Photographures, &c., and Several Hundred Engravings.

18/-

**English Sanitary Institutions.** By Sir John Simon, K.C.B., F.R.S., formerly the Medical Officer of Her Majesty's Privy Council.

**Picturesque Europe.** *Popular Edition.* Complete in Five Vols. With Thirteen exquisite Steel Plates, and numerous original Wood Engravings. Each. (See also 21s. 6d., 42s., 43s. 10s., and 44s. 10s.)

**Natural History Wall Sheets.** Set of Ten Subjects. Unmounted. (See also 21s. 6d. and 15s.)

21/-

**Sun, The Story of the.** By Sir Robert Stawell Ball, L.L.D., F.R.S., F.R.A.S. Illustrated with Eight Coloured Plates and other Illustrations.

**Astronomy, The Dawn of.** A Study of the Temple Worship and Mythology of the Ancient Egyptians. By J. Norman Lockyer, C.B., F.R.S., &c. Illustrated.

**The Foundations of High Acres.** By Gilbert Sheldon. Two Vols. *New Edition.* (See also 15s. and 16s.)

**A Diary of the Salisbury Parliament.** By H. W. Lucy. Illustrated by Harry Furniss.

**Waterloo Letters.** Edited by Major-General H. T. Siborne, late Colonel R. W. of the Waterloo Campaign.

**Thackeray, Character Sketches from.** Six New and Original Drawings by F. Barnard, reproduced in Photographure.

**Dickens, Character Sketches from.** First, Second, and Third Series. By Frederick Barnard. Each containing Six Plates printed on India paper. (In Portfolio.) Each.

**Abbeys and Churches of England and Wales, The.** Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial. *First Edition.* Series II. A Vision of Saints. By Lewis Morris. *Edition de Luxe.* With 20 Full-page Illustrations.

**Encyclopedic Dictionary, The.** Seven Double Divisional Vols., half-morocco. Each. (See also 10s. 6d. and 25s.)

**Health, The Book of.** Cloth. (Also in *oxburgh*, 25s.)

**Family Physician, The.** A Modern Manual of Domestic Medicine. *New and Revised Edition.* Cloth. (Also in *oxburgh*, 25s.)

**Milton's Paradise Lost.** Illustrated with Full-page Drawings by Gustave Doré.

**Shakespeare, The Plays of.** Edited by Prof. Henry Morley. Thirteen Vols., in box, cloth. (Also half-morocco, cloth sides, 42s.)

**Shakespeare, Cassell's Miniature.** Complete in 12 Vols. In box with spring catch. (See also 1s. and 12s.)

**Mechanics, The Practical Dictionary of.** Containing 20,000 Drawings of Machinery. Four Vols. Each. (See also 25s.)

#### RELIGIOUS WORKS.

**Holy Land and the Bible, The.** By the Rev. Cunningham Geikie, D.D., L.L.D. *Edin. Illustrated Edition.* One Vol.

**Farrar's Life and Work of St. Paul.** ILLUSTRATED EDITION. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 15s., 24s., and 42s.)

**Old Testament Commentary for English Readers, The.** Edited by the Rev. C. J. Ellicott, D.D., Lord Bishop of Gloucester and Bristol. Five Vols. Each. (See also 47s. 6d.)

**New Testament Commentary.** Edited by C. J. Ellicott, D.D., Lord Bishop of Gloucester and Bristol. Three Vols. Each. (See also 44s. 14s. 6d.)

**Holy Land and the Bible, The.** By the Rev. Cunningham Geikie, D.D., L.L.D. *Edin. With Map.* In Two Vols.

**Early Days of Christianity, The.** By the Ven. Archdeacon Farrar, D.D., F.R.S. *Library Edition.* Two Vols., demy 8vo. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 15s., and 42s.)

**Life of Christ, The.** By the Ven. Archdeacon Farrar, D.D., F.R.S. *Library Edition.* Two Vols., cloth. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 15s., and 42s.)

**Farrar's Life and Work of St. Paul.** *Library Edition.* Two Vols., cloth. (See also 6s., 7s. 6d., 10s. 6d., 15s., 21s., and 42s.)

**Our Railways.** Their Development, Enterprise, Incident, and Romance. By John Pendleton. Two Vols. Illustrated, demy 8vo.

21/-  
cont'd.

24/-

**British Empire Map of the World.** New Map for Schools and Institute. By G. W. Parkin and J. W. Marshall, F.R.G.S. Mounted on Cloth, varnished, and with Rollers, or folded.

**Natural History Wall Sheets.** Set of Ten Subjects. Mounted on rollers and varnished. (See also 2s. 6d. and 30s.)

**Household, Cassell's Book of the.** With numerous Illustrations. Four Vols. in Two, half-morocco. (See also 5s.)

**Cathedrals, Abbeys, and Churches of England and Wales.** Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial. Cloth gilt, gilt edges. *Popular Edition.* Two Vols.

**Encyclopedic Dictionary, The.** Seven Double Divisional Vols., half-russia. Each. (See also 10s. 6d. and 21s.)

**Mechanics, The Practical Dictionary of.** Half-morocco. Four Vols. Each. (See also 21s.)

**London, Greater.** *Library Edition.* Two Vols. (See also 9s.)

**Protestantism, The History of.** By the Rev. J. A. Wylie, L.L.D. Containing upwards of 600 Original Illustrations. Three Vols. (See also 9s. and 30s.)

**British Battles on Land and Sea.** Three Vols. Cloth. (See also 9s. and 30s.)

**Edinburgh, Old and New.** Complete in Three Vols. (See also 9s. and 30s.)

25/-

**The Universal Atlas.** A New and Complete General Atlas of the World, with 217 Pages of Maps, hand-colored in Colour, and a Complete Index to about 125,000 Names. Cloth Net. Also half-morocco, 35s. net.

**Edinburgh, Old and New.** Complete in Three Vols., library binding. (See also 9s. and 27s.)

**Protestantism, The History of.** *Library Edition.* (See also 9s. and 27s.)

**British Battles on Land and Sea.** With about 600 Illustrations. *Library Edition.* Three Vols. (See also 9s. and 27s.)

27/-

**Isleth.** A Novel. By Leslie Keith. In Three Vols.

**Planet, The Story of Our.** By T. G. Bonney, D.Sc., L.L.D., F.R.S., F.S.A., F.R.G.S. With Coloured Plates and Maps, and about 200 Illustrations.

**The Lake Dwellings of Europe.** By Robert Munro, M.D., M.A. Illustrated. Cloth. (Also in *oxburgh*, 42s. 2s.)

**Music, Illustrated History of.** By Emil Naumann. Edited by the Rev. Sir F. A. Gore Ouseley, Bart. Illustrated. Two Vols.

**Picturesque Europe.** *Popular Edition.* Two Vols. in One, forming the British Isles. (See also 18s., 42s., 43s. 10s., and 44s. 10s.)

**Poultry, The Illustrated Book of.** By Lewis Wright. *New and Revised Edition.* With Fifty Coloured Plates. Cloth gilt. (See also 10s. 6d. and 42s.)

**Pigeons, The Book of.** By Robert Fulton. Edited and arranged by Lewis Wright. With Fifty life-like Coloured Plates. (Also in half-morocco, 42s.)

**The Diplomatic Reminiscences of Lord Augustus Loftus, F.O., G.C.B.** First and second Series, each in two vols. Each.

**The Life, Letters, and Friendships of Richard Hooker, Minister, First Lord Broughton.** By T. Wemyss Reid. Two Vols., with Two Portraits.

31/6

**Butterflies and Moths, European.** By W. F. Kirby. With Sixty-one life-like Coloured Plates.

**Dog, Illustrated Book of the.** By Vero Shaw, B.A. Cantab. With Twenty-eight Fac-simile Coloured Plates. Demy, 4to, cloth gilt. (See also 45s.)

**Canaries and Cage-Birds, The Illustrated Book of.** With Fifty-six Fac-simile Coloured Plates, and numerous Wood Engravings. (Also in half-morocco, 45s.)

32/-

35/-

37/6

**Our Own Country.** Three Vols. *Library Binding.* (For description, see 75. 6d.)

42/-

**The Picturesque Mediterranean.** Magnificently Illustrated. Coloured Frontispiece by Birket Foster. Complete in Two Vols. Each.**Rivers of Great Britain.** Descriptive, Historical, Pictorial. **The Royal River, The Thames from Source to Sea.** With Several Hundred Original Illustrations. *Original Edition.* (See also 15a.)**Rivers of the East Coast.** With numerous highly-finished Engravings. Royal 4to, with Etching as Frontispiece. (See also 10a.)**Doré Gallery, The.** *Popular Edition.* With 250 Illustrations by Gustave Doré. Cloth gilt, bevelled boards.**Egypt; Descriptive, Historical, and Picturesque.** *Popular Edition.* By Prof. G. Ebers. Translated by Clara Bell, with Notes by Samuel Birch, LL.D., D.C.L., F.S.A. 2 Vols. With about 800 Original Engravings.**Picturesque America.** Complete in Four Vols., with Forty-eight Exquisite Steel Plates and about 800 Original Wood Engravings. Each.**The Life of Christ.** By the Ven. Archdeacon Farrar, D.D. *Library Edition, morocco.* Two Vols. (See also 6a., 7a. 6d., 10a. 6d., 15a., and 21a.)**St. Paul, The Life and Work of.** By the Ven. Archdeacon Farrar. *Library Edition, morocco.* *Illustrated Edition, morocco.* (See also 6a., 7a. 6d., 10a. 6d., 15a., and 21a.)**Farrar's Early Days of Christianity.** *Library Edition.* Two Vols. *Morocco.* (See also 6a., 7a. 6d., 10a. 6d., 15a., and 21a.)**Poultry, The Book of.** By Lewis Wright. With Fifty Coloured Plates, half-morocco. (See also 10a. 6d. and 31a. 6d.)

45/-

**Horse, The Book of the.** By Samuel Sidney. With Twenty-eight Fac-simile Coloured Plates. Half-morocco.**Dog, Illustrated Book of the.** By Vero Shaw, R.A. With Twenty-eight Coloured Plates. Half-morocco. (See also 35a.)

50/-

**Popular Educator, Cassell's New.** With New Text, New Illustrations, New Coloured Plates, New Maps in Colour, New Size, New Type. Complete. Eight Vols. in Four, half-morocco. (See also 5a.)**Bible, Cassell's Illustrated Family.** *Toned Paper Edition.* Leather, gilt edges. (See also 70a. and 75a.)**Henriette Monner.** The Painter of Cat-Life and Cat-Character. With Portrait and 12 full-page Illustrations in Photogravure and 16 Typogravures. The Text by M. H. Spielmann. *Quarto Edition, with Photogravures on India paper.* (See also 12a.)**London, Old and New.** Complete in Six Vols. With about 1,200 Illustrations. *Library Edition.* (See also 9a.)**Shakespeare, Royal Quarto.** Edited by Charles and Mary Cowden Clarke, and containing about 600 Illustrations by J. C. Selous. Three Vols., cloth gilt.**Bible, Cassell's Illustrated Family.** *Morocco antique.* (Also 32a. in leather, and 75a. best morocco.)**The International Shakespeare.** *Édition de J. nos.*"King Henry VIII." Illustrated by Sir James Linton, P.R.I. (*Limited Edition. Price on application.*)

"Othello." Illustrated by Frank Dicksee, R.A.

"King Henry IV." Illustrated by Herr Eduard Grützner.

"As You Like It." Illustrated by the late Mons. Émile Bayard.

"Romeo and Juliet" advanced to £7 10s. (Now out of print.)

**New Testament Commentary, The.** Edited by Bishop Ellicott. Three Vols. in half-morocco. (See also 21a.)**England, Cassell's History of.** With 2,000 Illustrations. *Library Edition.* Ten Vols. (See also 9a.)**English Literature, Library of.** The Set of Five Vols., half-morocco. (See also 7a. 6d.)**Picturesque Canada.** A Delineation by Pen and Pencil of all the Features of Interest in the Dominion of Canada, from its Discovery to the Present Day. With about 600 Original Illustrations. Complete in Two Volumes. The Set.**Old Testament Commentary, The.** Edited by Bishop Ellicott. Five Vols. in half-morocco. (See also 21a.)**British Fossil Reptiles, A History of.** By Sir Richard Owen, K.C.B., F.R.S., &c. With 208 Plates. Complete in Four Volumes.**Holy Bible, The.** Illustrated by Gustave Doré. Two Vols., best polished morocco.**Picturesque Europe.** *Large Paper Edition.* Complete in Five Volumes. Each containing Thirteen exquisite Steel Plates, from Original Drawings, and nearly 300 Original Illustrations, with descriptive Letterpress. Royal 4to, cloth gilt, £21; half-morocco, £31 10s.; morocco gilt, £52 10s. (See also 15a. and 31a. 6d.)50/-  
cont. d.

60/-

63/-

70/-

£4/14/6

£5

£5/5

£6/6

£7/17/6

£12/12

£15

£21

## MONTHLY SERIAL PUBLICATIONS.

**Art, Magazine of.** 1s. 4d.**Adventure, The World of.** 7d.**Africa, The Story of.** 7d.**Biblewomen and Nurses.** 2d.**British Battles on Land and Sea.** 7d.**Bunyan, Cassell's Illustrated.** 3d.**Cabinet Portrait Gallery, The.** 1s.**Canaries and Cage-Birds.** 6d.**Cassell's Magazine.** 7d.**Cassell's Natural History.** 7d.**Cassell's Penny Illustrated Stories.** 1d.**Cathedrals, Abbeys, and Churches.** 7d.**Child's Bible and Child's Life of Christ.** 3d.**Chums.** The Illustrated Paper for Boys. 6d.**Cottage Gardening.** 4d.**Doré Bible, The.** 3d.**Doré Dante Inferno.** 7d.**Encyclopædia Dictionary.** 1s.**England, History of.** 7d.**Family Physician, The.** 7d.**Family Prayer Book, Cassell's.** 6d.**Football.** 6d.**Franco-German War.** 7d.**Gardening, Cassell's Popular.** 7d.**Gazetteer, Cassell's.** 7d.**Health, Book of.** 6d.**Household, Book of the.** 7d.**Little Folks.** 6d.**London, Greater.** 7d.**New Testament Commentary, The.** Edited by BISHOP ELLICOTT. 7d.**Our Earth and its Story.** 7d.**Our Own Country.** 7d.**Paris, Old and New.** 7d.**Peoples of the World.** 7d.**Picturesque America.** 1s.**Picturesque Europe.** 1s.**Pigeons, Fulton's Book of.** 6d.**Quiver, The.** 6d.**Saturday Journal, Cassell's.** 6d.**Science for All.** 7d.**Shakespeare, The Royal.** 7d.**Storehouse of General Information,** Cassell's. 7d.**Sunshine Series, Cassell's.** 1s.**Surgery, Annals of.** 2s.**Technical Educator, New.** 6d.**Trees, Familiar.** 6d.**Universal History.** 7d.**Wild Flowers, Familiar.** 6d.**Work.** 6d.**Cassell's Railway Time Tables and Through-Route Glimpse-Guide.** *Enlarged Series.* Price 4d.

## WEEKLY PUBLICATIONS.

**Chums.** 1d.**Cottage Gardening.** 4d.**Doré Bible, The.** 4d.**National Library, Cassell's.**

Paper, 3d.; Cloth, 6d.

**Saturday Journal, Cassell's.** 1d.**Work.** 1d.

*Letts's Diaries and other Time-Saving Publications* are published exclusively by CASSELL & COMPANY, and particulars will be forwarded post free on application to the Publishers,

CASSELL & COMPANY, Limited, Ludgate Hill, London; Paris and Melbourne.









THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
• REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

---

This book is under no circumstances to be  
removed from the Building



